CHRISTIAN THEOSOPHY

Franz Schumi

Christian Theosophy

or:
The teaching of Christ in the Divine illumination of truth

dictated to
Franz Schumi
Christian Theosophical Script
Nr. 73
1905

Translated from German to English I 2019

1. Preface by the Father Jesus

1902, September 7th, Graz. Father Jesus gives the enlightenment as to which faith is the true one, and by whom and through whom he must be communicated to men that he is giving for salvation and blessing.

1. People want to have a religion, because that is rooted in their inner being, because My divine Spirit in the heart of the soul animates them to do so. But men are not supposed to construct a religion for themselves, but this must be given to them by Me, then it is divine!

2. When people establish a religion, it is dogmatic because human statutes reign in it, giving the dogma-makers money, honor and dominion from those influenced by such human statutes. Therefore you have to distinguish well what comes from Me and what comes from human wisdom.

3. The religions of all peoples have been created by human beings and are therefore more or less unreliable. There are certainly statutes among them that correspond to My divine principles, but with these good teachings are also purely human science and wisdom has been artificially interwoven and elevated to being doctrine of God.

4. It is true that in every religion established by men there is also ethics, but this is so depressed by other moral propositions that by the human the divine suffers and is not duly appreciated. Moreover, in all religions founded by men there are such great shortcomings and gaps in the entire occult life, that in many [of them], [there are] problems or dark questions - making it impossible for you to obtain a clear and pure explanation.

5. Above all this stands Christian Theosophy, which is not a dogmatic human work, but the whole, very important literature of Christian Theosophy is pure, divine doctrine, dictated directly by Me and written down by My medial writers after the dictates, as they understood it according to their inner spiritual development. In this teaching people are not told what they have experienced, seen or heard, but in the books of the new, - true Christian theosophy, because it is not new, but from My apprenticeship-years and how I - from eternity - am, therefore, old, - I speak alone in the first person as "I". From this, every reasonable person may see that in Christian theosophy, there must be perfect and pure truth. For he who contradicts the recognised words of God and says: This is not true, God does not interfere with ordinary people and similar expressions, he must also deny every other religion the justification of truth, with much greater rights - because no-one has all the truth, but in everyone are many hypotheses and dark hints.

6. Regarding the theosophical field - under which only My Divine doctrine, the direct words or the so-called dictates of God, or words of the Father - are to be understood, are authoritative; and on this ground and foundation, you have a true doctrine of God - which, of course, does not agree with the doctrines of men in everything, but has the advantage that the human being is not deceived about his salvation in any way, but it will be poured him a clear wine; but a clear wine will be offered him, but with full freedom: drink from the Spring of eternal life! Because it brings you salvation and blessing. If you do not want it, I will wait for you until you come to your senses, see it and cry out: O, woe! My unbelief has pushed me from God my dear Father into the distance, and has made me, like the prodigal son, suffer hunger and thirst until my present insight.
I will now proceed to the second enlightenment.

7. I said above: If people want the true religion, it must be given to them by God Himself, otherwise it is a human constitution and not a religion. There must therefore also be people with whom I can associate as God, as I did in the Old Testament with Moses and the prophets. But you are wrongly taught by your priests that God does not associate with ordinary people, because they themselves do not live according to My commandments and I therefore do not have correspondence with them.

8. With Me there are not ordinary or unusual people, but the one who respects My commandments,

lives and acts according to them, is My child, with whom I can then associate and give him words of love and admonitions to all My children. Therefore I must give you a little instruction in this relationship:

9. You know that no father is ashamed of his children, but every rightful father loves his children and feels happy when he can deal with them quite happily. But if an earthly father already treats his children so lovingly and wisely, why should I, as the real Father of all the children of men, be less wise, less loving, than an earthly father? Why should I not associate with children who follow Me and fulfill My love laws? and why should I not take care of the remaining children who still seek Me or should seek Me? How could I even be called "Father" if My children were too small for Me to associate with them, to guide them and to speak with them?

10. Behold, dear children, not your earthly father is your true father, but I, the great Jehovah Zebaoth, am the spiritual father of your bodies, for the substances from which the blood was made into the flesh of the body, I have created and allowed to grow for this purpose; and again it was not the stomach or the separator of the life juices that builds the blood, but the great chemist whom I set up for this purpose, namely the soul. Without Me giving the soul in procreation, nothing can come out of the parent's seed; if this were not the case, every mating would also have to be a procreation! And thirdly, the actual central core of man is after all the spirit, because without this, nothing can arise or exist. But I myself am this Spirit in man!

11. I ask you, dear children, may I not speak to Me in your body? May I not love this little child Jesus in you, whom I have given out of Me, as such, and guide you through this ego of Mine and draw you to Me?!

12. Once such children, who obeyed God's commandments and through whom I spoke to people, were called prophets; today they are called servants, maidservants, mediums of the Father, and mediums of God (mediators between God and people). They are the high spirits, angels, archangels and generally reincarnated children from My flock of children, from the love-heaven and from different star- and sun-worlds, who distinguished themselves out of special love towards Me, and who out of love for Me, asked for the incarnation and reincarnation to expect and welcome Me at My present return as instruments of My Fatherly love for men.

13. These mediums are bearers of My love for you all! Follow the teachings, which I give you through them, that you also come to Me and rejoice in the Father, who cares so lovingly for you, through care and guidance of your spiritual self. Because not knowledge, but life and action according to My teachings makes you My dear children with whom I then want to deal the same as with the mediums.

14. Do not forget My truth: no one comes to the Father but through Me! I, Jesus, as the Divine Wisdom, coming from the Divine Love, shone on you through love and humility and showed you through gentleness, patience, chastity, love of peace and selflessness, the way to the Father: that means "to love in God". So, through My virtues you come to the Father, but never through the wisdom of reason of the world, that marks you as children of the great God Jesus Jehovah Zebaot. Amen.

2. Contradictions between the Bible-letter-Christians and the Father's Word

1900, January 2nd, Graz. Father Jesus clarifies various Biblical passages that refer to divine commandments and teachings, and warns the Bible-Christians with full earnestness that they should not oppose the enlightening of Father's Word and that God should not be called a swindler, a deceiver, a false prophet, a blasphemer and a madman in His writing media, as has often happened so far.

1. Now we want to discuss some passages of the Bible which are misunderstood and misinterpreted in many ways. Let us begin with Moses and go on to the apostles in order to promote the correct understanding of the Bible, namely: 5 Moses (Deut) 4:1-2:

2. And hear, Israel, the commandments and judgements which I teach you, that you may do them, that you may live and come in, and take the land which the Lord your God of your fathers give you.

3. You shall not do (of the Ten Commandments and the Divine Teachings) anything more than I command you, nor shall you do anything less; that you may keep the commandments of the Lord your God that I command you.

4. The question is, what was Moses trying to say in these two verses, spiritually? Now I can - since he had drawn from Me - give you the desired message about it yes, if you read the verses carefully and think about the sense of the commandment, a bright light must immediately come up for you, that this is about nothing other than the fulfillment of the ten commandments, that you may live in the spirit of love for God and neighbour, that you may enter the land, which is the heaven that I have prepared for you.

5. The second verse tells you that you are not to do anything in addition to the ten commandments, nor are you to do anything less than them. This clearly means that you should not misinterpret the Ten Commandments at your discretion and distort their meaning, but should strictly fulfill them! But now all of you, as I presented to you in the Holy Trinity and also here in the enlightenment about the ten commandments, have done quite a lot more than it and quite a lot less than it and stand there as very bad transgressors against the ten commandments. But as I once said to the Pharisees, He who feels clean shall lift up the first stone against the adulteress; and so I say to you: Whoever feels clean from the transgression of the ten commandments, let him publicly call his name before the world; so that the world may know the divine hero who walks as cleanly as I walked - your God in Christ! That is the meaning of 'nothing should be added to it and nothing should be taken away from it', in the spiritual sense.

6. But in the material sense, it means that one is to fulfill the law to the last point as it has been given and as I have clearly laid it out to you here.

7. If you read the *Christian Theosophical Prayer Book*, the *Holy Trinity* and the *Christian Theosophy*, in which My Commandments are explained at the highest level, you will find that you are all under accusation of terrible transgression, that you have added a great deal about My Ten Commandments and have also taken a great deal from them: You have done this by allowing yourselves to commit so many sins that are forbidden there and you move carefree as if you were sinless; you have done much of this because you do not observe the Ten Commandments to fulfill them; you have largely done away with them by living materially and in sins which violate My Commandments. This is the meaning of the prohibition of Moses in the fifth book, fourth chapter, first and second verse.

8. Now that we understand Moses according to his principles, I lead you into the commandments of the New Testament and therefore hear what I forbade through My apostles:

Matthew 5:17-20

9. You are not to think that I am coming to dissolve the law or the prophets; I am not coming to dissolve, but to fulfill.

10. For truly I say to you, Heaven and earth would rather pass away than the smallest letter or point of the law would pass, until everything happens.

11. Therefore, whosoever shall abolish one of these least commandments, and teach men differently, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven; but whosoever shall do and teach it, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven:

12. Because I'm telling you: Unless your righteousness is better than that of the scribes and Pharisees, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven.

13. The first verse tells you that I as Messiah did not come to abolish the law given by Moses, but to fulfill it. If you now want proof of this, read My original Gospel nos. 11 to 21 [Great Gospel of John by Jacob Lorber - translator] of the Christian Theosophical Scriptures, or the small excerpt of it in the New Testament, for all these teachings I have given are nothing but a detailed explanation of the Ten Commandments.

14. The second verse (18) tells you that heaven and earth will rather pass away before the smallest point of My Law passes away, because everything must be fulfilled before a change can set in. The same is reported by the evangelist Luke, in Luke 16:17:

15. But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for a tittle to be removed from the law. Also: Matthew 24:35 / Mark 13:31 / Luke 21:33:

16. Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words will not pass away.

17. These passages from the Gospels tell you how seriously I have given My Law and how seriously I insist that it be fulfilled.

18. The third verse (19) commands you to grasp, teach and fulfill My commandments as I have given them! However, My commandments have so far been difficult to understand because they are very short and spiritually given, since they have been written down by the evangelists in the sense of the spiritually awakened, which had to be explained through the prophetic inner word (II Peter1,19; Paul: Gal 1,11.12) (Read I Cor.14). This verse is directed against all those who have so far explained the Bible according to it's wisdom, without having the prophetic inner word or the baptism in fire of My Spirit. All these are under the law as falsifiers and twisters of the basic meaning of the New and Old Testaments, - therefore, your opinion of the Bible words is not in agreement with Mine! Because it is not true according to your sense, according to your false enlightenment, you refer to the Bible verses misunderstood by you, and call Me - your God and Father Jesus - a heretic, swindler, deceiver, blasphemer and madman through My writing mediums; for you will not want to claim that the prophets, apostles and evangelists also referred to Me as they took away, added, and taught you differently!? This was only the concern of those who, from the times of the apostles to the present day, misunderstood the Bible, falsely explained it and preached false doctrines - I as God cannot possibly be understood like that!

19. Here verse 20 exactly applies to such wrong-doers against Me - who, in their spiritual darkness, no longer speak the name of God or Christ, who in Christian theosophical writings speaks in the first person 'I', distinguishing Me from man, who serves Me in humility and love and does what I tell him. Yes, truly, truly, I say to you: If your righteousness and your action does not improve from now on, from what it was until now, you will share the fate of the Pharisees and scribes, who also twisted the Scriptures, like you and your Bible teachers and preachers. I say nothing if one does it ignorantly, but you do it knowingly because My words are clear and plain and with your objection you already

touch the greatest sin - contradiction against the Holy Spirit of Truth!

20. When I, Christ, wore the mortal garment of a man, the Pharisees said that I cast out the devils and worked miracles with the help of Beelzebub, the supreme devil; now you also dare to stamp My scribes through whom I work and give you instructions, to be devils from hell, as gross transgressors against My holy name, since you call them false prophets who enjoys abusing My divine name to preach a false prophethood by quoting biblical quotes against them, all of them who have turned against your own false prophethood!

21. Now we go on to see what My darling wrote in My favour. His words were: John 21:25:

22. There are also many other things that Jesus did, but if all of it were to be written down, I note that the world would not comprehend what is described in the books.

23. This verse clarifies to you that I said something completely different to the apostles and spiritually advanced men, than what you find in the New Testament. But it does not say that it is forbidden for Me to reveal also to My children the things that was revealed to the apostles, the disciples and those who listened to Me at that time, when they become more spiritually advanced than most of the people at that time was.

24. The teachings which I gave at that time and the miracles which I worked and which are only mentioned but not recorded in the New Testament (John 20,30: but Jesus did many other signs or miracles before his disciples, which are not written in this book of the Gospel in the New Testament), you will find this recorded in the great Gospel which I had written through Jacob Lorber, because the present generation stands spiritually higher than it stood in the time of My earthly life.

25. That you take these teachings of the Great Gospel for heresy, false prophecy, deception, swindling, spiritualistic messages, blasphemy, madness, etc., proves clearly enough that you have not yet advanced spiritually enough to be able to digest this food, because you are not able to distinguish the truth from the lie, because you hold the truth to be a lie and the lie to be the truth, and you decisively oppose the truth! By rejecting the divine enlightenments, but by considering the false ones from your Bible teachers to be right and proper ones.

26. But now we want to hear what Paul said about the false teachings. He said: Paul to the Galatians 1:6-8:

27. I wonder that you let yourselves be turned away so soon from him who called you into the grace of Christ, into another gospel; yet there is no other; except that some who confuse you, want to pervert the gospel of Christ. But if we, or an angel from heaven, were to preach the gospel to you, as we have preached it to you, let him be cursed.

28. Let us first look at the sixth verse in which Paul rebuked the Galatians, that they so soon let themselves be turned away from the true gospel of Jesus Christ to another which was proclaimed by a false prophet.

29. This rebuke, applied to the present time, tells you the fact that one has full confidence in the teachings of the false interpretation of the Holy Scriptures, coming from Bible teachers who were neither initiated by the baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit, nor equipped with the gift of interpretation of [the Scriptures]; My own, originating from Christ and God, is considered to be false prophecy, and strongly fought against!

30. If there were only a little spiritual light in the heads of such adversaries, it would be impossible to look at the false and contradictory things that are ringing in the parrot's head as the truth; - but unfortunately(!) these are the dead in the spirit, (Matt 8,22; Luke. 9, 60) who are impressed by parrots; - but God's truth is much too high, [they can not] tolerate it's high light and are unable to bask in it's holy rays of love!

31. Yes indeed, there is no other gospel than that which I Myself taught and there is also no other correct interpretation than that which I Myself give through writing mediums I called Myself, once called prophets. Any other interpretation is unreliable, because it is often confusing and wrong.

32. In the eighth verse, My Paul swings into the fiery heights of zeal and thunders a formal curse on the Galatians against the false prophets by saying:

33. But even so we as apostles and disciples of Christ, or an angel from heaven, would preach the gospel differently to you than we preached it to you, "Cursed be he".

34. Behold, Paul could not have been more zealous; for in the last words lies already the highest thing that a servant of God can ever pronounce against his adversaries - for also this is not included in My teaching of love and therefore should never be said against the enemy or adversary because you should never curse a human being, however vicious he may be, be flawed or teaching wrong [things], because I am also in him as the spirit of life and you curse and condemn Me at the same time! So you see here, you Bible-heroes, Paul as a criminal against Me! Because he has not yet penetrated deep enough into the teaching to be free of error.

35. He did the same thing in the first Epistle to the Corinthians, chapter 16, verse 22 - There you also see Paul calling himself a spiritual father through the Gospel in the first Epistle, chapter 4 and verse 15 to the Corinthians, because he was not there when I told the disciples: You should not call any of you on earth 'father' (in the spiritual sense); for there is only one father of all of you, and He is in heaven. (Matt 23:9) And so there are still mistakes here and there, (ChtS. 64, (read christl.-theos. Scripture 64)) which you do not know [about], because you and your Bible-interpreters are not called and chosen by Me to the office of the Bible truth-proclaimers! Why then do you promote yourselves as defenders of the Bible, while you do not understand it spiritually?

36. Where is the anointing through the gifts (1 John 2:27) which you would have received from Me and with which you can legitimize yourselves that you are My servants - called, chosen or baptized with My Spirit!?

37. Yes, if you were My chosen ones, My servants, you would be humble and would know the voice of your God and Teacher! But since you want to be My Bible-teachers, you only show your dark night-spirits; for he who has the Spirit of the Bible in himself is spiritually born again and recognizes his God, King, Judge and Father by the voice of His holy love; but he who does not recognize this, belongs to the dead in spirit, even if he lives in the flesh.

38. That Paul preached a true gospel despite these unconscious bad offences against Me is certain, because I Myself was the one who revealed it to him and I also acknowledge it as coming from Me. But you should not imagine that Paul also regarded Me, his God, somehow as a heretic, swindler, deceiver, false prophet, blasphemer and madman like your Bible teachers - when I gave the other disciples again other teachings which he did not know. If you were not dark, you would have to see from the diversity of the teachings in the New Testament that I am not bound only to reveal My teachings according to a template, but that I do it as I please and do not need erring men as My schoolmasters.

39. Tell Me, you Bible letter-riders: Are My apostles also heretics, swindlers, deceivers, etc., because everyone brought other messages, or recounted them differently, and who are considered to be a specialist about one or the other apostle or evangelist? Why didn't everyone give the same messages and the same teachings? Do you not consider this suspicious? And why are you now suspicious of My present Fatherly word!? Do you not see for yourselves that you are the wrong [ones]? Instead of accusing Me of false prophecy, you should kneel and ask forgiveness for your presumption, with a repentant and contrite heart! So that you may not fall spiritually even deeper into impenitence and darkness than you already have.

40. Finally, I mention another passage from Revelation of John which reads: Revelation of John 22:18-19:

41. I (John) testify to all who hear the words of the prophecy in this book: "If any man add to it, God will add to him the plagues which are written in this book. And if any man do any of this of the words of the book of this prophecy, God will renounce his part of the tree of life and of the holy city, of which is written in this book.

42. These two verses of Revelation basically contain nothing new that has not been discussed before (Foreword chapter 2, verses 2- 6; read the higher-spiritual Enlightenment about this in no. 71, page 9) in the Christian Theosophical writings; therefore, this should be brought to a close, and a reminder attached: Read My Words, reflect on them, that they are spoken by God, your Lord and Judge, when you judge Me - hence, thoroughly consider Who you are dealing with, because your spiritual destiny depends on Me! Amen.

3. How the Bible ought to be understood

1902, August 27, Graz. The threefold meaning of the Bible:

1. according to the letters it is material and dead; -
2. according to the inner meaning of the words it is spiritual; -
3. by putting the spiritual sense into action, however, it is heavenly, because as a reward for this, one attains heaven.

1. How one is to interpret and understand the Bible correctly has already been argued about a lot, but no-one could figure out the only true interpretation of this spiritual book, so listen what I, the Father Jesus, have once said to My children:

2. The Bible is threefold in meaning, and he who does not recognize it, does not understand the meaning of the Bible's words; for you will have no use from a quarrel about the true sense of the Bible, but only harm, and therefore I Myself will explain to you the meaning of the Bible words and this is:

3. First, the material sense is represented by the words (letters) that one reads or hears and doesn't think about, and doesn't pay attention to, and so they represent the dead sense.

4. Second: the spiritual sense is presented by research into the fundamental sense in the words and it's understanding.

5. Thirdly, the heavenly sense is presented by all the spiritual in it, when one seeks to bring it to fulfillment - or to live and act according to it.

6. Behold My children, the first sense is dead; - the second sense begins to receive a life, but it is not yet love, but only the wisdom of the research for the truth in it, therefore not yet having a life; - the third sense, however, is heavenly and is full of life, because the love for God and the neighbour has passed over into activity and this last sense alone has value, because it contains the eternal life of love in itself.

7. Read more about the understanding and misinterpretation of the Scriptures in ChtS. No. 64: Doctrine of Justification; also in No. 37, 11, Trinity, 70, 71, 72, 76, 80 (Announcements).

4. The Faith

1. The Christian-theosophical faith is the light of My divine wisdom in Christ (Jesus said: I am the light of the world (John 8,12) and Paul wrote: Christ is the divine wisdom (1Cor 1:24)), which is the teaching of the love of God and a gift of the spiritual enlightenment of the human mind, that man may recognize the voice of His divine Father from the words of love as true, salutary and divine.

2. Christian-theosophical faith therefore means to regard as true everything that I commanded in the Ten Commandments and taught to believe as Christ, further what I revealed through My chosen ones of the Old and New Testaments, and finally what I dictated and announced through My writing media in the 19th and 20th centuries as Christian-theosophical teaching.

3. However, faith alone is not enough to be saved, but man must confirm his faith through the works of charity, of which My disciple Jacob also wrote (James 2:14): "What good is it to My brethren if someone says that he has faith but does not have the works? Can faith save him?" - Jacob also said (James 2:26): "Just as the body without the Spirit is dead, so also faith without works is dead".

4. Man also has to manifest his faith publicly before the world, that others may also be inspired to believe. Paul wrote about it (Rom. 10:10) to the Romans: "With the heart one believes unto justice, (through the exercise of charitable works; (ChtS 64, page 193 ff. I.Aufl)) and with the mouth the confession to bliss is made (Rom. 10:10)." About the public confession I expressly said: "He who confesses Me before men, him I will confess before My heavenly Father". (Matt 10:32).

5. This is an eternal fact, for My divine Word is the eternal truth, as the Psalmist David proclaimed to you (Ps 119:160): "Your Word is the pure truth; and Your just order lasts for ever". Thus Isaiah also expresses himself: "The word of our God remains for ever". Daniel (Dan 4:34) also confirmed this with the words: "I praise the King of heaven (Isa 9:5); for all His doing is truth, and His ways are just". This is why I said: "Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words will not pass away" (Matt 24:36; Luke 16:17; 21:33). And therefore one has to believe what I have revealed.

6. Some people are not clear which faith is the true one, because there is a Christian, Muslim, Indian Buddhist and Chinese faith (founded by Confucius), etc.?

7. The Holy Scripture of the Bible proves through the fulfilled prophecies (Christian Theosophical Scripture (CthS) nos. 71, 98), which is described by the world history, Assyrian Babylonian cuneiform scripts and proven facts on the spot, to which the prophecies refer, that only the biblical God Jehovah, who lived in Christ as a man and died on the cross for the original sin of the original parents of the human race, the true and only God who created the world and everything, and established the Christian religion. But this simultaneously proves that the other founders of religions called Buddha Gautama, Confucius and Mohamed, were only ordinary erring people and since their religious statutes are contrary to the religion of Christ, they were proof for every logically thinking human being that only that religion is the only true and genuine, which God Himself taught - but not the these religions, which are human statutes and against the doctrine of God, for there is only one truth, and this is God (Dan 4:34). But men are liars, as the prophet David said (Ps 116:11).

8. Through the prophecies that came true, it is clearly proven that My divine word is eternal truth; because everything came true word for word as it was announced through the prophets, hundreds and thousands of years in advance.

9. The records of the prophets and apostles which you read in the Bible and the dictates that I gave through My faithful servants and writers in the the Christian Theosophy are therefore called ones, because they present the doctrine of divine wisdom represented as "Christ" - which in Greek language, is called Theosophy - and because I in Christ, am the same God who spoke through Moses and the prophets, and I as the Divine Wisdom, am this teaching, which I once presented to the people in front of My disciples, and dictated between the years 1840 to 1864 to My scribe in Graz, Jakob Lorber, to be written down.

Is the Christian teaching in the New Testament, the true teaching of Christ?

10. The teaching in the New Testament is indeed My teaching, but not the original about all My journeys, daily events, teachings and miracles, but only an excerpt from the original Gospel which Jacob Lorber wrote, therefore very deficient and not reliable in everything because of the unauthorized corrections in the editions existing before the 20th century by those who were not enlightened by God.

11. As far as the so-called oral traditions or traditions of the church writers called "church fathers" are concerned, these are unreliable in many ways because they were recorded a hundred years later, when the teachings were already rounded off with fictional ingredients and according to human opinion. They are therefore to be regarded as truth only in so far as they agree with My current original reports.

12. Therefore, man should only adhere to the Christian-theosophical teaching; for it is given through Me, the Father, through the divine criteria: "Love combined with wisdom", as the wisdom from God guarantees, and because I Myself (Luke 10:16) pronounced the authentication about the preachers of My true teaching: "He who hears you, hears Me".

13. These persons indicated with "you" are the elect, taught and established by Myself, with whom I associate as I once associated with prophets and apostles through the inner prophetic word (2 Peter 1:19; Paul to Galatians 1:11,12). And through these chosen ones I now let the pure doctrine be written down for all and spread by the press.

14. The Ecclesia. The Ecclesia mentioned and meant by Matthew, which is to be heard, is the church of the confessors of the true Christian faith, as I taught as Jesus Myself and the apostles and evangelists wrote down. Matthew 18:17 says, "If the brother who sinned against you does not listen to the Ecclesia, [then let he] be to you like a Gentile and a public sinner".

15. With the records of the three evangelists: Matthew, Mark and Luke, it is as follows: The records of these three evangelists come from hearsay through the mouths of others; and to what extent their records are based on truth, is reported in the book of 'Christ and the Bible' [Fr. Sch], which should be consulted.

16. The question is: Are the short excerpts of the New Testament to be used now that My original gospel is available? Yes, one can use these excerpts, but [together] with the enlightenment I give through My Self-Appointed Teachers of Religion.

17. Moreover, there are records in the New Testament which are there as a true original, and therefore the Holy Scripture is to be used by all and everyone, since one learns facts in it which do not occur elsewhere and yet are necessary to know. Only, those who want to read the Bible should unite with Me, the Father, in love and humility, in their hearts and ask for enlightenment in reading the Bible verses!

18. A very important question is: Is there a God who created the world and the people, and who is this God? Behold, I Myself answer you: Yes, there is a God and this God is I, Jesus, as the God who not only created the world and the people, but who also gave the Ten Commandments at Mount Sinai and then as Christ, affirmed these commandments through My teaching of love (the evidence for this is laid down in the book 'Christ and the Bible' No. 71).

19. And it is I Who declared the punishment over men that every one should suffer for himself and die on the cross to regain the childhood of God, which was lost through original sin, since every one of you has sinned against the strict commandment of chastity which the holiness in God gave each of you, when you were still in the spirit of Adam and Eve.

20. This punishment imposed upon you for the repatriation of the childhood of God, I - as Jesus - endured Myself, in order to redeem you from the original sin and to reconcile the children with the holiness in God.

21. That I am this Jesus Christ, the true and only God of the universe, is proved by the fulfilled prophecies and all the many proofs which are unfolded and explained in the book: "Christ and the Bible" and in the book: "Christ, His Arrival and Return", which are to be found as proofs of the truth to the question posed here.

22. The genuine faith is a light-power of the spirit and therefore inevitably necessary for humans, because it is exactly the faith through which man can reach high spiritual virtues of love and through these, can reach God.

23. Peter wrote in the Letter to the Hebrews 11:6 - Without faith it is impossible to please God; for whoever wants to come to God must believe that He is, and to those who seek Him, [He] will be a rewarder after life and deeds.

24. Man who has matured to the use of reason, must now believe the following in order to reach God:

- That there is a God
- That He is a righteous God who punishes the wicked (judgement on Sodom and Gomorrah. Gen. 13:13; chap. 18 and 19) and rewards the good (Matt 5:11,12; the Beatitudes).
- That God consists of triune qualities, namely: love (1 John 4, 8 and 16), the Father; Wisdom, the Son (Read ChtS no. 71) and Omnipotence, called the Holy Spirit (Read ChtS no. 71) in God in spiritual correspondence.
- The evangelist John (1 John 5, 7) wrote: Three are those who bear witness in heaven: The Father, the Word, or the Wisdom of God, (who was called the Son of God in Christ, and who called the Word of divine love "Father" (John 14:10,11: The words I speak to you are not of Myself, but of the Father who is in Me)) preached to men, and the Holy Spirit.
- That God became man in the body of Jesus (Read ChtS 71) and redeemed people from original sin through His suffering and death on the cross (Read the 43 Chapter on Original Sin).
- And that through the incarnation of God in Jesus Christ, God became a personal, visible God in human form. Before that, God had no body, therefore no personal figure of His own, but He spoke as Spirit always only through the body of an angel from the original central sun Urka, who was only a bearer of His name and was called Jehovah (see under keyword "Jehovah" in the register ChtS. 37 (The Holy Trinity)).

25. But there has never been a God in three persons, because neither the patriarchs, nor the prophets, nor the apostles knew anything about it. The senseless invention of three persons was brought about by the infallible (?) Roman Church by bringing about in the year 325 at the Concilium of Nicea the two-person God: "Father and Son", and 56 years later, namely in the year 381 at the Concilium of Constantinople due to wrong interpretation of the New Testament, a triune God: "Father, Son and Holy Spirit", in three different persons.

5. The Authentic wording of the Apostolic Creed.

1. The apostolic Creed, in it's true sense, is therefore: "I believe in God, the Almighty Father, Creator of heaven and earth. And in Jesus Christ, His only begotten Son, our Lord; Received by the Holy Spirit, born of Mary the Virgin; suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, died and buried; descended to the portal of hell, resurrected from the dead on the third day; ascended into heaven, sits at the right hand of God the Almighty Father; from whence He will come to judge the living and the dead. I believe in the Holy Spirit; the Holy Church of Christ, the community of the blessed; the forgiveness of sins; the resurrection of the spiritual flesh and eternal life. Amen."

6. The True Faith

1849, 25 January, Graz. Father Jesus explains through Jakob Lorber how the true and real faith must be, that He enlightens the soul and guides it into the true, living entering into the truths of the mysteries of the divine faith (From: Robert Blum, ChtS. 42 B, 11 Spirit-scene).

1. I (Jesus) say: "What use is all your knowledge to you, and what use is obedience to a mind, which you call "faith", if your soul-spirit does not take part in it? Behold, every man has a double capacity for knowledge - an external one, that is the head; also the actual outer soul-understanding or wisdom of understanding; with this cognitive faculty the divine being can never be grasped and understood, because it was given to the soul to create a clear separation between the soul-spirit and the spirit of God, and to, in a certain way, make the soul aware of it for a while!

2. If now a person or rather a soul with this sole negative ability - called wisdom - wants to seek and find God, then it will always only move further away from the goal, the more stubbornly it pursues it [Him] in this way! But the soul also has another ability, which does not dwell in it's head, but in it's heart; this ability is called 'inner being', and consists of it's very own will out of it's love, and of an imagination corresponding to these two elements of it's being. Once the latter has taken up the concept of the existence of God, which is precisely the Love, this concept is then immediately embraced by love, and held fast by the will; this 'holding on' is called 'believing'; through this faith, which is alive, the true Spirit of God is then awakened through love and it then also immediately seizes it, raises itself up to it like a mighty light from God, and then penetrates the soul, and in it transforms everything into light, and this light is then the actual faith through which every soul can become blessed.

3. Have you ever heard of this singularly true faith?

4. You say in yourself: "No, this kind of faith is completely alien to me; for thinking in my heart seems completely impossible to me! Yes, so it is; it must be that this thing should seem impossible to you, because to think in your heart, you must exercise for yourself, and this exercise consists of the constantly renewed awakening of love for God; through this awakening the heart becomes strengthened and widened, so that the bonds of the spirit become looser, so that this light (for every spirit is a light from God) is gradually increased in intensity and freedom. If then the light of the spirit begins to illuminate the actual chamber of life of the heart, then also the innumerable primordial types in purely spiritual forms on the likewise innumerable walls of the chamber of life are always more clearly and distinctly pronounced and made visible for the soul; and behold, this reflection of the soul in it's heart is then a new way of thinking; the soul then encounters new concepts, great and clear ideas; with every loving immersion in your Spirit of God's love, the stones of offence disappear according to the degree to which the mind falls silent; there is then no more need for proof; for the light of the Spirit illuminates the inner forms, that is, casting no shadows in any direction; thus also everything that would be similar to a doubt only as in the softest breath, is banished forever.

And so a faith, which therefore has it's seat in the form of the heart and not in the head, can also be called a true and living faith; "true" because it comes from the unmistakable light of the Spirit of God, and "alive" because in man only the Spirit of God is alive in the truest sense! But in this faith lies also that extraordinary power which is mentioned twice in the Gospels. (Luke 24:49; John 14, 26)

5. But in order to attain this sole salvational faith, one must practice the above-mentioned contemplation, and strive most earnestly to attain a proper skill in it as soon as possible, and as early as possible! For if man has taken too much and too long care only for the formation of the head-mind (according to today's world custom) and through it, purely for earthly purposes and welfare only, it will of course then seem completely impossible to such a man to also be able to think in his heart! Such a person especially carries all of Hegel, Strauss, Ronge and other false teachers around in the head, and several like them. Furthermore, one must also have full reason to enjoy the purity of the evangelical customs; one must not be a reveller, and especially not carnally indulgent and horny; because fornication and adultery either kill or almost kill the spirit, or if it is not able to kill the spirit, it prevents the free development of it's light, also resulting in such lewd persons, especially in [their] advanced years, to become completely dull.

7. Faith and Love in Truth

1904, 8 February, Graz. Father Jesus describes through Franz Schumi how faith and love must be in order to be in the state of truth of the divine will, because God tests the human being according to it's state of activity in love.

1. My dear children, man believes and works out of faith; he loves and works out of love. This is an old truth which cannot be disputed; only man must believe what he believes out of living conviction, and what he wants, he must want out of living love, then it is true and good, but half-heartedness and lukewarmness are never good; the same applies to faith, and will.

2. It is obvious that faith without love is dead; but also love without faith is worthless, that is why man has to believe animatedly and be active out of living spiritual love, because his will has to come out of faith and love and have it's origin in God, then man is in true faith and in true activity of love. Amen.

8. The First Article of Fatih: Belief in God

The first article of faith is: "I believe in God, the Almighty Father, Creator of heaven and earth."

9. The True Faith

1. Before man can love God, he must know that there is a God, he must know what God is to him and why he should love God. This is why faith precedes love; but faith is not the main thing, but love, which is active out of faith (Gal 5:6), as Paul clearly expressed himself to the Galatians: 'In Christ only faith is valid which is active out of love'. But active love cannot express itself to God because God is a spirit who needs nothing material, in fact, God is even that invisible Effector of the

favours, from Whom you receive everything, that is why active faith can only [come] out of love for God to His children; men in turn, through the acts of charity done to people as children of God, delights their Father in heaven.

2. But man must never do anything he does, ambiguously; i.e. there must be no hypocrisy, no deceit at play; the inner spiritual man must be completely permeated by the noble sense of the matter and give himself outwardly as he thinks inwardly, then man works out of God and God through him, because he is one with God.

3. But if man acts outwardly differently than he thinks inwardly, he acts falsely out of evil, which finds it's echo in hell; if he acts outwardly good and noble only for the sake of the world, while he thinks differently inwardly, then he acts out of falsehood - because selfishness represents Satan in man - and so his life and actions are deception, lies and illusion for the outer world, which is called: 'acting in hell'.

4. In the divine law the judge is within: as one acts, so he is judged, so he builds himself heaven or hell in earthly life: Good leads upwards, evil downwards - this is the spiritual law, and this is unchangeable, as I as Jesus said: It is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for a dot of the law to fall away (Luke 16:17).

5. Since love is the fulfiller of the law of faith and love introduces the holy God Himself - I want to give you here an enlightenment regarding this.

10. God as Father

What does the Name 'Father' in God mean?

The name 'Father' means love, because it is the basic principle in God and this is the Father as Creator of the world (1 John 4:8,16); because love is always the Father, the impulse and the witness, because a fully free being will never do anything without being driven by love. God, as the most free being, only does what gives pleasure and joy to His love, hence the name Jehovah in Hebrew, which means "Father", since the Father is the very love that gives birth (ChtS. 37. 12, 26).

11. Evidence

...from the records of the Holy Scriptures that God is love and acts according to love.

1. Love is out of God, therefore everyone who has love is born of God and knows God; he who has no love does not know God, because God is love. Yes, God is love, he who abides in love abides in God and God in him.

2. But whoever says: I love God, and hate his brother, in whom My divine Spirit lives (1 Cor. 3:16,17; - 6:19; - 2 Cor. 6:19; - 2 Cor. 8:19: - Rom. 8:11), he is a liar; for he that loves not his brother, whom he sees, and of whom the doctrine says that he is a child of God (Announcements I. 103-115) and I the Spirit of God Himself dwell in him (1 Cor 3:16,17; - 6:19; - 2 Cor 6:19 - Rom 8:11), how can [he] then [say, he] loves Me his God, because he does not love Me? For the disciples received this commandment from Me: Whoever loves God should also love his brother (1 John 4:7,8,16,20,21).

3. As the teaching also says, a teacher of the law from the Pharisees asked Me: "Teacher! which is

the greatest commandment in the law book?" And I answered him, "You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind. This is the first and greatest commandment; the second is like this: You shall love your neighbour as yourself. In these two commandments the whole law and the prophets are included". (Matt 22:36-40)

4. I also taught: "Whoever believes in Me, from his innermost being, as the Scripture says (this passage is missing in the present Bible), streams of living water will pour out. But this I said of My divine Spirit of Love, which should be received by those who believe in Me; because the Holy Spirit of the baptism by fire (John 3:3-7) or the spiritual rebirth, was not yet given, because I Jesus, as the same Spirit, still walked on earth and worked Myself the works of love of the Holy Spirit on sick, poor and needy persons in My own person (John 7:38,39). For the rivers of living water are the many and various works of charity.

5. At the Last Supper I said: "He who has My commandments and does them is the one who loves Me; - and he who loves Me, will be loved by My Father and I will love him and reveal Myself to him and We will come to him and dwell with him." (John 14:21,23)

6. Paul said: "God proved His love for us by Christ (Romans 8:32) dying for us because we were still (hereditary) sinners (Hebr 9:15; Rom 3:25). (Rom 5:8)

7. Paul further said: The fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith, meekness, chastity (Gal 5:22).

8. From other records about love, you learn the following as regulations for the spiritual life: Proverbs say, "Love covers all transgressions." (Proverbs 10:12) For the one who loves God above all things, will ask forgiveness for his sins through contrite repentance; and out of love for God, he will then love his neighbour as a child of God and therefore as a brother to him, as he would love himself and do to him what he would like his neighbour to do to him.

9. Peter prescribed to the believers: But above all, persevere in perpetual love; for love covers a multitude of sins (1 Peter 4:8).

10. And I, Jesus Myself said the following to Quirinus, the governor of Syria, about the great value of love: He who comes to Me with your great love, all sins will be forgiven him, even if he had so many as the grass in the world or sand in the great sea (ChtS. 10 c 24 Bietigh. Edition).

12. The Attributes of God.

Now we come to the discussion of My divine attributes as they are recorded for you in the Holy Scriptures. But my qualities in God are the following:

1. I am most holy (3 Moses 11:44; Ps 5:7), for all works which I have created bear witness to this quality, because 'holy' means so much as 'infallible'.

2. I am eternal (Ps. 89:2); - 1 Tim 1:17), for I have no beginning, and will never have an end, because God is the world itself, and all that is in it.

3. I am righteous (5 Moses 32:4), so the people of Israel called Me and they were right, for My righteousness lasts forever.

4. I am good (Luke 18:19) because everything I do comes out of My goodness, holiness and infallibility.

5. I am true (Rom 3:4; Ps 119:151) because everything I do carries the seal of truth within it.

6. I am loving (1 John 4:8,16), because the creation of the world comes out of love, and My action in it testifies about nothing else but perpetual love.

7. I am all-wise (Ps 104:24). My wisdom is displayed by the visible creation, since the species, forms, colours, and genres are it's products.

8. I am almighty (Ps 135:6; Luke 1:37). My omnipotence in spiritual language is called the Holy Spirit or the working willpower of My love and wisdom.

9. I am omnipresent (Jer 23:23,24; Ps 139:7,8; ChtS. 37,13). Since I am the Spirit of the ether-air, there is nowhere I am not present and not involved.

10. I am omniscient (Hebr 4:13; 1 Chron 28:9; 2 Moses 34:6). Because of My omnipresence I am omniscient, because nothing can happen that I would not see.

11. I am merciful (Moses 2:34,6). All My works, which I do for the benefit of people as My children, bear witness to mercy towards their errors and mistakes.

12. I am unchangeable (Malachi 3:6). My love and wisdom describes the path of life, progress and perfection to all creatures in advance, so nothing can ever be changed about it, because in it's original beginning, it stood spiritually as perfected and unchangeable, before I let it enter into visible existence.

13. God's Idea

1904, January 15, Graz. Enlightenment about the idea whether there is a God from the visible creation and how God reveals Himself to mankind in nature.

1. People often doubt that there is a God; but you should not doubt, but think a little, whether it is possible that the world and all that you see with your eyes, hear with your ears, or otherwise generally senses, were formed just out of itself and so artistically, so majestically, and so powerfully, out of nothing.

2. Nothing can come out of nothing, all learned say that; but all men know that without a master or artist, nothing has yet been formed what you have conceived, formed and erected as works of men, masters and artists; it is therefore a purely groundless imagination that the visible creation with it's wonderful construction and orderly arrangement, could have originated and formed by itself.

3. The scholars are amazed at everything that occurs in creation, especially in astronomy. And they are aware that they will never invent the instruments to fathom the secrets of creation deeper than it is [currently] possible for humans. They are also aware that they will never penetrate into the mystery of how the slightest grass come to be and grows, let alone fathom the artistic creation of the whole earth, without humbling themselves and openly confessing: we indeed say: “This is 'nature' alone, and with that we say that in nature a secret, invisible force is at work, which divinely stands above all human intelligence and imagination in it's wisdom, and represents a force which cannot be opposed by anything; for it has the elements of nature, magnetism and electricity as tools in it's hand”.

4. The world seeks God and does not find one anywhere, because it does not seek God where He is to be sought and found.

5. They look at the seemingly infinite creation, it's greatness and the weight of the bodies, which float freely in the air, and admire the power that it receives, floating on and in the continued order of it's course and circling, with no disruption to throw the whole thing out of control.

6. These are the main proofs of the invisible omnipotent Source, which holds and puts into orbit such gigantic bodies as feather-light play-balls in their power and strength, because of course they do not keep themselves, but are held by an invisible omnipotence.

7. The scholars make big assumptions out of small proofs; all of such assumptions are problematic or shrouded in dark mystery, if man do not go deeper to the foundations, and work from these to judge and create sound and valid systems.

8. The scholars say that electricity and magnetism are what attract and repel each other and that it is the case with all the celestial bodies, mutually attracting and repelling each other, simultaneously repelling and re-attracting each other, repelling and continues to do so, thus creating balance and keeping the bodies in a free-floating state.

9. But this hypothesis or assumption completely lacks the proof that something like this is happening, and so it is no proof, but a view with no foundation.

10. The fact in this question is, however, the following: Magnetism and the electricity runs through the whole universe and there's nothing in the air and ether space, where these two would not be represented, so there is no atom without magnetism and electricity, but these two are the basic forces of all forces, they are the world-creating, moving, ordering and sustaining powers, because they are called in divine language 'the Holy Spirit', because they are the love, wisdom and omnipotence in God!

11. In magnetism lies the creative love or the Father in God, in electricity the All-Wisdom of God, and what these two decide is put into work by the infinite, gigantic power which lies in both.

12. If you now consider that the worlds are composed of many atoms, which are held together with magnetism and electricity, which is the divine omnipotence itself, then it is easy to understand that the earths are kept floating in the air by this omnipotence, atom by atom, so that it individually and all together form the earth-bodies and is handled by this Omnipotence.

13. From there and from nowhere else comes the power which keeps the gigantic worlds floating in the air and which moves them according to their divine intelligence, circling continuously. Because all strings governing the worlds converge and are in My divine hands, and from there everything is guided and kept in order.

14. The Knowledge of God out of Creation

1. I, the invisible Worker, am recognizable by My eternal love, wisdom and omnipotence as God of the universe, ever since the creation of the world, through consideration of My inimitable miracles in nature, allowing nobody the apology that he had no proofs and therefore could not have known that there is a God.

2. Unfortunately, many secularized men, stubborn in dead matter, seem to be very wise - but through their alleged wisdom they fell into spiritual darkness and thereby exchanged the only true majesty of the imperishable God with the image of the perishable man, for they have turned men into

gods on earth, attaching to them titles that only God is entitled to; Others want scholars to judge and witness of God's Word, whether it is based on truth, saying, 'What do the scholars say?' But the question [that should be asked] is: What judgement can these scholars give, who deny God or who have false concepts of God!?

3. Men thereby turned the truth of God into a lie, because they showed more reverence and service to creatures than to the Creator, to whom alone all exaltation is due for eternity. That is why mankind fell into all vices and blasphemies and is therefore tormented and chastised by all kinds of tribulations and distress, allowed by Me.

4. Men did not find it worth the trouble to obtain the knowledge from God; I therefore left them to their wrong senses, to do what is not befitting, being in violation of My commandments and teachings.

5. People are hence full of every [kind of] injustice, wickedness, fornication, greediness, profanity, hatred, envy, honour and lust for power, blood-thirst, quarrelsomeness, cunning, deceitfulness, pedanticism, megalomania and the resulting persecution-rage; so there are also many story-tellers or traitors, slanderers, traitors to God, blasphemers, the boastful, the braggers, the inventors of all sorts of wickedness and the defiant against their parents.

6. People have become unscrupulous, unfaithful, loveless, irreconcilable and merciless (cf. Rom 1:20-31); because the fear of God has died out in them through the darkness of wisdom of understanding, and they have thus become hell-spirits in the flesh of the world (Kundg I:115).

7. If you ask a God- and soul-denier: How does this and that arise in nature, since one can neither explore nor imitate it, nor prove it, he answers thoughtlessly, like someone who never learns anything, nor understands it, nor thinks about it: 'This is nature ...'.

8. But since such incomprehensible powers and intelligences lie and are at work in nature, that they far surpass human wisdom, would it not be better and more reasonable if such a hero of spiritual nihilism would say: 'For the weak mind of man, these are problems that have not yet been researched, are seemingly extrasensory, or dark questions'?

15. What I don't see or Hear, doesn't exist.

1903, August 8, Graz. Father Jesus explains that thoughts are the language of the spirit, and even though people do not hear or see them, they are [still] firmly convinced of their reality. High spirits, however, hear and see people's thoughts, which is why people are always accompanied by spirits.

1. Those who do not know the supernatural life, say: "What I do not see or hear does not exist." This view can easily be refuted, for man does not see his neighbour's thoughts, although he speaks it as if with an open mouth, because thinking is spiritual speech, and yet the person standing beside him, does not hear it. So that is a proof that generally known things of spiritual life does exist, which also all men believe to be present - because everyone is convinced of it in himself and yet nobody hears it as also nobody hears the thoughts of his neighbour. On the other hand, a high spirit of every human being sees and hears thoughts, it being the reason why man is always accompanied by spirits wherever he stands and walks, because they hear his language of thought, which for them is the "language of spirits".

2. This given evidence that one does not even see or hear existing thoughts refutes the arguments of the deniers of God and of the soul.

3. These deniers of God and soul, therefore doubters of faith, are the poor blind, deaf and idiots of spiritual life, and therefore the great poet, through My inspiration given to him, said quite excellently about such ways of understanding:

What you don't feel is miles away from you,
What you can't grasp, you're missing altogether;
Whatever ye do not reckon, ye believe, be not true;
What ye do not weigh has no weight for you;
What ye do not coin, ye think, does not apply.
(From Goethes Faust)

4. Jehovah Elohim that means: It is the Holy Spirit of the God of love, wisdom and omnipotence who represents the invisible working and creating power in matter, which produces the growth, the movement, the forms and shapes, as well as language and sounds; and everything that is called the five senses and more - which is simply called the nerve-spirit and the five senses, is nothing other than the Holy Spirit out of God. This is the general perception of the Holy Spirit or Godhead in nature and in man. Now we consider:

16. The great daily Miracle

1. Since the earth has a circumference of 40,000 kilometers, every human being walks about 28 kilometers in one minute or about 464 meters in one second. But this is such an incredible speed that man, as if at lightning speed, continues to walk about half a kilometre every second due to the rotation of the earth, and that in 24 hours, in all conceivable positions: so that he stands on his feet at noon during the day, but with his feet on the ground at midnight, with his head hanging down like a sleeping bat; without knowing anything about it.

2. The question is, if this is not a supersensible, therefore divine miracle, that man knows nothing about it, what can you then still call a miracle?!

3. Who is to work this miracle other than God, that man may walk with lightning speed all the time and yet know nothing of it and still fulfill all imaginable tasks daily in the strangest physical positions imaginable? Should not God, who is electricity and magnetism Himself, work this miracle, which is incomprehensible to human concepts and which moves daily and continuously, spinning and repeating at lightning speed? If not, who else?!

17. The second Article of Faith

Faith in Christ.
The second article of faith is: And in Jesus Christ, His only begotten Son, our Lord

1. With this article of faith I am called: (1) the only-born Son of God and (2) the Lord of men.

2. That this name is the highest title, you can infer from the fact that it is said that I am an only born Son of God, because the only born, means so much as to be substance in the inner being of God, thus God Himself, therefore also the second name "our Lord"; For Lord or God is again a name, it is the name of the one who is the ruler and master, for otherwise he would not be Lord over men, because these are the children of God, over whom no one else is Lord but God alone.

3. The name Jesus means in Hebrew: Rescuer, Helper, Redeemer or Saviour (On the etymology Jesus read in ShtS. 37, 48 I. Aufl.).

4. I was called Saviour [(Mary) will bear a son, to whom you (Joseph) should give the name Jesus: for He will redeem His people from their sins (Matt 1:21)], because through Me salvation has come through the redemption on the cross (a) from original sin and the Old Testament sins, (b) to men, whereby men have been redeemed as children of God, from the separation from Me, from their spiritual Father.

5. a.- Isaiah wrote about it: He is wounded for our sin, beaten for our iniquity. The punishment for our salvation is upon Him, through His wounds we are healed (Is 53:5).

6. b.- My death took place for the redemption from the transgressions of men in the first covenant (Hebr 9:15; Rom 3:25).

7. In addition to the name Jesus as Saviour, I am also called Christ, because I was often mentioned by the prophets as an Anointed One, which in Hebrew is called Messiah (Hebrew: Maschiach), but in Greek means Christ, so especially clearly in Daniel: ... up to the Anointed One, (Jesus) the Prince (from the tribe of Judah) are seven weeks and sixty-two weeks (Daniel 9:25).

18. Jesus Christ is called the Only Begotten Son of God

1. I am called, as mentioned before, the only-born Son of God, and this after My Soul, because My Soul as God's Wisdom is so within Divine Love or as regards content, as the Light in the Flame.

2. That I am the only-born Son of God is reported in the following passages of the Holy Scriptures, which the evangelist John recorded:

3. Nobody has ever seen God (in His primordial form) as the only-born Son, who is in the womb of the Father, who made Him (known to us) (John 1:18).

4. God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son so that whoever believes in Him would not perish but have eternal life. For God did not send His Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. He who believes in Him is not condemned; but he who does not believe is already condemned, because he does not believe in the name of the only-begotten Son of God (John 3:16-18).

5. If you do not believe Me that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me, believe it nevertheless because of the works (John 14:11).

6. The love of God has proved to us that God sent His only begotten Son into the world so that we might live through Him (John I:4,9).

19. Son of God

1. This name is, as the passages about the only-born Son explain, the spiritual name for divine wisdom or theosophy, or the Word of God (Holy Trinity Chapter III), which I, as the Word of God, recited. Therefore Paul said to the Corinthians: Christ is the divine wisdom (I Cor 1:24).

2. The incarnation of God in Christ under the spiritual name "Son of God" was therefore to proclaim the true gospel of God to the poor at a certain time. About this, it was written:

3. *Isaiah 61:1* - The Spirit of the Lord is upon Me, therefore He anointed Me and sent Me to preach the gospel to the poor (that is, to those who hunger for spiritually divine bread) (Luke 4:18).

4. Furthermore, in order to redeem them from original sin and the sins of the Old Testament that resulted from it through the redemption on the cross (1 Moses 3; Hebr 9:15; Rom 3:25), and thereby to regain for them the childhood of God, which they have lost through original sin.

5. For God reconciled the world with Himself in Christ by no longer attributing to men their Old Testament sins (2 Cor 5:19; 1 Moses 3:15).

6. The proofs that I am called Jesus "Son of God" in spiritual language and that every Christian has to believe, if he wants to attain eternal life through the sonship of God, are the following:

7. *Luke 1:26,31-35* - the angel Gabriel said to Mary, "Behold, you will conceive and bear a son, whom you shall call Jesus; he will be great and will be called Son of the Most High; And Mary said unto the angel, How shall this be, when I have never knew a man? The angel answered, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you, and therefore the Holy One that is born of you, will be called the Son of God".

8. *Matthew 17:5 and Luke 9:35* - At the transfiguration on Mount Tabor, a shining cloud surrounded them, and out of it spoke a voice: This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; listen to Him". The scene at the baptism is an erroneous confusion and doubling of the event at Mount Tabor. Judge yourselves according to the statement of the evangelist John 1:29-34, who tells the truth of what happened then.

9. *Matthew 16:13,16-18* - I asked My disciples: Who do you say that I am? to which Peter answered: You are Christ, the Son of the living God; and I said: Blessed are you Simon son of Jonah; I say to you: On this rock I will build My church, and the gates of hell will not overpower it.

10. The rock on which I will build My church is the 'truth' of the confession that I am the Son of God. For the spiritual word rock means truth, and because I as God am the truth (John 14:6; 16:13), therefore also in consideration of the divine truth.

11. Who thus does not confess Christ as the Son of God, the truth is not in him, for this is the first [core] of faith: To believe in Me Jesus Christ, thus in My origin as Divine Wisdom.

12. *John 1:34*: John the Baptist saw at My baptism in the Jordan the announced divine sign and therefore he testified that I was the Son of God.

13. *John 1:50* - When I told Nathaniel his strength of character, he recognized Me and said, "You are the Son of God, you are the King of Israel".

14. *John 6,69-70* - Peter said to Me in the name of the twelve disciples, "Lord, You have words of eternal life, and we believe and recognize that you are Christ, the Son of the living God. (Same as verse 9).

15. *Matthew 26:63-64* - I Myself confessed before Caiaphas that I was the Son of God (the same in Mark 14:61,62; Luke 22:70), which the Pharisees then mockingly accused Me of on the cross (Matt 27:43).

16. *Matthew 14:33* - When I came walking on water and stepped into the ship, the wind and all the fellow travelers came to Capernaum and worshipped Me and spoke: Truly, You are the Son of God."

17. *Acts 8:37* - "The eunuch of Queen Kandace in the Morning land [east], who wanted to be baptized, said to Philip: "I believe that Jesus is the Son of God."

18. "In *Acts 9:20* it says: "After Paul had been converted, he preached [about] Jesus, that He was the Son of God."

19. According to *John 5:25* I said: "The hour will come when the dead (in spirit) will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear (i.e, accept it), will live".

20. *John 20:31* said, "These things are written, that ye may believe that Jesus is Messiah (or Christ), the Son of God, that believing, you may have life in His name."

21. *John I:5,13* further said: "This I have written to you, that you may believe in the name of the Son of God, that you may know that you have eternal life, and that you may believe in the name of the Son of God."

22. *John I:5,20,21* - "We know that the Son of God has come, and has given us a meaning, that we may know the true one, and we are in the true one, in His Son Jesus Christ; this is the true God and eternal life".

23. *John I:4,15* - "Everyone who has confessed that Jesus is the Son of God in him God abides, and he in God".

24. Apart from the passages I am also called the Son of God elsewhere, which is shown in the footnotes (as: Matt 8:29; 27:40,43; Mark 1:1; 3:11; Luke 8:28; John 9:35; 10:36; 11:4,27: 19:7; Rom 1:4; 2 Cor 1:19: Gal 2:20; Ephesians 4:13: Hebr 4:14: 6:6; 7:3; 10:29; 1 John 3:8; 5:10: Rev 2:18). In many other places of the Holy Scriptures, I am called "Son" by Jehovah, in other places I myself call Jehovah My Father, that is the Divine Love, because I am not a son of Jehovah, but Jehovah's or the Father's wisdom or soul, which is clearly proved in Book Nos. 37 and 71. The father and son is also mentioned in the following passages:

25. *John 5,19-27* - What the Father does, the Son does also; as the Father raises the dead and animates them, so also does the Son; just as the Father has life in Himself, He also gave it to the Son to have life in Himself, so that all may honour the Son as they honour the Father. The Son is also very often mentioned elsewhere, as well as by David:

26. *Psalm 2:7,12* - I will tell you about what I have decided: Jehovah said to Me, "You are My Son, I have begotten You. - Kiss the Son, that He will not be angry, and you will not perish in the way; for His wrath (that is, "zeal") will soon be kindled: blessed are all who trust in Him.

20. Son of David

1. I am called son of David because I was announced in advance by the prophets Nathan (2 Sam 7:12) and Isaiah (Isa 7:14; 9:5; 11:1) as a son from the seed of David and because the mother of My flesh-body, Mary (Luke 1:26-56), was a descendant of the tribe of the house of David.

2. Therefore, I, Jesus, was a spiritual representative of the House of David and My followers of faith are the people of My spiritual Kingdom of David, which will exist forever (2 Sam 7:12,13,16; Isa 9:6; Dan 7:13,14; Micah 4:7).

21. Son of Man

1. According to the flesh I was indeed the Son of Man, because [I was a] descendant of the tribe and seed of David.

2. Spiritually, however, the Son of Man means a prophet, as proclaimer of the divine Word, because God is the primordial man of all people (cf. the Enlightenment in the magazine "The Love" 1st Vol. p. 25.), according to whose spiritual contemplative form His children are called "men"; - Son means 'word' according to the correspondence of the spiritual heavenly language (John 1:1-14; Matt 28:19; 1 John 5:7) and this is the wisdom of God (1 Cor 1:24).

3. Man as a spiritually contemplating figure is called in primordial German: Man-isk-ku (s) that means "thinking being" = "thinker". - Slavic (best preserved in Russian): celovek (tschelowek) = "speaker, orator".

22. God-man

1. I bear this name due to My origin as God, and due to My incarnation out of God. The prophet wrote about it:

2. *Isaiah 9:5* as follows: A son is born to us, and His name is called (after His divine Spirit): (God) Father from eternity (and according to His soul, which consists of the wisdom of God): counsel (of the Father God from eternity).

3. I Jesus as a human being was, according to My body, the carnal shell of God.

23. Faith in God as a visible person

1. God was invisible to all creatures in His absolute spiritual state before the incarnation in Christ. Moses explicitly states: "No-one can see God and live, because He is a consuming fire." This fire is the divine love, which in the material state is the most living, therefore consuming fire (2 Moses [Exod] 33:20; 5 Moses [Deut] 4:24). In the spiritual-etheric state though, it is the very finest spirit of love and for the soul who is very sensitive to the love-spirit - which however cannot be felt by fleshly people - without God's permission. The more spiritually refined the human being is, the higher the pleasures in the heavenly state.

2. In the Old Testament, faith in Jehovah was founded only by the representative angel through whom the spirit of Jehovah spoke. In the New Testament, in the body of Christ, Jehovah became a visible God to you.

3. Faith in a visible God in Christ who is man and God at the same time, has a beneficial blessing for the human mind, because it corresponds to your idea of a God who is your Father, because it is natural. The naked spiritual enters into man, but is not received as something fixed, but is like an escaping ether, which does not stimulate, because one does not become aware of it. But when the spiritual is received in the natural and becomes a firm reality of faith, then the spiritual, just like the material, becomes an object of conviction and therefore of true faith. But the faith in an invisible God was in reality a blind one because the human mind does not see it's God, and the light of that faith, because it is not a spiritually natural one, is not a real light.

24. The only saving faith is that I am Jesus Christ, your God and Saviour

1. The only salvific faith, through which man reaches the highest spiritual perfection, that he may come to see God his Father, is that you believe: Jesus Christ is the Incarnation of God Jehovah Zebaot, because this unambiguously emerges from the prophecies of the prophets: first, all the prophecies that Jehovah gave about the future destinies of Babylon, Phoenicia, Egypt, and Palestine were literally fulfilled (*Announcements 1. Vol*. ChtS. 71); second, because the same Jehovah gave about Himself those prophecies that were literally fulfilled in the life of Jesus Christ (Witness *Old and New Testament*); thirdly: because the whole of Holy Scripture has spiritually only God as the subject matter of His housekeeping with the human race (Swedenborg's teaching).

2. The bliss of men depends on faith in a God. All pious people are happy, whether they believe in a Christ or not, but with the difference: who do not believe in Me, that I as Christ am God, they may well get into happy states, but they can never go to God as their Father; they are in like conditions as the patriarchs and prophets before the redemption on the cross, which they regard as 'limbo' because their desires couldn't come true to get to the Father.

3. But those who believe in Me Christ as God and lead their lives according to the divine commandments, to them it is reserved to be children of God and to be elevated to the rank of bliss in the heaven of love, where they are to see God face to face in the form of Jesus Christ, and to be indescribably blissful; while those who regard Christ only as a human being, are like the servants in the house of the eternally absent father, because God is invisible to them. Also their bliss is incomparably inferior because they are in wisdom - but the children of God are in the love of God. That is why I Myself taught, and later the apostles taught, that one should believe in Me, if one wants to become blessed in the sense of the children as heirs of God, as the following proofs show:

4. *John 3:15,16* - John testified about Me, what I said with the following words: That My suffering and death may be, so that everyone who believed in the Son may not perish, but have eternal life; for God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have eternal life.

5. *John 3:18* - And he continued, "He who believes in the Son will not be judged, but he who does not believe has already been judged, because he did not believe in the name of the begotten Son of God."

6. J*ohn 3:36* said: "He who believes in the Son has eternal life (of the children of God), but he who does not believe in the Son will not see the life (that is, Jesus Christ), but the wrath (that is, separation from childhood) of God remains upon him.

7. *John 6:28,29*: They said to Me, "What shall we do to work the works of God? And I answered them: This is the work of God, that ye may believe in Him whom the Father has sent (and live and act according to what He teaches!).

8. *John 6:35*: I said to the Jews, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to Me will not hunger, and he who believes in Me will never thirst.

9. *John 6:40*: "I also said, 'This is the will of the Father who sent Me, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in Him may have eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day'."

10. *John 6:47,48*: Truly, truly, I tell you, whoever believes in Me has eternal life itself; for I am the bread of life (or the spiritual teaching, after the fulfillment of which one comes to Me, his Father, as 'eternal life').

11. *John 7:37,38* - I called and said, "If anyone thirsts, come to Me and drink from the fountain of divine love; for whoever believes in Me will have rivers of living water flow (which are the works of charity) out of his body, as Scripture said."

12. *John 8:24* - I said: If you do not believe that I am Jehovah the promised Messiah (Isa 9:5; Malachi 3:1,23; Micah 5:1), you will die in your sins.

13. *John 11:25,26* - Of Myself I said: I am the resurrection and the life, whoever believes in Me, will not die in eternity.

14. *John 12:36* - When I entered Jerusalem, I said to the Jews in the temple, "As long as you have the light, believe in the light, that you may be children of the light."

15. *John 16:8,9* - At the Last Supper I said: "When the Helper, the Spirit of truth, has come, He will convict the world of sin, of righteousness and judgment; of sin, that they do not believe in Me.

16. *John 20:31* said, "These things have been written that you may believe that Jesus is the Son of God, and that believing this, you may have life in His name.

17. Those who believe that faith in Christ alone is salvific without works of charity, which is of course an erroneous interpretation of the misunderstood Bible doctrine, will find in the appendix to *Luther* (ChtS. No. 71), the relevant thorough explanation, as well as in the book: *Christ and the Bible*.

25. The Power of Faith

1. The faith in Me, Christ, and therefore the following of My teaching, is the basic power of spiritual life. It is this faith with which one achieves everything and in a given case, can even bring about miracle-healings. That is why I said:

2. *John 15:4,5*: "Remain in Me and I in you; for without Me you can do nothing."

3. Faith in God and in what he has commanded and taught is actually faith in what is out of God, but what is out of God is divine and therefore the same as God, because in God is only the Divine: Father and Son or love and wisdom, and their effect is therefore true faith in what is of God, again God Himself, because faith is given by God and requested [to be given] back. It is a power that comes from God and is rooted in God, and this power is the Holy Spirit in God, which is the activity of the Godhead outwardly. Therefore, he who has a firm faith, has the power of God in him and is able to work miracles. That's why it was said:

4. *Mark 9:23* - All things are possible to him who believes it (and therefore nothing is impossible to him who believes undoubtedly). And this is also the basis of the graces of power of the rebirth of the Spirit, of which the details are given in the *Holy Trinity*.

26. The truth in Faith

1. True faith is faith in the word of God; but the word of God is eternal truth; therefore, whoever has true faith, has God his Father Jesus, eternal truth, in himself, and is therefore immune from the attacks of hell. Therefore each one should believe only that which is offered and taught to him here, if he wants Christ to live and work in him. Because only this faith in Peter, I as Jesus called a 'rock', or the truth on which I build My church.

27. The apostles' Faith in Christ

1. That the faith of the apostles was founded only on My person as God the Father (*John 10:30; 12:45; 14:9; Isa 9:5*) and Son, is made clear by their letters, especially those of Paul who spoke:

2. *Galatians 2:20*: I live (still in the flesh), but not I (according to the lusts of the flesh), but Christ lives in me (according to His divine Spirit); for what I now live in the flesh, I live in faith, which is in the Son of God.

3. *Acts 20:21*- Paul exhorts the Jews and Greeks to repent to God and to believe in the Lord Jesus Christ.

4. *Acts 16:30,31*: The jailer who led Paul out asked: "What must I do to be saved? And Paul answered, "Believe in the Lord Jesus Christ, and you (if you keep His teachings and His commandments) will be saved along with your house."

5. *John 5:12,13*: "He who has the Son has life, but he who does not have the Son of God has not life; this I have written to you who believe in the name of the Son of God, so that you may know that you have eternal life, and so that you may believe in the name of the Son of God."

6. *Galatians 2:15,16* - We who are Jews by nature and not sinners from the Gentiles, knowing that man does not become righteous by works commanded by the law, but by faith in Jesus Christ, have also believed in Jesus Christ.

7. *Romans 3:22,26*: The righteousness of God comes through faith (fulfilled by works) (as Paul and Jacob teach in other passages of the Bible).

8. *Philippians 3:9*: Paul said, "He has the righteousness that comes from faith in Christ, the righteousness that comes from faith in God."

9. *Revelation 14:12*: Here are the blessed who keep God's commandments and faith in Jesus Christ.

10. *2 Timothy 3:15* - By faith, which is in Jesus Christ.

11. *Galatians 5:6* - In Jesus Christ only the faith that works through love is valid. That only this faith is the right one, compare in the appendix to *Martin Luther,* page 228; while the Protestants prefer to adhere to the misunderstood interpretation of Scripture in *Romans 3:28*, because they thus think they are deprived of all activity in works of charity.

12. That faith is only a true faith, a faith of truth, if it is active through love, is shown by the 7 virtues of love, mercy and charity (in the *Prayer Book*). *Dr. M. Luther's guidance in the hereafter*, also testifies that the true religion is only that which manifests itself in love for God and neighbour.

28 The Rock of Faith is the Truth

1. Faith in a God is that man believes that Jesus is this God, this faith is a rock of eternal life, which is the divine "truth" in it's supreme power of divine love, that is why Jehovah is called a rock by the prophets and apostles, as the following evidence demonstrates:

2. *5 Moses 32:3,4* - I will praise the name of Jehovah, give glory to our God alone! He is a rock, His works are perfect; for all that He does is right.

3. *5 Moses 32:15* - "But when Jezurun was fat, he became overconfident ... He let go the God who made him. He despised the rock of his salvation.

4. *5 Moses 32:18* - You have left your rock, which begat you, out of your consideration, and you have forgotten the God who made you.

5. *5 Moses 32:30* - How could one persecute thousands, and how could two flee ten thousand? Had their rock not sold them, and Jehovah not given them to the enemy!

6. *5 Moses 32:37* - And they will say, "Where are their gods, the rock in which they trusted?

7. *2 Samuel 22:2* - David said, Jehovah is my rock and my castle, and my deliverer.

8. *Psalm 18:3* - Jehovah is my rock, my castle, my deliverer, my God, my shelter in which I trust, my shield and my horn of salvation and protection.

9. *Psalm 31:3,4*: (Jehovah) Be to me a strong rock and a castle, that thou mayest help me. For You are my rock and my castle, for Thy name's sake lead me and guide me!

10. *Psalm 42:10* - I say to God my rock, Why have you forgotten me? Why must I go so sadly under the pressure of my enemy?

11. *Psalm 62:8* - With God is my salvation, my glory, (He is) the rock of my power, my confidence is in God.

12. *Psalm 71:3* - Be to me a strong shelter of refuge, where I can always flee; You have promised to help me, for You are my rock and my fortress.

13. *Psalm 27:5* - Jehovah covers me in His tabernacle on the day of calamity, hiding me under the protection of His tent, and lifts me up on the rock.

14. *Psalm 40:3* - Jehovah drew me out of the pit of destruction and out of the mud of the kings, and set my feet on a rock and secured my steps with it.

15. *Psalm 61:3* - I call unto thee the Gentiles on earth, when my heart is in fear that thou would lead me up to a high rock.

16. *Isaiah 17:10* - Because thou hast forgotten the God of thy salvation, and hast not remembered the rock of thy strength. Therefore you plant strange crops, and plant foreign plantings.

17. *Isaiah 26:4* - Trust in Jehovah forever; for Jehovah is an eternal rock.

18. *Matthew 16:15,18* - I asked My disciples who they thought I was, and Simon answered: "You are Christ, the Son of the living God". Then I replied and said to him, Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah! For flesh and blood did not reveal this to you, but My Father in heaven. And I tell you also: you are Peter (or rock) and on this rock I will build My church (ecclesia), and the gates of hell shall not overpower it.

19. The truth is called a rock in spiritual language, and that God is meant by it, you can see from the speech that I gave at the Last Supper, in which the verse occurs:

20. I Jesus am (through My commandments, teachings and way of life) the way to eternal life, because I am the truth (Myself or God) and (therefore I Myself) eternal life.

21. Therefore the prophet Isaiah wrote (*Is 8:14; Matt 9:33*) about Me: "Behold, I lay in Zion a stone of iniquity and a rock of scandal; but whosoever believes in Him (the rock of scandal for the ungodly) shall not be ashamed.

22. Because through Me, Peter learned the truth about My origin as love in his heart, I was the rock or the truth in which he believed, and therefore Peter was only the bearer of the truth, but not the truth himself, but a rock of true faith, a witness of Me, the eternal truth (*Dan 4:34*). Therefore I said then: that I would build My faith-community on this rock, as the eternal truth; but not on Peter, who denied Me three times in a row in the court of Caiaphas, who later looked at John with envy when I gave him the sheep to feed and was not in the truth for the third time in Antioch (*Gal 2:14*). Therefore the speech did not say that I would build my faith-community of truth on him [as person], but on Myself!

29. Jesus' title of 'Lord'

1. I am often called "Lord" in the Testaments. The meaning of this name in My time was a high title given to God and the kings or any other superior person.

2. This is why, when Mary came to visit Elisabeth, she welcomed her with the following words: "Why is this happening to me, that the mother of my Lord (Luke 1:43) may come to me?

30. Jesus, the Light of the World

I said: I am the light of the world. But this saying means that Jesus, because love and wisdom were united in one person, with divine meaning being: I am the light of the divine flame of love, which through your wisdom is the light that enlightens the world of darkness and leads it to the knowledge of truth.

31. Jesus Christ, the First-born of Creation

1. This designation, that I am Jesus Christ the firstborn before all creation, means that I am Jesus as man, the first of all children of God, and that I was already there earlier as wisdom of God, when God created the world.

2. People as children of God consist of love, wisdom and power. But that is to be understood in this way: Since in God, their Father, there is the love of creation, the wisdom of thought, and the omnipotence to bring about, these qualities of the Father-God are also inherent in His children.

32. The third article of Faith

Birth and life story of Jesus.
The third article of faith reads: Who is received by the Holy Spirit, born of Mary the Virgin

1. Although I was usually called Son of God, I never had a father, for the Father was My Love in My Heart, and His Son was the Wisdom of My Love in the head of the Soul of the Father, since I, as the Father's Son, was, am, and eternally will be his Wisdom, and at the same time his united Soul.

2. My carnal conception in Mary happened through the Holy Spirit. This is to be understood in this way: Since the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father and the Son, therefore the love and wisdom in God were one in the fact that in the body of Mary, the material shell or body of Jehovah would be formed, and thus the word [was put] to action, by which the word began to take effect, whereby now My material body, as the evangelists said: "What is in her (in Mary), this is created by the Holy Spirit (Matt 1:20; Luke 1:35).

3. If you want to know exactly whether Mary was my mother or not, I will explain the matter thoroughly to you: What man does not make out of himself, he is not the producer of; if this is done by a foreign power, he cannot say that he has produced it; Mother (from the primordial German matar, moutar, mueter and finally twisted into mother) means 'producer' and that was not her, because she had no man, but she was only a tool in My hand, but the tool is not the master or manufacturer, so Mary was strictly speaking only the mother of My flesh-body, but no mother, even less Mother of God.

4. In the future kingdom of love also no fleshly procreation will take place and still no woman will be able to receive without man. Let this My explanation enlighten you - so that you may grasp the truth and not according to human statutes consider Mary as Mother of God and place her higher than it is in reality.

5. Mary came from the seed of David and was one of the 7 virgins who lived in the world at that time from the royal house of David (youth story of Jesus ChtS. No. IX ch 2:5-8; Luke 1:31-33,37; 2:4).

6. After Mary was destined by My divine love to be the earthly birth-mother, I sent the arch-father Jared as Archangel Gabriel and announced to her that she had been chosen by Me to become the birthing mother of the Messiah, that she would thus become pregnant and give birth to a child whom she should call Jesus (Luke 1:28-35; ChtS. IX 3, 1-12.).

7. Mary was afraid and said to the angel: 'How will this happen since I do not know a man? Then the angel answered her, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you and the power of the Most High will overshadow you, therefore the Holy One who is to be born of you, will be called the Son of God

(Luke 1:30-35; ChtS. IX. 3, 7-12).

8. And the angel said: 'The power of the Most High shall overshadow thee.' But the Most High is God, so this was the divine power, which is called the Holy Spirit here. But the apostle Paul says that I am Jesus Christ the divine power (1Cor 1:24), so was I, Jesus Myself, the One who was forming in Mary My own human body - because no one else but the divine power, or omnipotence, was to do this, and since this is called the Holy Spirit which goes out from Father and Son,(ChtS. 71) it is therefore evident that I was neither the Son of God, nor Mary, because I Myself was My Body and this through My will-power in God; therefore with the same power, through which the innumerable worlds as suns, planets and stars and also angels, spirits and men have been created and will be created.

9. You must not therefore call Mary the Mother of God, for with this name you make her the wife of God the Father, and therefore you see her in this high divine rank as a goddess, as the wife of a king is called a queen, and this is a gross false doctrine which the Roman Church has invented.

10. Mary is called mother of My body, but she was not even that, but only the surrogate mother of it. If you have understood this correctly, then you will first correctly grasp My explanation in the book "*Christ and the Bible*" p. 192 and in the "*Prayer Book*" chap. 160,7 ff.

11. So Joseph, Mary's husband, was not My father, as the ignorant people of that time, who did not know My origin, thought him to be (ChtS. IX Ch. 11, verses 26-32 - Jesus was about thirty years old when He began to teach and was thought to be a son of Joseph, who was a son of Jacob Eli – Luke 3:23; Matt 1:16), but only My Self-appointed foster-father, and who therefore married Mary from the temple as a husband, so that he may be regarded as the father of the child, otherwise Mary would have been stoned.

12. My birth took place on 7 January between 12 noon and 10 minutes past in the morning, Bethlehem time (*Announcements 1: 53*), in a mountain cave, 15 minutes outside the city of Bethlehem, which was used by local shepherds not as a sheep or livestock-stable, but as a refuge in great heat to rest in the cool shade.

13. This cave still exists, but was externally buried by an earthquake in the year 804, so that nowadays nobody knows about it's existence anymore. With the visible beginning of the new kingdom of love, I will restore it as it once was, because then the truth will rule!

14. Then My birth was announced:

1. In the year 4151 on 17 December by a star, to three wise astronomists in Persia. (Matt 2:2; ChtS. XI. Chap. 28-32)

2. By an angel on January 7, early at night to the shepherds. (Luke 2:9)

3. By Simeon and Hanna on January 15 in the temple of Jerusalem to the people. (Luke 2:25-38)

4. By the wise men of Persia on 16 January to King Herod and the scribes in Jerusalem. (Matt 2:2,4,5)

15. After the Announcement of My birth, the following happened:

1. The shepherds hastily came to see and worship the newly-born Messiah. (ChtS. XI, ch. 18, 32ff; Luke 2:9-20)

2. I was circumcised on 15 January, the eighth day after My birth, according to the prescriptions of the Old Testament, named Jesus, and Mary was cleansed and brought into

the temple at the same time. (*Announcements 1, 53;* Luke 2:21-24)

3. On 17 January in the morning, the three wise men from Persia came with their caravan to the mountain cave, went to worship the child and sacrificed gold, frankincense and myrrh to Him according to oriental custom as a gift to a king. (ChtS. IX., chapter 30; *Announcements*. 1:54; Matt 2:11)

4. I escaped early on January 19 because of the cruelty of Herod, who wanted to kill Me, with My foster parents Mary, Joseph and Joseph's five sons from the first marriage: Joel, Joses, Simeon, Judah and Jacob by fleeing to Ostracine in Egypt. (ChtS. IX., chapters 34 and 41. 42; *Announcements*. 1, 54; Matt 2:11)

5. One hour after My flight from Bethlehem the henchmen of Herod came and murdered all children up to two years old in the city and it's surroundings because Herod believed to find Me, the new King of the Jews, among them. (ChtS. IX., ch. 41. ; *Announcements*. 1,54)

6. After a stay of nearly three years, I returned from Egypt to Nazareth on November 13, two years after the death of Herod, with the family of Joseph, and was brought up there. (ChtS. IX., ch. 256. 257; *Announcements*. 1, 55; Matt 2:19-23)

33. Jesus' Twelfth Year

The most remarkable things to know about My youth, are the following:

1. That when I was twelve years old, I came for the first time with My foster parents to Jerusalem for Passover.

2. That I stayed behind in Jerusalem, but after three days I was found by the foster parents in the temple, where I Myself went among the scribes, talked with them about the coming of the Messiah, then announced Myself as the Messiah and acted towards the scribes in such a way that all were most astonished about Me. (ChtS. X.; Luke 2:41-50)

3. that I have returned again to Nazareth and stayed there

4. That I have been obedient to My foster parents.

5. That I grew in age and wisdom, love and esteem in the house of Joseph and in known circles. (Father's statement to Schumi; ChtS. IX., ch. 257. 298; Luke 2:51,52)

34. Ministry-years 30-33

1. The most noteworthy things to know about Me before I took up My teaching assignment, are:

1. I went into the desert of Bethabara on the banks of the Jordan River on April 21 in My 30th year and fasted for 40 days until June 1. Here I was plagued by hunger, and therefore three times by the Satan of the flesh, who tried the lust in the body, but which I had steadfastly overcome, where I was then served by the angels of My own life-force and humble virtue. (Father's statement to Schumi; read *Announcements*. 1, 55. 56)

2. I was baptized by John on June 1 in the Jordan River over My head. (original German túpa,

i.e. dive, from which the High German 'baptism' was derived)

3. The Holy Spirit of God came as a white cloud, similar to the shape of a dove, visible over Me and stayed above Me, which I, since I Myself was God, gave as a sign of recognition that I was the Messiah, who was I Myself, as the Spirit of God in man, to whom John previously referred through the inner prophetic word (Father's Enlightenment to Schumi, - Matt 3:13,16; but 14,15 and 17 is an error, a false, fictional tradition, which Luke recorded in the year 54, that is 14 years after John's death; verse 17 appears everywhere confused with the Tabor scene. Only the above revelation of the Father Himself, is correct), that the one over whom this sign will come and visibly remain, is the Messiah.

4. On June 2nd, John saw Me walking on the banks of the Jordan River and he said to his listeners that I was the Lamb of God who bears the sins of the world. (John 1:29-36; - Father 's Word)

5. On June 2nd, in My 30th Year, I took up My teaching assignment. (*Father's Word*; - Luke 3:23; John 1:35-40)

2. After I took up My teaching assignment, the most important things to remember are these:

1. I accepted disciples from June 2 to August 15, from whom I later chose twelve apostles. (John 1:37-45; Luke 5:13)

2. I traveled in My Fatherland Palestine and in the neighbouring countries from one place to another. (Ev. J.Chr. 10 volumes; ChtS. No. 23)

3. I preached the gospel of the kingdom of God through a life of repentance (Ev. J.Chr. 10 volumes; New Testament), revealed truths about divine secrets man should believe, and taught the virtues of love for God and neighbour (Matt 22:37-40), humility (Sermon on the Mount: Matt ch 5,6,7, and Ev. J.Chr. 10 volumes), mercy, patience, purity of heart, and reconciling brotherly love.

4. I rebuked unbelief and abhorred the vices of the people; refuted the errors of faith of the Jews, scribes, and Pharisees. (*New Testament* in different places; *Ev J.Chr*. in different places of the 10 volumes)

5. I affirmed My teachings and testimonies of the Holy Scriptures through miracles and through examples from My own life.

6. I've done good everywhere, especially healing the sick.

7. I foretold future events.

3. In consideration of these facts, one would think that all the people believed in Me, yet it was not so. Many believed in Me, but the chief priests, scribes and Pharisees did not believe, but hated Me and tried to catch Me with all kinds of insidious questions, to surrender to the court and kill Me, because My teaching did not correspond to them, but illuminated them for what they were.

35. The Fourth Article of Faith

The Passion of Jesus. The fourth article of faith is: Suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, died, and was buried.

1. My ministry was over, there was still one last thing to be done, namely to endure the suffering announced by the prophets in order to seal My mission as Redeemer of original sin (1 Moses 3:15; Heb 9:15).

2. My accusers were the chief priests, the scribes and the elders of the people. (ChtS. 21; *The story of the suffering of the evangelists*) And so I suffered under Pontius Pilate, the governor of the Roman emperor Tiberius. (ChtS. 21; Matt 26 and 27; Mark 14 and 15; Luke 22 and 23; John 18 and 19)

3. But I was accused out of mere hatred and envy - under the pretext as if I were a blasphemer, Sabbath desecrator and seducer and agitator of the people against the emperor and temple. (ChtS. 21 and 71)

4. On the charge of the high council of the temple, Pontius Pilate raised the objections that I don't belong under his jurisdiction, then that he - according to the Roman right - find nothing illegal about Me; on top of this came the dream of his wife Túlia Innocentia, to which he gave much consideration and wanted to release Me as innocent, he wanted to swop Me with the robber-murderer Barabas, to save Me, but it did not succeed; yes, even the terrible flogging, which left Me blue from blows and wounds, torn in body and blood-drenched, could not satisfy the animalistic blood-thirst of the tearing tigers in human form. With impetuosity they now demanded My crucifixion and finally threatened Pilate, if he would not let Me be crucified, that they would accuse him as enemy of the emperor in Rome, whereupon he was frightened and gave in, although with great unwillingness.

5. The cross on which I was crucified was considered by the Jews and Gentiles to be a shame, like the gallows today, so that was the most shameful punishment. (ChtS. 21) The crucifixion took place on a small hill next to the city of Jerusalem, which was called Golgotha in Celtic and Hebrew, Calvaria in Latin, but Schädelstätte [the site of the skull] in German.

6. Many people believe that I as God or advanced spirit-man did not suffer pain. But this was not the case, but as man I could and had to suffer to achieve redemption from original sin, as God, of course, I could not suffer.

7. But I have suffered both mentally and physically. In My soul, I suffered great sadness, ("Now My soul is grieved": John 12:27 is wrong [saying 'troubled'] in Matt 26:38 and after the Enlightenment in the magazine "*The Love*" 1:137) in the Garden of Gethsemane but so great was the fear of suffering, which I clairvoyantly foresaw in My spirit, that I sweated blood. Physically I suffered the beatings and maltreatments of the Emperor's henchmen from Gethsemane, until the dispatch to Pontius Pilate; but in Pontius Pilate's court, the bloody flagellation and the shameful crowning with the crown of thorns; after the conviction, I suffered great pain by carrying the heavy cross on My battered body, powerless due to blood-loss, finally the extremely painful wounds on the cross until My death. (ChtS. 21 Passion Story). I have also suffered all sorts of blasphemies, slander, contempt, mockery and various other indignities since I was interrogated by the high priest Caiaphas up to My death. (Described in the Passion Story ChtS. No. 21 and partly by the evangelists)

8. The suffering on the cross lasted two and a half hours, from three to five thirty in the afternoon. Joseph of Arimathea and the chief priest Nicodemus then buried My body in a new tomb carved into the rock, in which no one had yet been laid. (ChtS. 21)

9. But the Godhead did not separate from the soul after My bodily death because My human soul was the wisdom of God Himself (1 Cor 1:24) and therefore the Godhead of Christ could not separate from His soul.

36. The Fifth Article of Faith

Christ's ascent into limbo - and His resurrection on the third day.
The fifth article of faith is: 'Ascended to limbo, resurrected from the dead on the third day.'

1. My journey to hell consisted in delighting the souls who were waiting for Me by stepping among them in heavenly transfiguration and announcing My redemption on the cross as fulfilled (end of the way of suffering in the *Prayer Book*). The souls were not in the underworld, but in the heights of the firmament, and their (pre)hell was merely the unfulfilled desire to be able to reach their divine Father as children, hence a limbo, otherwise called the prophetic heaven, where pure souls dwelt as blessed and waited for redemption from original sin. That Samuel had to come up from the underworld, is a wrong assumption. (Read in *"Love"* 1, p. 26)

2. If the 'eternal damnation' of the Christian churches were to be understood that man is to remain eternally damned, what would I then have had to do in hell? Because the doctrine of being eternally damned is a false doctrine, it contradicts itself through My journey to hell.

3. Since I, Jesus, have ascended with My divine spirit and it's divine soul into limbo, the teaching that the soul lives on after death and that everyone is responsible for everything done in earthly life, is justified.

4. But I ascended into limbo so that I might announce My victory over Satan and death to the deceased who waited for Me since Adam until death on the cross - that the original sin once committed by them in the spirit of Adam, was erased and the way to the Father was levelled again.

5. The victory over Satan means the victory over the attractions of the worldly and over the spiritual seducer, the prince of lies, Satan - who instills in men all kinds of desires and lusts for the enjoyment of the worldly, leaving him spiritually darkened.

6. But the victory over death means the victory over the sins of the world, because sin is the spiritual death of the soul.

7. But it was mainly an eternal redemption of the fathers of old and of the whole human race, coming from Adam and Eve, from original sin, which was called the sin of the first covenant, as Peter announced in the Epistle to the Hebrews, and Paul to the Romans; therefore I was called by John the Baptist, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world (John 1:29). With this, the passages from the prophets of the first covenant were also fulfilled, like David (Ps. 68:19) said: "You rose up and led captives (through original sin) with you; (since they accompanied Me from then on everywhere as their heavenly Father in triumphal procession). Another passage through Zacharia 9:11 - "You will release your prisoners (through original sin) in the blood of your (new) covenant.

8. There were the fathers of old, also called patriarchs, then the prophets and various other pious people who died before I went to limbo.

9. King David (Ps. 6:9,10) said 1076 years prior to the redemption from limbo: "My heart rejoices and my soul rejoices, my flesh also rests carefree. For you (Jehovah) will not leave my soul in (pre-)hell.

10. The reason for My resurrection after the death of My fleshly body, is the following:

a) Because the passages of the prophets and My own prophecies had to be fulfilled:

b) King David: You Jehovah will not let your beloved see corruption (Ps 16:10).

c) Hosea: I want to redeem them from (pre-) hell and save them from (spiritual) death (original

sin). Death, I (Jehovah in Jesus) want to be a poison to you; Hell, I want to be your destroyer. (Hosea 13:14)

d) I, Jesus, said to the Jews at the cleansing of the temple (John 2:19-21): "If you break this temple, I will raise it up again in three days", when I spoke of the temple of My body.

e) So I also said according to the evangelists Matthew (Matt 12:22- 40) and Luke (Luke 13:31-33) that I will rise again on the third day.

f) To give the world an irrefutable proof of the Truth of My Teaching and the Divinity of My Person, as Paul wrote:

g) If Christ had not risen from the dead, it follows that our preaching would be in vain, and your faith in vain. (1Cor 15:14)

h) To strengthen man's hope and to prove that death is overcome by man's sinlessness, since death is only the result of sin. Therefore Paul wrote:

i) But now Christ is risen from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep; for through one man (sin: Adam) death came, and through one man (sinless: Jesus) is the resurrection from the dead. (1 Cor 15:20,21)

11. My resurrection took place on 27 March at 3 a.m.

12. I rose from the dead by My own power, immortal and glorious as overcomer of death and the devil, as I said at the Last Supper:

j) That is why the Father loves Me, because I give My life to take it again. No one takes it from Me, but I give it out of Myself; I have the power to take it again. (John 10:17,18)

k) Peter said in the Epistle to the Hebrews: So that through death (for original sin) Jesus might take away the power of the one who had the power of death, that is, the devil. (Hebr 2:14)

37. The Sixth Article of Faith

Ascension and Judicial office of Christ.
The sixth article of faith: Ascended into heaven, sits at the right hand of God, the Almighty Father.

1. My ascension (Announcement 1:57; Luke 24:50,51) took place on the fortieth day after My resurrection, that is on May 7, in the presence of My disciples and friends, of whom there were 670, on the Mount of Olives. (Acts 1:9; 1Cor 16:6)

2. Paul wrote about this to the Colossians: "If you have now risen (spiritually) with Christ (by leaving the worldly), seek what is above, where Christ is, who sits at the right hand of God. (Col 3:1)

3. 'Jesus sits at the right hand of God', means that I am in possession of the highest or divine power and glory over all things in heaven and on earth, as I said on the day of Ascension:

4. "All power is given to Me in heaven and on earth." (Matt 28:18 - Cf. ChtS. 37:53)

38. The Seventh Artcle of Faith

The Last Judgment of Jesus Christ.
The seventh article of faith is: From whence He will come to judge the living and the dead.

1. This prophecy is now fulfilled; for the time of the Last Judgment has already come, because men have forgotten God, deny Him and sin against all the commandments of God.

2. My rebirth took place in the clouds of heaven, which is My Father-Words, through which I speak in My own person, but which cover My person and man only hear My words but does not see Me; furthermore, I come with great power of natural, elemental and worldly events and in great glory of My children following Me. (Matt 24:30; 26:64)

3. I come to judge the world and to judge the living and the dead, as Peter reports in the Acts of the Apostles (Acts 10:42). The living are the righteous, the dead are the sinners.

4. I will first teach mankind what is good and bad, and then I will judge them according to their life and action in light of this teaching, whereby I will reward those who have accepted and obeyed the teaching with eternal life; the others who fail to meet the preset requirements of life and action according to the teaching, I will punish with the death of the body and right after, in the hereafter (2 Cor 5:10; Matt 25:46 is only to be understood spiritually, not materially) because they are not suitable for the new heavenly kingdom of love on earth.

39. The Eighth Article of Faith

Faith in the Holy Spirit.
So the eighth article of faith is: I believe in the Holy Spirit

1. The Holy Spirit is the Willpower of God to put into work all that Love and Wisdom in God decided to accomplish.

2. In order to understand the activity of the Holy Spirit in God, one has to compare Him with the nerve-spirit in man, which is also the working will-power of man, which his love and wisdom have decided to put into action.

3. The Holy Spirit simultaneously proceeds from the Father and the Son, because the Father is one with the Son, or: Love and Wisdom are united in God.

4. The Holy Spirit sanctifies man through His grace:

a) that man may repent for his sins (Rom 1:4).

b) that he would be able to do the will of God (Philippians 2:13),

c) He sanctifies him through the gifts and graces of the so-called "rebirth of the Spirit", which is the baptism by fire of the Holy Spirit of which John the Baptist spoke and with which the disciples were also baptized and graced at Pentecost. (1 Cor 12; ChtS. 37:37)

5. The graces and gifts in rebirth are the following:

- The teaching gift of wisdom
- The teaching gift of science
- The power-gift of a rock-solid faith
- The power-gift to heal the sick
- The gift of working miracles
- The gift of prediction, or prophecy
- The gift of discernment of spirits
- The gift of languages
- The gift of interpretation of the Holy Scriptures
- The power-gift of the word
- The power-gift of prayer
- The power-gift of will-power
- The gift to teach others
- The gift of eloquence
- The gifts of clairvoyance, clairaudience and being empathic
- The grace of power to cast out evil spirits (devils)
- The grace that poisons is harmless
- The inner Word
- The gift of spiritual powers
- The gift of virtues
- The grace and gift of love, joy and bliss/delight
- The grace of patience and inner peace
- The grace of humility
- The grace of sinlessness (ChtS 37:37)

40. The Ninth Article of Faith

The ninth article of faith is:
The Holy church of Christ, Community of the Blessed

1. As there is only one God in Christ, so there can only be one true church in Christ, and if it is not in the heart of men where My Spirit dwells, it is nowhere, because Christ's Spirit, called the Holy Spirit (see "*Christ and the Bible*" chapter 18 "Spirit of God in man") and living God, lives only in the heart of loving men and works through them.

2. Therefore, the true and sole salvational church in Godly sense, is a pure human heart that loves God above all and the neighbour as he loves himself, for such a heart is the true and holy church of Christ.

3. The proofs that the holy church of Christ is only a human heart rich in love, are founded in My divine facts, which are the mystery of God's love for men revealed through Me - Christ - in relation to their descent, their spiritualization and their deification, about which the following proofs illuminate the truth of the facts:

a) I am the spiritual life of the world, therefore nobody is to seek God in the dead matter of the churches built by men, because life can only bring forth life again according to the spirit.

b) As for the apostolic letter of Paul written to the Corinthians and Romans, God dwells only in the hearts of His children.

c) I am holy according to My love, which is the Primordial Light of infinity and only this

Primordial Light is the primordial central Sun of all the spiritual suns of My children.

d) Because I dwell in the absolute state in this primordial light, and because I am exceedingly holy and therefore unapproachable (1 Tim 6:16) and from there My love for the world of My children flows.

e) Because out of this primordial light - which is the infinite love of God for My children - through Me as Jesus, came the redemption from original sin (Paul to the Ephesians 5:25,27): Christ loved the church and gave Himself for them through suffering and death - to sanctify and purify them (from original sin), that He might present them to Himself as a church that that have no stains or wrinkles or anything like that, but that it may be holy and immaculate. Also the sins that was committed during the Old Testament [times], through the suffering and death on Golgotha, bringing simultaneously the salvation unto childhood of God to men.

41. What does God say, how do people build temples of idols, today called churches?

1. I had it written down by the prophet Hosea that people build idol temples decorated with all sorts of so-called images and statues of saints, which today are called "churches", when they forget about God (Hosea 8:14; More details in the book *"The Holy Trinity"*, 1st edition p. 9:10; 27:11-18)

2. If Christians build such idolatrous churches and pray in them according to the priestly doctrine, they fall into Christian paganism, because they sing to others than the Only Holy One, (John the Evangelist heard the blessed in heaven singing like this: … Lord God! Sovereign ... King of the nations ... You alone are holy - Rev. 15:4 - If God alone is holy, then of course there are no other saints) not a lot of false saints who worship the greedy priests as saints, which means as much as being arbitrary gods and [that is] against the first commandment of God (Thou shalt have no other gods beside Me (Ex. 20:3)), so that the gullible may offer sacrifices to the Church for it.

3. I therefore said through Hosea that people build temples of idols for themselves when they forget God, because it was and is strictly forbidden by Me through Moses to place any other pictures and statues beside Me (You shall have no other gods (which means saints) beside Me). Thou shalt not make for thyself a carving, or any image of what is in heaven above, and what is on earth [and] beneath the earth. Thou shalt not worship them; ... for I, Jehovah thy God, who visit the iniquity of the fathers against the children to the third and fourth generation. (2 Moses 20:3-5) and to ask them for help and pray to them, as is done in the Roman Catholic churches.

42. Churches and Ceremonies

1. Church ceremonies are Christian paganism because I, Christ as God, did not introduce any ceremonies in My teaching, but in later Christian centuries, the Roman Church arbitrarily and gradually transferred and introduced pagan ceremonies from the Old and New Testaments into Christianity against My divine will.

2. I have never commanded, as I said before, to build temples or churches, because I dwell in no temple or church, but only in human hearts.

3. The question is: What about Jehovah's statement that the son of David was to build him a house of prayer?

4. This statement was misunderstood, because I as Jehovah did not mean a material, but a spiritual house of prayer in the hearts of people.

5. What did I want to say to David through the prophet Nathan (2 Sam 7:12-16) through the following words of prophecy [in verse] 12: When your time (of life) is finished, and thou lieest with thy fathers (dead in the flesh), I will raise up thy seed after thee, and he that shall come out of thy body, I will confirm his kingdom unto him. (?)

6. By this I meant that not Solomon was to build me a house of prayer, but that this offspring of David would in future be awakened from David's seed (which later was Mary).

7. It follows from this, because from a rotten flesh, which lies in the tomb among the dead, no offspring can be awakened according to human concepts; and because Solomon at the time when his father died, was already an 38 year old man (communication of the father Jesus on 21.1.1903 to Schumi). Thus the prophecy cannot possibly be related to Solomon, who ascended the throne immediately after his father's death.

8. The 13th verse of this prophecy reads: "He shall build a house for My name, and I will confirm the throne of his kingdom for ever!"

9. The meaning of this verse is to be interpreted as follows: If this prophecy had meant David's or Solomon's worldly royal throne, then Jehovah's promise that He would confirm his royal seat forever would be a lie, because the worldly throne of the House of David had already disappeared from the world long before the coming of the Messiah.

10. Verse 14 says, "I will be His Father and He shall be My Son," saying that this descendant of David will not be the Son of David, but the Son of God, since Jehovah, not David, will be His actual Father. This clarifies the meaning of the prophecy that the prophesied descendant of David is none other than Jesus Christ, God who became a man Himself, named after His divine wisdom (1 Cor 1:24) "Son of God".

11. How should My promise be understood in verses 12 and 13, where it says that Jehovah wants to confirm the throne of the kingdom of Jesus forever?

12. I, Jesus, am called already as a newborn child, a prince of peace. (Is 9:5) And before Pilate, I openly said that I am a king, but My kingdom is not of this world. (John 18:36,37) Thus the promise of Jehovah means that He will forever confirm to Jesus, the Son of David, His spiritual throne of peace in the hearts of men.

13. Verse 16 says: "But your house shall stand for ever before you, and your throne shall stand for ever".

14. Because David's worldly royal throne was still written in the Old Testament, it could not possibly have been meant this way, but the spiritual throne of the Son of David, Jesus Christ, as the spiritual prince of peace for humanity. Since I, Jesus, am a scion of the house of David, the house and throne of David will continue spiritually in Jesus Jehovah Zebaoth forever.

15. Only I, Jesus, as this son of David named in the prophecy, have never said to build or to construct a house of prayer. For I, Jesus, as spiritual representative of the spiritual throne of David, was called to build a spiritual throne in the heart of men, a dwelling of love for God and neighbour, through My divine teaching of love, and this house of love of God in the heart of men I built through the teaching of love which I presented and taught.

16. From the discussed prophecy it follows that it is historically proven from My life as Jesus, that God never ordered to build a prayer house of wood or stone, but that Solomon had built the temple in Jerusalem out of misunderstanding of the literal sense of the prophecy. (ChtS. 37:77; Read about it

also *Christ and the Church*)

17. Since I did not say to build a church, shall there not be any more?

18. Oh yes, it can already be built, but only as a meeting place for the faithful, but without altars and pictures and statues, depicting so-called 'saints'. For as a meeting place it should only serve the divine-spiritual purposes which are: To preach, to take a meal of love and to discuss spiritual matters publicly and freely and to be instructed. (*Holy Trinity* p. 78)

19. For the true Church of Christ can be recognized from seven features and these are:

- **Love** unto God and neighbour
- **Patience** towards the weaknesses, mistakes and errors of one's neighbour
- **Mercy** towards the poor and needy
- A **chaste** way of life in thoughts, words and deeds
- The cultivation of **peace** with every human being
- **Selflessness** in the great need of the neighbour

20. The true church of Christ is also called the " congregation of Christ ", and this is the communion and unity of the confessors of faith according to My true teaching, which is otherwise called 'Christian Theosophy'.

21. The holy church of Christ is a world-wide church, because I am it's founder, a spiritual King of the world, and I Myself said to My disciples: 'Go into the whole world and preach the gospel of the kingdom of God to all people'.

22. The true church is holy:

- because I, their founder, Jesus Christ, am the Holy Spirit of God
- because My teaching is the Wisdom of God
- because it sanctifies the faithful followers of the doctrine
- because it is inviolable in it's purity of principles.
- because the propagators of this teaching are the true servants of God, (Paul wrote to the Ephesians (2:20): "You are built on the foundation of the prophets and apostles, while Jesus Christ Himself is the chief cornerstone)
- because it is eternal, like I, it's founder, and
- because it makes men children of God, and therefore, gods.

23. My true doctrine of Christ differs from that of Christian churches and sects, in that in churches and sects everywhere, there are differences in the interpretation of Holy Scripture; and in doctrine [there are] different views which contradict each other because there are so many leaders as there are Christian churches and sects, and because, according to his opinion, each one teaches and represents the church or sect subject to him, while in the true teaching of Christ Jesus, I, Christ Myself, am the Teacher and Head of the Church and Community (Ephesians 5:23), which I thereby teach and guide through My own Word and therefore the unity of faith reigns in the true teaching of Christ.

24. The difference between the religion of Christian churches and sects and the authentic doctrine of Christ, is also that the first [mentioned] fight, slander and persecute one another with great vigour, while in the authentic religion of Christ, discord and division can and must never arise if confessors adhere to the rule, that no one may bring up and hold a new opinion or teaching unless it was dictated by Myself, Christ; since according to Matthew chapter 23:10, there is only one Teacher and He is Christ, and because Christian Theosophy does not recognize a visible, worldly head of faith, but I, Jesus Christ Myself is head of the church, who teaches and guides it through My own word.

25. My order to Peter: 'Feed My lambs, feed My sheep', means that Peter shall teach and guide the young and old people; for My lambs and sheep are children and adults.

26. But with this no preference was given to Peter over other fellow apostles; Peter was appointed head of the apostles and the congregation, but the exact same order was given to Peter, which was later given to all apostles together with Peter at the Mount of Olives at the ascension to heaven: 'Go among all nations and teach them My Gospel and initiate them into the love of the Father, into the wisdom teaching of the Son and through the power of the Holy Spirit to a firm faith'.

27. The evidence demonstrating that Peter have not been appointed head of the apostles and the church with the words: 'Feed My lambs, feed My sheep!' and the church, are the following:

a) My disciples and apostles were not lambs (that is children or boys), but powerful men, some were aged; they were also not sheep, because the sheep must have a shepherd who feeds them, but My disciples were shepherds themselves, because [they were] trained men in the religion of Christ through Me, Jesus, Myself.

b) That Peter was not the head of the church is also shown by the fact that in the year 51, Paul spoke of three pillars of the church in Jerusalem: John, Jacob and Peter, but not of a singular pillar or of Peter as the head.

c) Furthermore, Paul was not appointed as an apostle by Peter, on the contrary, Peter was even very sharply reprimanded by Paul in Antioch that he himself does not hold what he demands others to keep, and finally Paul appeared against all apostles at the first religious assembly in the year 51, criticized them sharply and taught them that their Judeo-christianity out of paganism, is a false doctrine.

28. It follows from this that I have never made Peter the head of the religious community and of the apostles. Regarding the keys of Peter, read under the topic 'sins'.

29. The truth as to whether a hitherto unknown teaching is genuine or given by Me, the Father Jesus, can be recognized by when, on humble request for clarification of the truth - wherever one inquires of a reliable writer of God - I, Jesus Myself declare a fact to be true and coming from Me.

30. Incidentally, in Christian Theosophy there are also leaders of the congregation of the confessors of this faith, namely the born-again, or those who have come close to the rebirth, whom God Himself designates as leaders of the brethren, so that the brothers can always turn to their leader and question him if they don't know whether they themselves understand correctly about one thing or another. But I, the Father Jesus Myself, am the main leader, because also the established leader has to get the explanation from Me about questionable things.

31. Therefore, when interpreting My Father-words, where they contain a spiritual meaning, you are to turn to Me through a medium, since only I through My Holy Spirit can interpret these, and dictating through My writing mediums, and have them published for the general knowledge of truth (ChtS. 64, 219; - 37; 75).

32. My true church and congregation is built on the rock-solid belief that it is the truth, which is why I called Simon son of Jonah, a rock, Peter or Cephas, because Simon son of Jonah had faith in the truth that I, Jesus, am the Son of God and the promised Messiah.

33. And I said unto Peter, Simon son of Jonah, I tell you: You are rock (Hebrew: Cephas, Latin: Peter) and on this rock I will build My church and the gates of hell will not overpower them. (Matt 16:17,18)

34. The gates of hell mentioned here are those people who fight the true church of Christ in their spiritual eclipse, slander it, denigrate it and persecute it in word and deed.

35. The question is: In which house of prayer should man pray, who is the sacrificial priest, and where does God dwell?

36. Man should go to whatever place he wants and likes - but should always pray in the quiet little chamber of his heart; because:

a) the human body is a living temple of God, (read in the chapters about the temple of God and the holy of holies)

b) the soul is the true sacrificial priest in that it has to offer itself daily to it's God through life repentance, through self-denial before the world and renunciation of the joys of the world in all that it thinks, desires, speaks and does; and

c) since the Most Holy One, or God Himself, dwells as the Spirit of God in the heart of the soul, man, out of the love of his heart, has God in spirit; and through activity in charity, worship in truth.

43. The Community of the Blessed

1. Orthodox Christians have fellowship with the blessed in that they all have one faith which teaches and guides them to practice peaceful unity, to love God and neighbour, in humility, patience, mercy and purity of life.

2. The believers on earth still have this fellowship among themselves, in that they pray for the conversion of all men and do works pleasing to God; that they seek to lead their fellow men to the truth of the divine teaching through good examples, spiritual teachings and through reference to good spiritual books.

3. The value of prayer was already known to the ancients. Onias said, "This is the friend of the brethren, the people of Israel; he is the one who prays so much for the people and the whole holy city of Jerusalem, Jeremiah the prophet of God. (2 Maccab 15:14)

4. My disciple Jacob also said (James 5:16) - Pray for one another, that you may obtain salvation; for the persistent prayer of the righteous can do much.

5. Orthodox Christians are among one another the members of the church of Christ.

6. The head of the members of the church of Christ, am I, Jesus Christ Myself. Now an enlightenment will follow about the early church of Christ. I trained some of them as disciples through My own teaching, from whom 12 apostles were chosen.

7. Later, after the Pentecost-baptism, the chosen - i.e. the born-again - were given gifts of prophecy, teaching and other gifts of the Holy Spirit, whereby the various names as apostles, prophets, evangelists, shepherds and teachers were mistakenly accepted as prescribed by Me Christ, which contradicts the truth.

8. All those who were blessed [/gifted], were called to practice the truth through love of one's neighbor and to grow in the virtues in Me, because I am Christ, the head, by which the whole body is joined and connected; and that by the help of all joints, according to the effectiveness given to each member, the growth for its edifying improvement is sustained in love (Ephesians. 4:11,15,16)

9. Paul (Romans 12:4,5) wrote to the Romans: "Likewise, as we have many members in one body, but not all the members have the same and equal purpose, so we are also many [members in] one body in Christ, but among ourselves, we are only individual members of the whole".

10. Men have spiritual fellowship with the blessed and unhappy spirits of the hereafter. The blessed spirits are those who dwell in paradisiacal or heavenly regions, but the unholy spirits are those who inhabit the darkness of the hells.

11. The community connecting people with the blessed in paradise and heaven is that people turn to them with all sorts of requests to persuade them to help them in earthly needs.

12. Men are answered, but depending on what they ask for; if the request concerns earthly matters, which - when answered - would bring them spiritual damage, then it is not heard; but if it concerns spiritual well-being, then [it is] I, Jesus Myself, who hears you, but not the blessed ones. There are exceptions, but they are rare. (more about it in the *Prayer Book*)

13. But prayer to the blessed spirits is not justified before God, because the blessed have just as much their own task to raise themselves higher and higher to come closer to God as men do. But by calling on them, one disturbs them in their task and pulls them into interaction with matter and the world.

14. You should therefore not turn to anyone else than Me, Jesus Christ, because I dwell in the breast of every human being and share his suffering and joy with him, therefore also listen as a fellow participant when the request is presented seriously and correctly and is not against the salvation of the person.

15. The fellowship that you have with the unhappy spirits of hell, since the unhappy spirits of hell, who are un-spiritual men who have lived in the world, are the ones you pray for, that they would lighten up to God, that they would recognize their mistakes and sins, convert and begin to lead a spiritual life, through which they would redeem themselves from hell and come to the lower paradise for the further development of the life of the spirit.

16. Praying for the deceased is a work of charity, because especially today, all people come close to hell, since they have lived according to false - therefore anti-Christian - teachings and have thus worked their way to hell as a home in the spirit realm.

17. The salvific effect of praying for the dead was already known in the Old Testament, when Maccabees (2 Maccab 12:46) said: "It is a holy and salutary thought to pray for the dead so that they may be redeemed from their sins."

44. The Tenth Article of Faith

The forgiveness of sins.
The tenth article of faith: Forgiveness of sins .

1. The term 'sin' includes all those offences which man commits against God or his neighbour.

2. But if a man commits a crime against himself, whether it is the mutilation of the body, making it sick or by suicide, he is the same criminal before God as if he had committed the crime against his neighbour.

3. The soul commits every sin because the flesh-body is only a tool of its activity animated by it - therefore only the soul has to expiate sin because it is the one enjoying the results, and that is why it

comes into darkness and torments of hell only after the death of the body , while the body is painlessly handed over to the earth to rot.

4. However, through repentance, apology to Me and life penance, all those sins are forgiven which man commits after he began to discern what is good and what is evil, but which is not the case before the eighth year.

5. The right to forgive sins always belongs to the one who has suffered or endured insult, slander, material damage or physical injury through the sinner, since you also always have to pay to the one to whom you owe.

6. For I have not said that strangers against whom a sin was not committed and [to whom it] is of no concern, should be the legitimate mediators who have to forgive the sins committed - this is a misinterpretation of My words; For then anyone could say with the same right that he is the one entitled to forgive sins as the priests, and would have the full right to demand that they have to go to confess to him - because they are not taught and appointed by Me, Christ, but they are formed by worldly seminary schools, therefore not My disciples, nor authorized persons, nor assigned as My disciples were through the Pentecost baptism, but wolves who forcefully crept in among My sheep.

7. But the words which I spoke when I came to My disciples after the resurrection and said: "Receive the Holy Spirit! Whatever sins you will forsake, they are also forsaken in heaven, and whom you will withhold from them, they are not forgiven in heaven either." (John 29:22,23; Matt 16:19; 18:18) That means that they as brothers to all men, also have the right to forgive the injustice done without a priest, because it was in the regulation of the temple that no-one was allowed to forgive without permission of the Pharisees, so the confessing-priests are the direct successors of the Pharisees, because they, as in the temple in Jerusalem - have also seized the prerogative to themselves that they alone are the rightful ones to forgive sins.

8. The words to Peter: "I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; and what you will bind on earth shall also be bound in heaven; and what you will loosen on earth shall also be loosed in heaven"; means: What you will resent your neighbour on earth, Peter will also resent you in heaven as your irreconcilability, but what you will forgive him, will also be forgiven in heaven.

9. The proofs that My utterance is correctly interpreted only in this way, are the following:

a) Neither I nor the apostles have ever lent an ear to public confession.

b) It never happened that Peter, or the other apostles, interpreted this saying literally in the Roman way.

c) I have said and firmly ordered My disciples and apostles: You should not call yourselves rabbis, that is, teachers; for only one is your teacher (namely I Jesus), but you are all brothers (as children of God)! Neither shall ye call any of you on earth a (spiritual) father; for only one is your (spiritual) father, who is in heaven, as children of God, but be brothers and sisters to one another. - Do not let yourselves be called teachers; for one is your Master, Christ. Let the greatest of you be your servant. (Matt 23:8-11)

10. In these words of Mine, it is clearly expressed that men are not allowed to raise themselves or someone else to lord over their brothers arbitrarily and with abuse of power, to subjugate them spiritually or materially, therefore also not to be teachers, spiritual fathers, nor confessors, nor violent teachers, but he who wants to be the greatest in the sense of My teaching is to be a servant of all through his love, humility and mercy.

11. From these words of Mine, the keys of Peter are clearly shown that they mean only loving reconciliation and forgiveness among each other, but not a primacy of Peter.

12. The fact that this saying first went out only to Peter, and only then to the other disciples, happened because Peter was the first to call Me the Son of God and Messiah with rock-solid faith. But the one who truly and steadfastly acknowledges Me as Son of God and Messiah, is enabled out of love and devotion to Me, because I am the Son of God or the Wisdom of God, and the Messiah, or divinely anointed King of the spiritual life of the world, to forgive all My enemies as I forgave them on the Cross, saying: 'Father forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing!' Because the one who insults his brother or does not forgive him, sins directly against Me, Christ, because My spirit as living Holy Spirit of God dwells in every person and leads through conscience, to the good.

13. The keys of Peter therefore contain neither an elevation of Peter by Me to be the head over his brothers as men, nor My approval that men, out of their own arbitrary presumption, raise someone to be a spiritual head over his equal brothers before God!

14. But the one whom I Myself set up as leader, will not subjugate his brothers, nor exploit them, nor deprive them of their possessions fraudulently through lying pretences, nor in any other way inhibit their personal spiritual freedom, nor mistreat them, since he has not been granted any right by Me to do so.

15. Under the name "kingdom of heaven", which keys I gave to Jesus, should be understood: a loving human heart, because in the human heart dwells the love of your eternal Father Jesus as the Holy Spirit of God, as Paul teaches to the Corinthians and Romans. (Read beginning chapter 11:2)

16. No-one else but God alone has the right to forgive those sins that directly offend God, because no-one can look into the heart of the sinner to judge whether repentance is great enough, to see whether he has offended God [at all]; whether the intention to no longer offend God and lead a penitential life is decisive, and because I have never said and taught that sinful people have the right to appropriate and abuse My special privileges.

17. The life of repentance is a penitential life, lived exactly according to divine commandments and teachings, which builds the eternal life on the earthly life.

45. Inherited Sin

1. Original sin is that sin which Adam committed in Paradise and in him all men, because they come from his soul-spirit.

2. Original sin consists in the fact that just as Adam and Eve sinned out of arrogant disobedience to the divine commandment of chastity and thereby paved the way for all other sins, so also the descendants of Adam sin against the divine commandment of chastity after the same disobedience since then, because through the first sin, the germ was laid for all sins.

3. Original sin thus has its name because all people are descended from Adam and inherited this sin spiritually.

4. However, the original sin committed in Adam as original sin and the sins committed up to the crucifixion of Christ and resulting from original sin no longer exist, because Jesus atoned for them once and for all on the cross.

a) Just as sin came into this world through a man (Adam), ... so also through the One (Jesus) righteousness (as the promise of God, 1 Moses 3:15) the justification of life (as liberation from the original sin, Rom 5:12,18) comes upon all men (of the world).
b) Jesus is therefore mediator of a new (2nd) covenant, because by the redemption at the cross, all humans were freed from the transgressions of the first covenant (in the Old Testament), which were the death (of the soul), and thus from then on the called (as

children of God) attain the promised eternal inheritance (of their heavenly Father). - See the same thought in Rom. 3:25.

c) Jesus, through the unique offering of His Body, cleansed and redeemed people once and for all (from the original sin committed in the Old Testament) (Hebr 9:15; 10:10,14)]. But the sins committed today must be atoned for oneself (ChtS. 76. 1,7).

5. The punishments that followed original sin were: The expulsion from the happy states of paradise; (Household of God I. chapter 13; 1 Moses 3:23,24) the taking away of spiritual gifts and graces; (ChtS. I, chapter 11:13-19; 14:9-12), and the death of the flesh-body. (Through the sin of Adam, the death of the flesh-body came upon all men, but also the death of the soul, which is precisely the life of sin. Romans 5:12,18 - Jehovah said to Adam: "On which day you eat of the tree of knowledge (Eve), you will die. 1 Moses 2:17; ChtS. I:8,3)

6. The evil consequences that remain attached to the descendants of Adam from original sin, are the tendency and the desire to commit sins, thus the continuing disobedience to the divine commandments, as a dislike of the good (but I see another law in my members that opposes the law of my spirit and keeps me imprisoned under the law of sin that reigns in my members - Rom 7:23) and many troubles and tribulations. [God spoke to the woman: I will cause you much pain when you become pregnant; you shall bear children with pain; and your desire shall be for your husband: and he shall be your lord. - 17. And He said to Adam, Because thou hast obeyed the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree thereof, I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it; - the field shall be un-blessed for thy sake; thou shalt nourish thyself thereon with sorrow all the days of thy life 18. And it shall bear thee thorns and thistles, and thou shalt eat the herb of the field. 19. In the sweat of thy face thou shalt eat thy bread, 1 Moses 3:16-19, till thou be taken away from the earth again. For thou art earth, and thou shalt become earth. 12:7; 2 Thess 3:10]

7. Nobody was excluded from original sin, so Mary inherited the original sin of Adam and Eve as well as all other human beings, because it also originates from the soul-spirit of the original parents, so at that time she also sinned in the spirit, because no descendant of Adam could have been without original sin, otherwise he would not have originated from the soul-spirit of the original parents of the human race.

8. It follows from this that I, Jesus, suffered likewise for the original sin of Mary and died on the cross as I did for all other people. (Communion of Jesus on 19.1.1903)

46. The Eleventh Article of Faith

Resurrection of the flesh.
The eleventh article of faith is: The resurrection of the flesh

1. Under the resurrection of the flesh is to be understood that on the last day, man wears as his spiritual resurrection-body, the works worked in the time of his earthly life, and becomes either happy or unhappy according to the spiritual price of these works.

2. The Day of Judgement is the day on which man dies and enters the spirit-realm; the day before is not his youngest, but his former day.

3. Man then immediately takes up his judgement; for in the time of his earthly life, he has built himself heaven through good works, but hell through evil as the dwelling place of his spiritual future. (Read ChtS. 76)

4. Such a final [common] judgement for all deceased people, as described by the pseudo-evangelist Matthew in chapter 25, verses 31-46, will never exist, however, because this report of Matthew insists

on the misunderstanding of the return of Christ and of the judgement of the world (cf. ChtS. 64 Ist edition pp. 214-218), which will prevail on earth before the establishment of the millennial kingdom of the Spirit of Christ, where people will either convert to Christ and obey His commandments, or have to die out.

5. The proof in the Holy Scriptures that the dead will not rise again with their earthly flesh-bodies and come to the last judgement, is given by the apostle Paul in the first Epistle chapter 15, verse 50, saying: "But this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot acquire the kingdom of God; and that the earthly, as the corruptible, cannot inherit the spiritual as the incorruptible.

6. This verse clearly says that there can be no talk of a resurrection of the earthly flesh-body, because the spirit would then again be subjected to an earthly man and all inconveniences of earthly life, which were a hell to him during his earthly life.

7. The astute reader also soon realizes that the pseudo-Matthew has composed this last judgement himself and that it is in stark contradiction with the eternal love and mercy of God. Read more about this in ChtS. 64, pages 214-218.

47. The Twelfth Article of Faith

An eternal life. The twelfth article of faith is: An eternal life

1. With the twelfth article of faith, man confesses that he believes in an eternal God (1 Moses 21:33); Ps 45:7; Jer 10:10), that this God is Christ (John 14:6; ChtS. 71), and that he will reach eternal life through Christ (Mark 10:30; John 3:15,36; 6:68; 10:28), which is heaven with all its bliss and joy.

2. Peter wrote about this (I Peter 1:8,9): "With unspeakable and glorious joy you will rejoice when you attain the goal of your faith, namely the salvation of your souls.

3. Paul expressed himself even higher to the Corinthians (I Cor 2:9): No eye has seen, no ear has heard, and no human heart has ever felt what God has prepared for those who love Him.

4. The fact that the Creed concludes with the word 'Amen' happens, because with this word something is ended, affirmed, or recognized as true. So, with the final word 'Amen' in the Creed, you affirm your conviction as if you were to say: Verily so it is; so we firmly believe it.

48. The Ten Commandments of God

Called the Decalogue, or the Ten Words

1. Swedenborg wrote: Where on earth is a people who do not know that stealing, adultery, killing and false testimony are evil? If they did not know this, and if they did not ensure by law that no-one would do the same, it would have happened to them that society, the state, and the kingdom would collapse without those laws. Who can believe that the people of Israel were so much more immoral than others? That they did not know that this was evil? One might wonder, then, why those laws - known throughout the earth - were made known in such a wondrous way, from Mount Sinai by Jehovah himself; but man, listen:

2. They were made known with such a great miracle from Mount Sinai down from Jehovah Himself that it might be known that **those laws were not only civil and moral, but also spiritual laws**, and

to act against them would not only be evil to fellow citizens and against society, but also to sin against God. Those laws, proclaimed by Jehovah on Mount Sinai, have been made laws of religion; (Read Exodus or Book 2 of Moses chapters 19 and 20) for it is evident that Jehovah commands everything He commands for the sake of religion, and that it should be done for His sake and for the sake of man, that he may be saved.

3. Those laws were so holy that there was nothing more holy, because they were the first fruits of the Word, and therefore the first fruits of the Church, which was to be founded by the Lord among the Israelite people, and because, in a brief outline, they contained the epitome of everything that belongs to religion, and whereby a connection between the Lord and man and between man and the Lord is brought about.

4. That they were holy above all things is evident from the fact that Jehovah Himself, who is the Lord, came down on Mount Sinai in the fire and with the angels, and proclaimed it with a loud voice from there, and that the people prepared themselves for three days to see and hear; that the mountain was fenced so that no-one would come near and die; that neither the priests nor the elders were allowed to come near, but only Moses; That those laws were written with the finger of God on two stone tablets, that Moses' face shone when he brought them down from the mountain for the second time; that they were subsequently laid down in the ark, in the innermost part of the tabernacle, and over them the seat of grace was set, and on this, cherubs of gold were placed; that it was the most holy of their church, was called the holiest of holy (the most holy); that outside the curtain behind which this was, those things were set up which represented the holiness of heaven and the church, namely: the candlestick with the seven lamps of gold, the golden altar of incense, the table covered with gold, on which the shewbreads were laid, with curtains of byssus, purple, and scarlet around it.

5. The holiness of the whole tabernacle was based on nothing but the law that was in the ark. Because of the holiness which the tabernacle had because of the law in the ark, the whole Israelite people, according to the commandment, encamped around the ark according to the order of the tribes, and went after it according to the order, where a cloud stood above by day, and a fire by night.

6. Because of the holiness of that law and the presence of the Lord in it, the Lord spoke with Moses over the mercy seat between the cherubs, and the ark was called "Jehovah" there, and Aaron was then not allowed to enter other than with sacrifices and incense behind the curtain.

7. Because that law was the holiness of the church itself, the ark was led by David to Zion, and then set down in the midst of the temple at Jerusalem, and formed the innermost secret sanctuary thereof. Because the presence of the Lord was in the law and around the ark in which this law lay, miracles happened like at the waters of the Jordan, and as long as the ark rested in its midst, the people could pass on dry [ground]; and the walls of Jericho fell by their carrying it; Dagon, the God of the Philistines fell down before it, and had it's head torn off and remained at the threshold of the temple; and the same Bethsemites were slain in their thousands; and many other things. All this only because of the presence of the Lord in His ten words, which are the precepts of the Decalogue.

8. Such great power and such great holiness was in this law, because it was the epitome of all that belonged to religion; for it consisted of two tablets, one of which contains everything that pertains to God, and the other contains everything that pertains to man. That is why the provisions of that law are also called 'Ten Words'. They are called such, because 'ten' means 'everything'. But in what way that law is the epitome of all that belongs to religion, will be seen in the following sections.

9. Because through that law, there is a union of the Lord with man, and of man with the Lord; it is called 'covenant' and 'testimony'; covenant, because it unites; and testimony because it testifies; for the covenant denotes the union, and testimony denotes the testimony of it. Therefore there were two tablets, one for the Lord, the other for man. The connection is made by the Lord, but only when man <u>does</u> what is written on his tablet; for the Lord is constantly present and works and wants to enter, but man alone is to open with the freedom he has from the Lord; for He says: "Behold, I stand at the door and knock, if anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will enter to him and have supper with

him, and he with Me." (Rev 3:20)

10. In the other table which is for man, it is not said that man shall not do this and that good, but it is said that he shall not do this and that evil, but: thou shalt not kill, thou shalt not commit adultery, thou shalt not steal, thou shalt not give false testimony, thou shalt not give in to lust. The reason is that man cannot do good by himself alone, but if he [only] does not do evil, then he does not [necessarily] do good out of himself, but by the grace of the Lord.

11. What was previously said about the announcement, about the holiness and power of this law, is found in the following passages in the words:

12. "That Jehovah came down on Mount Sinai in fire, and the mountain then smoked and trembled, and that there was thunder, lightning, heavy clouds, and the sound of trumpets (of angels)," Exodus 19:16,18; Exodus 2:4,11; 5:19-23. That the people prepared and sanctified themselves three days before the descent of Jehovah, Exodus 19:10,11,15.

13. "That the mountain was fenced in, that no man should come near the foot of it, and come to it, and die; and that the priests should not come to it either, but Moses alone. Exodus 19:12,13,20-23; 24:1,2.

14. "That law was made known down from Mount Sinai," Exod 20:2-14; Deut 5:6-21.

15. "That this law was written with the finger of God on two stone tablets", Exodus 31:18; 32:15,16; Deut 9:10.

16. "That the face of Moses, when he carried these tablets down from the mountain for the second time, shone", Exod 34:29-35.

17. "That the tablets might be laid down in the ark," Exodus 25:16; 40:20; Deut 10:5; 1 Kings 8:9.

18. "That on the ark the mercy seat were set, and on this, the golden cherubs were set," Genesis 25:17-21.

19. "That the ark with the mercy seat and the cherubs constituted the innermost part of the tabernacle, and the golden candlestick, the golden altar of incense, and the table covered with gold, on which the shewbread was laid, constituted the outer part of the tabernacle, and the ten curtains of byssus, purple, and scarlet the outer part thereof", Exodus chapters 25 and 26; and 40:17-28.

20. "That the place where the ark was, was called the Holy of holies," (Exodus 26:33).

21. "That all the people of Israel should camp around the dwelling place in order after their tribes, and follow it in the same order". (Numbers 2:1, 4-end).

22. "That then by day there was a cloud, and by night there was a fire over the dwelling place (the ark)", Exodus 2:40,38; Numbers 4:9,15,16-end; Ch. 14:14; Leviticus 5:33.

23. "That the Lord may have spoken to Moses about the ark from between the cherubs," Exodus 25:22; Numbers 7:89.

24. That the ark of the law in it was called "Jehovah" there, when Moses, when the ark went out, said, "To Jehovah! and when it rested, Back, Jehovah!" Numbers 10:35,36; 2 Sam 6:2; Psalm 132:7,8.

25. "That because of the holiness of that law Aaron was not allowed to go behind the curtain other than with sacrifices and incense." Lev 16:2-14f.

26. "That the ark of David was brought to Zion with sacrifices and rejoicing", 2 Sam 6:1-19, "that Uzza

died because he touched it", verse 6,7.

27. "That the ark might be set up in the midst of the temple of Jerusalem, where it formed the most holy place," 1 Kings 6:19 ff; and 8:3-9.

28. "That by the presence and power of the Lord, in the law which was in the ark, the waters of the Jordan was divided, and as long as it rested in the middle, the people could pass through on dry ground." John 3:1-17; Chap. 4:5-20.

29. "That the walls of Jericho fell by the carrying of the ark," Joshua 6:1-20.

30. "That Dagon the God of the Philistines fell to the ground before the ark, and lay on the threshold of the temple separated from the head," 1 Sam 5:1-14.

31. "That the Beth-shemites perished in their thousands because of the Ark," 1 Sam 6:19.

32. "That the stone tablets on which the law was written were called the tables of the covenant, and the ark of the covenant after them, and the law itself was called the covenant," Leviticus 10:33; 5:4:13,23; 9:9; Joshua 3:11; 1 Kings 8:19,21; Rev 11:9, and in many other places. The law was called 'covenant' because covenant means 'union'; therefore the Lord says that He will be a covenant to the people, Isa. 12:6; 49:8,9 and He is called the angel of the covenant, Malachi 3:1 and His blood, the blood of the covenant, Matt 26:27,28; Zach 9:11; Exod 24:4-10. Therefore the word 'old covenant' and 'new covenant' is called. Also the covenants of love, friendship and companionship are made for the sake of union.

33. "That the prescriptions of this law were called ten words (Greek: decalogos)", Exod 4:28; Deut 4:1; 10:4. They are called so because 'ten' means everything and 'the words' mean 'the truth'; for there were more than ten. Because ten means everything, so also ten curtains of the tabernacle, Exodus 26:1. Therefore the Lord said that a man who was to take over the kingdom called ten servants and gave them ten pounds for increase, Luke 19:13. Therefore the Lord compared the kingdom of heaven with ten virgins, Matt 25:1. Therefore it is said of the dragon that he has ten horns, and on his heads seven diadems, Rev 12:3. Likewise, the beast ascending out of the sea, Rev 13:1, and also the other beast, Rev 17:3,7. Then also the beast with Daniel. Ch. 7:7,20,24. The same is to be understood by ten, Lev 26:26; Zach 8:23 and elsewhere. Hence the tithes, which are understood as something of the whole." (So far from Swedenborg's life doctrine.)

49. The Ten Commandments of God

1. The ten commandments of God refer to the duties to God and the people, whom you are called to fulfill if you want to attain eternal life. These commandments are:

a) Thou shalt believe in one God alone
b) Thou shalt not call the name of thy God in vain.
c) Thou shalt sanctify the Sabbath as the spiritual day of rest.
d) You shall honour your father and your mother, that you may live long and prosper on earth.
e) Thou shalt not kill.
f) Thou shalt not commit adultery and be unchaste.
g) Thou shalt not steal
h) Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour
i) Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's goods
j) Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife, which means so much as: Thou shalt not exploit the mercy and good nature of thy neighbour. (Also read 'The Enlightenment on the Ten Commandments' in *Christian Scripture* No. 3)

2. The first three commandments contain the duties towards God, the seven others, the duties towards one's neighbour.

3. Schumi: Besides the following explanations about the ten commandments of God, read in the "*Spiritual Sun*" by Lorber, the "*Dekalogos*" by A.H. and "*Ein Wort in zwölfter Stunde an das deutsche Volk*" by E. Veith. Veith is valuable as an enlightenment about the state of the world compared to the Ten Commandments. In each of these three books (to be obtained by: C. Bägel, Altona (Elbe) is a variant of the compilation brought here, one completes the other, but all together provide a deeper insight into the understanding of the Ten Commandments.

4. I used the written version heavily, partly through literal reproduction, partly through excerpts, partly through improvements, partly through better enlightenment, then through ecclesiastical research taken from '*Holy Scripture*', 'T*he spiritual sun*', especially Swedenborg, some things from *Dekalogos* and what was dictated or communicated to me by the Father Jesus. This compilation was done according to the will and in harmony with the Father Jesus, who supported me in an instructive and dictating way, in order to finally have a profound explanation of the Ten Commandments, which we had been lacking so far.

5. Father Jesus: From the Ten Commandments you learn that a Christian should not only fulfill the prescribed duties outwardly, but that he should also fulfill them inwardly or spiritually, as they are explained out of the love and wisdom of God, since they are divine, and that he should avoid everything which transgress the commandments against God and neighbour; because they are commandments of My divine love and since you are educated and spoiled in the worldly rationale, that is why it is so difficult for you to fulfill them. That is why I, Jesus, said:

6. "Not everyone who says to Me: Lord, Lord! will enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven, will enter the kingdom of heaven. (Matt 7:21)

7. I have promised eternal life to those who keep My commandments, saying: "If you wish to enter into eternal life, keep the commandments" (Matt 19:17); and to those who keep them, I have already promised in this world a manifold blessing, as it is written in the first commandment: "I am Jehovah, your God, who gives grace to thousands who love Me and keep My commandments". (Matt 33:25,26)

8. That the outer sensual man should not become an inward or spiritual [man] prior to - that is, that he can not act in harmony with the inner pure spiritual - before the desires are removed, I as Jesus taught, by saying:

9. "Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, for you cleanse the exterior of the cup and the bowl, but the interior is full of robbery and immorality; blind Pharisees, first clean the interior of the cup and the bowl, so that the exterior may also be clean, and also in the same sense in this whole chapter from beginning to end. The interior, which is Pharisaic or priestly, is the desire for what is forbidden in the Ten Commandments.

10. I as the God-man Jesus spoke in parables and in a spiritual way, therefore all My teachings are given for the inner being of man. But when man classifies his inner being according to the commandments of God, then he also purifies his flesh and so through the depressing of all unspiritual thoughts, words and deeds, man becomes spiritually born again: The first birth was the birth of the flesh, in which there is evil and falsehood, the second as rebirth, is the exodus from the material into the spiritual, and if this is carried out completely and precisely, then the graces and gifts of the Holy Spirit take place, as I spoke to Nicodemus (John 3:3; Acts 2:1 - Holy Trinity) and with Pentecost baptism proved this speech with the reality.

11. Depending on it's inner core, the ten commandments prohibit all excesses, all wrong ways, all vices, inclinations, passions, desires, lusts and vices of the sensually inclined man, which are against the will of the Spirit of God in man. So also in relation to the wrong faith and the activity of love,

which contain the core of the greatest commandment in the law.

12. The desires of the flesh, the eyes, and the other senses are separate from the desires, that is, the inclinations and desires of the spirit, and are wholly equal to the desires of the animals; which is why they in themselves have animal savagery; the inclinations of the spirit, on the other hand, are like those of the angels, and must therefore be called truly human. In how far therefore one indulges in the lusts of the flesh, in so far he is beast and wild beast; in how far, on the other hand, he pays homage to the desire of the Spirit, in so far he is man and angel. The desires of the flesh can be compared - according to Swedenborg - with stables in which there are donkeys, goats and pigs, and the inclinations of the spirit, with stables with noble horses, sheep and lambs; they also differ like donkeys and horses, and like goats and sheep, and like lambs and pigs, generally like slag and gold, and like lime and silver, etc. - desire and action are connected like flesh and blood, like flame and oil; for desire is indeed like the pleasure in the lungs when breathing and speaking.

13. That evil must first be removed before the good that man does becomes good before God, I teach through Isaiah:

14. "Wash yourselves, purify yourselves, do away with the wickedness of your works before My eyes, learn to do good, then if your sins were like scarlet, they shall be snow-white, if they were red like purple, they shall be like white wool (Isa 1:16-18)".

15. This is similar to the passage in Jeremiah: "Stand by the gate of the house of Jehovah, and there call out this word: Thus said Jehovah Zebaoth, the God of Israel, "Make good your ways and works, do not trust the words of lies which say: Jehovah's temple, Jehovah's temple, Jehovah's temple is here, do you still want to come after stealing, murdering, adultery and lying, swearing and stand and speak before Me in this house over which My Name is called out? Stand and speak: We are (now) saved, while you all do these abominations? Has this house then become a den of robbers? For I see how it has become (Jer 7:2,3,4,9-11), Jehovah's says."

16. That he who keeps the regulations of the ten commandments flees evil, but practices love and loving action, is made clear by the following words which I once spoke to John (John 14:21,23):

17. I said: "whoever has My Words and does them is the one who loves Me, but whoever loves Me will be loved by My Father and I will love him and reveal Myself to him and We will dwell with him".

18. By avoiding sins, one moves away from hell and approaches heaven. But this happens only through the fulfillment of the prescribed commandments and teachings, which specify exactly what one should do or not do. For only then can one strive for and do good if one avoids evil and falsehood, because as long as evil and falsehood reign in man, good and true do not arise, that is, do not prosper and grow; therefore one must strive with all strength and prayer for assistance in the battle, avoid evil and strive for true love, because one cannot serve two masters at the same time.

19. Swedenborg set up two new rules based on truth, so they will be presented here with a small improvement:

20. I. No one can flee evil as sin by his own willpower, nor do good, which is good before God, out of himself; but to the extent that someone flees evil as sin, to the extent that he promotes good in himself, but not out of himself, but through the imperceptible help of God - but it is worked upon him as if by his own power, well noticed.

21. II. Man shall flee evil as sin and fight against it, as if by himself, for whoever does this out of love for God will be helped unnoticed; but when someone flees evil for some other reason, than because it is sin and against the will of God, he flees it not from the true intention, which is well regarded by God, but he flees it for the wrong reasons, for which the world praises him before the eyes of his fellow man as a pure man; such fleeing from sin has no value before God; the same is true when you consider the sin only because of the pleasures of heaven and for fear of agony. One does not go to

heaven because heaven is from and in God, but He was not the center of the love and aspiration of the striving for heaven. Man must do everything out of love for God, without any other intention, that is the right thing that harbours heaven within him.

22. Swedenborg said quite aptly: that evil and good cannot be together, and that in so far as evil is removed, one has one's reluctance for good and feels it, has its reason in the fact that in the spiritual world out of every thing a sphere of one's love flows, which spreads and stimulates itself all around, and generates sympathies and antipathies; by these emanations the good are separated from the bad.

23. The fact that evil must be removed before good is recognized, perceived and loved can be compared to many things in the natural world, such as the following: no one can enter in with someone who keeps a leopard and a panther in his room, and lives safely with them because he feeds them, unless he first remove these wild animals. Whoever is invited to the table of the king and the queen, does not wash his face and hands before he goes? Who does not cleanse the ores by fire, and separate them from the slags, before he obtains pure gold and silver? Who does not separate the weeds from the wheat harvest before bringing them into the barn? Who does not cut off the husks from the barley harvest with flails before collecting them into the house? Who does not pour and remove the caterpillars from the leaves of the fruit trees in the garden, so that the leaves are not eaten and the fruit is not lost? Who loves a virgin and intends to marry her, when she is afflicted with a malignant disease or covered with blisters and ulcers, no matter how much she may make up her face, dress beautifully and try to arouse love with ingratiating words?

24. That man should purify himself from evil, and not expect the Lord to do this directly, is comparable to a servant with soot and dung on his face and dress, going to his master and say, "Lord, wash me off! Would the Lord not say to him, foolish servant, what are you saying? Look, here is water, soap, and a towel; is there no strength in your hands? Wash yourself! So God the Lord will say: there are means of purification through My and also your will and your ability is from Me; so use these gifts from Me and your own gifts, you will become pure and so on. I, Jesus, taught in Matthew (the whole chapter 23) that the outer man must be cleansed, but by the inner spirit man.

25. (1903, January 23rd. A.H., Kronstadt). Dear children, become doers of My commandments! The more eagerly you try to carry out My commandments in your procedure in this way presented by Me, the more clearly you will recognize My will, which will show you again and again only the heavenly purity, in which blessed way I, the Father, seek to make all men happy.

26. Oh so come to Me, the Father, all you who stand in My love, so that I may bless you, to give you all the spiritual vitality that flow to you from the observance of My love- commandments in bright streams of light, to repress the darkness that keeps all mankind imprisoned. My name is highly praised and you are to draw from this name to return home to Me, the Father, as a victor with rich booty. I await you all who stand in love with Me. Come - individually, come - in whole groups as the opportunity is given to you through Me, the Father. Just come! Because I wait for you to go into battle with yourselves, who should reap all that, and will reap what once came out of Myself.

27. Time is pressing forward, do not let yourselves be asked; because there will not be another time coming where I speak to you so alive through the word of love; because for all who have not recognized Me, the Father, at My second coming in My Light, it will remain dark for a long time, and in the dark they will not see how those in their blissful happiness will live, who have adjusted themselves in the way of My commandments.

28. Oh people, who stand far from Me, the Father, hear My words of love which call out every commandment to you: "Become children of your Father - Who has accumulated rich treasures for all of you who bind yourselves to Me, the Father, for all eternity and therefore you enter into the same spiritual property which belongs to Me, the Father.

29. Oh you, My children, who stand in love with Me, prove your love for Me by trying to exactly fulfill

My commandments so that you would not be like many others who wanted so much (of material and sensual kind) - and thereby always have not only Me, but also other gods before them, whom they temporarily serve. Abide by this commandment given first so that you may become what I, the Father, desire: a faithful child serving Me alone, in love.

30. (1903, May 8. A.H., Kronstadt). If you recognize that you (in the fulfillment of My commandments) have made no progress in spiritual advancement, that you find revelation only in devotional love, you should know that you still do not progress faithfully in one or the other part of My commandments. Therefore, do as I say: examine yourself in all your actions! Consider every question, every procedure - whether their execution remains within the framework of My Love, so that you do not go astray.

31. "He who has been faithful to Me in the small things, I will put him above many things"; for love for Me has enabled him - to serve Me as a faithfully devoted child in humility, and thus to greatly delight all those whom I, the Father, have brought close to him (to instruct them in the truth of religion).

50. The First Commandment

"Faith in one God alone."

Clarification of the commandments of God recorded in the 2nd book of Moses, in the 20th chapter, as well as in the 5th book of Moses, the 5th chapter, which Jesus gave as Jehovah on 30 March 1490 before Christ on the mountain Musa of the Sinai-mountains (Ethmology: Musa means "mountain"; - Sina-i however "mountains" or mountain range. Sinai, in it's spiritual-heavenly meaning however, is: "the mountain range of the love of God", namely : si "mountain range" as a majority of sa "mountain"; - na "that"; - a-i means: "the origin of becoming" or the divine love, since "i" means the divine I, which is the Love that eternally creates) giving it among lightning and thunder to the people of Israel [instructions of how] to live accordingly, and thus to fulfill them in deed.

51. The Wording of the First Commandment

Exodus/ 2 Moses 20:3-6; Deut/5 Moses 5:7-10

(E.3.D.7.) Thou shalt have no other gods beside Me. (E = Exodus; - D = Deuteronomy)

(E.4.D.8.) Thou shalt not make for thyself a carved image, nor any image of that which is in heaven above, and which is on earth below, and which is in water beneath the earth.

(E.5.D.9.) Thou shalt not worship them, nor serve them; for I Jehovah thy God am a zealous God, who haunts the iniquity of the fathers against the children, to the third and fourth generation, against those who hate Me

(E.6.D.10.) And exercises grace on thousands, on those who love Me and keep My commandments.

1. In order to grasp the meaning of these words more clearly, an explanation adapted to today's understanding should be given, which reads as follows:

2. you shall not set up any idols beside Me which you would keep holy, worship, adore and ask for help instead of Me; for I am a zealous God and do not tolerate any minor gods set up by men to sanctify and call on them instead of Me.

3. Such abuses are the sign of the decay of the true faith in one God and the degradation of My person as the only Holy One of Israel of the world.

4. No-one worships another God nor the servants of My Holiness because there is no-one holy but Me, neither in heaven nor on earth, nor under the earth. Therefore do not imagine any hewn, carved, painted pictures of your departed saints, as I even forbid to imagine any picture of Myself if you want to practice the idolatry of worship of the lifeless figure.

5. Therefore you know My will and strive to fully fulfill it, so that I would not have cause to punish you because I punish you through two, three to four generations while I reward the fulfillment of My commandment up to the thousandth generation. This is the commandment and the teaching that I have recently impressed on you, as I once did on the Israelites.

6. About the content of the first commandment, some passages of the Bible are to be considered, such as:

a) Peter (Heb 11:6) wrote in the Epistle to the Hebrews: "Without faith it is impossible to please God, for he who wants to come to God must believe that He is.

b) Moses (Moses 6:13) said: "You shall fear and serve Jehovah your God. I, Jesus, gave the proof of humility in the worship of God during the 40 days of fasting, by overcoming Satan of the lustful flesh and passing over in humility without observing My divinity, (*Announcements*. 1:56) and submitting Myself to the baptism of repentance like a sinner, in order to give people the example that before God, one must always consider oneself humble and sinful in the flesh.

7. I ask you: are you indebted keep My ten commandments?

8. Yes, you also owe it to yourselves to keep the Ten Commandments, namely:

a) Because I have given them not only for the Jews, but for all mankind, in that their inner meaning contains precisely the two commandments of love towards God and neighbour, who forms the natural regulation for a spiritual life through which man becomes an image or child of God.
b) Because I, Jesus, confirmed them Myself by saying: I did not come to revoke the law or the prophets, but I came to fulfill them. (Matt 5:17)

9. The ten commandments of God are to be kept because they were given by Me for the purpose to be kept, because I give man the necessary grace and ability for it, about which also the following verses of the Holy Scriptures speak:

a) Ezekiel 36:27 - I will give My Spirit in you and will make of you such people as walk in My commandments and keep My judgements and do according to them.

b) Philippians 2:13 - It is God who works in you both the willing and accomplishment according to His pleasure.

c) Philippians 4:13 - I, Paul, can do all things through Him who strengthens me, namely Christ.

52. The First Commandment of God says:

" Thou shalt believe in one God, and love, honour, and worship only this One God, and have no other gods beside Him. "

1. I as God am holy, My love is the primordial Light in creation, because father and mother are in it. My being is the infinite benevolence towards all My creatures, from the highest cherub and seraph to the lowest and tiniest living being, because My love embraces the infinite universe of the world. My wisdom is the depth of divine holiness, and the omniscience of the infinite mysteries of love in God, incomprehensible to human understanding; - and My Creator-omnipotence holds the secrets of the depth of all-encompassing love and the sanctity of wisdom in God with its will and creative power in My almighty hands. Therefore, God is the ineffable sanctuary in Himself and in His vast creation.

2. As this holy God, from Whose love, wisdom and omnipotence everything came into existence, I call Myself the Father of men. How holy must love be and how infinitely sublime must humility in God be, that I humble Myself so deeply and call Myself the Father of men who, because of their disobedience, are full of vices and sins!

3. Can man think of anything higher than his God? No! Impossible. Can there then be something more humble than that I, the most holy God, let humans call Me their Father? No! certainly not, because the difference between the holiness of God and the sinfulness of ordinary people is too great.

4. And yet a holy bond of love connects the child with the Father, with Me, the Most Holy God! The human mind cannot comprehend the greatness and grandeur of this fact in its earthly comprehension, and that is why people place so little emphasis on the fact that I Myself am their Father.

5. Consider the infinity and the incomprehensible greatness of My creations and the countless miracles that occur therein, since in every world of creation, other kinds of stones and minerals and other plants and animals, even humans, are present in such proportions that it all far exceed your imagination and no single creature can be imitated according to its true nature to imitate My Holy Spirit in creation, which is to be understood with his love and Wise magneto-electrical works and creation!

6. And behold, all these are I, your God and Father; for you all are created and you are called because you are My children to become the heirs of My gigantic creations. Not for nothing did I once say: Seek to become perfect as your Father in heaven is perfect, but this can only be achieved by endeavouring to follow My virtues as the Son of Man (described in the '*Prayer Book*'); for these, with the spiritual perfection of man, hold in themselves the price of the childhood of God, the baptism of the Holy Spirit with all the gifts and graces described in the '*Holy Trinity*'. When one has attained these graces and gifts, then one is a child of God and when this has happened then everything is possible for you what is founded in My love in you because I Myself, the Spirit of love, wisdom and omnipotence of the universe in you, am the fulfiller of your desires.

7. But to ascend to this level of spiritual perfection, you have to make sure to simultaneously and exactly follow and fulfill My commandments and teachings, for this is what it means to take heaven by force.

8. You must therefore above all believe in only one God: without faith it is impossible to please God, because whoever wants to come to God, must believe that He is (Heb 11:6).

9. Furthermore, you must regard this God as your lovingly caring Father and therefore love Him with all your heart, soul and mind. (Numbers 6:4,5; Matt 22:37,38)

10. Hope in Him, for those who love the Lord, hope in the Lord; He is their helper and their protector. (Ps 115:11) - Hope for Him all the gathered people, pour out your hearts before Him! God is our eternal helper, says David (Ps 62:9).

11. And finally, you are to show all reverence and worship to this God and only worship this One alone, because it is written: You shall worship God your Lord and serve Him alone (Matt 4:10; Num 6:13)

12. Darwinism also belongs to the worship of other gods; for My divine teaching says that the first man was created by God, so God was his Father, and man was a child of God.

13. Darwin, on the other hand, taught that not God was the creator and Father of the first man, but the primeval ape, so Darwinism is a denial of God and a worship of the primeval ape as an idol, from whose original state the divine man is said to have developed. A very sad theory out of the darkening of the spirit and its tendency to monkey- or faunal life.

14. Also, do not call the dead, who are spiritually your brothers and sisters, "holy ones" and "saints"; for I alone am holy and no one else, neither here on earth, nor there in the spirit-kingdom; further, that you do not pray to these deceased people and consider them as your helpers or intercessors in your concern and perform 'Our Fathers' and similar prayers to them, which belongs to idolatry or polytolatry, because you pray to these gods that they should hear you instead of coming directly to Me in your heart, where I dwell as the Divine Love and mercy, named Jesus Christ.

15. It belongs to polytheism, because the sinister paganism is born from it: to stand in front of statues and images of My person and the blessed, to look at them as if there were a life in them and to pray to them, which is precisely what the idolatrous veneration, or worship of images means. See, this is how the former pagans worshipped and revered their gods. - But that is not called 'going into the quiet chamber of the heart to pray', as I once taught people to pray! But closing the door of the quiet chamber means: Turn away from all that binds your senses through your eyes, therefore, where possible, close your eyes to prevent distraction, so that you only listen to your words and are with Me with love, humility and reverence in your thoughts.

16. Every kind of setting up of pictures of God and saints is strictly forbidden in the first commandment (Exod 20:3-5), the same also in the 3rd and 5th book of Moses as follows:

17. *Lev 26:1* - Do not make idols for yourselves, nor carved images, nor set up pillars, nor stones with pictorial script in your land to worship before it; for I am Jehovah your God, (Who forbids you this).

18. *Deut 27:15*: Separated from God (Moses said: "Cursed be", which is incorrect, because God dwells in every man, so one must not curse His dwelling capable of mending!) the man who makes a carved or cast image, an abomination of Jehovah, a work of the hands of the artist, and sets it up in secret.

19. The prohibition to set up idols and worship them was a necessary thing for the abolition of the cult of idolatry, which continued for thousands of years before Me - Christ - until My arrival and into your days, albeit in a different form and under a different name.

20. The old world worshipped: Baal, Astharte (Astharot), Chemos, Milkom, Beelzebub, Apis, Isis, Osiris etc.: and Greeks and Romans: Jupiter, Saturn, Neptune, Pluto, Pallas, Apollo, Minerva, Amphitrite and many more. First, as correspondences of the qualities of the one God; then - as the people's spiritual inner light was darkened by worldliness, as saints; then as supernatural powers, and finally as gods, under various forms and statue images.

21. The Israelite people also fell into idolatry during the time they were in Egypt, as can be seen from the history of the golden calf which they had cast in the desert by Aaron and worshipped it instead of Jehovah, and the fact that the people still often fell into the worship of the gods, is also proven by the

Bible in some passages from Jewish history and from the prophets.

22. The idolatry in the New Testament is everything that is set before God, that man pursues, that he strives for and has all his thoughts on, be it money, wealth, women, luxury, delusions of grandeur, arrogant pride of one's own, lust for power, greed and ambition, as well as the elevation of people to higher beings and their earthly or supernatural worship.

23. Among idolatry also belongs the coarse sensual infatuation ['falling in love'], because with it, you enter completely into the service of Satan, because your thoughts are centered only in the Satanic soul, which is the solidified matter (This is followed by a greater enlightenment in the book: '*Jesus Christ, His arrival and return'* ChtS. 23).

24. Also a mothers' ape-love for the children is a dangerous idolatry, because through it My children, who come in a pure and innocent state from My hand to the parents and required them back from them ennobled and refined, are corrupted and educated into devils. This idolatry bears heavy responsibility before Me - note this, you mothers who prefer children to Me because you thereby act contrary to My commandments!

25. I also want to draw your attention to the idolatry of animal lovers. The animals are indeed entrusted to your care and diligence, but you only have to regard them as animals that were also created and given for your benefit. But you are not allowed to love on them and care for them like people and apply all care to them, or even respect them higher than poor people in whom I, your God Jesus Christ Myself, dwell! People who love animals by caressing their dogs, cats, rabbits etc. and care and cater for them with food just as well as for people, are in idolatry with them, and will have part in the second hell, where they will be transformed into the same animal form with which animals they have practiced their idolatrous hobby!

26. In addition to this polytheism, you also have all kinds of gods in your earthly lives to whom you pay homage, for example: If you strive for money (mammon), or spend your money on unnecessary or quite expensive things and objects, and have your greatest joy in them. See, these are your material and dead gods, on whom you spend much money, but neglect the poor and needy in the process, when you know that you can buy heaven only by good virtues and by the activity of charity, but not by mammon-service, luxury, splendour, delights and indulgence in things which delight the eyes, tickle the tongue, stimulate and arouse the senses and satisfy the lusts of flesh and senses. That is exactly the most dangerous polytheism to which so many people cling with their whole soul, but pass Me over in spirit and in truth in many ways, and now and then [they] forget [Me] completely.

27. From these enlightenments it emerges that when you want to exactly follow the first commandment, then you always have to check whether your heart-inclinations, thoughts, desires, wishes and deeds are justified in Me, whether you do what I teach you and want to see fulfilled by you, or whether you have a greater desire for your hobbies. But as long as the latter prevail among you, spiritual progress and the rebirth of the spirit is a questionable matter because the many material gods created and worshipped by yourself, stand in your way.

53. The misleading belief in Satana

1. You are not to have any other gods beside Me, which consist in your belief that there is still an actual prince of hell or prince of lies, Satan or Satana, because Satan and devils are evil men and spirits which are taken spiritually and materially from the soul of Satana-Lucifer that has been transformed into matter. I Myself was the Divine Spirit of life in Satana and when I withdrew, the light and life in the soul of Satana went out, and out of this soul I created the material world. - The spirit of Satana is the evil and falsehood of the universe in man and the prince of hell of it, the general evil and falsehood of the spirits of hell.

2. Therefore, the images where Satana is spoken of, as in the *Luther* book - and elsewhere, are only spiritual equivalents of once and now: of once as it actually looked and was; - and of now, as the satanic state of man is one of sin and his rebelliousness against the Divine.

3. It is true that in man there exists a dark, spiritually misleading desire, which forms the evil of matter in man; it is that revived remnant of 'once'. But I warn you to pay attention to this shadow or to not believe in a Satan, because through the belief in a real Satan or Lucifer, you raise through your faith out of the said evil desire of your I, the evil spirit, Satan, who is then the greatest tormentor in your body. So do not believe in a true spirit of Satan or Lucifer; for by believing in him you form him yourselves, and then he is your obstacle in the good, an awakener of unnatural desires and lusts, and the obstacle to spiritual advancement (some sad things have been experienced here and there where people believed in a personal Satan) Therefore, deny every and all belief in a Satan that he still exists today!

4. Yes, this faith is also the obstacle for you to reach rebirth, because through the faith in a spirit of Satan, you believe and set up a second being beside Me as a spiritual power. Away with the dual-divinity! Because you yourselves are the remnant of Satan and the said evil in you is the spiritual of your flesh, therefore you yourselves, after the flesh. So look at Satan and say: I myself am Satan after the flesh and partly after the soul, then your faith does not harm you (read the magazine *"Love"* II. 34).

54. Prohibition in the First Commandment

The First Commandment prohibits:

1. Unbelief: "He that believe not shall not be saved." (Mark 16:16)

2. Idolatry: God left them to the lusts of their heart, ... they who exchanged the truth of God (the teaching of Jesus) with the lie (human statutes) give veneration and worship to the creature (Mary, deceased, her images and remains of the deceased, as explained below) rather than the Creator who is to be praised for eternity, Amen (come into the world judgement of Jesus Christ. Rom 1:24,25). You should not turn to idols, nor make you cast (carved, engraved, and painted) gods! I am Jehovah your God. (Lev 19:4) "Do not become idolaters either, as some of our fathers were, says Paul. (1 Cor 10:7)

3. Heresy: Avoid a heretical man if, after repeated rebukes, he continues to resist and claims his own [viewpoint] as genuine (Tit 3:10 and the Father).

4. Fortune-telling, superstition, sorcery: You should not turn to the sorcerers or the interpreters of signs, nor ask the sorcerers or the necromancers anything, so as not to be defiled by them (by the established superstition)! I am Jehovah, your God. (Lev 19:31) When someone will turn to the soothsayers and interpreters of signs (through which he turns from the faith in God to the statements of spirits and to the faith in signs and other superstitions invented by men), I will turn My face from him and leave him to his destinies created by himself. - This is the correct quotation of Moses.(Lev 20:6)

5. Despair, mistrust: Peter wrote: Do not lose your trust in God, which holds a great reward! (Hebr 10:35) - For only he who trusts in God is worthy of his victory in faith, says Father Jesus.

6. Assumption of trust in God's mercy: Do you despise the riches of His divine goodness, patience and longsuffering? Do you not know that the goodness of God leads you to repentance (Rom 2:4) (but not to laziness and presumptuous trust in God's mercy)?

7. Denying God: It is bad to believe various wrong things, but to believe nothing at all and deny the existence of God, is the highest evil in human life, say I, Father Jesus.

55. The Angelic Greeting

1. What is the Angelic greeting taught to pray by the Roman Catholic Church? The Angelic greeting, as the Roman Catholic Church teaches to pray, is a humiliation of God and elevation of Mary to a female goddess and of equal rank with God!

2. How is that to be understood? This is to be understood according to the high spiritual teaching of the New Testament:

3. I, Jesus Christ, as God and Father, have said Myself that no one is good but God alone. (ChtS. 37, 41, 46) Since this word, as it emerges from My utterance, appears as a spiritual expression, because the material word "good" is generally used for all good, then it is evident that the word "good", according to My divine language, has the meaning of a divine attribute of which no man but God is a partaker. He is God in that He is infallible, because perfected in His ego and thereby holy, or crystal clear in everything.

4. Therefore, every logically thinking person understands the praise of Moses, which the blessed in heaven sang: "Great and wondrous are your works, Lord God! All rulers! ... King of the nations. (Rev 15:3.4) Who should not fear thee, Lord, and praise thy name! For You alone are holy!"

5. If Moses himself in his hymn of praise and with him all the blessed (whom the Roman Catholic Church calls "saints") openly said that God alone is holy, and the evangelist John in his revelation of God in the 15th chapter and fourth verse wrote this down for general knowledge, which did not happen until the year 98, (*Announcements*. 1:59) when the other apostles were already all dead and they were incorrectly and by human error called "saints" instead of 'those in process of sanctification or purification', ("holy" means as much, as inwardly spiritually purified). This enlightenment clearly shows for every reasonable thinking man that through the confession and denial of My revelation, which I gave through John, the priesthood presents Me, Jesus Christ, the holy God, as a God of lies.

6. Their sin against Me consists especially therein that they ruthlessly mistaken the content of My divine revelation, against My commandment through Matthew (Matt 23:8,9) and the declaration through revelation (Rev 15:4) that no sinful human being should be a 'Holy Father', which spiritually means so much as God, as their head on earth. This earthly god created by priests in Rome, called the Pope, dared to abuse the divine privileges by canonizing the deceased, making himself the superior god, and by creating secondary gods for his gullible and stultified church-goers by calling them "saints", so that through greater dulling of the people for the Roman church idolatry, more sacrifical money would flow.

7. Therefore, listen to what I, Jesus Christ Myself, tells you about your gullibility towards priests, [you] misinformed church-goers:

8. You may not declare anyone holy except Me, neither in heaven nor on earth, otherwise you desecrate Me and the first commandment of God, where it says: Thou shalt believe in one God, and worship and honour Him alone, otherwise you misjudge My teaching, which I as God, who has become man, in Christ, taught. But through misjudgement of My teaching, I am declared a liar or a God of lies, when you do not heed My teachings and commandments, which are recorded in the New Testament, and do not fulfill them.

9. But you priests, presumptiously present your human doctrine of lies as the doctrine of God against

My teaching, and instead of urging the believers to My teaching, you swamp them through your doctrines of lies and deceit of the people, and through this, you rob them of their salvation!

10. Therefore I finally tell you: Either follow My teaching, which I present to you through My earthly representatives, or you will have to wander after death into the dark second hell, to come to the insight that the Roman priests were not My servants of God.

11. Therefore do not pray the Angelic greeting anymore; for I have given you the Father's Prayer *(Prayer Book II Edition, Chapter 60*). Get used to not calling Mary "Holy Mary"; and pray to Me, but not to Mary and the blessed ones, because the arbitrary introduction of prayer to Mary and the blessed of your Church, called "saints", is an abomination to Me, because it is false prophethood!

12. I taught that man should only pray to Me by saying: "Come to Me all you who are troublesome and laden, I will refresh you". (Matt 11:28)

13. I condemn praying to Mary; otherwise I would have taught this, because when I was in the world as a human being, Mary also lived. But I as God did not say: Go to the Mother of My body and she shall pray to Me for you, but that you shall only pray to Me and that I Himself shall hear you.

14. The Roman Church denies Me, Christ as God, because My Word is for them not a word of God to be respected, and teaches against it that one should pray to Mary as intercessor before God (thus to another God) and has introduced the following anti-Christian prayer, because it is directed against the doctrine of Christ: "Holy Mary, pray for us poor sinners, now and at the hour of our death, Amen."

15. Through this prayer, the Roman Church denied Me, Christ, as God, because My utterance was thereby declared invalid for them.

16. The true Christian should hold what I have taught as Christ, but should consider and reject what the Church has arbitrarily introduced as anti-Christian, pagan and heretical.

17. The one who refuses to consider this explanation consequently wants to serve two masters: God and Roman paganism, who are opposing each other. Because the one who also considers the human statutes of the popes besides My teaching, declares Me, Christ, to be imperfect, not omniscient and not all-wise; because the priests do not regard My teaching as divine, because they have dared to correct Me, Christ, and to mix My teaching with papal human statutes and to teach this false priesthood as genuine and the sole salvational doctrine to the people.

18. How is the claim justified that Mary is the Mother of God, and thus the holiest and greatest of all saints, and therefore the most powerful advocate before God?

19. This pagan assertion presents its esteem of Mary as if she were the wife of the Father God, with whom He had produced the Son Jesus Christ, and therefore she would be the greatest of all blessed, like the Queen always is the greatest after the King, because she is his wife.

20. Oh lazy people, when did God take Mary as His wife? When did He create a son with her? When did she proclaim to be Queen of Heaven or Ruler of Heaven and Earth and Creator of the World and a goddess?

21. Oh children of the darkness of pagan Roman Catholicism, be reasonable and do not accept everything that the Roman papal mammon priests alleges, like the Cretins who, in their lack of judgement, eat everything presented to them.

22. Do you believe that with your defiant heretical assertions you will convert Me, your God in Christ, to your dark paganism with it? - Oh no! that will not happen, but dark hell will receive you when you insist on your dark paganism; for I do not need you as defiant pagans in paradise or in heaven, take note of that!

23. My explanation of what Mary was and now is in this regard, can be read in the *Prayer Book*, and here Chapter 32,3.

56. Veneration of the saints

1. Regarding the canonization of the dead, it has been clearly stated in the treatise on the Angelic greeting, that there are no saints but only blessed ones, and that the prayers and petitions to these gods created by sinister men, are heretical or pagan.

2. Further information on this can be found at : "Worship of dead pictures, statues and relics" [nr. 57].

57. the veneration of dead pictures, statues, signs and figures in the Roman Catholic Church, like the pagans once did.

1. It is the use of the images in and outside churches, be it on public roads, country lanes or in houses, not contrary to the first commandment of God - which forbids to make and set up images, as it says in the third book of Moses (Lev 26:1): "Do not make yourselves idols, nor carved (or painted) images, nor pillars, nor stones with pictorial writing in your land to be set up for worship; for I am Jehovah your God, (who forbids you this)".

2. The use of the images is against the divine prohibition mentioned and therefore idolatry; for I, Jesus Christ your God, knows you best, because I see not only the outer ceremony and worship before such idols inside and out of the church, but also the inner mood of the worshipper who actively takes part in it.

3. They take off their hats before the statues of stone and wood, and the images they paint, and pay homage to them as if they were living men; they make crosses of prayer before them, and pray before the idols that are dead; they call on them, and bow their knees; they kiss the statues and the feet of the figures and the like; they stand or kneel and pray litanies before the statues, or figures, light lamps or lights for them, pray, or sing hymns of praise and supplication to the dead statues, and make all sorts of pagan blubber before them as if they were alive; since I look into your hearts set back into paganism by the priests, it is an abomination before Me, for I abhor such great pagan ceremony.

4. I see well that in the statues you adore and worship Mary and the Roman saints, even if the priests say that it is only for the one represented by the image or figure, that is only half the truth and yet a double paganism, because you adore the dead figure and the one whom the figure presents through prayer, that is what I say who look into your hearts, because I dwell as your Spirit in your heart. Remember this, that all praying, asking, singing and all worship is only for Me your God in Christ and nobody else.

5. That's why I'm telling you: stop crucifying Me with your paganism! And tell My will to all men that they should consider the images, statues and all that they have so far considered holy, except the bare Cross, either merely as dead figures, or I will have to declare My unwillingness publicly and clear everything away from you Myself, if you will not clear it up yourselves.

6. The cross without My suffering figure as a sign of redemption, you shall honour, but it shall only

remind you that I suffered and died on the cross for you. But you are neither to take off your hat nor to make a cross before it; for it is dead stone, dead wood, a dead picture or a dead sign, made by man and therefore an idolatrous showpiece, the moment you begin to show it divine worship.

7. When you pass by a cross, remember Me, your Father Jesus, that I gave My blood and life for you on Golgotha and greet Me: Blessed and praised be our Father Jesus Christ through the sign of His Redemption on Golgotha! See, that is enough, but otherwise clear away all images, statues and columns, destroying the idols of Roman saints; for they are the witnesses of your Roman heresy and paganism in and outside the Church!

58. The Worship of Relics

1. The Roman Catholic Christians act decisively against the first commandment of God when they worship the relics or remains of deceased because:

a) Many of these Roman so-called saints never existed, and everything that the Roman papal church tells about them is based either on error or fiction.

b) Because there are no saints, nor have there ever been, there can be no holy relics.

c) Because many of these people who have canonized the Roman popes, are still in hell.

d) Because the relics were brought in from far away, but mostly from the catacombs, where the dead bones are piled up as abundantly as wood, so that the people never learned the truth as to where they actually came from, and how things are, but they rather pretentiously lied about holy history, stultified the people and then milked their wallets.

e) Because the alleged miracles were either inventions and lies, or they happened merely because of the rock-solid faith of those concerned, so that they did not lose by non-event all faith in the divine, because I as God was painted to them as too holy for a sinner and hidden behind all the stars; but I respond, as Jesus Christ Himself as God's Spirit in man, but not the revered bone moderators of the deceased.

f) Because many relics or remnants of rotting bones do not originate from the same deceased, but from any skeleton of the dead that the priests considered to be suitable; for it was not about the miraculous power of the bones of the dead, but the many monetary merits in Rome and the rich sacrifices in the church, where such bones of the dead were exhibited for worship.

g) It is the greatest nonsense and the darkest paganism to show divine worship to the mouldy remains of a deceased man's skeleton by praying in front of it and kissing these remains of corpses and asking for the prayer to be heard!

2. Paul (1 Cor 15:50) said through My enlightenment to him in the first letter to the Corinthians: "But this I say, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God, and that the corruptible will not inherit the imperishable. And to this, I, Jesus Christ, say: Not even the rotting and moulding bones of the dead!

3. So if the blood, flesh, bones and hair, as the corruptible, will not inherit the kingdom of heaven, how can you give this carrion and decay divine worship! Why, then, do the pagan idolatry use it?

4. Therefore, throw the relics and trinkets into the fire, so that paganism can cease; for My children must be true Christians and not sinister pagans, as you have become through the false teachings of the Roman Catholic faith!

59. A word about the Miracles on the Remains of Blessed ones

1. Is it true that I, God, have more often performed miracles through the remains of the blessed, and have done many good things for men?

2. I did indeed work some miracles on the remains of the blessed because their faith was rock-firm, so that the believer concerned had seized the divinity of his spirit living in him by his great and rock-firm faith and brought it to the fulfillment of the wanted; but with this it is not proved that the rotting and moulding remains of the body of a blessed one have worked this, but only the spirit of God alone has worked this in man, and therefore is the Divine worship according to My first commandment due to Me alone, but never the remains of a deceased man or even his clothes, as subsequent proofs show that God worked miracles due to the confidence in the rock-solid faith of the person concerned:

a) *Philippians 3:21*: The Saviour Jesus Christ will transfigure our void body, that it may be like His transfigured body after the work by which He can subdue all things.

b) *Sirach 48:14* - Nothing had power over him (Elisheus) and even in death his body showed him as a prophet. In his life he did unheard-of things, and even after his death he worked miracles.

c) *2 Kings 2:14* - Elishah smote the waters of the Jordan with the cloak of Elijah, which had fallen away from him, but they were not divided; and he said, Where is the LORD God of Elijah? And he smote the waters again, and the river of Jordan was divided on both sides, and Elijah passed through.

d) *2 Kings 13:21* - And it came to pass that some buried a man; and when suddenly some men of war appeared nearby, they threw the man into the grave of Elisha, which was still open, in fear of the men of war. And as soon as the man touched the bones of Elisha with his body, the man came to life again and stood on his feet and stepped out of the tomb.

e) *Acts 19:11,12* - God did not work small miracles through the hands of Paul, so it was enough to put the sweat cloths and belts from his body on the sick and (according to their firm faith) the diseases deviated from them and the evil spirits drove away (because I, Jesus, wanted this!).

3. The stubborn defenders of priestly paganism refer to it and say: Yes, and yet it happened, so faith in the miraculous power of these relics or objects of the men concerned was justified, for miracles do happen, and that is decisive.

4. But this seemingly decisive defense of the right to worship the remnants of the blessed is based on a great error; for how can a rotting rag or bone work miracles? Who can work a blessed miracle without Me, who is God? How can a miracle happen at all, since I alone hold the privilege of working miracles in My hand, and when a miracle happens, it is always I Myself who work it, even if it appears to come from the adored blessed one.

5. Man is My child and has all My abilities in himself, because I Myself dwell in him; why can man do nothing supernatural out of himself? Certainly not because I am not as courteous to a sinful man as I am to a devout and believing man. This generally known fact shall be authoritative for you and not your self-invented human statutes.

6. Swedenborg said: "The spiritual meaning of this commandment is that no other God than Jesus Christ is our Creator, Father and Saviour and should be worshipped, because there never was any other God than Jesus, only the name was different, namely Jehovah, which in ancient Hebrew means "Father". He is the one who came into the world and accomplished the redemption of the human

race from original sin, reconciled Himself through it with the human race, accepted them back to childhood and opened the children's heaven. Schumi: That all this is based on truth, can be seen from the evidence in the *"Holy Trinity"* and in the books *"Christ and the Bible"* and*, "His Arrival and Return"*.

7. About the heavenly sense of the First Commandment, Swedenborg says that this Jesus Christ as Jehovah Zebaoth, shows us Who is the Lord and Ruler from eternity, the Infinite, the Immense, and the Eternal, that He is the Almighty, the All-Knowing, and the Omnipresent, that He is the First and the Last, or the Beginning and the End, which was, is and will be in Eternity, that He is Love and Wisdom or Good and Truth Himself, therefore eternal Life, therefore the only one out of which everything has arisen.

8. According to this, you shall love Me, God the Father - Who revealed Myself to men in Jesus Christ - with all your heart. You shall have nothing else never and ever in you but the only One, Me, to love - your Father Jesus. If you do this in the right trust, then you have recognized all My commandments in the right light, it will then be easy for you to understand and fulfill each of the ten commandments down to the smallest detail, but how, will I illuminate in a few words:

9. You must always think that I am your Father who cares for you as Creator, that I live in you and am the reason of all life in you, so that I formed you as you are and I gave you the 5 main senses with all the secondary senses; yes, that I share your life and take part in all that you encounter in life and therefore I am your only friend who never leaves you, but cares for you like a father and mother as an immature child of divine mercy. But I am also beside you, and I have created everything only for your life, so that you may live from nature and rejoice in its beauties and presented fruits, yes, that all that you see in the material manifestation of the creative nature, as well as all that works the human intelligence by the divine gift, represents the spiritual activity of the Father in the universe. Everything you see comes out of Me and is put into existence by Me, thus what life in the universe presents, I Myself, as Creator of it, am involved in and live in you, guide you and take care of your progress, and that is why the greatest commandment in the Law is: Love God with all your heart, soul and mind, because then you will never commit a sin, because you fulfill all that I have commanded and taught you to keep. Pay special attention to the second main commandment: Love your neighbour as yourself! Do therefore to him what you want him to do to you, because he is a child of God, therefore your brother, and God, your Father, is also dwelling in him.

60. Violation of the First Commandment

1. Superstition, idolatry, idol-worship, idol ceremonies - in general, church ceremonial worship, idol worship costumes, veneration and false statements about the doctrine of God, idol-worship pomp development. To explain human statutes in the same way as God's commandments and to keep them as such; forgetting God, total godlessness, denial of God; trading in allegedly "consecrated" things, which before God, is deceit; indulgence fraud - confessional absolution, because it is a deception - demand for sacrifice to God and then consuming it themselves (because God as spirit needs nothing material), support of exploitative priests; Ridicule and mockery of everything divine; Satanic cult, Satanic pacts; calling on and praying to the deceased for money, lottery and lottery prizes and material benefits; Pacts with evil spirits; doing evil through spiritual means and one's will; sorcery through practices directed against God.

2. Unbelief in the prophecies of God; murder of the prophets; contradiction and malicious perversion of the mediums because of the words of the Father. Doubting God's words, disturbance of peace, rebellion against the people's leaders appointed by God the Father, complete disobedience. Cursing or blaspheming God, mocking God through songs or pictures, giving God animal names, blaspheming God.

3. Adoration of Mary and saints through the designation: "saint", "saints" (compare Rev 15:4) Adoration of the guardian spirits (guardian saints, patron saints) through the designation: "saint", "saints". Ungratefulness against God's goodness and mercy. Swearing and blaspheming, sacramental animals, heavenly sacramental animals, etc.

61. The Seven Sins against the Holy Spirit

1. When the Pharisees blasphemed Me, saying that I have an unclean spirit, meaning: I am possessed by Beelzebub, with whose help I cast out evil spirits from men, (Mark 3:22-30) I replied to them: Every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven man, but blasphemy or contradiction against the Holy Spirit, will not be forgiven man - either here or there.

2. With this I have told them that this sin is the greatest of all sins and they would experience the greatest punishment. But I want to give you here an enlightenment, which corresponds to My divine love and mercy:

3. It is true that this sin is one of the greatest, but it will also be forgiven if the repentance is great enough, but not as quickly as the other sins. With this I wanted to open your eyes that in the description: God is the eternal love, the eternal mercy and the eternal grace, in Whom lies the security, that, as I said through the prophet Jeremiah, "Tell the people of Israel: I am merciful and will not be angry forever," so also in this blasphemy against the Holy Spirit, My judgement can only be understood to be 'eternal' as long as the sinner will forever not get converted and repent.

4. The sins against the Holy Spirit, of which the seventh is the greatest, are the following:

a) **Sinning, claiming God's mercy**

b) **Despair of God's mercy. This sin is very great and leads man deep into hell.**

c) **Resisting the recognized Christian truth. Here in this sin is shown the infernal quality of man, who sees and recognizes the truth and yet speaks and does against it, so also does Satan, the infernal prince.**

d) **To envy his neighbour divine mercy. - The same achieving power one person has in the spiritual, all others also have. So the one who does not like himself and yet envies others and rejects grace does the same as Satan, because he does not like himself either, and yet he envies others and rejects them by making every effort to make them ineffective by instilling other ideas in them and destroying them.**

e) **To deliberately insist in impenitence. These are cured with time, for in hell they go deeper and deeper into suffering and pain until their power of resistance is broken.**

f) **Having a hardened heart, against all good admonitions.**

g) **<u>To stubbornly assert and do the opposite against the Spirit of Truth from God, who reveals Himself through conscience.</u>**

62. The Second Commandment of God

"Do not call the name of your God vain, for Jehovah will not leave unpunished those who misuse His name. "(Exod 20:7; Deut 5:11)

The name of God is highly holy and inaccessible to unclean spirits; He is the inner energy of living conviction for a pure spiritual child of God; nobody is to pronounce this name frivolously and jokingly, because it contains the spiritual commandment in itself that the wrong-doer, who calls on Him vainly, sins spiritually in himself and darkens himself. Every word that pronounces this name is written in the scales, which, after its pronunciation, raises the person upwards or throws him downwards. Therefore always speak this name with living love, working humility and always powerful, like a ringing bell, in the living love-excitement of your heart. Man should never think, speak or do anything without giving all honour to this holy name, begin all things in this name and end all things in this name, yes, man is called to be the eternal high priest of his living triune God's love, wisdom and omnipotence in his heart, to whom he should offer all things for honour and offer them in love, so that he may become a living temple of God!

63. Prohibition in the Second Commandment

1. In the second commandment, it is forbidden to desecrate God's name.

2. But the name of God is desecrated

a) By abuse in various conversations, especially when one calls God a witness to untruths or lies; further in curses, sorceries and incantations.

b) Through all sins: Paul wrote: You boast of the law, but dishonour God by breaking the law (Rom 2:23).

c) By blasphemy, by speaking contemptuously of God. To criticize the religion of Christ and to drag it through the dung and by setting up philosophical doctrines, for thereby one rejects the divine word and commandment.

d) If you swear without necessity or even falsely. About this I, Jesus, said: I say to you: You shall not swear at all, neither by heaven, because it is the throne of God, nor by earth, because it is the stool of His feet, nor by Jerusalem, because it is the city of the great king. (Matt 5:34) Moses wrote: Thou shalt not swear falsely by My (divine) name, nor profane the name of thy God (by swearing and invoking the name of God to worldly hands); for I am Jehovah. (Lev 19:12) The apostle Jacob tells you the will of God most clearly by writing: But above all, my brethren, swear not, neither by heaven, nor by earth, nor by any other oath; but your affirmation of truth shall be: Let [your] 'yes' be a truthful yes; and [your] 'no!' be a truthful no! So that you may not fall into the judgement of God. (James 5:12 - repaired according to the statement of the Father Jesus)

3. The oath is a sacred thing if it is not directly against the ten commandments. So everyone should think about what they are doing! If the one who swears does not believe in God, then his oath is a fraud; if he believes in God and makes an oath against the ten commandments of God, then it is an outrage against God; for how can anyone call on God to witness, and he does so in full awareness that he will certainly act against Me and trample My divine commandments underfoot!

4. Men act against Me, their God, as against one of their kind. They do not think that God is holy and that one must not draw his name into the filth of the sins of the world. The one who swears, believes

that it does not matter what and how he swears and does not observe the second commandment of God, which forbids to call the name of God vain and to draw God into the world trade of sins and crimes. One stumbles thoughtlessly over everything and does not think whether it seems fair to have stumbled.

5. If you swear, do not seek to commit perjury, because you cannot answer for it, for God has given you the gift of judgement to judge what is right or wrong. Any oath must cease as soon as men become righteous and godly, for 'yes' and 'no' will then suffice.

6. If you break the vows you made to God. Moses expresses himself as follows: If you make a vow to your God Jehovah, do not fail to fulfill it; for Jehovah your God will demand the fulfillment, and if you fail to do so, it will become a sin. If you make no vows, then you have no obligation and sin; - but what you have once vowed, you shall keep and fulfill, as you have voluntarily promised your God Jehovah to do with your own mouth. (Deut 23:21-23)

7. When one calls the name of God without need and without reverence. It has come so far today that people take no notice of the second commandment at all. Who is to blame for it? Probably no-one else but the religious teachers of the people. If they had told the people and often repeated that it is a gross and great sin to always and for all things speak of the holy name of God, people would have noticed this and would have tried to become better. But the priests forgot their duty in their worldliness and men know nothing better - and therefore the name of God is called in vain or abused, while I determined that My name is not to be desecrated but sanctified, as I taught it in the Lord's Prayer.

8. The priests serve the world far too much, by striving for money, honour and dominion; for whoever uses the ceremonies to lure the people to them, to make them stupid and to destroy them spiritually, to make them servants of the pagan ceremonial faith and to make them entirely dependent on the grace and disgrace of the Church and not on God, and all this for personal advantages - such servants of God are not Mine, but the servants of My adversary.

9. That is why the whole world is in trouble, because these not called by Me, have already spiritually torn apart and brought to hell, the unsuspecting sheep of my stable.

10. The people repeatedly blaspheme Me and do not know anything about it, because they are already in an evil hell and mostly possessed by hellish spirits of the deceased. If the priests were indeed servants of God, they should have been horrified by the people, who desecrate My most holy and unapproachable name daily, because I as God am a strict Judge, before whose faces today's mankind, with little exception, is a society of insulters of the majesty of My holy name: they carry Me, Jesus or Christ around on their sinful tongues and thoughtlessly blaspheme God daily. Different idioms in joy, sorrow, jokes and sin, used as exclamations: Oh God! - Oh Jesus! - By Jesus! - Oh Christ! - by Christ! - Oh Christ Son of God! - People live like God in France! - Oh Lord! and the like they bring to daylight. I said through (Exod 20:7) Moses:

11. "Thou shalt not call the name of God vain, thereby abusing it; for I will not leave unpunished those who call My name vain, thereby abusing it."

12. This also includes the names Jehovah, Zebaoth, the Holy One of Israel and the Holy Spirit.

13. The priests should watch over this holy law with all severity, because they are responsible to Me. And what do they do? But through their silence - and thereby approval of the people's abuse, they deprive the people of their salvation, because man must discard all such vices, passions and abuses in hell before he is admitted into paradise, because they are not allowed in paradise. Because nobody comes to paradise until he got rid of the great mistakes against My genuine Christ-teaching, but this always needs years and years, because nobody can quickly get rid of his vices, lusts, desires and passions.

14. As with My divine name, so do people also commit great abuse with Mary and Joseph. Remember, you thoughtless people, that these names are too holy for you to always roll them around on your sinful tongue. Oh Mary! - Jesus, Mary and Joseph! is your usual cry and exclamation on every occasion, be it joking, serious, amazed, even when you commit the worst sins!

15. Therefore, listen to Me! Just as every child is devoted only to those persons who take care of him in the worldly and not to those who never worry about their worldly welfare, so I am devoted to My dear Mother of My body, Mary, and My dear provider Joseph, because of their former care which they gave Me then, and therefore I do not want you to call them in vain, mock or badmouth them. You can greet Mary, but you cannot worship her, as you have done so far and built temples (churches) for her; - but you are also not to forget her, just as you are not to forget Joseph, because they are in My great favour.

16. And the many God- and heavens- sacramental animals and cursing is a ticket into the kingdom of hell; for the spirits of hell do the same thing, and when you do it, you are immediately surrounded by a great multitude of the worst devils from hell, who diligently second you and cheer you on to be hellish. For the second hell is on earth, and you are day and night in this society when you act against My commandments.

17. And now look into the countries which are well known to all, because they are great and lie in Europe and where I am blasphemed much! - There are certain kinds of people who are the disciplinary rod of God for the people who, whether small or great, constantly curse Me, desecrate Me with their tongue or words, give Me names which are under all criticism; and also give the Mother of My body names which I will not dare to tell you! Yes, the people do not deal much better with the holiness of the divine in their words, as they once did in Sodoma and Gomorrah. That is why they are also under My well-deserved disciplinary rod here – and [once they] have arrived in the spirit realm - all go where their spiritual services in life guided them. Hell is their home. And to all this infernal offspring of the blasphemy of My holy name, the priests are silent and carelessly let the people entrusted to them, go to hell.

18. The worse the people, the more misery they must suffer by the Church and the State, and if that is not enough, by other plagues and vermin in human form, being haunted, exploited, tricked, deceived and oppressed. Do you now understand where the infernal conditions of the world in which you find yourselves, come from?

a) If one falsifies the name of God : The falsification of the name of God means to pronounce the name of God differently formed and twisted by wit and joking.

b) If one falsifies the word of God: (2 Cor 2:17) Falsifying the word of God means to, for selfish reasons, knowingly interpreting it differently than the basic meaning, or also interpreting it differently from wrong opinions and persistently insisting in this falsification or delusion, and in spite of the clearly speaking evidence to the contrary, not to return to it.

19. So far all Christian churches and sects have suffered from this gross sin.

64. The Command in the Second Commandment

In the second commandment is commanded: That God's name should be sanctified, used with reverence, called upon in all needs, and praised and glorified.

1. It says in the Lord's Prayer: "Hallowed be thy name!" Therefore, man should do everything for the sanctification of the name of God and this can only happen through the sanctification of man's own life, because man is, according to his body, a temple of God, according to his soul, a penitential priest

of God - or should be. Therefore man should sanctify his life by doing what I, God his Father, teach him to do and say that he should indeed turn it back to the truth.

2. Every man, who has knowledge of these My commandments, should know that every word, and every thought, which is not in agreement with My love, is a transgression of this commandment given by Me, because he thereby abuses My holy name. The pure love for God and mankind as children of God, is what protects you, not to transgress this commandment, but to fulfill it, because love is the fulfillment of the law.

3. You shall love Me, your Father Jesus, and worship and respect Me above all else so that you may not desecrate My Name, but always give only praise, glory and thanksgiving. This I desire from You and from everyone else who has recognized Me in My all joy-giving love. For it is love that redeems you from the yoke of darkness.

4. The name of God is honoured and sanctified by man:

a) When God is openly confessed before the whole world, as King David says in the Psalm, "I will lift you up my God and king and praise your name forever. I will praise you every day and praise your name forever and ever (Ps 145:1,2) and so I as Jesus, said: Whoever will confess Me before men, I will confess him also before My Father who is in heaven.

b) When one asks God for help and assistance in spiritual and bodily needs: David (Ps 50:15) says in the Psalm: "Call to Me, Jehovah on the day of tribulation, and I will save you, and you shall praise Me". John writes: This is the trust we have in Jesus that He will listen to us in all that we will desire according to His will (John 16:23). (1 John 5:14)

c) Even if one does not testify in a lawful manner by swearing an oath and calling God to witness in order to make something credible. - Moses says: "Fear Jehovah your God and serve Him alone and swear by His name. (Deut 6:13) But this alone contradicts what the apostle Jacob said according to My (Jesus') teaching: "Above all, My brethren, swear not, neither by heaven, nor by earth, nor by any other oath (neither therefore by God); your affirmation of truth shall be: 'Yes', but that must be a truthful 'yes'; and 'no!' that must also be a truthful 'no'! - so that you do not fall into the judgement of God. (James 5:12) To swear by My holy name, is therefore not permitted and the statement of Moses is to be regarded as a human error.

5. How then is the witness to 'yes' and 'no' to be considered when a man lies and thinks: I have not called on God as a witness, but have merely told a white lie, for which I will ask God for forgiveness, since there will be a great difference between a lie in great trouble and an oath by God's name?

6. A lie in great trouble when it causes essential damage to the innocent opponent, but relieves the guilty party or criminal who has lied, is in the Divine eyes such a great crime, that it resembles a perjury, because in this case the judge - who is to pronounce a just judgement - has been lied to; furthermore, the injustice happened to the innocent but the criminal has been pronounced innocent.

7. Think that all this has happened in the presence of God, because God's Spirit dwells in the breast of every human being, thus being the witness of the crime, whether one calls upon Him to witness or not.

a) If you faithfully fulfill the vows you made to God. David admonishes in the Psalm: "Bless and keep your vow to Jehovah your God, all you who go after him, and bring gifts of love from the heart (love-prayers in humility of heart) to the awe-inspiring. (Ps 76:12)

b) If one hears the word of God diligently and devoutly and lives and acts according to it. About this Paul writes: "Let the word of Christ dwell abundantly in you with all wisdom! Teach and exhort one another with psalms and songs of praise and sweet spiritual songs

and sing to God in the love of your hearts." Luke: "Blessed are those who hear the word of God and observe it." (Luke 11:28)

c) If one does everything for the praise and glory of the divine name or sacrifices to God, about which two passages from the New Testament speak: "Always give thanks to God the Father for everything in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ." (Ephesians 5:20) "May you eat or drink, or whatever you do, always do it to the glory of God (1 Cor 10:31) and sacrifice it to Him!"

8. The name of God is holy and can therefore be mentioned and used in all holy acts, such as prayers, songs, spiritual lectures or readings, and in all writings written for the glory of God.

9. Just as it is forbidden to mention the name of God vainly, it is also sacred to call the name of God, Jesus, Christ, Jehovah, Zebaoth, and especially the Father Jesus, the object of one's life, and to invoke it in all love.

10. The name "Jehovah" was considered holy by the Jews, whom they did not dare to mention frivolously, nor still dare to pronounce. Therefore the evangelists and apostles instead of "Jehovah" rather said "the Lord", as this is illustrated by various passages and quotations in the New Testament taken from the Old Testament, in which 'the Lord' is used, instead of Jehovah, such as Matt 22:37; Luke 10:27, compared with Deut 6:5 and elsewhere.

11. That the apostles considered the name "Jesus" just as high and holy as Jehovah, is also stated by the apostle Paul, referring Isaiah, (Is 45:23; Rom 14:11; Phil 2:10) who says: "That all the knees of those who are in heaven and on earth and under the earth should bow before the name of Jesus, and that all tongues should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father"; and that He cannot be called by the devils in hell, which is also known from spiritualistic meetings.

65. In Spiritual Sense

1. In the spiritual sense, everything is understood by the name of God, which is taught from the word of God and by which the Lord Jesus Christ or God is called, invoked and worshipped, because everything at all, which concerns the name of God, is included in it, and therefore by "drawing the name of God into worldly vanity" is understood: to take something from it, in useless and worldly talk, in lies, imprecations, sorceries and incantations; because if one makes use of the name of God, then His holy name is drawn into the unholy and thus desecrated and blasphemed.

2. The following passages of Holy Scripture bear witness to the fact that everything that concerns the teaching of God is the holy Word of God or Christ, and what one has out of it, thus all enlightenments and teachings on how one should serve God and regard one's neighbour as a child of God, is the teaching and glorification of the name of God:

3. *Malachi 1:11-13*: "From the rising of the sun to the setting [thereof], My Name is great among the nations, and in all places My Name is offered incense and pure sacrifice; for great is My Name, says Jehovah, the Lord of hosts. But you desecrate him when you say, "The table of Jehovah is unclean; and yet believe to reconcile My name, when you bring stolen, lame and sick [goods] to sacrifice.

4. Micah 4:5 - All nations walk in the name of their God, but we will walk in the name of Jehovah our God for ever and ever.

5. *Deut 12:5,11,13,14,18* - They will worship Jehovah in a place where He will put His name, where they will hold His worship service.

6. *John 1:12* - As many as have received Him, to them He gave power to be sons of God, to those who believe in His name.

7. *John 3:18* - He who believes in Him is not condemned, but he who does not believe is already condemned, because he does not believe in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

8. *John 20:31*: Those who believe that Christ is the Son of God, have life in His name.

9. *John 17:26* - I said: I have made Your name known to men, so that Your love in Me, may abide in them.

10. *Revelation 3:5* - He who overcomes shall be adorned with white garments! I will never erase his name from the Book of Life; before My Father and His angels, I will confess his name.

11. In addition to the passages mentioned above, there are many more where the name of God is to be understood as the Divine in the word that emanates from God and through which He is worshipped.

12. Under the name Jesus i.e. Redeemer, Rescuer, Saviour or Doctor, is understood the whole of salvation, the repatriation of the childhood of God for all people through the suffering and dying on the cross.

13. But under the name of Christ, the whole of the beatification through His teaching - because the name Christ means 'anointed one' or 'king' - with whose teaching, legislation and order of state, the nations are to be made happy.

66. In Heavenly Sense

1. In the heavenly sense, the name of God is understood to mean to engage in vanity or worldliness, as Jesus said to the Pharisees: "Every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven man, but blasphemy against the Holy Spirit will not be forgiven. (Matt 12:31,32.) By the blasphemy of the Holy Spirit is meant the blasphemy against the Divinity or denial of the Divinity in the human Jesus, and in dragging the truth or holiness of the divine word through the dung. Especially the stubborn assertion of the opposite and acting against the Spirit of Truth from God, who reveals Himself through [man's] conscience and reveals the truth through inspiration.

2. To understand that the name Jehovah or Father means I, Jesus as God and man, or God-man in the heavenly or highest sense, is illuminated by the following passages of Holy Scripture:

3. *John 12:28* - I said, Father glorify Thy name! And there came a voice from heaven which said: I have not only glorified Him, but I will also glorify Him further.

4. *John 14:13,14* - everything you will ask in My Name I will do so that the Father may be glorified in the Son; if you will ask something in My Name, I will do it.

5. In the Lord's prayer, "Hallowed be thy name," in the heavenly sense, nothing else is said, albeit in various profound expressions. (See *Prayer Book* 3d edition)

67. The Third Commandment of God

"You shall sanctify the Sabbath." (Exodus (2nd book of Moses) 20:8; - Deut (5th of Moses 12)

The name Sabbata means "rest" in Hebrew, thus the day of rest from material work.

68. The Reason why Sabbath Sanctification was Introduced

1. The Sabbath sanctification had its origin already in Adam's time (year 919) as the '*Household of God'* reports about it.

2. Later, when the people of Israel were in Egypt, the abuses began to take hold, so that they, like the Gentiles, did not want to sanctify a day any longer and spent their days of life thoughtlessly.

3. But when the dialogue between Me and Moses on Mount Sinai came to the thoughtlessness of the Israelites, and that they, like the Gentiles, lived through all days in the same way, Moses was of the opinion that, as there were seven time periods in the creation period, so one could determine a seventh day where all work should cease and man should only think of God and the spiritual, and I prescribed the Sabbath sanctification with My own fingers.

4. For Christians, the celebration of only the seventh day of the week is not decisive; but, as I work every day and never rest - as you see daily in the course of the sun, moon, stars, earth, in the transformation of nature, in your life, as you daily eat, drink, sleep and keep watch and therefore walk every day in the same way in My way, so it is My will that you also serve Me, God, daily - worship Me, adore Me through self-sanctification and glorify only Me - and through Me, live and grow in love to the neighbour.

5. But the Sabbath, as the seventh day, although God is to be worshipped, honoured and glorified in the same way every day, is not to be abolished, but remains as a perfect holiday, where material work is to rest and only spiritual things are to be thought and worked; but also material works of charity are to be worked, if the circumstances so require, as I, Jesus Myself, healed the dropsy-sufferer from his illness on the Sabbath (Luke 14:1-6) and said that there is no special day for doing good, since every day is a working day in the work of divine love.

69. Misunderstanding about the Sabbath Sanctification among the Jews

1. The keeping of the Sabbath was very strict with the spirit-dead Israelites. In the following places it is ordered to keep the Sabbath - Exod 20:8-11; 23:12; Deut 12-14; Isa 56:4-6; Jer 17:22,24,27. - In the following three passages it is said that whoever breaks the Sabbath, shall die: Exod 31:14-16; 35:2; Ezek 20:11-13.

2. As the fact shows, neither the people, nor Moses, nor Aaron understood the meaning of the spiritual language of God in the third commandment. In Genesis 15:32-36 the following story is written: "Now when the children of Israel were in the wilderness, they found a man of their family

gathering wood on the sabbath day. And they that found him there, while he was picking wood, brought him to Moses and Aaron, and before all the congregation. And they took him captive; for it was not clear what should be done with him. And Jehovah said to Moses (in a spiritual sense), The man shall die; the whole congregation shall stone him outside their camp. Then all the congregation brought him out before the camp, and stoned him to death, as Jehovah told Moses. —

3. So it happened, because of the non-observance of the commandment of Sabbath sanctification. - But the meaning of God's word was different, namely: "The man shall die", means: "I count it as sin, which is the death of the spirit", "that the whole congregation shall stone him outside the camp," has this meaning: "The whole church should harden their hearts against the transgressor of the commandment", i.e. not keep company, but avoid him to his shame (until he repents). - In the following examples, the wrong concept of Sabbath-sanctification among the Jews will be illuminated:

a) Because cooking is work, you shall not eat on the Sabbath either, but you shall hunger, for eating is also work of the feet that go to eat, then of the hands, mouth, stomach, and abdomen; - so let also your cattle hunger and thirst, for feeding and watering is work. —

b) Don't collect wood on the Sabbath in winter and don't heat up on the Sabbath, but rather freeze to death together with your whole family. You may be a murderer of a man and commit suicide, but you have not broken the Sabbath, you do not walk into hell because of Sabbath-sanctification, but only because of the multiple murder of man.

c) If your child falls into water and drowns without your help, let him drown; for by this you have not desecrated the Sabbath, but you are a murderer of man, and hell is open to you.

d) If a thunderstorm threatens to damage or even destroy your house, watch and let it happen; for by this you do not break the Sabbath, but you are a heartless criminal and evildoer in your family, because you have thereby plunged them into misery. —

e) If your wife comes into the sorrows of labour, and there is a danger that mother and child will perish without help, let it happen calmly, do not break the Sabbath rest, but rather break the fifth commandment and become the double murderer of man, as long as you do not desecrate the Sabbath! —

4. These examples shall serve you as the best illumination of the misunderstanding of Sabbath sanctification. You shall not rest and lounge on the Sabbath, but watch and pray, sanctify yourselves, and work works of love for God and your neighbour, and work where you know and can and where the altar of sacrifice of God is - the poor, the sick, and the needy - be open to them, that you may help them with words and deeds and alleviate their distress; help to alleviate their illnesses if you can, then you sanctify the Sabbath as I, your Father Jesus, did Myself on the Sabbath, by healing the dropsy-sufferer, and preached a sermon to the letter-heroes of the law of Moses, that they had to remain silent in the face of their misinterpretation of the law. (Luke 14:2)

70. Why did the Original Christians leave the Jewish Sabbath and introduce Sunday?

1. According to Moses, the legal Jewish Sabbath has existed since 30 March 1490 before Christ. The Original Christians, however, because they were mostly gathered from among Gentiles, were more taken up with their Sunday (deis solis) and therefore already in the year 120 after Christ, began to sanctify the Sunday.

2. The motivation was because I, Christ, rose from the dead on Sunday. But that was not a valid reason; for I did rise after the Sabbath, but March 27, as the resurrection day, arrives very unequally

after a post-Sabbath as Sunday March 27. But the division remained, since the actual day of the month of the Resurrection was no longer known and could therefore not be implemented, and so it happened that the reasoning of paganism served as a basis for the similarly important Christian.

3. In the year 321, Emperor Constantine the Great finally issued a decree according to which the celebration of Sunday instead of the Jewish Sabbath was generally fixed. He hated the Jews and everything connected with them and said:

4. *"This day should be regarded as a special occasion of the best kind, because it is the day of the sun, the day of our lord."*

5. The Church, because at that time the Roman bishops were still obedient subjects of the emperors, had to accept this decree, although it was the day of the sun-worshippers among the pagans, but at that time, one did not dare to contradict or even oppose the emperor, and so it remained to this day.

6. In the year 325 after Christ, the 20th year of Constantine the Great's reign, the famous Council of Nicea was convened. At this Council, the Roman clergy appeared with the assertion that there is a God who is separated, but nevertheless united (!): Father and Son, to whom they still added the Holy Spirit after 56 years at the Council of Constantinople, and thus invented the three-person God.

7. It was Constantine the Great who decided on the profession of faith of the Church, ordering the assembled Bishops to regard the decrees of the Council of Nicea as inspirations of the Holy Spirit. Since that time the Church has declared this Creed, which is repeated almost every Sunday in all Orthodox Churches authentically, but this is decidedly not true, because it was precisely at this Council that the inspiration of the Holy Spirit failed to materialize, since the Roman priests fought for and advocated the primacy of the Church of Christ for Rome.

8. Those who have read the biography of Constantine the Great, will remember how strange the character of this so-called pious supporter of ecclesiastical dogmas or human statutes was. He condemned his own son and his wife Fausta to death on unfounded suspicion, rejected his brother-in-law Licinus and his innocent son, and had each of his opponents slaughtered. Nevertheless the Greek church canonized him and worships him together with the Roman Church as the "holy Constantine". - The Roman Church began to become increasingly more powerful after they decided in the year 364 at the council of Laodicea, and commanded that everyone must observe the Sunday, declaring excommunication on all those who steadfastly adheres to the observance of the Sabbath of the Lord and forced all, under threat of penalty, to do the daily work on the Sabbath day.

9. Thus the Roman Church rejected the Sabbath which God commanded Moses, [and] cursed those who celebrated it by Divine will, and solemnly set in motion the day of pagan sun-worship! — Throughout the Scriptures there is no word to justify this sacrilegious and blasphemous violence against the divine Sabbath, which Jehovah has engraved out of His own will, with His Divine finger: You shall sanctify the Sabbath! (Exodus 20:8)

10. The Church first made Christians out of Gentiles, then Gentiles out of Christians; therefore the development of the Sundays and holidays gradually flourished into days which are spent eating, drinking, fornicating, and committing all sorts of anti-Christian things.

11. When men will reach insight and love, humility and reverence for God, they will again celebrate the lifelong Sabbath through fulfillment of the divine commandments and then also My divine blessing will rest on the world.

71. Swedenborg asks: What do we actually mean by the term "Sabbath"?

1. "One cannot insist on the literal sense, but understand the word in the broadest spiritual sense. For the true Sabbath of the Christian is neither a certain day of the week, as there would be Saturday or Sunday, nor any holiday, may it be called Christmas, New Year, Epiphany, Easter, Pentecost, Feast of Tabernacles, or any other holiday, but rather it is to be regarded as the day of the Spirit in man, the Divine Light in the human spirit, the rising sun of life in the human soul, in short, the living day of the Lord in man, which he will more and more recognize and sanctify the more his actions will spring from true love for God and his neighbour."

2. Father Jesus: In order to achieve this, day after day and continuously until rebirth and baptism by fire with the Holy Spirit of love, wisdom and power, you should pay attention to your vices, desires, lusts, bad qualities and blasphemies and seek the same by renunciation to the various joys of the world and renunciation of all this that draws you to matter, completely suppressing and eradicating it within you so that you may then be given gifts and grace of the Holy Spirit, to become children of God.

3. This is the actual Sabbath sanctification, as it was intended by the Adamites and in the Ten Commandments on Sinai.

4. But the sanctification of the seventh day is only a break from work after six days, in which you gain more time to think of Me and to sanctify yourselves spiritually or to purify yourselves spiritually from sins, which draw you to matter and sanctify all your thoughts, i.e. to turn them completely from matter and to Me; for I am a jealous Bridegroom of your soul and will not tolerate the ogling of the matter of sin! Either serve Me completely, or serve matter completely, because one cannot serve Me and Satan at the same time, because I am the Lord in Spirit, but Satan is the lord in matter.

5. But as, besides the perpetual Sabbath, also the seventh day of the week is desired as day of rest, regeneration and sanctification of the soul, so then it is My will that you are to carry over the seventh day as day of rest but again back to Saturday and instead of Sunday, celebrate everywhere the same through love for Me and through the activity in works of charity. How you are to sanctify the Sabbath, I have explained to you in the appendix to the *Holy Trinity* about visiting of the churches.

72. The Sabbath sanctification of the children of Israel.

1. The Sabbath was a very holy day for the Israelites because it represented the Lord; the six aeons or periods were works and battles with the primeval spirits in the creation of the world, the seventh aeon represents the spiritual victory of Jehovah over them and thus the rest of the Lord, and therefore for each aeon, one day is exemplarily represented as a working day and for the seventh aeon, the Sabbath day of rest, on which only the salvation of the soul was to be provided. But one observed the law only outwardly-materially and by that, brought it so far that not even the Lord of the Sabbath could be recognized any more - Him, the Holy Father, as He was driven by infinite love for His children, came to earth. He indeed came to his own; but his own became so worldly, they did not receive Him, quarrelled with Him, gave false witness of Him, sought His life, and, when His time had passed and He allowed it, they took Him captive and crucified Him! —

2. The Sabbath also represented the time in which rest for the daily [work] shall reign, but all the more care should be taken and gathered for the eternal, until the redemption took place on the cross for original sin.

3. This training came to an end through My death on the cross, as atonement and redemption from the Old Testament transgressions (Hebr 9:15; Rom 3:25), by which original sin is meant. (Gen 3:15)

4. How the Sabbath was to be celebrated from then on, I showed through My lifestyle, words and deeds; because through My appearance, the form stopped - now the celebration of the Sabbath began in the spirit and in truth, that means through spiritual gathering and feeding of the soul and through works of love for God and the neighbour.

5. You can see that the Sabbath became a day for teaching divine things, because I taught on Sabbath days in the temple and in the synagogues. (Matt 21:21; Mark 14:49; John 8:2; Mark 6:2; Luke 4:31-33; 13:10)

6. As a correspondence of the spiritual gathering and satiation from the Divine pantry, is to consider the historical event when, as I once with My disciples went through a grain field, the disciples, being hungry, rubbed the ears and ate the grains, which spiritually means so much as that one should go into the divine cornfield of love, there the heavenly doctrine as food for the soul grows, and collect food, so that the spiritual hunger can be met, satisfying the soul with good food one can live and act on. (Matt 12:1-9; Mark 2:23-28; Luke 6:1-6)

7. On the Sabbath day I also healed several sick people, which was strictly forbidden with the Jews and on which they strongly insisted, but I gave them such questions and explanations about their wrong way of looking at and acting concerning the sanctification of the Sabbath, against their grumbling and quarrelling, that they could not answer Me anything; I proved to them that the Sabbath is there to do good to one's neighbour, and told them that I was also the Lord of the Sabbath - that is, that I am the Lord who commanded the Sabbath to be sanctified, (Matt 12:8; Mark 2:28; Luke 6:5) but that they did not really understood the sanctity; only they did not understand that I was their Jehovah, so I showed them through teachings and healing of the sick, how I actually intended the Sabbath to be sanctified. (Matt 12:10-14; Mark 3:1-9; Luke 6:6-12; 13:10-18; 14:1-7; John 5:9-19; 7:22,23; 9:14-16)

8.

73. In Spiritual Sense

1. Sanctification of the Sabbath is to be understood as follows: Through the six working days - the fight against the flesh and its desires, in which the evil and the wrong in man are defeated, suppressed and the whole character of the mind is arranged and settled in the good and the true; the seventh day, as the connection with the Lord, is called the rebirth or baptism by fire with the Holy Spirit, because when this takes place, the struggle with matter ceases and the rest of the soul and the mind begins.

2. The struggles of man against the flesh and its desires - if they are properly waged and well carried out - correspond to the wars of Jehovah in creation (Numbers 21:14,15; enlightened in Ev. John Ch. VII chap. 17- 21) as well as the struggles of Jehovah in Me, Jesus, against the evil and wrong of the flesh and the world. (ChtS. IX Chap. 298, 299; Isaiah chpt 53,63)

74. In Heavenly Sense

1. By this commandment is meant: The connection of man with his God and Father, or the attainment of grace for entry into heaven, where peace and tranquillity reign in man. That is why I was called 'Jesus the Peacemaker', because I am the foundation of the heavenly state in man, where peace and contentment reign in man. Jehovah (Jesus) as Prince of Peace is called such in several passages of

the prophets:

2. Isaiah 9:5,6: A boy is born to us, a son is given to us, on whose shoulder the dominion rests, His name is designated by 6 attributes of divinity: Wonderful, Counsel, Power (or Spirit of God), Hero, Father of Eternity, and Prince of Peace; His dominion and peace will not end forever.

3. *Psalm 85:9,11*: Jehovah will speak peace to His people, justice and peace will kiss.

4. *Psalm 55:19* - Jehovah will redeem my soul in peace.

5. *Isaiah 52:7* - How sweet are the feet of him who brings good news and makes peace heard on the mountains, saying, 'Your God is king!'

6. *Isaiah 32:17,18* - Jehovah's work is peace, works of righteousness, rest and security for eternity, so that they may dwell in the tents of security, and in quiet rest.

7. *Matthew 10:12-14 and Luke 10:5,6* - I, Jesus, said to the seventy whom I sent out: When you go into a house, say first, 'Peace to this house', and if there is a son of peace in it, your peace will rest on him.

8. *John 14:27* - I said: "Peace I leave you, My peace I give you".

9. *John 16:33* - I also said, "This I have spoken, that ye may have peace in Me."

10. *John 20:19,21,26* - When I Jesus appeared to My disciples on the day of resurrection, I said: 'Peace be with you!'

11. Apart from these passages of the Holy Scriptures, the state of peace in which you are to come through Me, the Lord, is dealt with in Isaiah, chapters 65 and 66 and elsewhere.

75. How to sanctify Sundays and Holidays these days

1. Now we come to the consideration of how today's Christian world sanctifies its Sundays and holidays in order to know the difference between My spiritual perpetual penitential Sabbath and the pagan one appointed by priests, the Sun Worship Days or Sundays, as human statutes.

2. Today's Sundays and holidays, as they are now celebrated, especially in the Roman Catholic Church, are true days of mourning for Me and days of joy for Satan and his hell-devils. The whole ecclesiastical ceremony is pagan and therefore anti-Christian, thereby an abomination in My eyes, as I had announced the errors in Old Testament passages. —

3. People go to church in the morning, some even in the afternoon, in luxury and arrogance, dressed like a peacock, attends the spirit-killing ceremony, believes to have done their Christian duty as a believing Christian, and go home just as dead in spirit, as they went to church, because their thoughts and eyes were with the priest performing the ceremony and with the luxurious clothes of those present, and not immersed in the spirit with Me.

4. The bigger the holiday, the bigger the pagan ceremony in the Roman churches; the bigger the luxury of perfumed clothes, for which they then walk around in hell in stinking rags and half-naked dress. - The masses, where the high flyers are present, are mostly only luxury-dress, display and rendezvous exhibitions and show-off [time] for the equipage-owners.

5. Once they leave the church, they do not think about it any further, but only about how to spend the

morning and afternoon. They think of visiting and excursions and walks, where a lot of sinful but rarely spiritual things are spoken about. They also think of eating, drinking, driving, riding, music, dancing, playing and bingeing, lying, cheating, political association meetings and all sorts of entertainments, which consecrate the day to evil.

6. To do a necessary work is sin; to offend God is not. - The day of the Lord should serve to kindle the Divine light in the human spirit, as the rising sun of life in the human soul. On the other hand, this very day is spent in vanity, and when at last the tempers are heated - for lewd spiritual dilapidation and for deeds that find their echo in hell. — I tell you, there are no sadder days of loss for Me than your Sundays and holidays, and no greater days of gain for hell than the days that should be lived and celebrated only for Me. That is why I will have to take everything away to change also these days when you go to Satan's service, to hell, so that it becomes impossible for you to celebrate it only for the joy and fullness of hell.

7. I still have much to say about it, especially about playing, cursing and blaspheming Me, and committing all sorts of crimes closely resembling wild hellish days; - but the best thing is that I act instead of giving moral lectures about it, otherwise you will not change. —

8. It is a well-known fact that most sins are committed on Sundays; for when the tempers are heated, then in the rush, the character of the mind of the inner man comes into play, and there one recognizes by the excesses, brutalities, insults, quarrels, brawls, riots, crimes, and other sins and vices which kind of infernal spirit resides in man, who is kept in restraint in a sober state by laws and enforced decency. But one then also recognizes whether there is a higher spirit in man; for in intoxication, man presents himself as he is, and there one soon recognizes the dominant character of mind and in which spiritual sphere he belongs, into the good or into the hellish! - Intoxication is the traitor of the inner spiritual man, because man then behaves as he is inwardly, unless he has a special purpose to keep himself in check.

76. The Fourth Commandment of God

"You shall honour your father and your mother, that you may live long and be well on earth"(Exod 20:12; Deut 5:16)

77. The Commandment in the Fourth Commandment

In the fourth commandment it is especially commanded that the children should love their parents, honour them, serve them, obey in everything that is not against God's commandments, assist in spiritual and bodily needs, and pray for them.

1. Prophets and apostles have written about the duties of children towards their parents and these teachings are to be honoured and fulfilled as follows:

2. Honour your father and your mother; this is the first commandment of the promise - (Ephesians 6:2) Honour your father with all your heart, and do not forget the pains of your mother! (Sirach 7:29)

3. He who fears the Lord, honors his parents and serves those who have generated him as his masters. With word and deed (and with patience) honour your father! (Sirach 3:8,9)

4. Children, obey your parents in all that is not against the commandment of God, for in it the Lord

has His pleasure. (Col. 3:20) - Children, obey your parents in the Lord; for this is right. (Ephesians 6:1) - One must obey God more than human beings (Acts 5:29) and He commands one to obey one's parents also. (Exod 20:12)

5. But if a widow has children or grandchildren, she (the widow) shall first learn to govern her own house divinely and to repay her parents for the good received; for this is well done and pleasant before God. (1Tim 5:4) - My child, take care of your father in old age and do not deceive him as long as he lives, and if his senses diminish, give him credit and do not despise him in your power; for the good that you show your father, will never be forgotten. (Sirach 3:14,15)

6. Thus I exhort above all things that you first of all do petition, prayer, intercession and thanksgiving for all people. (1 Tim 2:1)

78. The Prohibition in the Fourth Commandment

In the fourth commandment it is forbidden: To disobey the parents, to hate them, to despise them, to mock them, to revile them, to curse them, to leave them in distress or to harm them, about which the following verdicts exist:

1. *2 Timothy 3:2,5* - People will be full of self-love, greedy, boastful, arrogant, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, vicious ... and avoid such!

2. *2 Samuel, Chap. 15-18* - Read the story of Absalom, the evil son of David.

3. *Proverbs 23:22* "Listen to your father who begat you, and do not despise your mother when she grows old.

4. *Proverbs 30:17* - "An eye that mocks the father and despises to obey the mother, the brook ravens shall peck it out and the young ravens shall eat it.

5. *Lev 20:9* - He that curses his father or mother shall die (spiritually). Let his blood (i.e. crime) be on him who has cursed his father or mother.

6. *Exodus 21:15*: He that smites his father or his mother shall die of death. - Proverbs 28:24: He who takes something from his father or mother and says that it is not sin, is the comrade of a robber.

79. Promise of God to Good Children

1. The children who fulfill this commandment are promised a long life and well-being:

2. *Deut 5:16:* "You shall honour your father and your mother, as the LORD your God has commanded you, that you may live long, and that it may be well for you in the land which the Lord your God will give you.

80. Sentence on evil Children

1. Children who do not fulfil this commandment have to fear temporal and otherworldly punishments:

2. *Exodus 27:16:* "Without honour is he (Moses says: "Cursed", which is decidedly wrong, because God's Spirit dwells in man, whose bride (soul) cannot be cursed!) who does not honour his father and mother, and all people shall say: Amen!

3. This commandment is a holy commandment for every human being! - Think about what the parents have to do from the birth of the child for its care and what they have to worry about! - The children can never compensate their parents for this trouble and affliction and their constant worry.

4. The Roman priests are overseeing the wedding of a bride and groom for the sake of money, but everything else regarding the upbringing of the children already from the mother's womb, is of secondary importance to them; only when the children go to school, the doctrine of God is taught to the little ones the way it is taught as the priests want it, who wants them to be thoughtless, spiritually dead churchgoers, who simply believe what the priests say, but stamp everything else as anti-Christian with the highest divine stamp of truth, which does not agree with the teachings of the priests. The people are spiritually killed by the priests since tender youth, prevented from thinking from their own heart and head, and subordinated to the church, dead in spirit. For the church can only use such believers for its purposes, but not spiritually awakened and independently thinking beings. That is why it demands unconditional and unthinking faith in the infallibility of priestly words.

5. Parents have received a high responsibility from Me in the children, and I will reclaim from them unspoilt beings who have been ennobled through good spiritual teachings. But the question is: How will spiritually dead parents return spiritually alive, enlightened and ennobled children to Me?

6. The next question is: How can parents, whose life and actions violate My teaching, educate and train their children to become angels to Me? They indeed receive innocent beings from My hand, but the parents' lifestyle does not correspond to the divine commandments, and therefore they educate their children [to be] evil devils instead of angels. - And what the parents do not accomplish is helped on by some human statutes in the spiritual teaching, as well as the great worldliness in schools, laws and institutions. (Read also ChtS. III, Chap. 211)

7. In the broader sense, when the child's parents are dead, the guardians to whom the warders are subordinated, must be honoured and obeyed.

8. In the political sense, it is the love and veneration of one's own fatherland, which nourishes and protects you, including therefore, obedience to the good authorities, which care for their subjects in fatherly fashion; for so I as Jesus taught, because what is good comes from God, but what is not good, is not from God.

81. Violation of the Fourth Commandment

Refused obedience to God-fearing parents; grant the children everything; tolerating youthful infatuation; obedience to parents who teach the children to do evil or steal, to do evil to the parents, to mistreat, hurt, or kill the parents; let one's own family suffer hunger and misery due to one's own fault, drinking or gambling addiction, work-shyness and the like.

82. A Section from the Spiritual Sun

1. The fourth commandment is quite material, the promise of a long life and well-being only on earth, only these words are ambiguous, it is considered to be only for earthly life, but the main and actual

meaning of the commandment is purely spiritual, because it comes from the spirit of God. But the spiritual meaning is:

2. ***Children! Obey the order of God, which emanates from His love and wisdom (i.e. father and mother), that you may live a long and thriving life on earth.***

3. What is "long life" and what is in comparison, "eternal life"? - Long life means life in wisdom; and "long" is not to be understood as the duration, but as the expansion, and the ever-increasing power, of life; for the word or term "life" already includes eternal duration in itself. But the word "long" does not mean duration at all, but only an expansion of the life force, with which the living being reaches more and more into the depths of the divine life, and thus makes its own life ever more perfect, solid and effective. — This we would have, but the welfare of the earth, what does it say? Nothing other than to make one's self one with the Divine life; for the word "earth" here is understood as one's own being, and the well-being in this being is nothing other than the free being, made completely one with the divine order. - From this it can be seen that this law is of a purely spiritual nature.

83. In Spiritual Sense

1. In the spiritual sense, I am Jesus your God and Father according to the Christian Theosophy, because I create the soul as it must be, and only I give it the intelligence to reproduce the human body according to its own form with its will power, and according to what the main characteristics of the parents are, especially the face of the mother and the father.

2. But God is also the mother of man, because through the teaching of God, man is spiritually built up and trained to become a spirit-man, as he is formed through the blood and the care of the earthly mother to become a flesh-man.

3. That is why I, Jesus, said to My disciples: You should not call anyone on earth your (spiritual) Father; for there is only one and He is in heaven. (Matt 23:9) That this is correct, is proved by the Father's prayer: our Father, who is in heaven (of our hearts loving you), be sanctified (by obeying your commandments and by the love of our hearts) your name.

4. The following passages from the Bible show that the term 'mother' is to be understood in the spiritual and earthly sense as the guide of the faithful, who teaches and dissects the Word of God and gives spiritual enlightenment:

5. *Hosea 2:2,5* - Judge your (false) mother (says Jehovah), she is not My wife and I am not her husband (she does not teach My divine teaching, but her man-made statutes, which she presents as teaching given by the Holy Spirit).

6. *Isaiah 50:1* - Thus says Jehovah, "Where is the divorce letter of your mother whom I dismissed (because she also taught falsehood)? ... Behold, you are sold for your sins, and your mother (who teaches you falsehood) has left to you because of your transgressions. —

7. *Ezekiel 16:45*: You are your (false) mother's (bad) daughter (or bad teaching) who rejects her husband (God as guidance) and children (divine teachings), and you are a sister of your sister (a human constitution of the human constitution) who rejects her husband's (God's guidance) and children (i.e. divine teachings) (does not follow them).

8. *Ezekiel 19:10*: Your mother (or leading church) was like a vine (like the doctrine of love of bearing life), like you planted at the water (at the doctrine of the wisdom of God); and his branches (or disciples) and fruit (their works of love) grew from the great water (from the doctrine of love of the wisdom of God Jesus).

9. Decisive evidence from the evangelists: I, Jesus, stretched out My hand over My disciples and said: My mother and My brothers and sisters are those who do the will of My Father in heaven (Matt 12:48,50; Mark 3:33-35; Luke 8:21)

84. God is the Spiritual Sun, Love, the Father of Heaven; but the Earth is accordingly the material Mother, carrying the Ideas of Divine Wisdom.

1. Swedenborg writes: One must note that from the Lord there is continually a divine sphere of celestial love going out towards all, which is the teaching of His Church (The Church of the Lord, in which He dwells, is no other than the love in the hearts of men; 1 Cor 1:13: 1 Peter 4:8; 1 John 5:2; Luke 7:47; ChtS. 10 c, 24; Matt 22:37-40), and those who obey Him like the children in the world the father and the mother, abide by Him, and get their nourishment from Him - that is, to be taught; From this heavenly sphere arises the natural sphere, namely that of love for small and larger children, which is very general, and which reaches down not only to men, but also to birds and wild animals, down to snakes, and not only to the [creatures with] souls, but also to the soulless.

2. "But so that the Lord might act on them as on the spiritual, He created the sun, which in the natural world should be like the father, but the earth like the mother; for the sun is like the common father, and the earth like the common mother, and out of their marriage all germs and sprouts arise, which adorn the surface of the earth; from the influence of that heavenly sphere emerge those wonderful developments of vegetation from seed to fruit and to new seed; likewise also several species of plants which by day, so to speak, turn their face to the sun and avert it when the sun goes down; From this also come flowers which open at the rising of the sun, and close at the setting; Likewise also the songbirds which sing sweetly in the early morning, and in the same manner, after having been nourished by the earth, their mother; so this and that honour their father and mother.”

3. "All these things are testimonies that the Lord, through the sun and the earth in the natural world, provides for all the necessities of the living and the lifeless; which is why David says: "Praise Jehovah from the heavens, praise Him, sun and moon, praise Him from the earth, whales and abysses, praise Him, fruit trees, all cedars, game and every animal, the creeper, and the winged bird; the kings of the earth, and all nations, young men, and virgins," and Job: "Ask only the wild beasts, and they will teach you, or the birds of heaven, and they will tell you, or the bushes of the earth, and it will teach you, and the fish of the sea will tell you; who of these does not know that the hand of Jehovah has done such things (Job 12:7-9)? - Question, and they will teach, means: Look, notice, and judge from this that Jehovah created them."

85. In Heavenly Sense

1. In the heavenly sense, under 'Father' is to be understood 'God and Creator Jesus Christ, Jehovah Zebaoth', as the Father, God and Creator, and the Mother is to be understood as the community of the children of God, under which His true teaching, spread throughout the whole world, and their representation (as the true Church) is understood. The following evidence from the Holy Scriptures shows that Jesus is the Father:

2. *Isaiah 9:5*: A boy is born to us, a son is given to us, whose name is: Creator, Wisdom Counselor, Godpower, Hero, Father from eternity and Prince of Peace.

3. *Isaiah 63:16* - (Jehovah) You our Father, Abraham does not know us, and Israel does not know us;

therefore You Jehovah are our Father, 'our Redeemer' is Your name from eternity.

4. *John 14:7-11*: Philip said to Jesus, "Lord, show us the Father (God), and Jesus said to him, "He who sees Me sees the Father, how can you still say, show us the Father; believe Me that I am in the Father, and the Father is in Me.

5. *John 12:45:* Whoever sees Me (Jesus) sees the one (God the Father) who sent Me.

6. *John 10:30:* I (Jesus) and the Father (Jehovah) are one.

7. The fact that the term "mother" is understood in the spiritual sense to mean the communion of love of the children of God can be seen from the following passages of Holy Scripture:

8. *Revelation 19:7,9:* The time of the marriage of the Lamb is coming, and His wife (love) has prepared herself; blessed are they who are called to the feast of the marriage of the Lamb.

9. *Revelation 21:2* - I (John) saw the holy city, the new Jerusalem (the love-congregation of the children of God), prepared like a bride adorned for her husband.

10. *Revelation 21:9-10:* The angel said to John, "Come! I will show you the bride, the Lamb's wife (which is the divine love), and he will show you the holy city of Jerusalem (which is the love-congregation of the blessed or the children of God).

11. The fact that the New Jerusalem is to be understood as the community of love of the elect or of the children of heaven, is made clear by the evangelists: John's disciples came to Jesus and spoke: Why do we and the Pharisees fast so often, and your disciples do not? and Jesus answered them: Can the wedding guests fast and mourn while the bridegroom is with them? There will come a time when the bridegroom will be taken away from them and then they will fast. (Matt 9:14; Mark 2:18; Luke 5:33; John 14:20)

12. I called Myself, Jesus, the Bridegroom here, as in the new Jerusalem, so it was just My disciples who represented the congregation of love, or the new Jerusalem. These were the children of love, or children of God, as I expressed Myself at the Last Supper: Then you will see that I am in My Father (or in My love) and you are in Me and I am in you, i.e. that the disciples are in My love and that I actually dwell in them as the Spirit of the love of God.

13. Through the designation "New Jerusalem", I meant the congregation of My Teaching of Love; in this congregation or in the children who through My Teaching of Love have become children of God, the chosen ones, as My disciples once were, I said that I am in them; they are My dwelling, or the house of the Lord, or the true Church of God.

14. That is why I explain here the meaning of the word "church": the original word is "kiri-ka" and this means "house of the Lord, or God", kyrios Greek "Lord", metathetically "God"; 'ca' geographical, then Irish, Gaelic (old Germanic) "house" and 'ka' in 'kota' Sanskrit, 'hut' d.i. ka-uta "house small", compare lat. ca-sa "house small" and uzzo Italian word reduction suffix.

15. This illuminates that the true Church of God is love and a heart full of love for God and neighbour. This church - and not one built of stone or wood - is the bride, wife and mother of Jesus in the heavenly sense. The spiritual children who are born out of this Jesus-Love marriage, i.e. who through My true teaching become a house of God, of love in their hearts, are called sons of the wedding, children of God, born from Jesus.

86. The Fifth Commandment

The fifth commandment is:
"Thou shalt not kill! - neither humans, nor yourself by suicide; thus also not the life of animals and plants for pleasure-seeking, entertainment or wilfulness, since I, your God and Father, created the same, receive them and I am represented everywhere."(Exod 20:13; Deut 5:17. - About spelling kill instead of killing, see the magazine "Die Liebe" 1, 63!)

87. What is Forbidden by the Fifth Commandment?

The fifth commandment forbids harming, killing or murdering anyone else or oneself.

1. *Gen 9:5*: For also the blood - your life, I will demand. From every animal I will demand it; and from man, from the one and the other I will demand the life of man.

88. The Basic Meaning of this Commandment

1. In God is the eternal preservation of the created spirits, the unchangeable basic condition of all divine order. - If you now know this, then look at the opposite, namely at the destruction, and you have the commandment in its spiritual and material meaning before you. - Say, therefore, instead: "Thou shalt not kill" - Thou shalt not destroy, neither thyself, nor anything that is thy brother's; for conservation is the eternal foundation in God Himself, according to which He is eternal and infinite in His power.

2. But since on earth also the body of man is necessary for the eternal formation of the spirit until the time determined by God, nobody has the right to destroy either his own body or that of his brother without an explicit commandment from God.

3. But if there is a necessity, which is justified in the will of God, that one kills someone so that he does not make himself and others spiritually unhappy through his evil work, then it is an exception, as also the history of the Jews teaches, where the order to murder people, came from God.

4. The Jews received the laws under lightning and thunder, they were therefore holy to them, and yet the story tells us that Moses himself, the bringer of the law, was the first to kill a large number of Israelites; and his followers had to do the same with those guilty of the law. —

5. "Thou shalt not kill", this law was in the ark of the covenant together with all the others; but what did all the Israelites do when they entered the promised land, with the former inhabitants of that land? What did even David, the man after God's heart, do? What did the Great Prophet Elijah [do]? - Behold, they killed all, and that very many times and often quite cruelly on top of it. (Cf. the Enlightenment in Announcements 1. Vol., p. 137) Whoever of you is of a sober and unbiased spirit, should not pronounce and announce judgement out of himself:

6. What is this commandment against which even the first prophets assigned by God were compelled to act, as was never the case with any of the others? - Such a commandment is, after all, as good as none at all; - even in our times, the killing of the brethren in war is a matter of honour! Yes, the Lord Himself kills legions of men after the body day after day; - also the angels of heaven, as perpetual servants of God, strangle bodies on earth in one way or the other; but not without commission from

the Lord, and then only in the way the Lord wants it to be. And David even had to have a military commander killed, as he had acted leniently towards a place that should have been destroyed. - Well, I say; so it is with the commandment on the earth.

7. From these examples it is obvious that the law is to be understood more spiritually than materially, that indeed murdering and destroying is forbidden, but that there are exceptions when it is about continuance, peace and a quiet life, and where man can only serve God under this condition, then it happens because of the disturbance of life and destruction of all possessions and good, God himself gives an order to destroy the enemy of life. In this the exception is justified, but otherwise the law remains a commandment that is to be neither materially nor spiritually broken, because it was given by Me, the Almighty, to fulfill and not to break.

89. Spiritual Killing that is Permitted, even Taught

In the fifth commandment, every material and spiritual kind of killing is forbidden, but the killing of the flesh for the benefit of the spirit is not; for the animations of the flesh which are exceedingly frequent in present times are nothing other than the killing and darkening of the spirit, whereby man turns from God to matter. But it is not the spirit of God in man that is meant here, but the spirit of man, or the tendency to a wilful disposition of man. For the benefit of these, the lusts and desires would have to be restrained and, if necessary, the flesh may need to be killed by its impetuosity through frequent fasting, so that the spirit might be enlivened.

90. What threats pertains to the murderers of mankind?

The threat to the human murderers is as follows:

1. *Exodus 9:6* - Whoever sheds human blood, his blood shall also be shed by men; for man is made in the image of God.

2. *Revelation 13:10* - He who kills with the sword must be killed with the sword. (Matt 26:52). But one has to take into account that this judgement of Moses came from above, from God, and therefore the word 'sword' is meant spiritually. Who therefore deceives others into wrong ways and doctrines through words, is to be brought on the way of correction and repentance through true rebuke and instruction.

91. What more is forbidden by the Fifth Commandment?

The fifth commandment also forbids anger, hatred, annoyance and all insults against one's neighbour:

1. *Matthew 5:22* - But I say to you: He that is angry with his brother is guilty of judgement; but he that says 'Raka' to his brother is guilty before the Council; he is guilty of hellish fire. But who says you fool! He is guilty of the fire of hell.

2. *1 John 3:15* - He who hates his brother is a murderer of man; and you know that a murderer of man does not have eternal life dwelling in him.

3. *Matthew 18:6-7* - But whoever is angry with the least of these (brethren) ones who believes in Me, it would be better for him that a millstone be hung on his neck and he be sunk into the depths of the sea. - Woe betide the world, for the sake of annoyance. Anger must come, but woe betide man through whom that offence comes.

4. *Luke 6:31* - Whatever you want the people to do to you, do the same to them.

5. This prohibition is rooted in the fact that enmity, hatred and revenge breathes death, because murder lies hidden in it, like fire in the wood under the ashes; for the infernal fire is also nothing else; therefore it is said, that man burn from hatred and to glow from revenge. These are murders of intent, though not in fact; but if the fear of the law and of retribution and revenge were taken away from them, they would be put into action, especially if the intent were treacherous or brutal.

6. It's all about understanding what killing means. Also no one is excluded here, so neither the ruler, nor the judge, nor the butcher, nor the ordinary man is allowed to kill bodily or spiritually; because none of you can give a life except Me, therefore also no-one has the right to take it because he intervenes in My rights and kills and destroys what I have built up and brought into being, be it human, animal or plant life.

7. By reason of this prohibition, you will also keep yourselves from sinning against plant life. Well, about this I give you in the *Prayer Book* a thorough explanation of how, when and why. It will also seem strange to you that you are not allowed to kill wild and harmful animals. —

8. About this I give you the following explanation: The wild and harmful animals are put into the world by Me to fill a certain rank of spiritual life, and I have already taken care that there would be no harmful and dangerous multiplication [of them] if men would live according to My commandments.

9. But as far as human life is concerned, you know that man are children of God and I Myself as the Divine Spirit of man dwell in you. The question now is: With what rights do you dare to kill My children, whose spirits am I Myself, God the Ruler and Creator of the universe? You directly kill the instrument with which I work spiritually and materially, you kill at the same time your own brothers and sisters.

92. The Fifth Commandment Commands:

1. To keep peace and unity with everyone and even with those who have offended us - *Romans 12:18* - If it is possible, have peace with all people as much as it is up to you!

2. *Matthew 5:16* - "So let your light shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.

3. To show one's neighbour spiritual and physical benefits - *2 Thessalonians 3:13* - You brethren, do not become weary (or tired) of doing good.

4. Always be friendly in your dealings with your neighbours - Decalogue : You should bring your innermost feelings to life through a friendly and always concerned approach; for by an unfriendly behaviour you involuntarily awaken in them to whom you bring the unfriendly feelings which contradict My divine desire for love and thereby become a killer of the innermost spiritual feelings of your neighbour, because the unfriendliness is poisonous plants for the spiritual ground of brotherly love.

93. Eating Meat

1. Now we also want to look at the butcher's trade. The law "Thou shalt not kill" also includes that. You will say: If it is not right that we eat beef, why did God Himself allow the Jews to eat it? There is a misunderstanding here between My intention and permission. I would never have allowed the people to eat meat, if they had not longed for the meat pots of Egypt and asked Me to let them eat meat, just as I would not have created Eve for Adam, if he had not asked for it with impetuosity, for I well knew that the fall of man would follow it; but to whoever wants it that way, no injustice will be done. (As the Romans said: '*Volenti non fit injura*'!)

2. Eating meat makes you spiritually like the animals whose flesh you eat, because you not only take flesh, but also the spiritual of the qualities from the blood of the animal whose flesh you eat with the flesh, because the flesh consists of the blood, thus the stupidity and malice of the cattle, and through cooking the flesh spirits are heated - and through it you become hornier. —

3. Although the flesh is very nourishing, it on the other hand accumulates disease substances for you, especially for gout, in addition to several other diseases. - That you also become animal from eating meat, you see in dogs, which become so lewd of eating bones, which are boiled and thus spiritually heated, because they eat the heated lewdness, which is most strongly represented in the bones. People who eat a lot of meat are usually horny - that's why you will be forbidden to eat meat from animals in the future, to protect you physically and spiritually from diseases. Anyone who wants to live vegetarian now out of this consideration has gained a great advantage over the meat-eaters.

4. But it is not only forbidden to kill those animals under the Fifth Commandment whose flesh you eat, but man should not deliberately kill any large, small or very small animals at all unless they are harmful, like the mole cricket, because they eat or injure the roots of plants, or are inciting to activity like fleas, lice, bugs, mosquitoes, Hornets, houseflies, mice and cockroaches, activating man to frequently clean his dwelling and protects it from such animals and vermin. But you are not to kill the remaining animals nor martyr them because they feel pain just as you do, and because I have brought them into being and also live in them as the life-giving principle, and therefore you are to consider everything with consideration for Me with reverence (or piety) and honour for Me because every animal fills a spiritual space in the soul migration up to man.

94. The Meat Diet

1899, 28 February, Father Jesus explains through Ch. H. S. that from now on man should not eat beef, lamb, fish, domestic poultry or any other meat, because with the eating of animal flesh he also unites the animal spiritual with his human spiritual; while Jesus as a pure spirit of God redeemed and ennobled the animal-spiritual and therefore was allowed to eat the animal flesh. Only the one who has achieved the second rebirth is able to redeem and ennoble the flesh-spirits by eating meat, and to receive them pure in himself.

1. This writing medium had read in My *Youth Story* that I as Jesus liked eating fish. On his request, since he is a vegetarian and does not eat fish, he received the following answer from Me, Jesus Myself:

2. I like your question, that is why I gladly give you information about it. You are to live without flesh because this is necessary for the formation of your spirit. But the one who, like Me, has the Spirit of the Father in himself, can also take in every nourishment; for behold, it is so: The spirit contained in food, satisfies the soul-spirit of man. If you now take carnal food to yourselves then you also take in with it, the spirits from the flesh. But I was able through the power of My Holy Spirit from the Father

to redeem the spirits of the flesh so that they could also enter into God the Father.

3. The better, the finer the fish-meat, the purer the spirits are in the fish-meat. I ate by preference tuna fish, because the meat of the tuna fish contains very pure spirits. I redeemed them all while I ate the flesh.

4. Now when the Jews, as well as My father Joseph, ate fish, they also took in the spirits of the fish, but could not redeem the spirits; but the fish spirits remained in the Jews; therefore they still have many fish-spirits in them even now. I could not teach the people of that time about it, because they would not have understood it at all. But I can now tell it to you, that is why you would do well when you do not eat fish.

5. Even you, My tool (medium), do not have the power to redeem the fish-spirits, so do not eat fish. Yes, it behaves with the flesh-spirit of the other animals just as it does with the fish flesh-spirit. Thou shalt tell the brethren that they shall eat no more flesh (This reminder has been given to various instruments), that their spirits may no longer receive flesh-spirits. They cannot redeem the spirits, but their spirit becomes more and more animal-spirit, the more they eat flesh. That's enough for your question. Amen.

6. I sure have eaten lamb too, but it's the same here as with the fish-spirits. Better not to eat meat at all, although the lamb-spirits are very tolerant. Jesus, your Father.

7. Supplement : As long as man has not reached the second rebirth, he is not able to redeem the animal-spiritual, which he takes with him while eating meat, that is to say to transform the animal-spiritual into the human-spiritual, thus to ennoble it so that man can take it into his ego without it being able to harm him.

8. The following two clarifications from the human point of view should also clarify the reasons against the consumption of meat and alcohol in biblical science, whereby a clear illumination is given in all aspects.

95. Thirteen Reasons against eating Meat from the Standpoint of Christianity. (From Bible Research)

From the standpoint of true, established Christianity, the enjoyment of meat is to be rejected:

1. Because God created man as a fruit-eater and instructed him to eat the edible fruits and plants (Genesis 1:29), it is superstition to believe that flesh is indispensable for human nutrition.

2. Because the enjoyment of flesh (Genesis 9:2-4) is to be understood as a consequence of the Fall and as punishment for disobedience against God's will; because since that time, the mental and physical strength, life expectancy and health of human beings have decreased from century to century.

3. Because our Lord and Master (Matt 23:8) has freed us from the letter and compulsion of the law, which prescribes animal sacrifice and the consumption of meat (3d book of Moses/Lev) (Matt 5:17) and desires that we serve God only in the Spirit (John 4:24) and by mercy and love (Matt 9:13) towards people and animals, by purity of heart and truthfulness (compare no.12), we should mature unto divine perfection (Matt 5:48; Luke 6:36).

4. Because we can only become perfect to the extent that we exercise love and mercy, and this love must extend to all God's creatures (Psalm 145:15-16). But it is not compatible with the commandment of love to torture, fatten and slaughter God's creatures against their will in order to

consume them. (Genesis 20:13; Rom 13:10).

5. Because the animal world longs for freedom and redemption (Rom 8:19-22) from the pressure of the transitory bondage (being 'in vain') that weighs on it and strives for the highest perfection. The animal world - according to the spirit of the new covenant - is to be understood as an "inspired fellow creature", contrary to the concept of a "commodity" which prevails in the Old Testament (Isaiah 66:3).

6. Because the consumption of meat, as well as disobedience against the will of God embodied in the law of nature, causes diseases and epidemics (Numbers 11; 1 Cor 10:6) and leads to fornication and prostitution (Gen 25).

7. Because the natural way of life, the conscious life according to the laws of nature given by God, makes people spiritually and physically more perfect and healthier, more understanding and better, enables them to the noble striving for spiritual goods and awakens the desire for infinite perfection, as we see in Daniel and his friends. (Daniel 1:1-20). —

8. Because the consumption of meat leads to the consumption of alcohol and stimulates [man], but Christians should always be sober and filled with the Spirit (Judges 13:14; Luke 1:15; 1 Cor 3:16; Gal 5:16; Eph 5:18), likewise should intoxicating and brain-cell-paralyzing drinks (beer, wine, liquor) be avoided.

9. Because Scripture directly and indirectly rejects all unnatural ways of life, all carnal lusts, desires and sins and admonishes us to self-examination, to change our minds and to spiritual change (Rom 8:13-14; 12:1-2; 1 Cor 3:16; 6:19; 9:24-27; 10:5-6; Gal 5:16-24; 1 Peter 4:1-5; 2 Peter 1:5-6), but the consumption of meat and alcohol makes the mind receptive to bad thoughts and ready for carnal sins.

10. Because it defiles the body of man, makes it horny and sick, prematurely frail and invalid, weakens and darkens the mind and shortens life. A deliberate shortening of life, however, even by an unnatural way of life, is suicide.

11. Because the promises of the coming "golden" age of peace (Hosea 2:18; Isaiah 2:4; 11:1-10; 35:5-10; 65:17-25 ; Micah 4:3-4) in which wars and bloodshed, murder of animals and consumption of flesh will no longer be, must still be fulfilled and Christians are called to participate actively in the preparation and establishment of this Kingdom of Peace.

12. Because being pious without being true, piety without inner love of truth is mere hypocrisy; if we want to be pious, [we] must also be true, and for this reason we must recognize and live according to the truly natural, simple, God-intended, based on our character, fleshless way of life.

13. Because the revelation of God - nature and Holy Scripture - do not contradict each other, and the correctness of fleshless nutrition of man can uniformly and irrefutably be proved from both.

96. Why should Christians avoid eating Meat and drinking Alcohol? (Read: Gospel of Matthew 5:8; 1 Cor 9:24–27)

Dear reader ! The purpose of your life is: "to fulfill God's will"; your goal must be: "to recognize God as your Father and to live in Him". In order to fulfill this purpose and achieve this goal, you need a healthy body; because all spiritual and religious life, your thoughts, feelings and will, the highest and best that you call your own, is bound to your body here in this world, [and] comes to you only in the context of your brain-activity to consciousness. Only in a healthy, harmoniously developed body lives a straight, free, honest soul. And vice versa: only a faithful, sincere, cheerful, truth-loving person will be completely healthy [and] truly happy. So a harmonious life, a life according to God's will, filled with divine love, is the way to go and in which Jesus Christ preceded you.

Think seriously about whether you have not been mistaken in the following points, strive for better knowledge in these things and try to prove your new, changed, God-oriented attitude through a new walk, a purer, better way of life. (Read Romans 8:13-14; 1 Cor 6:19-20) - So remember:

1. Man was created by God to eat fruit and only the fruits and plants are destined for his food (Genesis 1:29; Matt 6:11). Nutrition through meat and the associated consumption of intoxicating drinks, is an error rooted in ancient times. The following bad consequences can be determined on the basis of the available facts and experiences:

1. Meat from dead animals contains, in addition to other pathogens, a lot of animal protein, which is converted into uric acid in the human body. — Uric acid is the main cause of most diseases, especially gout, rheumatism, migraine, cancer, nervousness, kidney disease, heart disease, anaemia, stomach disease, etc., by worsening the blood on the one hand, and depositing in the bloodstream on the other hand, thereby inhibiting blood circulation and causing disease.

2. The consumption of meat, in combination with beer, wine or spirits, demonstrably causes a paralysis of brain activity, which in mild cases consists of forgetfulness, laziness of thought, dullness, but very often leads to complete mental derangement. This explains both the generally prevailing great aversion to deeper thinking, ideal aspiration and religious life, and especially the inner untruthfulness and spiritual weakness of many Christians.

3. A degeneration of the individual human beings necessarily leads to the downfall and decay of the whole nation, for many individual human beings form one nation. As a result of the wrong way of life and the resulting immorality, the Assyrians, Babylonians, Persians, Greeks, Romans and Indians have degenerated and perished.

4. As a result of the consumption of meat and alcohol, which is not necessary at all, many [kinds of] physical and mental works are ruined for those who have to perform them. Pay attention to the spiritual and religious life, health and mortality statistics of brewers, distillers, cattle drovers, butchers, tavern keepers, waiters, etc.. You shall be your brother's keeper, not his destroyer!

2. Apart from these rational reasons, the following objections can be consumption of meat and alcohol from the standpoint of Christianity:

1. It disagrees with the commandment of charity. (Compare 1.d; read Mark 12:31).

2. It weakens the life force and shortens the life, thus making you incapable of carrying out and completing the life-tasks set for you by God.

3. All life, also that of the animals, comes from God and is received from God, that is why also man has no right to destroy life prematurely, except in case of self-defense, in a struggle for existence.

4. Christians should lead a chaste, moderate, sober life, therefore the consumption of meat and alcohol should be avoided, since it often has the direct opposite effect. (Numbers chapter 11; 1 Cor 3:16-17; 10:6; Gal 5:16-24; Eph 4:17-24)

5. Because God leads everything in the universe from greatest simplicity to greatest perfection (divine development law), likewise also we should strive for divine perfection (gospel of Matt 5:48; Luke 6:36) - in short, *because God wants progress, we should also want it*. For this reason, eating meat and drinking alcohol must also be overcome and abolished, just as slavery, theft of countries, human sacrifice, cannibalism, compulsion of conscience, etc. should be abolished, with the progressive knowledge of the better, in the name of Christianity and the commandment of love.

6. With simple fruit and plant food, man achieves the highest degree of physical health, strength and endurance, thus the basis for a harmonious soul life. (Read Daniel 1:1-20). *It is therefore simply a requirement of Christian truthfulness, the truth being, to live naturally according to the laws of nature given by God.*

7. In connection with the proclamation of the Gospel, Jesus opens to us the prospect of a communion among people which is not held together by laws or coercion, but in which love reigns and one wins the other by meekness. According to Jesus, this kingdom of love does not begin in the distant future (Luke 17:20-21; Matt 20:26-27), but consists in a similar attitude than Jesus, and is already realized everywhere where people serve each other in love and work on the removal and clearing away of need, misery and illness (read Matt 7:21; Luke 7:20-22; 10:9), as Jesus did exemplarily.

97. In the Spiritual Sense

1. ... is understood the killing of all kinds, to murder and corrupt the souls of men, which are manifold and diverse, as, for example, turning them away from God, from religion, and from worship by the sowing of offenses against others, and persuasion of untrue things, which cause aversion, even rebellion, therefore:

2. You shall not kill the good and true, faith and love in man by implanting evil and wrong in him through words, books, magazines, etc.; nor shall you limit his freedom of spiritual development for all good and noble things. All devils and satans of this kind are in hell, with whom the violators and desecrators of the sanctities of the authentic Church of Christ in this world, are spherically connected.

3. Those who wreak havoc on souls by falsehood, are understood by the king of the abyss, called Abaddon or Apollyon, which is the "destroyer," in Revelation 9:11; and in prophetic words (those damaged to the soul) among the murdered, as in the following passages:

4. *Zacharia 11:4-7* - Feed the slaughter-sheep that were murdered by their owners (spiritually).

5. *Psalm 44:23-24* - We were murdered every day, like a flock led to be slaughtered. ... Lord do not cast us away forever (help us)!

6. *Isaiah 27:6-7* - Nevertheless Jacob will root, and Israel will flourish ... He will not be slain as his enemies were slain, nor will he be strangled as his enemies were strangled.

7. *John 10:10* - The stranger comes only to steal and to slaughter the sheep; I came against it, so that they may have life and abundance. - Besides these passages, Isaiah (14:21; 26:21), Jeremiah (4:31; 12:3) and the Revelation (9:4; 11:7) speak of it.

8. Spiritual killing is therefore everything that draws man from God and to matter. This chapter covers all the many sins which are enumerated in the *Prayer Book*.

9. **According to the sins listed in the *Prayer Book*, the spiritual killing can be brought about by oneself or by others. Therefore, look carefully at them because they represent the sum of the sins of the Old and New Testaments, in which everyone will find his vices and bad qualities; - which he shall avoid and eradicate from himself; - and must, if he is to attain to the rebirth of the Spirit.**

98. In Heavenly Sense

1. ... is understood by murder, to anger the Lord with arrogance, to hate Him, and to want to exterminate His name; such and those who are said to crucify Christ; for the crucifixion of Christ is understood today in heavenly terms: The deliberate contradiction against the truth about Christ and His words, and the persecution of the truth through imprisonment and madhouse. - The Bible speaks about this in terms of the Lamb who stood murdered in Revelation (Revelation 5:6; - 13:8) and under the Crucified One, also in Revelation (11:8) and in the Epistle to Hebrews (6:6) and Galatians (3:1) (therefore do not kill the love of God and neighbour in your brother).

2. Swedenborg writes: "How the inside of man is, what it is not transformed by the Lord, was revealed to me by the devils and Satans in hell; for they constantly think to kill the Lord, and because they cannot, they constantly seek to kill those who are devoted to the Lord; but because they cannot do this, like the people in the world, they go out with all their might to destroy their souls - that is, to destroy their faith and their activity of love.

3. Hate appears to them like dark red fire, and revenge like white burning fire; but they are not fires, but appearances. The outbursts of rage of their hearts are sometimes visible above them in the air, like battles with angels, and like their fall and defeat, but it is only their impulses of wrath and hatred against heaven from which such horrible scenes of jugglery rise up. Moreover, the same appear from afar as wild animals of every kind (according to their inner inclinations and passions) for example: like tigers, leopards, wolves, foxes, dogs, horses, crocodiles and as snakes of every kind and if they see in exemplary forms tame animals, then they attack the same in their imagination, to kill them; They looked to me like dragons, standing beside women, with whom were children, who they sought to devour, according to what is told in Revelation, chapter 12; which is also nothing other than the formation of hatred against the Lord and His children.

4. The fact that people in the world who want to destroy the church of the Lord are similar to them, does not appear before their contemporaries, because the bodies through which they practice external morality, intercept and hide it; but they nevertheless appear to the angels, who see not their bodies but only their spirits (or souls), in similar forms as those devils of whom we have just spoken".

99. Suicide

1. The suicide of man is the intervention in My creation and a great sin, which is punished with the lowest hell. Suicide kills a man, whether he then kills himself or his neighbour, it is always murder of a human.

2. Man believes that he will get rid of all his worries and agony of life through suicide, but he instead falls into the darkness of the deepest hell and into the society of those criminals like himself, where the great tortures of hell begins for him; his own [troubles] he has brought with him, are connected with these, and so he has piled up double and more measures of suffering.

3. In the world he left sad relatives to whom he had caused shame, ridicule and sorrow, and for some he had caused the most sorrowful disruption of life; - but he threw himself as if out of water, where he swam, albeit heavily, into the fire of the most unpleasant state of hell.

4. The unquenched sufferings, worries, and passions through which he went over to suicide, the awareness that he made those he left in the world unhappy, and that they often wring their hands in despair over this act, and finally the new great suffering over the great sin committed, now torments him terribly, that he sometimes curses and rages over his misguided way of acting, which he committed through suicide to himself.

5. He encounters sad, gloomy figures in the spirit around him who, like him, cannot help themselves to come out of eternal torment according to the misleading Church doctrine. Such these unfortunates often have to live for many, many years, indeed some must savour all the horrible stench of the decaying body as punishment for their gross sin before they come into the division of desperate suicides.

6. He who knows how terrible the stench of the rotting flesh is, which no living man can endure for a short time without spitting with great disgust, can imagine the condition when he, as a spirit with a refined sense of smell, has to endure and taste this terrible smell of plague and stench through the long months of rotting! That mocks every description, and see, as soon as he has gone through this agony of hell, he comes into others, which are again in other respects horrifying and arousing new despair in him, and so it goes on in different stages, depending on the motives for which the spirit resorted to suicide, since each suicide has other reasons and therefore also other punishments to endure.

7. So you see that suicide is one of the saddest means of redemption from earthly life, and therefore everyone [should] refrain from it so as not to become exceedingly unhappy. For it takes long years of lamenting and wailing until a redemption takes place, therefore, every suicide candidate should seriously reconsider murdering himself before he commits the greatest nonsense, because instead of improving or destroying the terrible situation, he brings it into a ten times to one hundred times greater and more terrible [misery] than the earthly was.

8. His redemption from then on takes place through intercessions of his relatives or friends, or after very long prayers and requests to God, through a messenger who is sent to him as a guardian spirit, and who guides and leads him henceforth. Read also in ChtS. III. the fifth commandment, chapter 252.

100. Transgression against the Fifth Commandment

The willful and malicious injury of one's neighbour; - Conspiracy, rebellion, assault; - Murder, killing, slaying, stabbing, strangling, hanging, slaughtering, carnage; - Manslaughter, murder, intentional murder, war, battle; - Any act of violence, unless it is justified by truth against unauthorized rule or tyranny; - Poisoning, suicide, self-mutilation, life-shortening through self-generation of disease. This subheading also includes the duel as a matter of honour between two pride-devils - as if a pride-devil has any honour?! - Isn't it enough that you insult each other? Must you still kill the insulted (often innocent)? This is the proof that the spirit of Satan reigns in such people and that they are therefore spirits of hell.

101. The Sixth Commandment of God

"Thou shalt not be unchaste, thou shalt not commit adultery." (For this has been the divine commandment since the very beginning of the human race - Gen 3:15; Hebr 9:15; Rom 3:25; Exod 20:14; Deut 5:18)

1. My dear children, unchastity as original sin is the sin of the proud disobedience of the first parents against Me, as their Creator and Lord. For Adam and Eve wanted to become like Me by seduction from the serpent (of selfishness), and thus no longer subservient - and therefore the fall came.

2. The word 'marriage' means law in general, but not merely "matrimony" of two people united by church or registry office for the purpose of living together. For this reason, "breaking marriage" is understood not merely as ordinary adultery, but as any fornication or unchastity, whether within or outside marriage.

3. Adam and Eve were not united by priests or the registry office, but only by the love of the heart; the love of the heart, however, is spiritually called "heaven", because man feels and can feel the love - which is a heaven for him - only in the heart, therefore true spiritual love is called "sealed in heaven", because there also dwells the Spirit of God as the life in man.

4. Although Adam's marriage to Eve was founded on pure love - or in the heaven of their hearts, God gave them the law not to desecrate themselves through fornication. And the same law of chastity still exists for all people.

5. But chastity is meant the complete abstinence out of love for God.

6. But is it known to few when chastity begins and when it does not exist as such, so here the boundary is to be described according to which everyone can judge himself so as not to sin.

102. Prohibition in the Sixth Commandment

All sensual thoughts and desires that are pleasing to man, as well as unchaste gestures, words and works, and everything that leads to unchastity.

1. *Ephesians 5:3-4*: Unchastity and every uncleanness shall not be mentioned among you even as it is proper for the pure living (original: "saints", which is untrue); neither shall shamelessness and foolish jesting occur. Galatians 5:19-21 - I tell you, that those who do the works of the flesh, will not inherit the kingdom of God. - 2 Pet 2:9-10 - The Lord keeps the unrighteous for the day of judgement

(which is the day of death) for punishment, especially those who walk after the flesh in desire.

2. *Matthew 5:27-28* - You have heard that the old people said, "Thou shalt not commit adultery. But I tell you that everyone who looks at a woman with desire, has already committed adultery with her (spiritually) in his heart. - Sirach 9:5,9 - Do not look at a virgin, so that her beauty will not be your trap. Through the beauty of a woman, many have perished.

103. Temptation to Unchastity

Pride and shamelessness in clothing, idleness, (a) - immoderateness in eating and drinking, (b) - all too free dealings with persons of the opposite gender, cheekiness in the eyes, (c) - and reading obscene books (d):

a) *Ezekiel 16:49*: Behold, this was the iniquity of Sodomah thy sister: Exuberance, satiation from food, and idleness from doing nothing, which they and their daughters had; but they did not help the poor and needy.

b) *Ephesians 5:18*: Do not become intoxicated with wine, out of which follows excess, but be full of the Holy Spirit.

c) *Job 31:1* - I have made a covenant with my eyes, that I have no thought of a virgin. Sirach 9:8 - Turn away thy face from beautiful women, and behold not the likeness of other women.

d) Among lewd books belong some romantic novels and the like, being books and writings detrimental to good morals.

Adultery is mainly and expressly forbidden in this commandment, because persons who commit adultery, in addition to the shameful vice of unchastity, also commit the vice of injustice against one's neighbour, because they do to him what they do not want him to do to them (Matt 7:12) namely to fall into sin, through which he becomes spiritually dark, God-forgotten, and sometimes also physically ill, as the next enlightenment reveals.

104. The Evil Consequences of the vice of Unchastity are:

Forgetting God, blindness of the mind or spiritual eclipse, hardening of the will, occurrence of apostasy from faith (a), harmful and shameful diseases of the body (b). Because of this vice, countries, cities, and peoples have been severely punished by God (c).

a) *1 Kings 11:1-10* - Solomon's apostasy from Jehovah for the sake of the favour of women.

b) *Sirach 19:3* - Rot and worms will be his reward. He will serve as a great warning and his soul will be taken from the number (of the living).

c) Sodom and Gomorrah, Pompei, Herculanum and Stabiae (*Holy Trinity* 69:16).

105. By the Sixth Commandment, it is Commanded

1. ...to behave chastely in body and soul, even in thoughts, desires, words and gestures (a), it is also said to avoid every sinful opportunity (b).

2. *1 Thessalonians 4:3-5* - This is the will of God: your sanctification, that ye abstain from fornication, that every one of you may keep his body in purity and honour. 2 Corinthians 7:1 - Because we now have such promises, beloved ones, let us purify ourselves from all staining of the flesh and the Spirit, and complete sanctification in the fear of God.

3. *Matthew 5:29-30* - If your eye arouses you to sin, turn it away from that arousal, and do the same when your hand arouses you to do something sinful, etc.

4. The sixth commandment demands purity of heart; for only this I, Jesus, praised in the Sermon on the Mount: "Blessed are they that have a pure heart; for they shall see God. (Matt 5:8) This is how you are commanded to tame your evil lusts, as Paul says to the Romans: "Let sin not reign in your mortal bodies, so that you obey his lusts." (Rom. 6:12) In the Letter to the Galatians he expresses himself even more precisely by saying: "Those who are of Christ have crucified their flesh with vices and lusts". (Gal 5:24)

5. The life of love seeks to indulge its satisfaction with pleasure in immature creatures who are still inexperienced in the matter and therefore easy to persuade. For such seducers I said that it would be better to hang a millstone on their necks and sink them into the depths of the sea (Matt 18:6; Mark 9:42; Luke 17:2) because they have pulled the innocence from heaven to the hell of sin. From this follows: Thou shalt not desecrate the innocent love for God and neighbour through sensual love.

6. The act of procreation common today differs from the past, in that people once wanted beings out of love for God, and placed them in the world, because many children meant much honour and power, representing God's blessing.

7. Nowadays, however, only the snake of Eve - or the selfishness of the parents - is decisive, and if these wish to have children themselves, it is only because of personal intentions and advantages, but not because of love for God. —

8. This, then, is sin, because only the selfishness of enjoyment and advantage comes into consideration; besides, this makes man quite material and lazy for the divine, especially in the love for God, so this is the danger and sin of man, because he completely turns from God to matter, or to Satan!

9. Now we want to discuss an important question of life, namely: Where does the impulse for reproductive desire come from? And who sins in doing so, the body or the soul?

10. Outwardly seen, it seems to man that the body is the lust-experiencing matter; but this is not the case, but the body is a raw material body animated by the soul without its own impulses of lust for life, and serves the soul only to be able to be materially active.

11. The whole joy of life lies in the soul, it alone is the connoisseur, because it is the life or the actual spirit-person in the body, it is it who thinks, wants and acts, therefore, also after the physical death, it is the sole repentant for all the sins committed in the world against the commandments, while the body after the exit of the soul, goes painlessly into decomposition and therefore, in accordance with the national custom, to destroy the flesh placed either in the grave or in the wall niche, or in the tomb, or to be incinerated.

12. The fact shows you quite vividly how wrong people's views of life are, that they pay great tribute to dead matter with pompous funerals, but for the living soul, they have no sense at all. The dead

corpse is paid tribute; but they are ignorant and indifferent about what has survived this corpse, because one does not learn anything certain or positive about it through the now ruling doctrine of faith, while it is only the soul which should receive particular interest before and after the death of the body, so that what is missed and neglected here on earth, could be repaired and made up for in the hereafter - which of course is very difficult, but has to happen at some point.

13. Instead of fulfilling this Christian duty, people are blind and deaf to better enlightenment, they only believe in the false teachings that they have been brought up in since their youth, and for that, your beloved departed ones have to languish in hell, while you think that they are in heaven and overjoyed because you have fulfilled the worldly requirements to their corpses.

14. You should become more seriously acquainted with the true conditions of the hereafter of the grave in order to be able to build a dwelling here for the hereafter, and to know what you should do there if you have missed something, or failed to do something on earth - otherwise you stand [there] as ignorant as here, because while dying and passing over, man learned nothing, it is like the saying of Paul: As the tree falls, so it remains lying.

15. When man dies and enters the spirit realm, he takes his earthly knowledge of religion with him, which usually opens up the spiritual states of hell to him in today's time of religious and moral wild living; for no-one goes to heaven with a false doctrine of faith, and therefore a false way of life.

16. Therefore take care of the true doctrine of Christ and the true faith taught in the Christian theosophical writings.

17. I gave birth to Adam and Eve in the same natural dress as every human being today. Therefore, it is not a sin when a person sees and contemplates the other in this natural garment; but he must not indulge in any voluptuous thought. Furthermore, he must not have any carnal contact of any kind with the body, as this generates excitement. One must also never look at another person with sensual thoughts; or look sensually into the eyes, because this merges into eternity. What one sees without one's own involvement in the dress of nature and does not indulge in any sensory stimulus, is without any damage to the soul; but if one person, in whatever way, forces another to see it in the dress of nature, this already belongs to the sin of fornication. There is a warning here: Do not touch each other, for you will sin.

18. That unchastity is a great sin is easy for you to deduce from this, because through this sin, Adam - whose spirit was the greatest spirit after God - fell, lost all divine graces and gifts, opened the way to man to all bodily afflictions and diseases, created fleshly and spiritual death and hell; Eve received the monthly period from it and for that, Jesus Christ had to taste the death on the cross with all the suffering in order to bring back to Adam's family the childhood of God, which was forfeited by the original sin, so it is one of the greatest sins, because man is made completely material and savage by it. —

19. Nowadays, with few exceptions, the whole world is changing the ways of unchastity, the consequences of which are the increasingly repetitive terrible natural events and misfortunes that show people that they are not safe for one moment of their lives and therefore should wake up and think why this is the case.

20. But the world sleeps its sinful sleep and thereby require of Me to swing My rod of chastisement stronger than ever.

21. The sin of unchastity is committed in different ways:

22. Through thoughts and sinning, and by this by immersing oneself in the enjoyment of this sin.

23. By indulging in this sin through wishful feelings, wanting to enjoy it, with the distinction of how and with whom one wants to sin.

24. Through movement and various signs through bodily members and gestures to another person, to reveal secret intentions. For in parallel, friendship kisses should never be made on the lips, but on the forehead or cheek among persons of different genders. - The pressing of a second person's face out of love or affection is not a sin, but it must not be done in such a way that the prevailing mood is noticed in one or the other person.

25. Through speeches and words with which you make others aware of this sin, or lead them to commit it, through mischievous glances, inquiries, shameless expressions, which lacks consideration of the consequences, through the art of eloquence, through directed attention, through images which produce desires, which one should therefore flee to see if possible, and through many other things which cannot be talked about.

26. By deeds, especially by the promise of marriage, which the girls longs for, like bees long for honey. He who promises to marry a poor girl is given many things with body and soul. - Moreover, this sin is committed in the greatest variety of ways, not to be recounted.

27. The rich and intelligent uses gifts, conversations, lust-filled novels, praise, sweet talk, exaggerated humility, in which they literally - through their eyes and their speeches, their bearing and conduct - seek to explore and execute the thoughts of the so-called romance.

28. The most refined salon-discourse is applied with lecherous, flowery speech, like a breath poisonous to the cultivation of chastity, rendering the victim pensive and dreamy. The intelligent world speaks the ordinary and everyday finely, but the intelligent world is more lustful than the ordinary world, and in the end both are weak and the finer the food, the more intensive the ability to grasp concepts, the more out of control and better cared for the body is, the more sensitive are also the senses for unchaste sins and pleasures. The inventions of the rich to pursue this enjoyment are of the most varied kinds - and the conclusion of the whole is that young and old, rich and poor today go after and pursue this dangerous sin as much as possible. They invent all sorts of wise excuses which are of no value to Me.

29. *I gave the Ten Commandments to obey and not to circumvent them by wise wisdom. My commandments are your order and your punishment.* The one who acts against this order creates disorder for himself, is his own judge and his own punishing knife for spiritual life; for I do not condemn anyone, but the non-observance of this order is the condemnation in itself.

30. With this, My children, you know that unchastity is a very great sin before My eyes. Therefore, strive with all your strength to flee and avoid it, for as soon as you lend it willing ears and senses, it is already working in you and drags you into the abyss. Do not listen to seductive speeches and give room to no seductive thoughts to spread out in your senses, do not look at such things which excite your senses, and flee from the deeds as from the living Satan and you will find a righteous but kind judge and Father in Jesus.

31. The life of worldly men in reproduction is highly unspiritual. They believe that they must have quite a lot of enjoyment with it, but that is what creates the spiritually changed brats, or Cains in the world, especially the frequent repetition during pregnancy, whereby the fruit is already possessed by horny spirits in the mother's womb, thus a possessed person comes into the world, as was the case with Adam and Eve with Cain, that he was produced in sensory excitement, so that an evil germ was inserted into him. Nowadays, with the spiritual world being full of horny ones, no reproduction can take place at all without a swarm of hellish spirits, partly watching, partly entering the flesh, enjoying it with them, therefore everyone can imagine what happens where lewdness is the driving force of embracing, and that there is much material sin, but especially spiritually.

32. It is claimed by worldly scholars and doctors that if a man abstains in the best years of procreation, he easily becomes insane. This assertion is as worldly as the teachers of this view:

33. *"When did anyone hear that I let the people become insane who - out of pure love, reverence and devotion to Me - kept My commandments!? —*

34. Such assertions are entirely derived from worldly wisdom of reason and have no spiritual truth as basis. Only he can become insane who lives outwardly apparently chaste, but secretly diligently cultivates the most luxuriant fantasy of fornication and thereby attracts a multitude of fornication-spirits into his flesh, which then continuously lure him on to sensual images before his eyes and grant him no rest.

35. Beware of it! For you are always surrounded and overheard by spirits of deceased people, and when they discover qualities in you that appeal to them, then they remain inhabitants of your body and play their bad game with you, and you do not know that you are possessed by spirits who use every opportunity to provoke you to fornication and to plunge you into sin.

36. Therefore, your eyes and senses should not cultivate unchaste thoughts and desires, for you have already sinned spiritually in this way, which, as noted, is overheard by many spirits and sympathized with by them, so that you already sin strongly without thinking that you already sin; because the horny act of procreation, as noted in verse 29, is a sin shared by spirits possessed by one, as well as by the surrounding spirits watching it.

37. To drive these uninvited guests out of oneself nothing helps, than to know that God gave everyone the grace to cast out the devils (Mark 16:17), to turn from them. If one is liberated from spirits, then the fight against the incentive to sex-life is easy - otherwise very difficult, because the whispering spirits work against it with all force. Through a lasting great love for God and through prayer and fasting and struggles against evil, one is freed from it over time; for the evil spirits cannot bear the love for God, and if they see that one does not give in, they get fed up with boredom and leave one after another the one who no longer wants to share their love for sin! —

38. I, Jesus, said that the fornicators and prostitutes will not enter the kingdom of heaven; but even the "inner living word" will not come as long as one lives unchastely in the sense as explained above.

106. Human Nature and its Desires

1. Love seeks its repletion and it is not choosy. Wisdom looks at the means it wants to use to its advantage. The struggle between love and wisdom usually ends in harmony. Who is going to be right? Wisdom is arrogant, but it is defeated by love and subject to its impetuosity. Love triumphs over reason, wealth, arrogance, vanity and nobility. But man is an instrument in the hand of God and must be conscious of his task in the world and not let himself be taken captive by either love or wisdom.

2. You think you're having and enjoying heaven on earth in the excitements of the bodily senses. This was only correct for as long as you had no certain knowledge of continued life after the death of the flesh, and of God; but now the spirit-world has become for you a general and convincing science through spiritualism and through this My infinite goodness of the admission of this science, the self-inherent duty arises in you to do violence to yourselves, in order not to live unhappily and die even more unhappily; for Paul said, "As the tree falls, so it lies." (ChtS. 41,15,3.)

3. It is not God who judges you beyond the grave, but you yourselves (see Fassbender's '*Hephata*'). Here you gather for the spiritual life in the beyond, either paradisiacal joys, or the torments of hell.

4. According to the information in this book and in the *Christian Adept*, you are granted the favour to convince yourselves about the condition of your spiritual life, be therefore always on watch over your fleshly desires, because as once Adam and Eve fell, you also fall when you commit the same sin in

the animalistic kind of full satisfaction of your desire. Sin remains sin as My Divine prohibition as such remains eternally immutable. The sin you have sinned initially, as spiritual seed in the soul of Adam, I as Christ, have suffered for, for all of you; But for later and present committing of the same sin, ye shall do only the penance which is prescribed unto you. Therefore renounce the forbidden fruit when it is to serve only your animal desires, otherwise you yourselves will bear the consequences. —

5. The battles against the temptations of the flesh are not absent from anyone, even I Jesus, as the flesh-bearing Spirit of God, had great temptations to withstand, which I had to fight, to live as a living example for you. I prayed and fasted to win against the impetuosity of the flesh. Because - although [I am] according to spirit and soul God Myself - had to live as an example to living man, I had to create temptations through incentives Myself, to fight and win in complete human fashion what I Myself announce to you in My youth history. (*Youth History of Jesus*, chapter 298; - Decalogue by A. Hedwig) So also you have to come to Me the Father through prayer for help in the temptations and through fasting against too opulent fantasy-pictures and incentives to weaken and fight the impetuosity of the flesh.

107. The Wedded or Married

1. Marriage is a sacred bond between two beings who have sworn fidelity to each other through life in love, therefore such a bond is sacred because love is the foundation in Me.

2. When such a love, which in holiness of the intimate feelings of the heart has promised each other loyalty, is not kept, then such a breach of loyalty is a gross sin and is severely punished by Me when it occurs for causes which cannot be justified before Me.

3. That is why it is written in My teachings, which I gave mankind to think about and obey during the three-year teaching period of mankind, also with regard to the sixth commandment, that fornicators and adulterers will not acquire the kingdom of heaven until they have satisfied My righteousness by great remorse and penance.

4. Adultery is usually committed for reasons of fornication, unchastity or prostitution, so these vices are included in the sixth commandment. The one who practices unchastity is no better than the one who prostitutes. But so that you may understand Me what fornication is, I will clearly present the facts to you.

5. The married believe that through the marriage alliance, they have received the certificate for the free exercise of pleasure according to their heart's desire. Here it is the priests who are to blame that this fundamental misconception of marriage has become common practice, because they do not teach the spouses about it; that is why conjugal fornication is called the sublime title "Fulfilling the duties of marriage!" - and looks disparagingly at every other love life that does not take place in marriage and such beings as not according to the order of God, while it usually happens that especially the married women, who themselves lead an impure life, are in the fundamentally wrong opinion that marriage allows and sanctifies everything between the married! - other unmarried persons who sin mostly out of the urge to love, as Adam and Eve once did - consider themselves to be outside the order of God, but keep themselves just, chaste and holy through marriage, while in My sight it is precisely the opposite case, that those who sin out of impetuosity of love, are significantly lesser sinners than those who are married, who devote themselves to enjoyment according to their heart's desire.

6. If the view of the married were correct, Adam and Eve would never have committed a sin before My Eyes, for they loved each other intimately and I Myself united and joined them in love.

7. But if a marriage consists of love and Me, you hear chastely wives and husbands! was approved by Me, your God and Creator, since I created Eve and gave her to Adam as a half of marriage, because too much pleasure could create an infinite distance from Me and darken her into hell, tell Me, you chastely thinking married, just how deep must your married life stand before Me, since you thoughtlessly enjoy life and since you seldom enter marriage without added intentions, like acquisition of fortune, political reasons and considerations of status? Behold, I call such marriages worldly marriages already before they were made, because they are gain-marriages, just as also the prostitute is a whore for the reason of gain. Such marriages are not made in heaven, but in the world of enjoyment and profit, because their main reason is the addiction to money, prestige, office and the like, which plays the main role in the world.

8. When one wants to enter into a marriage that is made in heaven, its reason must be pure love for only such a marriage is approved by Me.

9. But do not believe that such a marriage is only a marriage if it has been entered into before the altar and priest or at the registry office! I ask you: Which priest and before which altar and before which registry office were Adam and Eve lawfully recognized or joined in marriage? Or do you believe that I had a marriage ceremony for Adam and Eve? - If you believe this, you are mistaken. Eve was given to Adam as an equal half of his life, he loved her and she loved him, and this love was marriage. - And when in My future kingdom of love on earth, people will find each other through love, then such a love will be a lasting marriage and remain in all eternity without priest and without registry office, but pure only out of loving affection of two who have found each other in the heart - because priestly and registry office then will not exist.

10. Nowadays, of course, a legally founded marriage must be entered into or inscribed before the priest or at the registry office, but this is because men are no images of God according to the virtues of love, but spiritually and carnally feral servants of the world, which is My opposite pole.

11. All fornication that people commit is a sin and there is no difference between married and unmarried people. While it mitigates the greatness of sin when spiritual love is present; if the motive or reason for sin is merely carnal love, it makes no difference whether it is committed in or out of wedlock.

12. Marriage between two lovers is not there to indulge freely in enjoyment, but to promote the salvation of the spirits banished into matter from the primordial creation. Therefore the sexual union between two beings was allowed after the Fall, but only when they wanted to have a child, whereby the spiritual purification of the soul preceded beforehand, through an intimate love for Me and prayer, but not as with you, where this holy act for the awakening of a child of God is carried out in a very animalistic, common way, whereby you often already make the children possessed with evil spirits in the mother's womb, which is usually brought about by the sinful pleasure of surrendering yourselves; because when you - without your soul first loving Me, purified through abstinence and prayer - with whoever you enter into the enjoyment out of material love, a lot of naughty spirits are attracted. Those who watch you, enters you, and increase your lust, because they enjoy it with you; - and mothers, who are eager during pregnancy and diligently practice the deed, usually bring into the world children possessed by whoring spirits, who inhabit them throughout their lives, and when such children are grown up, incite them to fornication and make of them fornicators and adulterers.

13. After I proved to you that you do not bear witness to children blessed by Me, such as Abel and Set, or as Noah was, for I gave Ghemela, the daughter of arch-father Zuriel, to the son of Methuselah Lamech as a wife in 919 and forbade any intimacy until I would allow them, and this did not happen until 1056 - thus after a marriage of 137 years, and the fruit was Noah, a man of My love.

14. I'm asking you: Who prays with you for a time and purifies the soul from animal lust before the action of reproduction? Nobody - but all children are produced in fornication, because of animal lust, and now I am about to tell you married men, who have illegitimate children, that today's human race is made up of purely mongrels or bastards, because today's children do not have large-scale

preparation through prayer and My word given to you: 'Now is the time', because the soul has purified itself in love with Me, as I indicated to the Adamites in primeval times through the inner Word.

15. The etymology of the prehistoric expressions Bastard and Pankert is the following: bas (baos neuirisch) and 'ban' prehistoricly mean 'fornication'; - ta and ka 'small'; - ard, art are Celtic endings meaning 'male being' in a compound name, what the Celtic Latin of the French and their nicknames clearly prove to you. Now take a look at the names in detail: bas-t'-ard, ban- K'-art and rutenisch bais_t'ruk. See, [it is] nothing but prehistoric word compositions, which mean nothing else than 'child of fornication'. Now that the whole world is populated with nothing but children of fornication, you can save yourselves the mockeries of the illegitimate children with Bastard and mongrel in the future; Everyone first take the beam from his [own] eye, then try to remove the splinters from the eye of the neighbour! -

16. Yes, you who are married and chaste, have there not been honest women in Jericho because they were married? - For none of them was saved, but the public harlot Rahab, I considered to be better than all married women of Jericho and she the 'harlot' alone was saved. (John 2:1; Hebr 11:31; James 2:25)

17. And what did I, Jesus do with the adulteress? I wrote her sins in the sand, knowing that she was not to blame, and I told the married Pharisees, "He who feels pure, be the first to cast the stone upon her. (John 8:6,7) And why did I as God do this? Because I take under My protection the oppressed and despised, who are not to blame for it themselves; - but the arrogant and those who consider themselves better, first want to burn out their arrogance and megalomania by torments of hell.

18. Your woman is half of your life, therefore every person in full ripe years should have his half of life of his own and bear children with her out of love for Me.

19. Every Adam is tempted by Eve, but the man does not commit sin when he deals with his married half in chaste thoughts.

20. The love between two spouses, two lovers, must never be broken by worldly selfishness and pleasure or worldly advantages, because love is the greatest sanctuary before God and men.

21. Unfruitful marriages, where quarrels and strife threaten to arise, do not have to resort to the means not approved by Me, as did the patriarchs, who - with the consent of their lawful wives - let them fetch servants, but turn to Me with the relevant request that I bless their marriage and give them children. - It is therefore a breach of faith when married women, for the sake of peace in marriage, receive their children through the adulterous ways. - I can give children when I see that they will be brought up well. Use the serious request to Me to have children, but not the forbidden ways of adultery! - Where physical deformity does not allow conception, - adopt an unknown motherless child! So that in no case sin is committed. —

22. If a man has great desire and secretly goes out to satisfy himself and thus to amuse himself, then he certainly commits a gross sin of breach of faith against the nature of the marital order.

108. The Betrayal of Faith in Marriage

1. The breach of faith in marriage is a great sin, but no less the seduction of the wife of another human being, which then amounts to the same thing as adultery, for this is the desire of the wife of your neighbour.

2. Adultery including seduction to adultery is a great sin in My divine eyes because through it, where otherwise love and peace reigned, hell with all its entourage has returned and the whole family

plunges into misery, therefore adultery can only be made good again through great repentance and penance.

3. Repentance must come from a fully true inner conviction that man has committed a great sin. Of course man must then ask for forgiveness from Me so intimately and with his hands raised until I give him any signs or feelings in his body as signs of reconciliation, e.g. a tingling through the body, blows to the body; a light-sign in the room where he asks Me for forgiveness etc. But then he has to repent, and never do anything like that again, and strive to fulfill My commandments. Thus the sinner slowly purifies himself and returns to Me in grace. And from this you can infer that this sin is not a small one, but a great one.

4. Every man is to love his wife, but this love must correspond to the Divine regulation, therefore it must be spiritual and not material. He may have no other women before his eyes, he may look at them, but as indifferent as he looks at his mother or sister, and must have in his heart the same reverence for them regarding moral conduct, as if he speaks to his own mother. Accordingly, the woman also has the same rules towards other men as the man against other women, that is, she must treat them with the same moral reverence as if she were standing before her biological father.

5. Love is the seed of affection and reproduction in man. This seed is sanctified by the purpose for which it is to serve, and this is the animation of the primeval spirits and the redemption and return of the soul of Satana - transformed into matter in atoms - to God. That is why man is not to indulge in the desire for pleasure because he then scatters in an unholy way, what God's love creates for a holy purpose. The power of the plant depends on the power of the seed, thus the being that is to arise from it. Therefore guard what is sanctified by God, and do not desecrate it by abuse, so that you would not be in lacking a component of your ego, once [it is] scattered; for really, he who does not collect, scatters like the one who effectively scatters, do so thoughtlessly. Behold, the spiritual of it will one day lack him, and therefore he will not have it, like the squanderer who scatters his wealth into unjust hands - from where he gets neither interest nor capital back.

109. Sexual Sins

1. We now begin by enumerating the sins which men once committed and are still committing, in order to obtain a clear picture of the multiple aberrations of the human race, namely:

2. Fornication or unchastity, lust, creating lust by words, pictures, incentives or deeds, contradiction and teaching that it is not a sin, exaggerated jealousy, which irritates and leads the offended to sin, Concentration, fornication, illicit handling of married and unmarried persons, adultery, divorce for fornication, desecration and violent desecration or fornication of minors, Desecration of boys, masturbation, lewd talk, foul thoughts, wishes and words, foul singing. - Sodomitic sin (animal lust and pederasty).

3. The other sins which belong under the sixth commandment, can be looked up in the *Prayer Book*, which are all great sins, because they kill the spirit and draw man into the pit of hell.

4. The sins cited are the certain means for you to go to hell, for fornicators and adulterers do not go to heaven, but into the darkness of hell, and abide there until they either turn back and repent themselves, or by the power of the extreme burning heat of fire, which burns them through the lusts and desires and brings them into the most desperate situation of pain and suffering, where they capitulate at the end of the bankruptcy of all life's power, and return to repentance.

5. The state of such a soul is terrible, because it is spiritually burned like a stump and suffers nameless pains and still it has desire to commit even greater sins, despite the fact that it has no nose, no ears, no human face etc. anymore from the consuming fire of desire to sin. - The spiritual

fire burns out of the whole body like the heat of a pile of glowing coals. - (I, Franz Schumi myself, saw such a soul from the third hell around noon in 1895 in the full sun of the day. But it wasn't a sensory illusion, because I didn't think about it)

6. Vegetarian life is recommended as a prevention against fornication. Avoid mainly all alcoholic drinks (wine, beer, liqueur, liquor); then coffee, tea, tobacco, meat and all naturally and artificially acidified, fermented foods, because if consumed a lot, it is harmful and dilutes and weakens the blood. Also anaemic conditions (nervousness, anaemia) tends strongly to excite fornication, it must therefore be cured.

110. In Spiritual Sense

Commiting adultery, whoring and fornication in the divine prophecies and revelations of the prophets is understood to defile the good of the Word of God and falsify its truths.

111. In Heavenly Sense

...is understood by adultery as denying the holiness of the word, desecrating it and laughing at it in the heart.

112. The Seventh Commandment of God

"Thou shalt not steal (or rob), neither materially nor spiritually, neither for thyself nor in the service of another, because every man is a child of God and thy brother." (Exod 20:15; Deut 5:19)

113. What is Forbidden by the Seventh Commandment?

The seventh commandment forbids Theft (a), robbery (b), deception in measures and weights (c), the retention of foreign goods (d) and song wages (e), usury (f) and all damage to one's neighbour's property and rights (g).

a) *Matthew 19:18* - Thou shalt not steal.

b) *Amos 3:9-10* - The rich and powerful do not respect justice, says Jehovah, they collect and accumulate treasures in their palaces through iniquity, violence, blackmail and robbery. - Isaiah 3:14 - The Lord goes into judgement with the elders of His people and with His princes; for you have ruined the vineyard (of the Lord, which is the spiritual guidance of His children); and the robbed [things] of the poor is in your houses.

c) *Lev 19:36* - Right scales, right weights, right bushel and right measure you shall have.

d) *Lev 6:2-5* - If anyone sins and commits an offence against Jehovah, and denies his neighbor what has been entrusted to him, or what has been deposited in his hand, or what he has stolen, or has blackmailed his nights; 3. or has found something lost, and denies it, even falsely swears about something of any man that he had done; and sins in it; 4. And it shall come to pass, when he hath sinned, and is at fault, that he shall return the spoil which he hath stolen, or the blackmail which he

hath blackmailed, or the entrusted which was entrusted unto him, or the lost which he hath found; 5. or any thing for which he swore falsely, and reimburse it according to all its value, and add his fifth part to that to which it belongs.

e) *Jeremiah 22:13* - "Woe to him who builds his house with unrighteousness, and his chambers with injustice, who blackmails *his neighbour's work* without payment, and gives him *no reward*.

f) *Exodus 22:25* - If thou lend money to my people, to the poor man with thee, be no usurer against him, and lay no interest on him.

g) *Leviticus 19,13,35* - Thou shalt not take advantage of thy neighbour, nor deprive him; neither deprive him overnight of the wages of the day labourer until the morning. - Ye shall do no wrong in judgment, in cubits, in weights, and in measures.

114. The transgressions of the Seventh Commandment are:

1. Theft, plundering, robbery, street and sea-robbery, every secret or violent appropriation of foreign goods and possessions.

2. The tax claim from one's neighbour, and with violent demands and taking of taxes by seizure and sale.

3. Deception; craftsmen sin against this commandment if they do their work dishonestly and fraudulently; Officers, who short-pay soldiers' wages; judges who give gifts for friendship, affinity or because of other considerations, [to] speak justice wrongly, by distorting the laws or questions, and so rob others of their goods, which they rightfully possess. So also inheritance-hunting to the detriment of the rightful heirs.

115. What is commanded by the Seventh Commandment?

1. The Seventh Commandment commands: to leave to each his own, to give and to perform (1), to restitute (2) the alienated, and to make good the damage done (3).

1. *Romans 13:7* - So give to every one what you owe; tax to whom tax, customs to whom customs. Matthew 22:21 - Pay to God what is God's and to the emperor what is the emperor's. compare these words with the 5th, 7th and 9th commandments of God, what else I as God demand from you; and what I demand from the rulers, then you will understand the true meaning of these words of Mine.

2. *Ezekiel 33:14-15* - When I say to the wicked, 'Thou shalt die!' and he repents of his sin, and does justice and righteousness, so that the wicked return the unjust pledge, because he was wicked before, and walks again according to the precepts of life, and commits no wrong; truly he shall live and not die.

3. *Exodus 22:5* - If any man damage a field or a vineyard, or let his cattle into it to graze on another's pasture, he shall reimburse the best that he hath in his field or vineyard according to the estimate of the damage.

2. For a better justification of the 7th commandment, what is said in the book "The Spiritual Sun" is also to be repeated here:

3. "Stealing is material and spiritual. Stealing is done by everyone who collects capital at the expense of his fellow human beings, whether through usury, industry, or any other business or trade through which bread is obviously taken from the mouth of the fellow human beings, because I, God, did not create any property-right, [or] any class preference.

4. "But it is also a sin to take away something from the rich, usurers, etc., without the utmost need. The rich enjoy their heaven in this world, and will come to the other world without any privileges whatsoever, and miserable."

5. "For the poor, who bear their destiny in a godly surrender, there is the consolation that I, Jesus Myself, pronounced: "My kingdom is not of this world." He who has his heaven here and no eye and no heart for the suffering of his fellow human beings, will have no heaven in the hereafter - and here it will only take a few years, but there it will take countless years. He that is reasonable seek the kingdom of the Lord! - for the earthly is full of lies and deceit, and the rich themselves are often very unhappy, but never quite satisfied, because the world gives no satisfaction."

6. I as divine Master said to My disciples: "Do not worry what you will eat and what you will clothe your bodies with; for all this is a matter for the Gentiles. Seek above all the kingdom of God; all else will fall to you by itself." - I also said: "The birds have their nests and the foxes their holes (pits), but the Son of Man does not have a stone of His own, which He places under His head!" Herewith I have clearly said that one should not collect earthly goods if one wants to inherit heavenly goods.

7. "Man should not therefore intervene with which do not agree with God's order, for I indeed said: "Pay to the emperor what is the emperor's; but I have also said: - and God what is God's." - And what does this commandment mean? This commandment means:

8. "Thou shalt never forsake the Divine order, nor put thyself beyond it, nor take possession of the right hand of God." —

9. "But what is this right hand, and what does it consist of? God alone is holy, and to Him alone becomes all power! - The one whom God Himself sanctifies and gives him power, he possesses it rightfully; But the one who sanctifies himself and thereby seizes Divine power to rule in the glory of it arbitrarily and greedily, is in the true sense not of God's grace, but a thief, a robber and a murderer! —

10. So it is the one who elevates himself above his brothers arbitrarily and in self-love by whatever external means of appearance and deception, whether earthly or spiritual, who completely transgresses such commandment. No spirit, medium, [or] man should ever use the power and might inherent in him arbitrarily, but always only in the divine order. (More in ChtS. 111. Chap. 256-258)

116. In Spiritual Sense

1. In the spiritual sense, stealing is understood as robbing others of the truth of their faith through false or heretical teachings.

2. Priests who serve merely for profit or in order to obtain honour, and teach things from which they can see or see from the word that they are not true, are spiritual thieves, because they deprive the people of the means of salvation, which are the truths of faith, these are also called hot thieves of the Word, in the following passages:

3. *John 10:1,10* - He who does not enter through the door into the sheepfold, but enters from elsewhere, he is a thief and a robber; the thief comes only to steal, to slaughter and to destroy.

4. *Matthew 6:19-20* - Do not put away treasures on earth, but in heaven, where thieves do not come and steal them.

5. *Obadiah 5* - If thieves come upon you, if destroyers come upon you at night, how shall you be undressed! Shall they not steal until they have enough?

6. *Joel 2:9* - They will run around the city, walk on the wall, climb into the houses, enter through the windows like a thief.

7. *Hosea 7:1* - They lied, and the thief came in, and the mob spoiled from without.

8. Spiritual theft refers to all commandments if they are not fulfilled as they are prescribed. Yes, these must be fulfilled exactly and not only superficially or halfway; for if you do not do this, you steal from Me, the Father, the love you have to give Me; but you are also stealing from those close to you the means that give them the opportunity to come to Me, the Father, and thirdly you are stealing from yourself by closing yourself to the supreme bliss by not following My Commandments until you have finally come to the insight to fulfil every one of My Commandments with all diligence at every moment of your existence, down to the smallest detail. For I, the Father, love you; I, the Father, love all people and that is why I also want to be loved. Because My love alone achieves the joyful union.

117. In Heavenly Sense

1. In the heavenly sense, thieves are understood to be those who deprive the Lord of Divine power by presuming to teach that they have inherited the power of God through the apostles and can forgive sins - or withhold forgiveness - on God's behalf, and grant Divine graces and privileges to the faithful through indulgences and the like, which is due only to God; these, although they worship God, still do not give Him the honour but [take it for] themselves, because they assume Divine privileges and use them to the detriment of the salvation of believers' souls, because it is not truth but deception, therefore salvation-robbery.

2. Those who teach the false and the heretical, and persuade the people that it is true and lawful, though they may read the Word, and know from it what is false and what is true, then those who establish the false of religion by deceitful truths, and deceive men by false teachings, can be compared with deceivers and deceits of all kinds; and since these are in themselves thefts in the spiritual sense, they can be compared with the deceivers who mint false coins, gild them, or give them the colour of gold, and pass them off as genuine; the same with those who know how to cut and produce crystals properly, give them shine and hardness, and then sell them as diamonds. They are also like those who place make-up masks on living and natural faces and hide their natural form. They also resemble those who display Selenite and Marienglas shine like gold and silver and present it to be precious things. They can also be compared to those who, through theatrical performances of true religion and the temples, lure people away to the theatre-houses. Those who confirm falsehoods of every kind, by completely disrespecting the truths and administering the spiritual office merely for the sake of profit and honour, and thus are spiritual thieves, can be compared to those thieves who carry keys with them through which they can open the doors of all houses; then also to the leopards and eagles who spy around with sharp eyes for an agreeable, fat booty.

118. The Eighth Commandment of God

"Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour (neither by falsehood, nor by false testimony, nor by slander, nor by breaking a word, nor by breach of faith, nor by perjury"(Exod 20:16; Deut 5:20)

119. What is Prohibited by the Eighth Commandment?

1. The eighth commandment prohibits: false testimony (1), false accusation (2), all lies, including joke lies and white lies (3), slander (4), defamation (5), false suspicion (6), outrageous judgement (7), gossip (8).

1. *Proverbs 19:5,9* - A false witness does not go unpunished, and he who speaks lies does not escape. - Whoever speaks lies, perishes (spiritually).

2. *Proverbs 19:28* - An unjust witness laughs at judgement, and the wicked mouth devours unrighteousness.

3. *Leviticus 19:11* - You shall not lie. Ephesians 4:25 - Therefore put away the lie, and speak truth to each other; for we are members of one another.

4. *Jacob 4:11* - Do not slander one another, brethren! He who slanders his brother or judges his brother slanders the law and judges the law. But when you judge the law, you are not an obeyer, but a judge of the law.

5. *Proverbs 4:24* - "Put away from thee an evil mouth, and let slanderous lips be far from thee.

6. *Zacharias 8:17* - No one thinks evil against his neighbour in his heart.

7. *Romans 14:4* - Who are you to judge a strange servant? To his Lord he stands and falls; but he will stand; for God is mighty to keep him standing.

8. *Sirach 28:15* - The gossiper and the two-faced one is cursed; for among many who live in peace, he causes confusion.

120. What is Commanded by the Eighth Commandment?

1. The eighth commandment commands: truth (1), sincerity in your speeches and actions (2), defense of the good name of one's neighbour (3), revocation of dishonouring.

1. *Ephesians 4:25* - Speak truth to your neighbour.

2. *Philippians 1:9-10* - For this I pray that your love may increase more and more in knowledge and in all understanding, so that you may test what is better, so that you may be clean and blameless for the day of Christ. I Pet 2:21-22 - Christ suffered for us and left you an example to follow in His footsteps. - He had committed no sin, and no deceit was found in His mouth.

3. *Proverbs 31:8-9* - "Open your mouth for the dumb in the judgement against all the transgressors of the law. Open your mouth and create righteousness and justice for the

afflicted and the poor.

2. In the broader natural sense, it is understood to mean treachery, deceit and evil attacks against someone for various reasons, for example: hostility, hatred, envy, jealousy, etc.; for this evil conceals a testimony of the false in itself.

3. Now follows what I said in the "*Spiritual Sun*" about "giving false witness" through the apostle John:

4. This commandment is exceedingly important and covers all human sins and weaknesses: One should not speak differently than one thinks and act differently than one speaks.

5. Spiritually speaking, if one knows the truth or God's law, one should not act differently to one's neighbour than to God. God says: "Whoever prays, prays in spirit and in truth," but whoever prays and acts against the knowledge of truth, gives false testimony with his mouth to God. The one who commits the sins listed in this book, does not pray in spirit and in truth, but lies, because only then does prayer have value before God if one protects oneself from the following sins:

6. God abhors: lack of love, mercilessness, intolerance, cruelty to fellow men and animals, hostility, egoism, hypocrisy, arrogance, lust for power, self-opinionatedness, oppression of one's fellow man (also servants), fraud, manipulation or trickery, cheating, swearing, anger, vengeance, hatred, quarrelsomeness, slander, cutting off one's honour, orientation and judgement about one's neighbour (being a prayer sister), Lukewarmness in Divine things, love of luxury, dancing and lust for drink, bragging, self-exaltation, boastfulness, externality in love-works, so that the world writes and speaks about it, self- and pleasure-seeking, voluptuousness, worldly love, Self-exaltation, boastfulness, everything that is done not out of love for God, but out of self-love. (Thus Apostle John teaches ChtS in the *Spiritual Sun*. 3, ch. 259-260.

121. In Spiritual Sense

1. Bearing false witness In the spiritual sense, means: Thou shalt not, through false teachings, deprive your neighbour or brother of his soul's salvation, not persuade him that a wrong faith is the true faith, and that the evil of life is the good and right of life; the understanding is that this happens out of premeditation (or from godlessness), but not out of ignorance of the truth, so that it happens, after one has recognized what is true and good, but not before, because the Lord says:

2. *John 9:41* - If you were blind, you would have no sin, but now that you say, 'We see', your sin remains.

3. This wrong is understood in the word under the lie and premeditated under the deception in the following passages:

4. *Isaiah 28:15* - We made a covenant with death and created a vision of hell (in the work of evil), we lied about our confidence and hid ourselves in falsehoods.

5. *Isaiah 30:9* - They are a people of rebellion, lying sons, they will not hear the law of Jehovah.

6. *Jeremiah 8:10* - From the prophet to the priest, everyone deals with lies.

7. *Micah 6:12* - The inhabitants speak lies, and their tongues are full of deceit in their mouths.

8. *Psalm 5:7* - You will destroy those who speak falsehood, the man of deceit abhors Jehovah.

9. *Jeremiah 9:4-5* - They taught their tongues to speak lies; their dwelling is in the midst of deceit.

10. Because the lie is understood to be the wrong thing, the Lord says in John 8:44: 'The devil speaks the lie out of himself'.

11. The lie means false and lying speech also in the following passages with the prophets Jeremiah (Jer 9:4; - 23:14,32), Ezekiel (13:15-19; 21:34), Hosea (7:1; 12:1) Nahum (3:1), and David (Ps 120:2,3).

12. You're not supposed to give a false testimony, it is plainly spoken: You shall at all times seek to preserve yourself in the truth; for in and through the truth alone can you exist to give to your neighbour that which also introduces him to the truth, in order then to be able to serve Me, his Father, through it.

122. In Heavenly Sense

1. In the heavenly sense, false witness is understood to mean that you should not transform the love for God and your brother, your neighbour, into evil and false by evil and false talk, into perverse love, by blaspheming the Lord and His holy Word, and thus twisting the truth which is Jesus Himself in His word and teaching, into untruth and thus driving it out of people's hearts.

2. Conversely, witness is understood in this sense as to speak the truth, and testimony, as the truth itself; from where also comes that the Ten Commandments are called 'the testimony' (Exod 25:16, 21,22; 31:7,18; 32:1,5,16; 40:20; Lev 16:13; Numbers 17:19,22,25). And because the Lord is the Truth Himself, He says of Himself that He witnesses that the Lord is the Truth Himself. (John 14:6; Rev. 3:7,14) And that He is a witness of Himself. (John 3:11; 8:13-19; 15:26; 18:37,38)

3. Every man loves that his neighbour treat him in all order, that he should not lie to him, that he should not be accused of unpleasant things, that he should not be slandered, that he should not be accused of acts which he has not committed, do not deceive him by lying 'for his good', by fooling him, by deceiving him through false statements, by depriving him of honour and wealth or personal freedom, by depriving him of prestige, credit and human dignity by malicious defamation, etc..

4. Behold, all this and even more is forbidden in the eighth commandment to do against one's neighbour, so be careful that you never speak anything to one's neighbour or of one's neighbour that brings him harm, shame and contempt before other people! Because I your God and Judge dwell both in you and in your neighbour and have put in every commandment the punishment and reward and nobody will be excluded from it, because the judge in every commandment is already content, because the punishment or reward lies in the act.

5. Those who speak falsehoods out of deceit or intent and recite them with the imitated tone of spiritual inclination, and even more so when they interfere with truths out of the Word, and thus falsify them, were called 'sorcerers' by the ancients; then also pythons and snakes of the tree of knowledge of good and evil. Such hypocrites or false speakers are people who think evil behind their backs, while they flatter and give honour to someone in his face.

123. Ninth Commandment of God:

"Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's goods as: the house, nor his field, nor his servant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor all that thy neighbour has."(Exod 20:17; Deut 21)

1. God has subordinated your longings and desires to the law, in order to to show you: That I may be the Lord of your hearts (1), that nothing of all that goes on in your hearts is hidden from Me (2), that My Law is far more excellent than all human laws, which can direct only your external actions, but not also your internal attitudes (3), that, in order to eradicate sin, it is necessary to suffocate it immediately in its source, which is evil lust (4).

1. *Proverbs 21:1-2*: "The king's heart is in the Lord's hand like water pipes, and He can incline it to anything that Jehovah wants. Jehovah tests the hearts.

2. *Proverbs 24:12* - (Jehovah) Who tests the hearts, He knows it; and Who sees through your soul, He knows it.

3. *Deut 4:8* "What people is so great that they have such just statutes and commandments as all this law that I present to you this day. - Romans 7:14: We know well that the law is spiritual; but I am a slave to sin in the flesh.

4. *Jacob 1:14-15* - Everyone is tempted by his own lust, by being tempted and lured; then when it has received, it gives birth to sin; but when sin came to consummation, it gives birth to death (of the soul).

2. My commandment dictates about collecting any unnecessary property, and therefore also to produce it, because with it, the right of use as well as the sales are reduced for the neighbour, or shortened in such a way that the neighbour cannot exist. Likewise it forbids the lazy one to live sluggishly through the day and to attack or demand the property and acquisition of the neighbour without effort and without rights. Prayer includes the union of respect and love for the natural needs of one's neighbour.

3. Therefore, those who are affected by money speculation, gain and profit, business acquisitions, etc., earned themselves a great deal of money and this by increasing the interest rate or making financial transactions of any kind without giving charitable interest to the neighbours, is before Me, God, the same unlawful excess, because they have this acquisition and profit on expenses of the thereby disadvantaged, mostly working everyday people that they have gathered for themselves and piled up, while others have starved and suffered for it, and because they don't have enough, while the rich have too much. That is why in the *Spiritual Sun*, such great land-owners with criminal names, are called illegal owners. (ChtS. 3, chapter 265)

4. When I said to the rich young man, as it is written in the gospel, "Spread all your wealth to the poor and follow Me, the young man left the Lord and preferred to go home to his goods; Therefore I said: It is easier for a ship's rope ('camel' in Hebrew means ship's rope) to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to go to heaven. So nowadays also, the rich owners prefer to stay with their own fortune rather than to use their abundance to help the truly needy. Of course there are also exceptions, but such are rare, being quiet and hidden, but they let the world publicly praise them and thereby lose any reward in the afterlife! - because they attach more importance to the public honour of the world than to Jesus' words: "The left (or wisdom of understanding) shall not know what the right (or love for God and neighbour) does".

5. So the rich man Prasser went to hell; but poor Lazarus went to heaven. Because wealth is usually the foundation of all iniquities and vices; therefore is wealth (when badly administered) an abomination in the eyes of God. And that is why God also chose a poor life in the person of Christ, to

be an example that poverty protects against sin more than wealth; and to show the greatness of His humility.

6. The evangelical results show that I, the Lord of heaven and earth, am a rejected enemy, due to the desire for money. In every other [instance], My Divine love speaks of patience, forbearance and mercy; but about blasphemy and thirst for wealthy, speaks My wrath and fury (i.e. destructive zeal and disgust!). Because here I blocked the entrance to Me through the known eye of the needle, clearly opened the abyss of hell and showed in it a real damned one; so terribly did I express Myself to the domineering and greedy Pharisees, that I clearly showed them how fornicators, adulterers, thieves and also other sinners will enter the kingdom of God sooner than they will.

7. Yes, in zeal for the purity of the temple as a house of prayer, I even took a chastening weapon there, and mercilessly drove out all the speculators of whatever kind and described them as murderers of the Divine kingdom, in that they had already made the temple, which represents the Divine kingdom, a murderer's pit of money-speculation themselves. (The spiritually is understood by temple of the human body.)

8. Who is only able to think to some extent, will see from it that even I, Jesus, had no restricted desire in any other human circumstances, in any other opportunity and activity forbidden by Myself, as exactly in this usurious opportunity that is most displeasing to Me of all. - Everywhere I expressly forbid the activity [of usury]; but here already the desire for wealth, because of the danger, which arises from it for the spirit, is too great - because it withdraws the spirit completely from God and turns it completely to hell, which you can also see from it that certainly every other sinner feels repentance after a sinful act, while the rich speculator cheers and triumphs over a happily successful speculation! - And this is the true triumph of hell; and the prince of hell therefore seeks to fill men in every possible way with love for worldly wealth. They thereby succumb to vain addiction and most easily distance themselves from Me, and the way back to Me is only shown to them through poverty and privation, before which they frighten and flee. - Blessed is the one who will take these words to heart, for they are the eternal and unchanging divine truth!

9. The commandment was originally only spiritual, only with time did ownership and slavish conditions develop in the world, whereby the commandment was understood only materially, and, having dominion over the land, the people was subordinated until conditions was set in the articles of the law, and from then on, the desire after the neighbour's possessions was described with the judicial term 'seizure' or 'taken by force', if someone is unable to pay.

125. The Spiritual Sense

1. The spiritual meaning of the ninth commandment is according to My Divine indication, the following:

- Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house, that is, the love in which he dwells, and which lifts him up, is to love God and thy neighbour unselfishly;
- furthermore it is forbidden for you to covet your neighbour's field, that is, his learned knowledge by which he earns his bread;
- then the neighbour's servant, which is the neighbour's service in favour of the brother;
- So also not his maid, which is the peaceful subservience of the neighbour towards his brother, in order to live in peace and quiet with him;
- as well as his ox, which presents the lack of will versus zeal;

- finally also his donkey or good-naturedness, which all - together with all that one desires from one's neighbour without urgent need - is a fraudulent exploitation of the unselfish love of the neighbourly love of one's brother.

2. Furthermore, this commandment has the following explanation in itself: "Respect one another out of mutual true brotherly love, and let no one envy the other when he was more blessed by Me, the Creator, because of his greater love; But let the more blessed of them let his resulting advantages benefit all his brethren as brothers as much as possible; thus you shall establish among yourselves an eternal union of life, which no power shall ever be able to destroy for ever."

126. The Tenth Commandment of God:

"Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife." (Exod 20:17; Deut 5:21)

1. This commandment is purely spiritual and has therefore been completely misunderstood until now; for already in the sixth commandment, there is an indication of general fornication, so here it is only a repetition of the sixth commandment if the spiritual word "woman" would denote a woman of flesh; this alone is not really the case here, one can also understand the material woman by it, as it once happened in the *Spiritual Sun*, yet I once gave the explanation some other time that mainly the love of the neighbour which is not to be abused, is to be understood.

2. The love of your neighbour is his benevolence, his mercy, his compassion, his zeal for you, his faith and trust in your words; it is these virtues which you shall not desire, or abuse in a profit-seeking or pleasure-seeking way, and you may not, if you are not truly in need and misery, make an appeal on the benevolence of your brother. For if you do this, and you have no need to do it, you abuse his love for you, and commit a sin that drags you down, because you enter into the kind of sin that is called liar, swindler, deceiver, and common exploiter of the neighbour, and for such there is neither paradise nor heaven.

3. Let the love of one's neighbour work freely, and let the compassionate benevolence in no way be demanded and abused; therefore, this must not be influenced and deceived by flattery, praise of the person, or in any other fraudulent way.

4. You can see that 'woman' is not really understood here as the wife of one's neighbour, because this commandment was given together with the ninth commandment and can therefore not include fornication here, because house, woman, field, servant, donkey, handmaid and ox are written together - which are explained in the ninth commandment in their spiritual sense; fornication, however, is already altogether forbidden in the sixth commandment, so it won't be repeated here.

5. The separation of this commandment from the ninth commandment and its incorporation into a tenth commandment happened, because these commandments are called the ten words or Decalogus. (Exod 34:28; Deut 4:13; 10:4)

6. Commandments seven, nine and ten prohibit the desire for other people's goods and loving spirit and forbid the arbitrary, because [it is] unjustified taking of all that is one's neighbour's.

THE TWO COMMANDMENTS OF LOVE

127. The First Commandment of Love

Year 32, September 9th, Jerusalem. I, Jesus, explained the greatest and noblest commandment in the law of Moses by saying:

"Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, with all thy soul, and with all thy mind." (Matt 22:37-38)

1902, January 24, Graz. Word of the Father through Franz Schumi: God is in Himself the purest love and this love is the reflection of His divinity. All creation is the reflection of His love, for it came out of love and through love it is nurtured.

1. Man as a child of God is a being of His love and has emerged from Him like a crown of creation and has grown in Him as a gem of His love to His Fatherly heart.

2. Therefore, man should love Me, his God and Father, with all his strength and above all things. He shall see Me everywhere, he shall have Me everywhere before his eyes, he shall never forget that I am his true Father who loves him. Therefore he shall value everything less than Me and may it be the dearest thing he possesses, not excluding wife and child.

3. When man will love Me that much, then he will only strive to do what he will reasonably regard as pleasing to Me; and My love will stay with him and lead him over all chasms and obstacles of earthly life to My heart, which loves him.

4. Love Me therefore above everything, so that you will be strengthened through this love, will withstand all temptations of life, and therefore nothing will distract you from the way of love. But love will guide you into all secrets of life and you will always stand prepared against all sins, which experience the just disapproval in My eyes.

5. When you stand armed against everything that I do not like, then My love is always with you and you feel My nearness, My benevolence and My blessing, which strengthens you in the good and continues to strengthen you and encourages you to better things. Always be worthy of this holy blessing flowing over you, to let it work so that you may soon come from the world of sin, death and hell to Me, the Father of love, the holiness of heaven, and take the seat in My Heart which I have prepared for you from My love as children of My Heart since time immemorial.

6. Therefore you are not to do anything what does not correspond to love towards Me and the neighbour, or what I forbid to commit, because it is to the bodily and spiritual harm of man. And man, as My child, has to follow Me as I am his Creator and Father and not to act against My will because it is against his temporal and spiritual benefit! (Read: *Spiritual Sun*, ChtS. III. Chap. 276)

7. All the sins mentioned in the *Prayer Book* in Daniel's prophecy are also directed against Me.

128. The Second Commandment of Love

Year 32, September 9th, Jerusalem. On this day I, Jesus, explained the second highest commandment in the law of Moses, saying: "The second commandment is like the first commandment: 'Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself', and remarked: 'In these two commandments is all the law and the prophets.' (Matt 22:39-40)

1902, January 24, Graz. The Father's Jesus word through Franz Schumi:

1. Believe, My child, that the love you bring to your nearest brother among the people is for him as well as for Me, since I, as Spirit of God dwells in him; for if you do not open your heart to your neighbour, you are also withholding it from Me.

2. You may love Me personally, but if you do not love your brother or sister, you do not love Me either; for your brother hides Me, but I am in him and am his spiritual Love-ego, which you shall always take into account, even if the material garment in which I am veiled does not correspond to your views.

3. Behold, your brother is still a wildling, and I am his Gardener, Who slowly leads and grafts him to have a noble fruit from him one day. And as you do not reject a young wild apple tree, even though it is wild and still barren, so also not reject your brother who was not yet grafted with My teaching and love and borne noble fruits of charity! —

4. Think that your brother desires the same of you when he is in need, what you would wish of him when you are in need, therefore meet him lovingly and do your Christian duty, for I, Christ, as God's Spirit in every man, am the co-recipient of your merciful charity.

5. When you bring love to your brother, you have done him well, he thanks you and Me; you feel a contentment in you which elevates you far above everyday life. But why is that? Behold, My child, this comes from My love in you who feels happy to see from you a sign of childlike insight towards My child that he is your brother and therefore fully deserves your love and consideration.

6. If you love Me, you can only love Me in truth if you practice works of charity; because you are to love Me in spirit out of all your power, but you are not to forget that every man is a child of God and that everything you withdraw from yourself out of love and mercy and give it to your needy brother, that I too, am present and benevolently receive the spiritual love and mercy, which is offered with the material gift, joyfully.

7. Therefore be loving to each other and always consider before you do anything against your brother, whether it is also pleasant and pleasing in My eyes as the Father of your brothers.

8. Charity towards the neighbour is indicated with the perfect correspondence, by the commandment: "Do to your neighbour what you want him to do to you"; for if every man would do only to his neighbour what he desires his neighbour to do to him, it would be heaven on earth, because everyone desires only good, but no-one desires bad.

9. If all fulfill the commandments of God, then it will not be necessary to say: The reward takes place after death in the kingdom of spirits, but then the kingdom of God will automatically create itself and no man will be able to oppress, subjugate, exploit and dominate you anymore because by living according to the commandments of God, man as child of God, raises himself up to be a child of God under the dominion of his Father.

10. Paul wrote to the Romans (Rom 13:8-10), quoting the ten commandments and saying at the end: 'He who loves his neighbour does no harm to him, for love is the fulfillment of the law'.

11. So also the sins listed in the Prayer Book, which are not aimed directly against God or against oneself, are precisely the sins against one's neighbour. - (Compare "The 7 Works of Charity" in the *Prayer Book*, 3d edition, chapter 17)

129. Karma

The word Karma * is of Indian origin and means "action, activity or work". It is the action or work of man in his earthly life.

1. *) Kar or Kri means 'to make, to do, to create' in Sanskrit. From this Sanskrit language root, one finds the following words in other languages: Slovenian mojškra [mois-karâ] ir.= str. "fashion-maker" and that means seamstress; - the nickname Mojškarc [mois-kart] "fashion-maker" once meant tailor. - kri can be found in the Latin cre- are "create, create". - ma in Karma compare with Greek Poëma and Slovovenian pesma sing "song" by peti; - thus also crema "Obers" "Sahne" by kri-ma, "the created", "the (self-) created". - Comparisons: 'carl' - old english farmer, rusticus, because kar and [bhu] in Sankskrit means "to do, to make, to build, to work, to create", therefore ancient german karlus or bhûrius [bhû- uri] from which new high german: Bauer reads, one and the same word, _ ahd. charl, karl; in old icelandic, karl means farmer, like karl swedish means a man (i.e. doer, farmer).

2. Man's future depends on his karma, for what he sows he will reap. (Paul to Gal. 6:7,8 - Do not be mistaken! God will not be mocked; for what man sows, he will reap. - [8] He that sows for his flesh shall reap the destruction of the flesh; But whoever sows for the Spirit, will reap eternal life from the Spirit.) Sowing is in this world; reaping in the spirit kingdom. Therefore it is of the utmost importance that man sows a good seed and in a good field, so that he may have a good harvest.

3. The word karma is used in Indian theosophy, so I have retained it; for there is nothing wrong with the word, but only with the truth. But because Indian theosophy does not illuminate karma according to the truth, I consider it necessary to explain this Myself, too, so that everyone knows and believes the same thing, and *therefore all misleading books must disappear from the world, and so must Buddhist books too, because there is too much untruth and error in them*.

4. The Indians came to the knowledge of karma with a cause and effect on earth, through the Jewish merchants at the end of the nineteenth century after the creation of Adam, namely from Persia and Afghanistan, which at the time of the deluge, was flooded only in the valleys, and therefore the human populations on the high plains was not destroyed by the flood.

130. What is Karma anyway?

1901, 8 June, Graz. Father Jesus explains that karma is man's course of action throughout his life.

1. If we look at the basic meaning of karma, it appears as the whole chain of human life from birth to death, for man works all his life on his spiritual destiny, both on this side and beyond the grave.

2. If man's works or actions are good, he enjoys them, and they please those for whom they have been done. But if they are bad or even evil, they please neither the doer nor the one against whom they were directed. But both the good and the bad actions of man go with him to the afterlife when he leaves the earth and there form his spiritual world, his museum, in the middle of which he always moves and contemplates his past. For nothing is lost at all, as prayer teaches you about

"spiritualization": What man had thought, seen, heard, spoken, sung, smelt, enjoyed or tasted in one way or another in all his life, is all spiritually preserved. From this you can see how unusually rich such a pantry (Indian "Akasha", Slovenian "Kashta") or storehouse is!

131. How does a Person work towards a Good Karma?

1901, June 9, Graz. Father Jesus declares that only by fulfilling all the commandments and teachings of God, can man work himself good karma.

1. The education of man is often and for the most part the cause of his fate, because rough education usually produces crude action; - but fine or noble education, noble action. But one must grasp this in the Christian sense; for I speak not of a salon-like education of the previous educational system, which prepares men for My adversary, who lives in hell, but only of an education, whose culmination-point is the love for God and man.

2. Man is put on earth by Me only so that he would happily pass his flesh-examination to move after this life, into a happier spirit-kingdom, where his true home is.

3. When we now approach the subject and ask: "How does man create his karma?" I will not repeat what I extensively explained in the *"Prayer Book"*, in this book and in the *"Christian Adept"*, which turn the pure teaching of God into a virtuous life, teaching and means of practicing charity, and contain the necessary prayers to God as the Trinitarian Interaction, through which you can work your way up to the highest spirit-man but with new aspects of your life illuminated. Now seize these said spiritual means and use them, everyone according to his best understanding, knowledge and ability.

4. No-one can excuse himself, that he did not know what he had to do, no-one can complain that he lacked the means to practice the works of charity; - everyone sees from the teachings what he should do and what he should refrain from doing, and everyone knows that I want to see you pray, because otherwise I would not have let you write the *"Prayer Book"*. Leave henceforth your cleverness and wisdom and 'knowing better than I do' at home, that you will not cause yourselves much harm with it. What I gave you, was done out of My love and applies to the whole world. If you will act differently than My books teach you, then you have only yourselves to blame if there will be no progress, in spite of wanting it! - For only the one who will do My will, can hope for My love and mercy, but not the one who will establish and act upon his "better" rules of knowledge.

5. From this enlightenment you see that I gave you the best means to educate yourselves very quickly in the spiritual and to raise yourselves up to soon reach My loving Father-heart through the rebirth of the spirit and so, as My child, to become an aspiring god in Me.

6. The previous religions have taught you well that one should be good, yet you have not received any practical and decisive teaching together with the means to become good in any of them; because all previous religions are sick with the evil of impurity, versatile untruths, selfishness of the priests and the like, therefore nobody could come to Me until he gave up his previous views and accepted those which My messengers explained to him as genuine teachings.

132. How does Man Affect his Karma Negatively?

1901, June 9, Graz. Father Jesus explains that man creates a bad karma by living and acting against the ten commandments and teachings of God.

1. In the preceding chapters, the teachings and means through which man can and should work a good karma, were mentioned. Here the sins are discussed through which man builds his hell here for the hereafter. One should therefore pay special attention to the facts that create happiness or misfortune for oneself. For it depends on the correct understanding of the teachings [of how] to live and act according to them in order to happily achieve the goal which awaits man at the end of life.

2. You can see how bad karma arises from the Ten Commandments and the other teachings if you live and act according to them. Everything that violates My commandments and My teachings, constitutes bad karma.

3. There is no need to study how to work good or bad karma, for good is worked by fulfilling My Love-Commandments and teachings; bad [is worked] by omitting or even acting against them. They are all here together and clearly set up and everyone can find his faults or sins, which he should try to eradicate.

133. The Definition of Karma

1901, June 9, Graz. Through the example of human life, Father Jesus explains how cause and effect are related to karma and form a whole.

1. ***Karma is the acting connecting chain between cause as beginning and effect as end.*** **- To grasp this in the true sense of the word and its meaning, here is an example to explain this:**

2. Two people connect through love to a purpose in life. As a result of this connection, children are born, making marriage the cause of the children's origin. As soon as the child comes into life, his external karma begins. First there is the care and work of the parents to raise the child and develop it in all directions, then the school, the church and the state join in and give the developing life the basis for the spiritual and worldly development of man for the future. So the parents, the church and the state in their youth work on the development of reason and understanding and that is external karma, because external work on man [is] to teach him for life in the world, the necessary knowledge on which his future often depends.

3. From then on, independent activity and action - or one's own karma - begins and continues throughout one's entire life, good or bad, as one has understood it, through the acquired knowledge, to utilize the conditions that present themselves to one's ego. From the time of independent living, self-karma begins in the great cause of why man came into the world. This cause engages the work throughout life in order to ennoble and spiritualize man. On one side stands the world of matter, on the other, the world of spirit. Here it depends on how he has used these two for his earthly and future life.

4. At the end of the karma of life, or of human life and action, at death, where the reward for work follows, the effect appears in visible form, what man has worked out of himself, namely: either a blessed spirit, with paradise or heaven as reward, or a devil, to whom hell is assigned as future dwelling.

5. The entry of man into the world is thus the origin of the cause of love between two people; - from then on the developing spiritual and material life-karma begins and runs through the whole life, up to the end of life; - But the final effect of the great drama of human life is the happy or unhappy entrance into the eternal home of spirits.

134. Examples of what Karma is

1902, 18 June, Graz. Through examples from the lives of peoples and individuals, Father Jesus explains the fundamental meaning of karma, its cause and effect, and how all this can be understood.

1. In order to better understand the word karma, here are some historical examples of how I punish people who act against My will. Karma means "work" or "action", but in the action lies always the reason as cause and the effect as consequence; the "why" and the "reason" of karma. Everything has a beginning and an end, the aspiration and the goal of the purpose. In this sense, the following examples are:

2. First example: Someone goes on a journey; but he is used to going only 2 hours a day, now he goes uninterruptedly without resting for 10 hours, without paying attention to his fatigue.

3. When he comes home, he lies down tired and wakes up after 8 hours of sleep. However, he notices that his legs are still tired and that he would not be able to make another long journey immediately, because his thighs hurt and the soles of his feet are sore, or burning. - Result:

4. The great unaccustomed and overstraining journey as Karma, is the cause to the effect and the latter is the still persistent fatigue despite the rest and sleep.

5. Second example: If someone leads a messy life, it usually results in an illness. - So the disorderly life is the cause, but the disease is the effect of karma.

6. Third example: When one speaks to someone, one has something you want the person to hear; what is being heard; is the effect of what is being said, which is for one's own benefit or for the benefit of the listener or the person initially involved.

7. Fourth example: When one breathes, there is a cause in this karma, and what is the effect of karma: breathing? - The preservation of life.

8. Fifth example: When a person is sleepy, he goes to sleep: being sleepy is the cause of karma; - going to sleep and sleeping is the karma or the action itself; - the fresh awakening that is out of one's control, is the effect of karma.

9. Sixth example: A negligent farmer borrows money, spends it all and is therefore deprived of it: being lazy is the cause; - borrowing money and spending [all] is the karma itself; - losing his house and becoming a beggar, is the effect of karma.

10. Seventh example: A fleshly libertine arrives in the hereafter and poaches further, finding no salvation, therefore he is seized by God and must be returned to the flesh as a hermaphrodite, with which a certain boundary is set for him to improve himself. - The libertine lifestyle, is karma; - the necessity to return to the world is cause; - being hermaphrodite is the effect of the karmic cause to improve it.

11. Eighth example: The believing Christian confesses in the third article of the apostolic faith - "I believe in the resurrection of the flesh". But Paul explicitly teaches in the first Epistle to the

Corinthians (15:50) that the material flesh and blood that rot in the tomb, will not inherit the kingdom of God; but rather it is the good works done in the flesh which will form the resurrection body of the soul there, therefore Paul himself says (1 Corinthians 15:42):

12. That's the way it is with the resurrection of the dead: Corruptible things will be sown, imperishable things will rise; - but I say this: He who sows meagerly will also reap meagerly, but he who sows abundantly will also reap abundantly (2 Cor 9:6); - and Revelation teaches, "That man's works follow him into the hereafter" (Rev 14:13) And these are then the resurrection body of the soul in the hereafter.

13. If the works are abundant and good, they form a heavenly bridal garment of the soul; - but if they are evil, then a nasty infernal garment, this is then the resurrection of the flesh according to the truth; for it is said that they are judged according to their works. (Rev 20:12,13) That is why karma is the cause of the effect here:

14. Ninth example : (2088 after Adam - 2063 before Christ, 7 October). Sodom, Gomorra, Adama, Zeboim and the other cities around there lived more like animals than the animals and godless. But I did not bring man into the world to let him become an animal here and to inhabit hell on the other side as a devil, but that he should get rid of all bad qualities and become a spirit-man to enter into happy conditions.

15. The Sodomites were so degenerate that I considered every warning useless and therefore destroyed over 2 million people with sulphur rain.

16. The animal-life was therefore the cause of their karma, but the extermination was the effect of this karma or action.

17. Tenth example : (2666 after Adam - 1485 before Christ, 9 December). When the gang of Korah with Dathan and Abiram at the head, grumbled against and resisted the divine prophet Moses, God punished 250 sacrificial men by dividing the earth and devouring them with fire.

18. But the next day, the sons of Israel rebelled against Aaron and Moses because of this extermination of the Korah gang, and now the earth devoured 14 700 Israelites because they rebelled against the men of God.

19. Here the indignation was the cause of karma, and the extermination of the Israelites was the effect of karma, because through their actions or karma, they evoked the cause of the karma itself.

20. Eleventh example : (2700 after Adam - 1451 before Christ, June 25). When I had decided to give the fortified city of Jericho to the sons of Israel under their leader Joshua, because I had promised to give them the land Kanani (Canaan) as property. On the seventh day the walls of Jericho fell to the sound of the trumpet, and the Israelites entered the city and took it.

21. Here the cause was the promise of Jehovah that the Israelites would take Kanani into their possession and the effect was the trumpet-blow on which Jehovah had the walls of Jericho fall down.

22. Twelfth example: In 4150 after Adam, the archangel Gabriel brought the news to Zachariah son of Barachias, that his wife, although she was already past child-bearing age, would still give birth to a son, but Zachariah doubted and because he doubted, he was punished with blindness, until his son John, the later baptist at the Jordan, was born to him.

23. Karma: Prophecy is the action, according to the prophecy the doubt arose as cause in the action, since the message seemed too unlikely to Zachariah, now the blindness followed as effect from the causal action. Karma or action is everything from beginning to end, but in action, cause or reason develops into effect.

24. Thirteenth example: Pompeii, Herculanum and Stabiae were three cities near Naples and they lived such an animalistic and wild life as once did the Sodomites; the consequence was that I had them completely destroyed by the lava of Vesuvius in the year 79 after Christ.

25. Animalistic life was the cause, extermination, the effect of karma.

135. Karma Doctrine in the Old Testament

1902, September 20, Graz. Father Jesus' enlightenment on the belief in karma among the Jews of the Old Testament, and examples of this belief from the writings of the seers.

1. The science of karma as the causal doctrine of the Bible and its effect is ancient among the Jews; for not the Jews have received their teachings from other peoples, but the pagan peoples have received their teachings from the Jews, which to some extent harmonize with Jewry and Christianity, but are nevertheless less correct than the Jewish teachings, and so down to the unrecognizable distortions of some peoples.

2. This must be obvious to every logically thinking man, because with the Jews I, their God Myself, was the teacher and their teachings, as far as they come from Me and not from Egypt, - must be correct, while other peoples mostly had religious philosophers, who - recognizing the good and the right - preached this to the people according to their opinion as wisdom-teaching of God. Only the weed seed went with it among the people and therefore the inconsistency of other religions.

3. The messages of cause and effect in Karma was known to the Israelites from the primeval times of the human race and henceforth onwards. Because I have always announced the punishment in advance - whereby, when men did not obey My warning, the effect came.

4. So the effect was according to the transgression of My commandment, and in the commandment the punishment was announced in advance against the transgression. Thus, in Old Testament historical prophecies and their fulfillments, lie the news of the cause and effect of the karma of the peoples who transgress the commandments.

5. Through these historical messages of prophesied punishment against the transgression, then the subsequent transgression of the commandment and the subsequent actual punishment, since the days of Adam, the doctrine of karma with its cause and effect formed itself, as you see under Job, Moses, Hosea, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel and Proverbs.

6. After this enlightenment about karma, that the oldest news about it occurs in the holy scriptures, we come to the historical facts:

7. Fourteenth example : (year 30 after Adam's creation - 4121 before Christ, on the Jabok River in Palestine);

8. The greatest example of *causa et effectus* or cause and effect in karma, is Adam's sin against the commandment of abstinence and the ensuing disinheritance of Adam and his generation from spiritual gifts, because Adam was gifted with divine gifts before his sin as a child of God, so that he could see into the hindmost star of creation with his spiritual eyes, and so that the greatest angelic spirit willingly gave him all information.

9. As a child of the Creator, he could speak to the whole of creation, since every spirit of stones, minerals, plants and animals told him his name and usability. So divine was Adam before he sinned; when the graces were taken from him, he was a man as modern men are.

10. His sins and disobedience were so great, that soon creation would have been destroyed because of the displeasure of God; and this disobedience was the cause that the wisdom of God in Christ had to taste and complete the terrible suffering and death on the cross. Here-in this karma of disobedience, lay the very greatest cause and also the very greatest effect that came about on this earth.

11. Adam was warned in advance that he was not allowed to eat from the tree of knowledge (or Eve), but Adam (the apple tree or the tree of life) did eat and then followed first the death of the spirit and with him the death of the flesh body. Thus every descendant of Adam knew that death was the result of original sin, of which Adam was warned, and that death was announced to him in advance. This proves that the Jews had the oldest and most original teaching of karma.

12. Fifteenth example: year 1656 after Adam - 2495 before Christ - In the great primeval city of Hanoch, the Cainitic people lived very worldly and godlessly. I had it warned for 120 years, messengers were sent proclaiming the will of God and that I will destroy the city if it does not return to order.

13. But the Hanochites laughed at the messengers of God and in the end, they threatened to blow up the high mountain, whereupon Noah lived with the tribe of Adam who where living according to divine commandments, by means of powder, which the Hanochites had already invented, and thus to destroy Noah and everything. Now we look at this karma:

14. The godless way of life as Karma was the cause of the warning prophecy threatening the punishment, only the disregard of the warning and the continuation in impenitence entailed the execution of the prophecy punishment and therefore the punishment was the effect of the cause. Thus: Prophecy, as warning, law, transgression as karma, punishment as effect.

15. Sixteenth example: Job 4:8. (year 1682 B.C. --Hiob lived 138 years: from 1770-1632 before Christ. His illness occurred in his 88th year.): "As I have seen, those who ploughed for suffering and sowed misfortune, reaped it."

16. With this Eliphas, the friend of Job, wanted to say: "The evil you have done, will be rewarded with evil: Karma - cause – effect.

17. Seventeenth example: Job 19:25 - But I know that my Redeemer lives and will later be on earth; and after this my skin is destroyed, I will see God except *(Luther himself has it wrong in his translation of the Bible: "and will see God in my flesh". If it were "bib'sari", it would be in my flesh, but it is "be'sari" and that means "without my flesh". The Vulgate and the new Protestant Bible have the right translation) of my* flesh.

18. The cause was thus the death of the flesh body, but the effect was the opening of spiritual vision, with which alone one can see God.

19. Eighteenth example: Exod 20:5; 34:7 (Year 1490 B.C.): Moses' knowledge of the righteousness of Jehovah, saying: "Jehovah, keep grace unto the thousandth member of the righteous, and forgive iniquity, transgression, and sin, and before whom no man is innocent; - who haunts the iniquity of the fathers on children and grandchildren to the third and fourth generation." (See also 4 Mos. 14:18; 5 Mos. 5:9)

20. Here karma is illuminated by cause and effect and it is only a weak picture of the reality of love and justice in God as it is preserved in the world history of peoples and countries of posterity.

21. It is well known that sexual and other diseases and infirmities are inherited through 3, 4 to 5 generations and reappeared without a solution to this dark question being found.

22. Behold, here the punishment of sin is very striking and scientifically proven, for the one who contaminates himself also contaminates his offspring, because the contamination lies in the blood, and so the disease continues, always further, as I said, up to the thousandth member, because one contaminates the other.

23. The punishment of the iniquity of the fathers with the children shows you the history of Egypt, Palestine, etc., in the *Announcements*. But it was unknown to you up until now, why innocent descendants have to atone for the misdeeds of their ancestors. - This happens because these apparently innocent descendants are the reincarnated transgressors themselves, who I therefore let reincarnate again in their country and their blood, so that they must forfeit themselves what they once did to poor slaves - therefore the world of philosophers unjustly accused Me of injustice (!) for the guilty suffer, the punishment to the thousandth member, and not the innocent. - Because these children and grandchildren are all reincarnated former criminals, therefore no innocents. - Their souls are aware of this.

24. Repeating hunchbacks in a family is therefore when this hunchback, despite this reincarnation-punishment, does not relent from his sins which caused the hunchback to be guilty. Sometimes one generation is spared, but in the third or fourth generation a hunchback appears again, which is usually a reincarnation of the [same] family member (father, mother, etc.). These are secret signs that not everything was in order.

25. Repeating suicides in a family for several generations is also subject to the spiritual punishments that the 'I' knows well. - So also are criminals in a family a punishment and so also are the insane - pure facts, which I do not want to go into in detail - but they are punishments, that you can easily trace, because every effect has a cause. —

26. Nineteenth example (2666 after Adam - 1485 before Christ, May 22): Aaron was the first high priest of God of the Israelites in the desert, but his sons Nahab and Abihu dared to bring a strange, called 'undedicated' fire, to sacrifice before Jehovah, and they both died suddenly.

27. Failure to obey Jehovah resulted in the sudden punishment of God and that was the effect of the cause of karma.

28. Twentieth example (3626 after Adam - 525 before Christ, March 19, Babylon): Belshazzar, the king of Babylon lived arrogantly and godlessly like his father Nebuchadnezzar, but the spirit hand that wrote 'Mene, Mene, Tekel, Upharsin' appeared, when this king and his guests drank at a great banquet from the vessels which his father had robbed from the temple in Jerusalem and announced to him after the enlightenment of Daniel (Dan 5:1-30) his empire and his downfall, and the same night the king was killed and Darius, the king of the Medes, got the empire.

29. Thus karma was the godless life that caused the hand of the spirit to announce its downfall; - but the fulfillment of the prophecy by the writing hand of the spirit, was the effect of karma.

30. Hosea 8:7 (Y. 760 B.C.): "They who sow the wind will reap thunderstorms" (i.e. he who does evil on earth will receive hell beyond as a reward for his actions).

31. Isaiah 3:10 (Y. 755 B.C.): Tell the devout that he will be happy (once) and will enjoy the fruit of his (earthly) good deeds (there in the hereafter).

32. Isaiah 26:19 (Y. 743 B.C.): "But your dead shall live and rise with the body."

33. The doctrine of reincarnation is obviously represented there, only the prophet did not refer to reincarnation, but to the resurrection of the spiritual flesh of the soul, which means the works of charity worked in the earthly life of the flesh, in these words, that is to say, quite the same as Job in ch135:16 [Christian Theosophy].

34. Jeremiah 32:18 - (Lord, Lord) who benefits many thousands, and repay the iniquity of the fathers in the bosoms of their children after them, oh great and strong God; Lord Zebaoth is Thy name.

35. This repetition of divine love and justice is the karma of the people on earth, which becomes the cause of the effect in the relatives and children and grandchildren, since the fathers as good or bad offenders, must see their karma expressed on their dear children, which increases their joys or sufferings in the spirit realm.

36. Ezekiel 37:5-6 (Y. 579 B.C.): Thus says the Lord of these bones (of the dead in the spirit): "Behold, I will bring a spiritual breath into you, that you may be alive (in the spirit). - I will give you veins (of the spiritual mind) and (by works of charity, let spiritual soul) flesh grow over you and cover you with (spiritual) skin (of love), and I will give you (My love) breath that you (dead in spirit) may come to life again (by love for God and neighbour)".

37. Here in these verses of Ezekiel is the allusion to the conversion of the Jews to Christianity at the time of the Second Coming of Christ and is identical with chapter 7 of the Revelation of John. It therefore includes karma and reincarnation.

38. Proverbs 22:8 (Y. 337 B.C.): "He that sows unrighteousness (on earth) shall reap suffering (in the hereafter), for he shall be chastened for his wickedness.

136. The law of Cause in the New Testament. The Repercussions of Evil Karma on Reincarnation

1902, 15 June, Graz. The teaching of karma among Jews and Original Christians proved by Christ and the Apostles. Proven repercussions of evil karma in reincarnation as God's punishment.

1. Any evil deed, action or vice that cannot be otherwise punished and corrected, is punished by reincarnation. One should therefore not always believe that this or that is an accidental misfortune, but that it is usually the result of the sins and vices of which the parents are guilty in their lives and the children in their previous lives; because I'm not punishing anyone who is innocent. Of course, most parents forget the sins they have committed against animals or humans in their lives, but I do not forget them and punish them when the time is right.

2. You can see a particularly important proof that karma and reincarnation were generally known among the Jews from the 9th chapter of the Great Gospel of John, verse 1-3 [Lorber]. It says: When I was at the scene when they wanted to stone Me because I said that I was there earlier than Abraham, I suddenly hid Myself from the Pharisees who wanted to stone Me, by suddenly disappearing from before fleshly eyes and - only visible to the disciples, who's spiritual eyes were opened in that moment - went out of the temple, where we walked by a blind [man] outside the temple courtyard, and when we came near, the disciples asked Me: Master, who has sinned, he or his parents, that he is born blind?

3. The question whether the blind man himself sinned, or whether his parents sinned, reveals to you the exact knowledge of this causal law among the Jews, and that they firmly believed in it. That this faith is based on truth is evident from the confirmation through My answer, when I said: Neither this one has sinned nor his parents, but this happened so that the miracles of God would be manifested in him - that is, so that [He would] be glorified through Me as the miracle-healer.

4. On the other hand it shows that because of the offence in the past life - because the child in the mother's womb cannot commit any sin - the newborn child was born blind.

5. But also the parents must have committed an offence against animals or humans by mischievously damaging their eyes; for neither the child nor the parents are punished undeservedly.

6. That John only wrote down the fact that I hid Myself and went out from the temple, is because he always saw Me and did not know that I had disappeared from the flesh-eyes of the Pharisees.

7. The evidence that the karma of past life finds multiple punishments in reincarnation, can be seen in the reincarnation-doctrine that follows this teaching. Then you see that being blind is a punishment for cruelty; the dwarf figure is the punishment for the pride of physical merit; Cripple, punishment for the abuse of the talent of wisdom and unbelief united: - Hunchback, punishment for the abuse of their beauty of form, which they used as flagship for their unspiritual acts; - Cretins, punishment for highly educated people who used their knowledge to deteriorate their fellow human beings; - Deaf-borns, punishment for arrogant envy against educated people; - Mute, punishment for the suppression of just and truthful opinions in public speaking; - Deaf-mutes, punishment for mockery and oppression of the poor deaf and dumb; - Hermaphrodites, as punishment and prevention of the scandalous sex life in their past life.

8. *Matthew 7:12* - All that you want the people to do to you, do it to them also. (For this is the law and the prophets. Matt 22:39-40)

9. *Matthew 12:35-37* - The good man brings good out of the good store, the bad man brings evil out of the bad store.

10. But I'm telling you: People will have to give account on judgement day of every useless word they spoke.

11. According to your words (and deeds) you will be justified, and according to your words (and deeds) you will be condemned.

12. "Judge not that ye may not be judged (in the hereafter, because of your unrighteousness).

13. With the same measure you measure (here good or evil), you (in the hereafter) will be measured back as reward, (Matt 7:1-2) since there must be righteousness.

14. In the Sermon on the Mount I said in the continuation of the teaching: "Truly no one will come out of the dungeon until he has paid the last cent." (Matt 5:26)

15. This sentence is to be understood spiritually that no man will come out of the spiritual dungeon of his sins before he has completely disposed of them, because the sins are the cause of the effect of his spiritual death, which is a dungeon of the soul.

16. By indication from Father Jesus, I take the following from a dictation of Ida K. in F. of May 11, 1904, where it says among other things, as a completion by repentance and penance for the above enlightenment:

17. I truly say unto thee, "Thou shalt not come out of it until thou shalt have paid the last cent" means to say that God does not judge (neither personally nor specifically) the sinners, if they have arrived without forgiveness in the hereafter, they bring their own judge with them - that is their unbroken will and their hard heart - and that will judge them the same as they once did others with the same hardness and inflexibility; they are then confronted with their selfish judge, beating them with their own weapons.

18. The dungeon is the night in which the (immature) soul will remain until it has reached the full knowledge of its sins, and thereby has reached true repentance, which is understood by the payment of the last cent.

19. Only then will they be redeemed from their night and handed over to the goodness and mercy of God; because I as Father cannot have mercy on any man earlier than until he returns to Me and seeks his help alone with Me. See, this is the meaning of these words, and is also already spiritually explained in the word:

20. *"Do not judge, lest ye should be judged" and "With what measure ye measure, so shall ye be measured again."*

21. It is therefore completely up to you yourselves to choose the sharpness of the sword, therefore the law according to which you judge yourselves, or to choose love, which is free from the power of the law and free from its actions and restrictions.

22. Therefore love your enemies, for the love is the divine in you; - do good to those who do evil to you, because then you will become perfect as your Father in heaven is perfect; - and pray for your persecutors and slanderers, (Matt 5:44) because you will lift them up as well and convert them, because they will only receive love back for evil.

23. If you turn the evil karma of the way of the enemy into good through divine action, the effect of this karma will become salvation from hell for your enemy; but the gaining of heaven for you.

24. *John 5:28-29* - The time is coming when all who are in the tombs (i.e. sins) will hear the voice of the Son of God (i.e. that they will be taught about the law of the divine teaching of Christ) - and the good things done (here or there) will come forth for the resurrection of life; but the bad things done, for the resurrection unto judgement.

25. *John 6:39-40* - But the will of the Father (or the love of God) who sent Me is this: That I may not lose any of those whom the Father has given to Me, but awaken him on the last day (or on the day of death, when he enters into the spirit kingdom). - Yes, this is the Will of My Father, Who sent Me that everyone who sees the Son (i.e. hears the teaching of Christ) and believes in Him may have eternal life (if he fulfils His teachings and commandments) and I will awaken him on the last day.

26. Paul summarizes the whole causal law of Karma in the Galatian letter (Gal 6:7-8), saying: 7. (Dear brothers!) Do not be mistaken, God is not mocked. For what man sows, he will reap. - 8. He that sows in his flesh shall reap destruction from the flesh. But he that sows in the Spirit shall reap eternal life from the Spirit.

27. The following passages from Paul to the Corinthians follow the Epistle to the Galatians (2 Cor 9:6): (Brothers!) He who sows meagerly will reap meagerly (there in the hereafter), and he who sows (here) in blessing will also reap (there) in blessing. And the same to the Romans: (Rom 8:13) If you live according to the lusts of the flesh, you will die (spiritually); but if by the Spirit you overcome the (desirous) instincts of the flesh, you will live (spiritually).

28. Let's look at another saying of Paul. He wrote to the Romans (Rom 6:23): Death is the wages of sin.

29. This saying illuminates the fact that Adam and Eve, through original sin, evoked the death of the flesh-body, for in former times, both were immortal because [they were] sinless, and more spirit than human.

30. But the saying, applied to present conditions of men, only means that man through sin becomes dead in the spirit, because through sin he has become disobedient against his Divine spirit and has turned from it to the deadly matter of flesh-life, thus has become dead in the spirit. But being dead in the spirit means that man in this state enters the hereafter, becomes an inhabitant of hell. Being dead in the spirit, is the cause of the effect of becoming an inhabitant of hell.

31. Finally, the following passage from the Revelation of John, (Rev 3:12) serves as a starting example: "He who overcomes, I will make him a pillar in the temple of My God, and he shall no longer go out."

32. This verse says: Whoever has once rid himself of all sins by a constant penitent resolution not to commit them any more, will become a worthy bearer and temple of the Spirit of God who dwells in his breast and will therefore no longer sin, through the true knowledge of God. - In this karma, the penitent and perpetual resolution to no longer sin, is the cause of the effect that such a person becomes a hero of virtues and a pure temple of God.

33. *John 4:36-37* - "He who reaps (in the Spirit) receives his reward (for that which is done in love) and gathers fruits for eternal life, so that both the sower (in the flesh) and (afterwards) the harvester (in the Spirit) rejoice; for here the proverb is true: One sows (while still living in the world) and the other reaps (as the spirit when he has returned home). As soon as you enter the hereafter, you, as the reaper of your own sowing on earth, receive the spiritual reward for it and gather the fruit to eternal life, so that he who sows and he who reaps there may rejoice together in one person.

34. For here the saying is true that there is another who sows, and another who reaps (John 4:36-7) because man sows on earth as a perishable person, and reaps in the hereafter as an imperishable - but the same individuality (1 Cor 15:52-54).

35. The teaching of karma, though not under this name, has always been taught in Christian religion, for it was taught that the pious will go to paradise or heaven, but the wicked to hell, and see, that is the teaching of karma or cause and effect.

137. How Karma Continues to Work

1902, 10 June, Graz. Father Jesus explains that everything that man does, has its echo in the spirit realm and attracts such spirits to cooperate as the thoughts and deeds of man are. Enlightenment about through which signs the spirits receive the news of human action.

1. When man works works of neighbourly love, then he lures love-spirits to himself, because everything that man does out of love, finds an echo in the love-heaven where I am enthroned, he lures the love-spirits from the highest heaven to himself, therefore the feeling of delight after a deed of love when it was worked in My name, because I Myself rejoice about it and also the spirits find their sole satisfaction in it when they see that it was worked or given out of love for Me.

2. But when man practices works which are equal to those which the spirits of hell have practised and still practise, then he lures spirits of hell into his environment, and therefore also the unlawful feelings of man in the work of evil sinful deeds.

3. One should not believe that some sins are petty or meaningless. I tell you: Verily! verily! there is no sin that would not find its echo in hell. Good deeds work good on and on through centuries, millennia and eternal times; for they remain eternally as patterns of noble sentiments and noble deeds. Likewise, evil and sinful deeds continue to work and evil and sinful things continue to work; for as the actions, so the fruits of them, because the sinful deeds are committed by evil spirits and are propagated further in the spirit-kingdom, and therefore they give birth to many sinful things, which have arisen from a single sin.

4. I will enlighten you in what way the spirits receive the news of your good and sinful karma. This is done by different lights, namely:

- Love shows a yellow fiery light; - hatred a dark light, only spiritually visible.
- Humility shows a yellow-white light; - Pride, a dark red light.
- Patience shows violet blue light; - anger, red light.
- Mercy, orange light; - mercilessness, like hatred, shows a dark light, only spiritually visible.
- Chastity snow-white light; - unchastity, unchaste thoughts and deeds, have yellow-dark light.
- Peaceableness consists mainly of love, humility and patience, and its colour is light violet blue light; - Dark red light, like arrogance, is an addiction to conflict.
- Selflessness shows light orange coloured light. - Selfishness, dark orange light.
- Wisdom shows bluish white light.

5. The colours of the vices are joined by related properties. For example, selfishness is the center of avarice, usury, theft, robbery, and so it is with other related sins or vices that attracts the spirits who pay homage to this or that species of vice.

6. So the spirits are attracted and they come with the speed of thought from the greatest distance, therefore the fast rising of anger, arrogance, unchaste thoughts and other vices when one starts to think of them, because the spirits intervene as stimulus with their spiritual power, and try to assert their will. That is why man often becomes so beside himself, that in his rage he surrenders to the lower passions, is no longer master of his senses and his reason to be able to think of the consequences of the deed.

7. So already here on earth the thought is the cause for the effect of the act, and so the evil thoughts of man are the cause for the attraction of the spirits afflicted with the same thoughts, which are therefore lured to the committing of sins, which bear the evil consequences on both man and spirits: First of all man sinned against his neighbour, then against himself because he buried himself deeper in sins, furthermore he lured spirits, causing also these to sin against him and so he always commit a threefold offence because he is also responsible for the committing of sins by the spirits, because he gave and granted them the opportunity to commit the sins and thus was both a procurer and co-sinner.

8. It is therefore the greatest task to immediately nip all unclean and loveless thoughts in the bud, so that causes do not give rise to effects and consequences that are difficult to make good. Therefore, take great care of your heart-garden and let no wild and ravenous animals of the passionate wisdom of understanding enter it, so that the good and noble seed may germinate, grow and blossom; for otherwise you will not reap fruits with which you could buy the kingdom of God.

138. The Earthly causes' Effect in the Afterlife

1902, 19 August, Graz. Father Jesus explains: "As the works on this side, so the reward beyond the grave"; because the reward or the punishment lies in the fulfillment or omission of the commandment. The infernal punishments of the spirits; their inner being is evident in the insane, the rabid, the epileptic, and in their actions in spiritualistic circles. Today's people as devils.

1. Paul wrote to the Galatians: "What man sows on earth he will reap in the hereafter." And this is actually true, if man does not take the trouble to destroy in his earthly life the effects and consequences which develop from the causes of the sins committed, and which appear as a reward in the spirit-realm, by annihilating all evil committed against his neighbour in due time by asking forgiveness, by making good the damage and by apologizing to God, which, however, only has the effect if it is done by full intent not to commit the sin any more and by the corresponding repentance.

2. But if one does not make the prescribed apology, compensation and repentance, then what has happened, remains valid as cause for effects and their consequences, until it finds its settlement in the spirit-realm. And indeed the execution takes place there because there must be justice and therefore also the punishment for the committed crimes and sins.

3. If the law were not at the same time the reward for good and the punishment for evil, then one could claim with full rights: Either there is no God, or He is not all-wise and just. Therefore it has equally the reward or punishment for the exercise of good or bad.

4. I, as legislator and life in man, know exactly how every act in the spirit realm is to be rewarded or punished. Of course there is no public judgement like before a judge on earth, but the conditions into which man is put after his death of the flesh, are precisely the (most recent) judgement of reward or punishment for sins and deeds committed.

5. On the outside, of course, one does not strongly see the effects of the court, but they are more internally represented. And the more the effect spreads, the more the spirit suffers inner pain, the darker and wilder and therefore the more dangerous it is when it joins a living person, i.e. makes him obsessed. Look at the effects of such a spirit of hell on madmen, raving addicts and epileptics, for these are near all possessed by spirits who have led a coarse-minded or sinful and criminal life in their earthly life. Also consider the infernal scenes that take place in some spiritualistic circles when gross, vicious, lewd, criminal, haughty, selfish, and the like, attend the meeting.

6. Such earthly devils lure like-minded spirits of hell closer with their fluid-light and then they fare like proverbial donkeys and oxen; they take them into bondage, slap them in the face, thrust out, smash furniture and utensils, throw dangerous objects around, let them roll around on the ground; the host's face sometimes becomes completely distorted due to complete possession, and other such effects of the lured spirits, whose aim is to damage. Such facts are known in spiritists' travel. No-one will claim that such a thing comes from good spirits.

7. Good, advanced spirits don't lie. What then are lying spirits other than evil spirits or spirits of hell, because they lie to you about various things? Yes, it has come so far with the culture of the 19th and 20th centuries that almost all people are somewhat possessed by like-minded spirits, even if they do not show the symptoms of possession or madness.

8. Look at the deeds of the culture of the present and you will realize that only evil devils in human form have created such states of oppression, exploitation and gagging of the people, as well as of the god-forsaken teachings and states in the world, and these should not be devils when they have entered the spiritual realm? Surely they are nothing but evil devils, who, when they make men possessed, double them in their wickedness to practice lovelessness.

139. Residence in the Spirit Realm of a Departed Human Being

1902, 8 June, Graz. Father Jesus explains that the spirit of man, as long as it is evil in itself, goes to hell and only then, when it has become good, into better conditions. What are the corpses of the spirits seen by the Indian Mahatmas? About the regaining of goodness of the infernal spirits, and that man, after his deeds in earthly life, receives the reward in the hereafter.

1. A person who has lived here as a sinner or a criminal, may have practiced works of charity in the meantime, having arrived alone in the spirit kingdom, the good in him cannot be separated from evil, but remains connected to him until he has rid himself of evil through penance and works of charity. The good, then, cannot be rewarded until the whole man is pure and ennobled.

2. Clairvoyants see bodies like corpses and think that the corpses are of spirits whose good part lives in the “Devachan” or "kingdom of God". This view is completely wrong, because these dead corpses are the evil spirits themselves, which lie there quietly in a state-like stupor, namely the spirits in the second hell. If these are enlivened by attraction to someone, then that person can be insane, epileptic, overall abnormal, or crazy. - But there are exceptions also in the second hell, but only a small number of such devils - while the rest are plainly arch-devils.

3. No spirit is divided, but every spirit is completely where it is. How can any part of man - as the Buddhist teaching says - be in heaven or so-called Devachan and the other in Avitchi or hell? Try to divide a human being, can he live? Man has spiritually only one body and not two, how can this body then live in two completely different areas?

4. The spirit of the man who dwells in the heart of the soul is indeed the Spirit of God Himself, but this spirit remains united with the soul for all eternity, whether it dwells in hell, in paradise, or in heaven, because He forms the life of the soul, because it comes from the fundamental love of God, which is the Father in God.

5. God is for Himself always in the God-like state wherever he may be, but not so the soul, because it is whole and perfect where it is, either in suffering or in joy.

6. When one wants to clearly imagine the essence of a spirit, then the standard according to facts known to you on earth, has to be taken and visualized and this is:

7. If a servant of a rich gentleman serves him faithfully and diligently for thirty or forty years without tire, the rich gentleman, when he sees that the servant has sacrificed his whole life for him, will reward him in the end by making him free from all worries of life, that he can quietly enjoy his life and delight in God's nature according to his pleasure and joy.

8. This little example shows on one side how I, the Lord, reward a faithful and diligent servant to live like Me in love and joy, while on the other side, when a servant is unfaithful, lazy and mischievous, certainly his lord will not reward him at the end of his service with a gift of a house or the like, but he will go into his destiny. Now when the servant is old and unable to work, he goes over into need, misery, hunger, cold and all kinds of wretchedness and has to suffer on and on.

9. So also a soul who lived unspiritually in the world has to pass into punishment in the hereafter and remain in it until - after long sufferings and privations - it again matures to do well and to furnish life according to My commandments.

10. If it (the soul) has matured so far, which often takes many centuries of misery and actual starvation, thirst, suffering of various inconveniences, of desperate raving in anger and annoyance at

the never-ending painful state of darkness and the various hellish events that repeat themselves there under rabid spirits of hell, only then help comes through instruction, what to do to get it out of its sad state.

11. Any other enlightenment about the afterlife is not true. Only I - since I live in every soul - can give the truth, but not the observers from afar or from without.

12. It is clear from the enlightenment that as the tree falls, so it remains, (a saying of the apostle Paul) or as man has lived, so he dies, and that his deeds follow him into the hereafter. If they are good, then he reaps good, if they are bad, then only bad awaits him. He gets into a society corresponding to his sins.

13. To be an angel among the devils is certainly difficult, hence the slow progress of souls in the spirit realm. - Everyone therefore should strive to be good, so that he never has to regret his way of life.

14. How the spirits in the hereafter are doing until they reach their spiritual goal is taught to you by My relevant books, which give you information about the guidance of the spirits in the hereafter, so read more about it in these.

140. The Karma of Faith

1902, 18 May, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus that faith and non-belief in Christ as God the Father separates people from people in the spirit realm as children and servants are separated in the house. The children have household rights and are heirs of their father's property; but the servants are merely the household servants without any household rights.

1. If man is of full faith, that this or that is right and he does not investigate whether his faith is also based on the ground of truth, then a foundation of faith is formed in man, which becomes a bondage to him and thus the judge of his faith. Here Paul's saying is confirmed: "What you sow on earth, you will reap in the hereafter".

2. All those peoples and people who know My teaching but do not believe, fall into the judgement of their own faith, but especially those who do not acknowledge Me, Jesus, as God the Father.

3. It is known that every good father loves his children and that it is his greatest joy when he sits in the circle of his children, converses with them and receives their words and caresses. And so also the children have their greatest joy when they can talk to their father, nestle up to him, sit on his lap, embrace him and caress him.

4. Only the father with his children and the children with their father have such pleasures; servants and strangers have no right to this great joy, even if they live in the house and have certain domestic rights.

5. The Old Testament said: "No one can see God and live, because He is a consuming fire, namely love; because God is in Himself the purest love, which is a spiritual fire, which in the absolute state, destroys the material flesh-body, because no-one can tolerate the bliss of the enjoyment of unlimited Divine Love without the danger of killing powerlessness, if it is not correspondingly subdued.

6. According to this fact it would be impossible for man to ever see God in the flesh; only for God everything is possible, therefore I had appeared five times in the Old Covenant to men in the person of an angel through whom I spoke and announced My will to the people.

7. Through the incarnation in the person of Jesus, I created for Myself an own body through which I Myself lived and worked as man. I transformed this flesh-body into the spiritual body at the resurrection and since that time, I have been a perfect, spiritualized God-man, like the figures of My children dwelling with Me.

8. That is why I called all those who fulfil the will of the Spirit of God of Love - whom I called Father - My brothers and sisters.

9. I, Jesus, was shaped just like every human being, but with the difference that I was spiritually an accomplished God-man and therefore one with God, for which men will need millions and millions of years to become one with Me in everything. Wisdom and omnipotence are the special property of My being as Father-God, which are unreachable, but in case of need, can also appear united with Me through a child, because in Me the Godhead is personally embodied, so that I Myself am God, but dwell in a human body.

10. I am therefore the bearer of the Godhead Himself and thus the Holy Trinity of God called Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence, which in spiritual correspondence is called Father, Son and Holy Spirit. And since I am now as bearer of God, God the Father, as the basic being in God, Myself, and as spirit, like every other man in heaven, although incomparably higher in divine merits, it is evident that through Me, God has become a visible God, since I, as His bearer, am a representative of God and God Himself.

11. From this follows and is founded in Me, that who believes in Me, Jesus, as Father God, loves Me as such with all power and does My will, has as spirit the grace to see Me and as My child, when the virtues have progressed so far, to live with Me in the highest heaven, because this is the children's heaven where I live and dwell as Father among My children.

12. The grace of dwelling in the children's heaven and seeing Me face to face, is unimaginably higher in pleasures, bliss and joys than in the first and second heaven; because high above the two wisdom-heavens, where those peoples and people come who do not know Me or who cannot believe, that in Christ, God Himself became a man, dwelt among men, taught them the doctrine of love, and in the end gave His blood and life on the Cross for them, in order to free them from the punishment of suffering and from the death on the cross, which holiness or wisdom in God had imposed on the whole human race because of the sin of Adam.

13. So then the believers in Christ as God, are called to become children of God and heirs of the heavenly kingdoms which you see in the starry sky by night. Faith makes them gods and kings of the giant worlds, and at the same time creators of new worlds and in increasingly happier states, the more they resemble Me through love.

14. Those peoples and people who do not know Me or do not want to believe in Me that I am God, they are in the circumstances of happiness like the servants of a high lord, but whom they never personally see. They have no such rights as children. In heaven, such are the disinherited of the inheritance of their high Lord, until they believe in this Lord in Jesus Christ as their God and Father and love Him. Let all those who regard Me, Jesus Christ, merely as a teacher of religion and wise man of the Orient, consider how they feel about it!

15. They may be taught about it at certain times, but they turn back, do not like the truth presented to them, and therefore they remain in relations like servants and maidservants and do not have the advantages which are bestowed upon the children of the heavenly Father.

16. Here faith is the great karma with its cause and effect, where one degrades himself to a servant, while the other becomes an overjoyed child. The faith of one and the other is to him the most decisive effect of the communicated word of God, therefore everyone is warned not to block his own way, by wrong faith, in order to become a child of God; because as said above, the servants have no such rights as the children have, and therefore they are also excluded from inheritance until they

have attained childhood through faith in Me, Jesus, as God the Father.

17. I as God the Father only distribute My fatherly gifts and graces to those who regard Me as their Father and love Me intimately; - but to those who do not recognize Me as their spiritual Father or Creator, I cannot grant childhood, because there is no other Father-God besides Me; but they do not recognize Me as such, therefore also do not consider Me as Father and therefore also do not love and therefore there is also no childhood of God for them.

18. This, then, is the great revelation of the karma of faith, whereby the cause testifies to the gigantic effect which, like a relentless judge, separates people from people, whereby some are in the rank of bliss and rights to inheritance as the children of the household's father, while others are as much lower in pleasures and rights, as the servants are to the children.

19. Dear children! Heed this revelation so exceedingly high, that in the future you may know how to determine and shape your destiny according to it; for what you sow here, you will reap there. Amen.

141. Reincarnation. The Indian Reincarnation Teaching

Enlightenment as to why the Indian reincarnation theory deviates very strongly from the truth of the facts.

1. The Indians learned about the doctrine of reincarnation in the 22nd century after the creation of Adam, through Noah's descendants who spread to India.

2. The Indian masters are servants of the spirit of their ego, raised up by asceticism, in that they, through asceticism, kill the fleshly lusts of their bodies for all earthly things, and make them willing to the spirit. They are tireless in this mortification, it is their life's work. Thus the soul is made alive and can stretch beyond ordinary life and thus become clairvoyant, clairaudient, clairsensoric - a natural consequence of a prolonged dying of the flesh, in favour of the enlivening of the soul.

3. When the soul has completely gained the upper hand over the flesh, its absolute spiritual activity and peculiarity emerges. For the soul is creative in the absolute state, and what it wants, irrevocably happens. Moreover, such adepts of spiritual education are taught by those who are already initiated into all secrets, and thus they come to all imaginable tricks of the spirit world. Not all are equally advanced though, but there are some differences among them.

4. Their spiritual advancement, forced by asceticism, lacks the purity of insight into all spiritual secrets; A reborn Christian has it much better, because here he possesses My special grace for spiritualization to happen, which he has acquired without asceticism, therefore with much greater effort, while in India there is self-imposed compulsion, which I do not approve of.

5. The Indian Mahatmas also have the inner word, like the Father's Christian mediums, but not so effective - because their way of life pays more homage to the wisdom of the Father's mediums than to love, and love is the Father in God.

6. As they do not cultivate love enough, they are more dependent on their own observations, which, however, are very deceptive in many ways. They know what they themselves see and hear, but they ask very little after My enlightenment - hence the untruths in Indian teaching. Truth and falsehood mix, and therefore the inconsistency of some doctrines and statements.

7. The Indian religion teachers teach that man must step into the flesh so often, until he has reached his goal. Every incarnation, according to their teaching, is the result of the action, called karma in Indian language, as he lived in his last incarnation.

8. Karma should therefore be the cause that man comes back into the world to bring his life from the last incarnation into a better spiritual formation and thus to get himself on a higher vibration.

9. If, for example, a man was in his last incarnation a ruler and thus a haughty man, who regarded his subjects as his slaves, he strives to become just the opposite as a result of this karma, and thus reincarnates himself as a worker in order to suppress his haughtiness, his rightfulness, his lust for power, by subservience. And so he always goes into worse conditions than the former ones.

10. But if he was an artist, scholar, doctor, etc., he would like to devote himself again to this state, but - whether he meets the right parents for it, that is the question, therefore a daring quest.

11. Now one thinks of reincarnation, which should repeat itself every 1000 to 1500 years to finally become happy, then one can count many thousands of years, until one has reached his happiness!

12. No one will doubt that the Christian God is the same as the Indian God; but the fact is: the Indian Buddhist religion, was established by a sinful man; but the Christian [was established by] God Himself, and in this, love is the main commandment and whoever fulfills the statutes of love, can reach in a few years what Buddhists need many thousands of years for.

13. In the spirit realm is the continuation of life on earth, but without flesh. The same vices, fleshly lusts and passions that the deceased cultivated in the flesh, he takes with him and continues living in it.

14. These have to be suppressed and turned into love, humility, patience, selflessness, mercy and chastity and heaven is conquered; the only circumstance is that it happens much, much harder and slower because there are many more spiritual obstacles than on earth.

142. Reincarnation teaching in the Old Testament

1902, May 20, Graz. Father Jesus gives an overview of the concepts of the reincarnations of man among Jews in the Old Testament, demonstrated by some passages from the Prophets, Cabbalists, and Flavius Josephus.

1. The oldest Biblical evidence, as you can see from the discussion of the teachings of the Jewish Cabbalah, is of a very late date, although the Jews had ancient texts of people dying and being born again. These places are:

2. *Psalm 90:2-3* (1026 B.C.): Lord God, You are our refuge by and by! You who let men die and say: Return, children of men. - Here David pointed to his own reincarnation, see Ezekiel!

3. *Ezekiel 34:23* (587 B.C.): Then I will raise up for them one shepherd who will feed them, My servant David; he will feed them and be their shepherd.

4. This news about the reincarnation of David has been given only symbolically to the seed of David in Jesus, as spiritual representatives and shepherds of the souls of all men.

5. *Malachi 4:5* (440 B.C.): Behold, I will send you the prophet Elijah, before the great and terrible day of the Lord comes. - This passage points to the coming of the Messiah, about which the relevant passages in Matthew, Mark, Luke and John give more details.

6. *Maccabees 7:23,29* (184 B.C.): He who created the world and all men will give you the breath and the life graciously. - Thus spoke the Mother to her seven sons, whom Antiochus martyred. When the

turn came to the youngest she said:
7. Therefore do not be afraid of the executioner, but die gladly, like your brethren, that the gracious God may make you alive again and give you with your brethren to me again.

8. In these few words one can see that the Jewish reincarnation doctrine is not of Indian descent, for the Indians put 1000 to 1500 years between one reincarnation and another; the Maccabean mother hoped to get her sons back in her life herself, and this teaching is more correct than the Indian one, because for Me, who let the soul step into the flesh again, no time is decisive, but everything happens according to circumstances, so someone can die and be born again immediately, or only after many years, or never again. - I do not let Myself be prescribed by men - and without My will and permission, nobody can again step into the flesh. This is the true teaching of karma and reincarnation and no other.

9. Since the Jews publicly recognized the doctrine of reincarnation, it was of course taught by the temple, by the priests, and was thus universally known among the people. Therefore, you will find in their secret doctrine called "Cabbalah", two very striking doctrines united in one sentence, namely:

10. 'That man is drawn before the judgement of God before he enters into the world.' This teaching contains karma as with the Indians, because it is openly expressed in these words that man is a sinner, a criminal, since he is drawn before the judgement of God before birth, and in this lies the proof that he must have lived as a man before and sinned against himself; for as a being transformed from a bird's soul into a human soul, the one who steps into the flesh would have no sins to be brought before judgement. This sentence in the Cabbalah as the esoteric school of the Jews, contains in itself the meaning of a former act or karma, which is precisely the cause of the effect that the sinner is brought before the court.

11. The teaching of karma was associated with reincarnation as a matter of course, for this implies the Kabbalah in one sentence by continuing to teach:

12. "All souls are subject to wandering, and men do not know the ways of the Holy One (Jehovah Zebaoth); they do not know that they will be brought before judgement before they enter this world, nor after they have left it; they do not know the many transformations and secret trials they have to endure". (Sohar II, 99b and 199 b)

13. Although the Pharisees and the Jewish secret teachers, called "Cabbalists", believed in karma and reincarnation, their teachings were not as clear as I had announced them to men through Jacob Lorber in Christian theosophical dictates.

14. You can see this from the writing of the Jewish historian Flavius Josephus, which he wrote after the destruction of Jerusalem and called "Jewish Antiquities".

15. In this document (18:1,3) it is written: "The souls are immortal according to the teaching of the Pharisees, and a state of reward after death awaits them: reward for virtue and punishment for vice. For the virtuous the return to life is easy, ... they merely pass into another body; but the souls of the wicked are tormented with eternal torment".

16. Flavius Josephus, himself a Jew, also believed in this doctrine and passed it on to posterity in his writing on the war waged by the Romans against the Jews (de bello Jud. III. 5).

17. The statement that the wicked are tormented in eternal torment is incorrectly understood:

18. As soon as the evil spirit changes his attitude and full of earnestness repents and do penance, he will be redeemed from the eternal torment by himself, since I then offer him a helping hand through My angels who teach him and lead him upwards into higher and better conditions.

19. There is eternal torment, but no eternal tyranny, because it contradicts eternal love and mercy in

God and makes God an eternal, merciless tyrant. Eternal love and mercy and eternal merciless tyrannism are two decidedly irreconcilable concepts in God, so the latter does not exist.

20. The teaching of karmic reincarnation among Jews dates back to the 12th century after the creation of Adam, when reincarnations began.

21. Since the Adamites: Lamech, Noah's father, his wife Ghemela and others, like Enoch once had the inner word, with Noah this is even proven Biblically, so they inquired about the whereabouts of their deceased and there it happened that they also asked for those who already lived among them again, albeit with a different facial formation, since man usually mixes the former face with that of his parents and thus makes himself unrecognizable. This comes from the impressions of the parents on the soul, which forms the flesh-body in man. The soul receives intelligence from the Spirit of God, that it imitates the other form and face mostly after the parents, namely the boys sometimes after the mother, the girls however after the father, thereby the differences of the face formations arise; but not every time, because it depends on the will of God. - Also the mutual state of mind of the parents often plays a decisive role in the formation of the face. - But the soul always retains its original formation of the face, no matter how many reincarnations it has undergone.

143. The Christian Doctrine of Reincarnation

1902, 17 September, Graz. Father Jesus explains and illuminates the different views about the multiple reincarnations of people on earth, and the contradictions of Christian and other teachings about them. Reincarnation is a proven teaching in Judaism and Christianity.

Since the spread of the spiritualistic messages and the Buddhist theosophical movement, the knowledge of reincarnation has penetrated the broad strata of the people - but also My Father-Words teach you that reincarnations of the dead take place. So this is a universally confirmed fact to be believed, because I teach and confirm it to you Myself.

144. Theory of Reincarnation in the New Testament

1902, May 22nd, Graz. Father Jesus gives an overview of the reincarnation doctrine in Original Christianity, out of the Old Testament, and a faith statute confirmed by Him.

1. The reincarnation doctrine of the Jews was such a well-known matter among the people, that a special doctrine of it was unnecessary, everyone knew about it.

2. Even in Christianity it was not specially taught, therefore its knowledge was lost more and more in the course of the stormy times of the persecution of Christians, until it was banished from the teaching as heretical, therefore it remained completely unknown among Christians until the second half of the 19th century; but it was taught among others, though in false form, by faith in the *resurrection of the flesh on the last day before the judgement of the world*.

3. Year 30, May 25. - When I was in the desert of Bethabara, the Jews in Jerusalem sent their priests and Levites to John the Baptist and asked him:

4. Who are you? And he said openly and freely, *"I am not Christ."*

5. Then they asked him: Are you *the great prophet?* (of which Moses prophesied - 1457 B.C., 17 May, in the desert. Jehovah prophesied through Moses: "I will raise up a prophet to them from among their brethren like you, and I will put My words in His mouth, and He shall speak to you all that I command Him - 5 Mos. (Deut) 18:15,18), but John denied this question; for the great prophet was I Myself concerning the destruction of Jerusalem and the destruction of the Jewish kingdom.

6. Now they asked him, "Are you Elias?" Since he was not reincarnated in the sense of the prophet Elias, he also denied them this question. (Elijah retired from earth 805 years before Christ on January 5)

7. When John denied every question, they said to him, "What are you? that we may answer those who have sent us. What sayest thou of thyself? And he answered them: I am the voice of a preacher in the desert: Prepare the way of the Lord! As the prophet Isaiah (year 723 B.C., 17 May: Isa 40:3; John 1:19- 23; Matt 3:33; Mark 1:3; Luke 3:4) said.

8. The question of whether he was Elijah, who retired from earth 805 years earlier, confirms the Pharisees' firm belief that after some time the retired will return to the flesh and live as human beings.

9. Year 31, February 5. - At the time when John was in prison, I taught the people, healed the sick and performed various miracles. Then John sent two of his disciples to Me on February 5 in the year 31 and asked Me if I was the promised Messiah or if one should wait for another. Then I gave the disciples the following answer: "Go to John and tell him what you see and hear:

10. The blind see and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed and the deaf hear, the dead stand up and the gospel (Matt 11:2-14) (as Isaiah (Isa 35:5,6; 61:1 - year 725 B.C.) prophesied by Me) is preached to the poor", then I said to My disciples:

11. "John is more than a prophet, because this is the one of whom it is written: 'Behold, I send Jehovah My angel before Me, who is to prepare the way before Me.' (Year 440, May 17: Malachi 3:1) - For all the prophets and the law prophesied until John (of Me). - And if ye will accept, he is Elijah, who shall come before the Day of the Lord (Jehovah Zebaoth as Messiah.) (Malachi 3:23; Ps 24:7-10; Ps 45:7-8)

12. As a witness to the well-known reincarnation doctrine among the people of Israel, the blind man is especially outstanding before the temple, for My disciples asked Me: "Master, who sinned, this one or his parents, (John 9:1-2) that he was born blind? - But in this question lies the proof that he must have lived before if he had sinned before his birth.

13. When I came to the area of Caesarea-Philippi (Matt 16:13-14; Mark 8:27-28), I asked My disciples to test their faith: Who do men say that the Son of Man is? - They answered Me: Some say: John the Baptist whom Herod had beheaded before; Some: Elijah; Others: Jeremiah, or any of the prophets.

14. From this you can see that reincarnation, as can be seen in the passages quoted, was generally known and believed among the Jews, and I did not contradict this faith, but I confirmed it because of the reincarnation of Elijah as John the Baptist.

15. In the meantime, there were all kinds of rumours about Me among the people and came to King Herod, and then he said on March 24, "John the Baptist has risen from the dead; therefore he does such deeds. - And some said, Elijah hath appeared; and some said, One of the old prophets hath risen from the dead. (Mark 6:14-16; Luke 9:7-9)

16. This talk clearly proves to you that there was a firm belief in reincarnation.

17. After the transfiguration at Mount Tabor (Matt 11:14; 17:1-13; Mark 9:10,11) I went down from the

mountain with My disciples and they asked Me: What do the scribes say, Elijah must come first (before the Messiah, 'and we saw him today,' they thought in silence) - And I answered them: Yes, Elijah is to come first and make all things right. - But I tell you, Elijah has already come, and they have not recognized him, but have done to him what they wanted. So even the Son of Man will have to suffer from them. (Isa 53) - Then the disciples understood that I spoke to them of John the Baptist.

145. Reincarnation Theory from the Apostolic Letters

1. The fact that Paul actually alluded to reincarnation is proven by his letter to the Romans, written in the year 57 from 22 October to 5 November, in which, according to the enlightenment of the mystical words in parentheses, it is written in the book about *Martin Luther in the Afterlife*: He (Jesus Christ) has destined God (His Love) to atonement (for original sin - 1 Moses 3:15), mediation of faith, (Jehovah through the prophecies of the incoming Saviour in the Messiah) in His blood, (which means to awaken in them the love of God for His children) to give a proof of His righteousness (against the descendants of Adam, who in later incarnations knew nothing of the former sin they themselves committed) in the remission of former transgressions (by the atonement on the cross to justify original sin) (Rom 3:25 in ChtS. 64; p. 198; ChtS. 71:206)

2. Peter proves to you in the Epistle to the Hebrews (9:15) that here, by the 'former transgressions', is not meant the sins of the New Testament, in which he expresses himself quite clearly: "Jesus is therefore Mediator of the new covenant, so that through death (of Christ) it may be done to deliver from the transgressions which took place under the First (or Old) Testament, which are so called to receive the promised eternal inheritance.

3. Here it is only spoken of those who sinned in the Old Testament, only in the 10th chapter and 10th verse it appears as if Peter had expressly said: "According to the Divine will we are cleansed once and for all through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ." But this contradicts what Peter said in chapter 9 and verse 15:

4. The fact that Peter did not extend the meaning "*once and for all*" to the sins committed in the New Testament, is proved by the fact that Peter says in chapter 10 and verse 26, that one may no longer intentionally or wilfully sin after having come to the knowledge of the truth, *since there is no sacrifice of God for such sins anymore.*

5. According to the utterance of the heavenly Father to me (Shumi), Peter thought of original sin and all the sins of the Old Testament that arose from it, but he also had reincarnation in mind; for his utterance has this meaning, which is also credible, because the doctrine of reincarnation was generally known and believed in the time of the apostles.

6. Paul wrote an excellent word concerning karma and reincarnation in the first Epistle to the Corinthians, which points to cretins and morons: Paul says:

7. *1 Cor 3:18-19* – "Let no one deceive himself! If any of you imagine himself to be a wise man before this world, let him become a fool, that he may become a wise man. For the wisdom of this world is foolishness before God."

8. Since the wise remain the wise until their death, this remark refers only to reincarnation, where they come into the world as cretins and morons to be spiritually humiliated, otherwise they do not give up their false wisdom.

9. That there are reincarnations, and that Christian theosophy has had the doctrine of reincarnation since Lorber, can be seen from the Enlightenments of Jesus in the great Gospel (Ev. J. Ch.) Vol. I, Chap. 213; Vol IV. Chap. 11; Vol V. Chap. 136,232,235,237; Vol VI, Chap. 61,65; Vol X, Chap. 24 -

146. God's Spirit before and after the Incarnation

1902, November 2nd, Graz. Through the facts of His own past life and work before the Incarnation, Father Jesus proves that the Spirit of the human soul could have existed long before and had lived and gone through various things before it came into the world as a human being.

1. My own incarnation in Christ gives you the proof for the fact that man has to be there spiritually already before the generation [conception] for the embodiment into flesh, for it will go without saying for you, that I was there as Spirit of God from eternity, and therefore the same spirit of God, whose days after the prophet Micha (ChtS. 71) are from eternity, stepped into the flesh and became a man like all men are.

2. This fact speaks so clearly that a brighter spirit in man cannot raise any logical objections, for if the flesh-body of Jesus underwent the same human upbringing as that of any other human, so it after all becomes understandable that also for humans, the spirit of the soul had to be there prior to bodily habitation, like the master-builder is always there before the house is built, but the soul is the master-builder of its home, wherein it lives and works all its life.

3. But that the soul could be there long before it stepped into the flesh, is again proven by My own incarnation; since I was not only there since eternity, but I occupied the whole immeasurable firmament with gigantic worlds, which I created from the soul-body of Satana, thus completing gigantic works before I was born as a man in Christ.

4. But with this also the proof is provided that man as My child - and therefore as a being modelled after Me - could also have gone through much and different things before he stepped into the flesh, like the son of an earthly father is equipped with the same senses and abilities in his full maturity that his father has, so also the spiritual man as child of God is equipped with everything to become once in full maturity what I, his spiritual Father, am. But in the meantime, he slowly matures to become what he is destined for.

5. This fact of My own incarnation as God in Christ, speaks clearly that the human spirit must exist long before it is conceived; the difference between the one and the other soul is obviously present, but it must have been [already] present as a finished human spirit, because where no master-builder is, no building with millions of secret arts is possible, and the human body is such a building, which has to be described as a miracle, because it has things *per se*, in which the ordinary scholarly common sense can only mention that it is present, but not imitable, so you have a greater idea of your soul's ability in the child's body, than the incapabilities that you notice in the child's life. For the intelligence and efficacy in it, is the gifts of the Holy Spirit of God, who dwell in its soul-heart.

147. Humans as Animals in vivid Dreams

1902, November 2nd, Graz. Father Jesus explains the fact that the evil animals in vivid dreams are the deceased, transformed into animals, who, as proof of the truth in the future will show themselves to people in the same animal-form, as they are spiritually - when they are called to appear for the exploration of the religious truth according to the regulation given by Him (in Announcements I. Bd.).

1. There are few people who would not have had dreams in which they would not have been persecuted and frightened by evil dogs, horses or other evil animals. But these are not natural

animals, but pure human beings transformed into the form of those animals whose vices they have indulged in as human beings.

2. Since such real dreams occur in every home, they are therefore a well-known fact, which here only requires the necessary enlightenment in order to understand them.

3. In the book about the 'spirit world', different animals are listed and described, which kinds represent humans in the spiritual menagerie in the spirit realm, therefore I will only announce here the fact that the second hell is very strongly populated with humans in animal figures, and that pure humans are converted into animals, who once were in the world like the cretins, jerks, grinning laughers and still several others - paid homage to the animal qualities, be it, for example, as rough barkers to their subordinates, as well as deceitful, thieving, murderous, biting, lewd, ungrateful, lazy, greedy and wild natures, etc.

4. That such beastly men were transformed into animals, is precisely the proof that they lived on earth in former times, that they certainly sinned so much and in such a way as to be transformed into such beastly creatures.

5. This fact will become known everywhere from now on, because the dead will show themselves to you in that form which they have earned with their life on earth; therefore this will be the last proof of the actual truth and therefore it is not necessary to justify the fact with words, but I want to give you unmistakable proofs of the truth and this will serve you as an example of how you are to live and act, that the same fate does not befall you.

148. Animal-Figures seen by Clairvoyants

1902, November 2nd, Graz. Father Jesus clarifies that the clairvoyant sees the same thing one sees in clairvoyant dreams , therefore also all kinds of animals, whereby the true dream and the clairvoyance sighting prove to be identical; and that such animal-humans are reincarnated again at some time.

1. In addition to the dreams of truth, people who are gifted with clairvoyance also occasionally see evil domestic animals and wild animals that frighten them. Behold, also these animals are the same as you see in dreams as deceased humans, transformed into animals, who had animal vices in the world.

2. Since every man takes his good and bad qualities with him into the other world, he also lives in the hereafter in the same conditions of his virtues or vices as in the world, but with the difference that he, [when he] entered into the hereafter, comes into the sphere where he belongs with his qualities, and so the clairvoyant then sees him in the form of his virtues as an effect of the cause, as you are aware of and know from the life of the visionary Prevorst.

3. If he improves, it is good for him, if he does not improve, if he pays homage to bad virtues, he will have to go through a life of flesh testing again in time, in order to rise up into higher regions, as I have explained.

4. The belief in reincarnation was, as noted above, also believed in Original Christianity, but later got completely lost among the people in the seventh century.

5. As Hieronymus († 420) confirms, it was handed down in his time only as an esoteric teaching of the elect, the first Christian congregations.

6. Some of the most outstanding, so-called Church-fathers, presented it openly, such as Basilides (†

235), Karpokrates († 317), Ephifanes († 403), Tatian († 330), Athenagoras († 430), Clement of Alexandria († 320), Origenes, Bishop of Alexandria born 185 († 254). Also Tertullian († 240) came very close to this doctrine in his explanations and at least the assumption of pre-existence is not rejected even by the younger church teachers, so by Synesius of Cyrene († 317), Hilarius of Poitiers († 367), Nemesius of Emesa († 430), and others, even by Augustine († 437). - Only under Justinian at the Fifth Ecumenical Council of Constantinople in 553, was this esoteric knowledge declared as heretical; and yet its understanding remained throughout the Middle Ages in many heretical sects and individual mystics.

7. From Hübbe-Schleiden, the teaching of reincarnation in Christianity:

8. The doctrine of reincarnation was cursed with the words: "Whoever teaches a fabulous pre-existence of the soul with all its consequences and a monstrous restoration (the reincarnation), be cursed". (1st Canon against Origen at the 5th Ecumenical Council, the 2nd at Constantinople in 553. Translated from Denzinger Euchindion, pg. 73, Wieseburghi 1865.)

149. What are Reincarnations for?

1902, May 23rd, Graz. Father Jesus declares that the reincarnation of souls, apart from the third hell, takes place from all spheres of the spirit kingdom and from various causes mentioned. But the time when a reincarnation takes place, is indefinite. Mistakes in the Indian reincarnation doctrine.

1. Indian theosophy, a truly religious philosophy, teaches many things, since it mistakenly shifts the whole spiritual progress of man to karma and reincarnation, which does not correspond to the truth, therefore I Myself will illuminate the matter for you, as far as you need to know about it.

2. Reincarnations happens with souls from the first and second hell, the third is excluded because the souls there are too evil. The reasons why they are reincarnated are: Stoic indifference towards everything, so there is neither progress nor backward movement in the spiritual and so I have to send them back to earth to start a new life. - Some ask for reincarnation themselves because they feel too weak to move forward. - Some continue to live on as they have lived on earth - evil and incorrigible, but not backwards either - moving towards the third or lowest hell. When I see that after hundreds of years nothing is gained and nothing is lost, I decide Myself, and let them reincarnate.

3. Many have such a longing to live again on earth that I answer that without them knowing anything about it. A new flesh-test course of life will begin. Sometimes it is possible to take a better path, sometimes not. - Finally it is a mercy on My part that I let such souls, which are cursed for eternity and damned according to the false teachings of the church, suddenly reincarnate again.

4. When a child is reincarnated, the memory of his previous life is taken from him, he comes to earth as if sinless, and his karma must begin all over again. But no sinner will be reincarnated before he has spent a suitable time in the sphere of torment; for it must be a punishment for the sins committed! - which usually lasts several hundred years, sometimes 1000 to 2000 years.

5. If the reincarnated spirit lives a virtuous life, then all former things are forgotten, because he walks according to My commandments and with it, he eradicates the former vices. If, on the other hand, he lives a sinful life again, his reincarnation is a renewed continuation of the sins and an aggravation of the old, reawakened vices - hence the development of a greater suffering for the hereafter when he dies.

6. But the reincarnations also happen from paradise and from heaven. Such souls are then of course more inclined to the spiritual than those who came from hell. Some of the latter repeat the

reincarnation test several times, but never more than twenty times. Because between one reincarnation and the other, several hundred, sometimes a thousand or more years pass.

7. Now the question arises: Why do the spirits reincarnate from paradise, since they are much better off than on earth? - See, this question is important and therefore worthy of everyone's attention. The paradisiacal spirits themselves ask for reincarnation because they are of the good opinion that they will actually move forward through the insight they now have and wish to develop again in order to move forward faster. They ask for such parents who will educate them well and also let them be educated through school. And this request is granted them. But then comes the church with its stupefaction, the state with its infernal institutions and corrupts man through and through, and so it often happen that spirits from paradise descend to earth to advance faster - and the result is hell.

8. Now we come to the reincarnations from the three heavens. In all three heavens, the spirits live in unimaginable bliss, in the third - as the highest, because it is the children's heaven - they are already gods; because they are able to accomplish everything, therefore also to create worlds and to populate them with spirits from their sphere, but of course always in agreement with and through cooperation of My will, and also see these descend to earth and let themselves be reincarnated, but mostly into quite poor families so that through lifelong trouble, plague, privations and suffering, they create new spiritual acquisitions, which are incomparable in beauty and splendour.

9. Of course, there are some who miss the path and end up unhappy; only, I help as much as possible that they get on better ways; only when they obtusely keep walking their wrongly chosen ways and are not to be awakened through anything and do not let themselves be turned away from the wrong views and ways of life, they only after death become aware through My mercy, with which intention they went to earth, how they lived and walked wrong ways and instead of winning, only lost.

10. Some accuse themselves terribly, some seize the offered hand of their spiritual friends and soon try to make good what has gone wrong, but some curse themselves and go into their own destiny.

11. So you see how it is with the reincarnations; for they come for various causes, the one succeeds in advancing, but the other does not, since it is a matter of whether man takes the aid offered or not.

12. When a highly advanced spirit reincarnates, his former merits are suspended for the time being and only regained when he has again worked his way up to the same level, thus doubling his merits and therefore his spiritual delights.

13. The periods between one reincarnation and the other are different, some have the grace to be reincarnated immediately; for this depends on circumstances, then on unrelenting requests, further on coincidences, which they themselves were not to be blamed for. Otherwise, the time between immediately and up to 2000 and more years can be assumed, since circumstances always determine when they should and can take place. If an advanced spirit no longer wants to go to earth, no one forces it to do so.

14. That the progress of the spirits is only promoted by reincarnation, is a quite erroneous view: for it would be a sad testimony of My Divine omnipotence if I did not know how to bring the spirits forward in another way! - I'm telling you: What a fatal faith, which did not come from Me, the Eternal Truth, but from the wisdom of the Indian masters (Mahatmas) to reach only in eternities - that is to say in countless millions of years - the predestined, which is brought about by a child who believes in Me Christ, through love, in a few years of earthly life.

15. Suicides, who are forced to commit suicide through events, may sooner or later have the grace to step into the flesh again and make good what they have missed.

16. The view that one can only advance spiritually through repeated embodiment on earth, is a great error. It is admittedly permitted, but it is not a condition that reincarnation must take place for the ennoblement of the sinful 'I' and for progress in the spiritual - since one can also advance without

reincarnation on earth, in the spirit kingdom. Karma is therefore not a cause of reincarnation.
17. If reincarnation would be a condition without which one would not advance in the spirit realm, the reincarnated in Europe in the nineteenth and beginning of the twentieth century, would mostly have acquired hell as their progress! - because in this period of time, Europe was and is the cultural site of devilry or hellish activity.

18. That the Indian religion, which makes the whole progress of man in the spiritual only dependent on the often repeated reincarnation, is very fatal for the believer, you see from the fact that he [the Indian] hopes for his progress from one reincarnation to the other and otherwise lives on hopelessly, therefore also the minimal progress of the Indians in the spirit realm, since they see the whole eternity, as slow progress in the spiritual.

19. Regarding the ladder of reincarnation, what someone used to be and what he now wants to be on earth, a certain answer cannot be given. Some live according to their passions and return to earth with them to have them again, some who want to progress spiritually, choose a lower state than their former one to humble themselves more, kings become farmers and craftsmen; - Scholars who wish to humiliate their scholarly pride ask to be born in a family who can not let them study; - Priests who previously preached false doctrines also ask, as converts, for rather miserable conditions in order to suppress their desire for possessions, honour and power and not to come into circumstances conducive to spreading false doctrines again. Patriarchs, prophets and such highly spiritual people usually choose poverty in order not to fall into spiritual darkness - but they do not always succeed; for what they themselves do not want, that, their parents or patrons want; sometimes also the urge for higher education, and there they often get into the wolf-pack, where they fall into spiritual decay.

20. Incorrigible sinners are usually brought into miserable circumstances so that they may not so easily find the opportunity to revive the slumbering iniquities and vices and build a new hell larger than the first one.

21. The reincarnations happen among all peoples and religions, and not only among some, but not as strongly as among Christians and Buddhists. The reasons for reincarnations to also take place among pagans and wild nations, is the vivid longing to live again as man among his descendants. - Otherwise, however, they are usually reincarnated into better religious states in order to make progress through them.

150. Sins of Past Life Avenged in Reincarnation

1900-1902, Graz. Father Jesus announces the various physically visible abnormalities as spiritual defects and infirmities of human beings, which are punished as sins from the past life, in reincarnation.

1901, 26 April, Graz. The sin of the parents and the visible consequences of it on their newborn children, as punishment of God.

1. Every human being is a product of his own action from his past life, the Indians call this Karma, i.e. "action".

2. But this action does not always have to originate from a previous fact, that one always reincarnates oneself into miserable conditions - but it is determined by different circumstances, which are not even known to the Indian Mahatmas, because they cannot climb to the highest heaven without believing in Jesus. The reincarnations are based on different points of view, which only He who guides them knows, for the souls cannot enter by themselves into the flesh, but this is allowed by God. If the souls could reincarnate by themselves, then a newborn child would have the same reason, knowledge and abilities as a spirit that is creative in the spiritual realm.

3. If one or both of the parents sin in one way or another against God, people or animals, resulting in a sensitive punishment of arrogance, wickedness or lack of love, then it happens that such unhappy creatures are given to them as children, that they see and bear the consequences all their lives, and that is then indeed a punishment from God.

4. As for the children who are born blind, deaf-mute, or otherwise afflicted, or become so soon after birth, they are not innocent victims with which the parents are punished, but such children are convicts for their past life in flesh and spirit, and thus suffer for the sins of their past life, and are thereby improved and purified for a higher spiritual life in the future.

5. From this Enlightenment, fully true to Me, how I punish parents and children for their sins, you shall learn how to live to appear just in My Eyes and to be protected from the evils of punishment.

151. The Marked

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus explains why the marked ones appear and warns against mocking them, so as not to be punished for it.

The popular expression "marked" means those persons who have any sign or infirmity on their bodies. I would not bring these unfortunates before your eyes, but it happens as warning examples for all of you, marked or not, so that some may recognize that they live in the punishment of reincarnation, while others take an example that one should beware of the sins that are written in the *Prayer Book* and here in *Christian Theosophy*, so as not to reappear in the next reincarnation as a "marked", as a visible convict from the past life. - At the same time I earnestly warn you not to accuse such people about their bodily ailments mockingly or maliciously or to talk about them in this way, because with this, you can immediately add to it: In my next reincarnation I myself will come into the world as such a "marked" for my sins now committed. —

152. Mockery and Taunting of the Marked

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus explains that the parents' sin of mocking, is the reason why they have just such children as those they mocked.

Some parents don't know where it comes from that they are presented with marked children, thinking that they have never sinned. Such parents should investigate their whole lives and they will indeed find the sin, and when and how they committed it. But if they don't get it at all, then the proof is that they have forgotten it, but not I - Who was mocked in such a poor being! - For what you do to My children, you do to Me, Who is the life in the child! - Therefore consider carefully before mocking Me as your unapproachable God and judge and to mock Me in the poorest! I will surely find you at the right time. —

153. A Tree is Known by its Fruit

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus explains: "The face is the mirror of the soul; the eyes are its light, because the face and the eyes are the signs whether a good or evil soul dwells in man.

1. Human life is the struggle between good and evil and to which man inclines, whose characteristics he overcomes spiritually and visibly.

2. A man who is inclined to the good, his face becomes a mirror of the benevolent soul and from his eyes shines the Divine light of goodness and kindness. This is also according to his virtues, for it will speak only goodness and benevolence out of everything.

3. On the other hand, the face of an evil man - like his eyes - is the outward sign of his inner unworthiness, his bad virtues and it is not difficult to guess whose spirit-child he is. Therefore ennoble your soul! So that the Divine light of love may radiate out of your eyes and the benevolence out of your countenance to all men and receive them in love into your circle and make them happy with your goodness, Amen.

154. The Blind-Born

1902, 23 June, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus, that blind born children are punished with it during reincarnation, because of their own and their parents' cruelty to animals or humans, but both parts are always to blame for it.

Being born blind is a punishment of God to people who have themselves committed a cruelty of blindness to either animals or people, and who receive it as a Divine reward during reincarnation, or when such people as parents have children, the latter are born blind; of course, such a blind child has not been of the best quality in its previous life, so it must taste a punishment that punishes the cruelty of its past.

155. One-eyedness; being Cross-eyed; Evil eye

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus explains that one-eyedness is the punishment for wicked blindness; - being cross-eyed, for sinful stimulation through the eyes; - and an evil eye is the hallmark of an evil soul.

1. *One-Eyedness* . It is not a birth-defect, but usually acquired later by misfortune, yet it is a reincarnation-punishment for an offence in the past against a man who lost an eye as a result, or also against animals, by maliciously causing it blindness! —

2. *The cross-eyed* . Strabismus is the punishment for the use of the eyes to sinful incentives.

3. *The evil eye* comes from the wickedness of the soul of a spirit reincarnated from the second hell, which in its previous life was heartless and unfeeling against its neighbour.

156. Dwarfs

1901, 13 March, Graz. Father Jesus explains that a dwarfed figure is the punishment for pride and arrogance in its glorious figure in the last incarnation.

1. Dwarfs are people whose past life was a glorious one. They were stately figures, tall and well build in all parts. Therefore they became proud of their physical qualities and at the same time haughty.

2. In the spirit realm they resemble the figures of serpents and lions and when they are conceived again, they had to accept the opposite figure of the former life, in order to humble themselves.

3. However, the giant figure of a human being is not a punishment, but a natural occurrence; even dissimilar sizes of children is not a punishment.

157. The Cripples

1901, 13 March, Graz. Father Jesus explains that the crippled figure of a human being is the outer sign of what his inner being looks spiritually.

1. People with excellent talents, much wisdom, little or no faith, go to the second hell when they die. There they take on the animal form to which they resemble the most, and live for long centuries in this poor life of hell.

2. Such people are spiritually crippled and despite their wisdom and refined talent, they are very repulsive beings from whom other spirits move away because they are malicious, false and repulsive. They outdo others with their crumbs of wisdom and are very wise and astute in all their speeches.

3. They do not mend their ways, but remain in their essence. Therefore I let them be incarnated again to go through a new test of life. Some improve, some not. Their sharp-edged wisdom, often accompanied by atheism, is the hallmark of their inner spirit.

4. But this spirit is neither a spirit of God nor a spirit of the soul, but a fluid of wisdom from the past life, which clings to the soul and dominates it. You will ask: How so? Does not all world wisdom rot with the flesh-brain, because there is no love-spirit in it? I have a mystery to reveal to you, so that you may flee from wisdom.

5. Wisdom without love in man, is a dark spiritual air and represents Satan, who is its father. This Satan with his wisdom is an antipole in you against Me, and remains - because it is a spiritual being, as inhabitant of the head-part of the soul. As soon as the child begins to develop spiritually, so also wisdom awakens in him and begins to regenerate him quickly in wisdom and because the old vices and passions of wisdom of understanding are still slumbering in this fog of wisdom, it does not need much for man to again become uncommonly sharp-witted, biting in words and atheistic, so that one cannot easily approach him.

6. I let such people - as spiritual cripples in love - grow up also physically unattractive: Either small feet and long body, or long feet and short body; shapeless face; big head etc., therefore the physical crippled serve as a symbol of their inner spiritual image before Me.

7. I have more to say, but what for? Think that spiritual cripples is presented to you as bodily cripples and become wise in the spirit of love so that you may become spiritual images of God.

158. Lameness; Twisted Limbs

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus explains that lameness is the punishment for maliciously causing lameness; - twisted feet or hands for mocking and mutilating another being.

1. *Lameness*. This reincarnation punishment applies to those who, in their past life, were guilty of their neighbour becoming lame out of malice or for some other reason.

2. *Twisted feet or hands*. These errors and infirmities do not occur as birth defects, because the children are born flawless, but they arise later by one cause or another, but they are always punishments for sins committed in the last incarnation.

3. Such physical defects are debts caused by malicious mockery, by the malicious mutilation of a person, a child or an adult, and second to this, is cruelty to animals in the same way; therefore be merciful and compassionate as human beings, so that such reincarnation punishments do not befall you! Teach your children to be tender, merciful and compassionate with every animal and little animal, and be the example of love and mercy to your children so that they may follow your life and become happy in the world.

159. The Hunchback

1901, 26 April, Graz. Father Jesus enlightens us that being hunchbacked is the punishment for unspiritual acts of vanity and haughty conceit for the beauty of the body in the past.

1. Nowadays you see a lot of hunchbacked people; once this was not the case because the causes were not as strong as they are now.

2. From the medical point of view, there are different causes to which one ascribes being humped; but from My point of view, there are spiritual causes for the material ones. I know exactly everything awaiting man in the flesh-body and therefore I give such souls physical damage, who have to atone for the sins of past life.

3. The parents who have hunchbacked children should not be offended; for either they are to blame for it, or such children are a grace to them in one way or another. Although no hunchbacked child comes into the world because the souls are not hunchbacked, but there is no effect without cause - so also here - and this only I know, who let the effect appear.

4. There are souls who, in the flesh, used their beauty of form as a means for their unspiritual actions, and through this, fully laden with sins and, on top of that, imagining something else - come into the spirit realm. Such souls then cannot be healed with rational words because they are full of vain conceit about their physical beauty. What can be done with them other than to let them step into the flesh again, but under such conditions that they taste just the opposite of their previous lives? With a deformed body, they are a mockery for others, and an obstacle for themselves to present something special; but by doing so, they mostly learn humility and that is what reincarnation is all about.

5. If such punished souls nevertheless do not become humble, but arrogant - they must return after their death, but enter into much poorer states; for now they have to atone for the sins of two incarnations. So I punish the souls without standing before them with force of the word of the law and proclaiming the judgement. They have to be under judgement - punishment, and penance, until they have humbled themselves. Beware therefore of vanity about your physical advantages, so that you may not become victims of vanity and arrogant conceit!

160. Cretins

1900, October 23rd, Graz. Father Jesus explains that cretins are those sinners of the past who were Godless and degraders of their fellow men.

1. Man has been given freedom in life that he can become good or evil. Therefore every human being is free, according to Divine counsel, to work his way up to a deity or a devil, according to his own will.

2. Many men come to earth to find Me, their Father and Creator here, and so many really find Me; but some fall into matter, they believe nothing, become Godless and therefore animalistic through the lack of love and passions, which degrade them to be worse than animals. There are two ways by which a man becomes a spiritual animal. Some were people who were previously great noble spirits in other starry worlds, or who had lived on earth once or twice before, the others are from people who worked their way through the mineral, plant and animal kingdoms for the first time on earth and attained human dignity.

3. When such people on earth have thrown off all faith and took on animal- and unspiritual characteristics, e.g. in the sex life, as a glutton, drunkard etc., or even a publicly scandalous one offending others - be it as dancers or as ballet dancers, poets with content seductive to sin, writers of immoral books, or such painters, artists, etc.; when such people die, they will become animals in the spirit realm, often with evil natures. After a long time, I let them incarnate again and there such cretins come into the world that are half animal, half man - because too little or no spirit of God dwells in them. If the latter is the case, then they are on a lower level than animals and cannot make a sensible sound, because God is missing in them as giver of words. They are a mockery to all, a burden to themselves, and often dangerous to people.

4. Parents who get such cretins are very unhappy, but they are to blame for it themselves: either by mocking such poor beings, or by some other misconduct against God or men, or such unhappy beings. Parents who have never sinned against these, will not be punished.

5. **After his death, a cretin must be begotten again after a certain period of time in order to become a man with intellect and education; for reincarnation as a cretin was a punishment for the soul, the mockery of men; the subsequent reincarnation brings him back the dignity of a human being.**

161. The Fools and Clowns

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus enlightens us that this kind of people must go through punishment for their unspiritual past life, which has worsened many people's morals.

There are many of these poor creatures in the German Eastern Alps who are mentioned above and who often smile at you with a grin. Their descent is a very sad one. - If you had before you the image of such a semi-animal fool from his last incarnation, you would see before you a fine, highly educated man who once impressed the world with his talent, his spiritual sparks, and his spiritual performance. Since their spiritual past life was similar or rather the same as that of the Cretins, you will find more detailed information there. Once he hopped on his delicate feet on the theater stage or in dance halls, now he is pathetic and shuffles around with heavy feet - often stuttering barely understandable words: lived as an animal, died as an animal, became an animal spirit and was reincarnated as an animal-person.

162. The Laughing Grinning Clowns

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus enlightens that these people will receive the punishment for their mass moral deterioration of fellow men in their previous lives and the rest of the world.

Grinning laughers can usually be found among the cretins and scoundrels and they represent the former stupid circus clowns and jokers of the theatres, who once tickled and excited the laughter muscles of the audience, but now laugh with a grin; every reasonable person quickly turns away from them, so that they don't come close to him with their grinning stupidity. - From this you can infer how I am satisfied with you when you applaud such jokers in the theatre, circus or public couplet-singing and help them to become a bigger hell-animal after their bodily death because such jokes, wittiness and joking singing, are the high school of moral degradation.

163. Idiots, Geniuses and Dimwits

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus clarifies that idiocy is the punishment for the sin of parents; - Geniuses often reincarnate as an artist into the same blood-related family; - and non-sense is punishment for witty mockery of neighbours.

1. *Idiots and geniuses in a family*. This exception comes from the fact that the *idiot is [because of] a sin* of the parents - thus punishment - be it from the past life, or the present; - but *the genius is a previously spiritually advanced* man who was again conceived in the same family, often at the request of the spirit. Even children who are produced in intoxication become idiots as a punishment, - for the procreation of a child is the procreation of a child of God, therefore a holy act; but you often practice it more beastly than the most common animal, and therefore the punishment!

2. Insensibility is a punishment for the overly bold and disrespectful wisdom-treatment of the fellow man, the so-called long, pointed tongue, treating the neighbour with fine wisdom, with which he is teased, mocked and maltreated as a lesser being by witty wisdom, which is then transformed into insensibility in the next incarnation.

164. Big Skull and Goiter

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus enlightens that such people will forfeit the punishment for mockery committed by parents, or the same committed in previous lives.

1. *Big head*. People with disproportionally large heads are usually convicts of sin from past life in the present reincarnation. The mockery and derision of the past, now comes to punishment. - A thick neck is no punishment.

2. *Goiter*. The goiter is scientifically regarded as the source of mineral water. This view is correct, but it also contains a spiritual punishment for sins committed, either by parents or by oneself, for mocking and scoffing. But also the previous life's sin occurs as punishment in reincarnation, if it was not atoned for at the time of life.

165. Deafness

1901, 27 May, Graz. Father Jesus clarifies that deafness is the punishment, for those people who in their past life were envious and ill-disposed towards others for their acquired knowledge and advantages.

1. People who fail to grant others their knowledge and acquired spiritual advantages through school and upbringing or through self-acquisition, are jealous, arrogant and harmful people who do not grant others what they do not have or cannot have.

2. But since the knowledge can only be acquired through schooling or education, which one hears and recites to others again, there is the karma that such an envious person must miss the organ, which enables him to listen to the knowledge of others, or to recite to others of his own.

166. Muteness

1901, 27 May, Graz. Father Jesus clarifies that muteness is the punishment for those who in their past life used their oratorical superiority to speak, spoke to others through brutal domination and oppression, or did not let their correct view get through.

Many people have a great disservice in that they do not grant anybody a right to speak or express their opinion, and they want to set the tone everywhere and to dominate the opinion, whether it is true or cruelly suppresses the truth, is of secondary importance to them, while their personal opinion is elevated to the main thing everywhere by oratory superiority. Such word- and language-heroes are punished in reincarnation with muteness, because their pride itches to be first and leading and dominating person everywhere, and then has to stand as the last as a mute. Such mute people indeed have a great desire to talk, only they are forced to atone for their wisdom of reason, which once triumphed arrogantly over their neighbours, through the humiliation of muteness and having to put up with everything. Thereby they are cured of their arrogant domination of people's opinion and made suitable for spiritual progress.

167. Deaf-Mutes

1901, 27 May, Graz. Father Jesus explains that deaf-muteness is the punishment for mocking poor deaf or dumb fellow men from present or former lives.

1. Man should never include the poor, deaf or dumb, in his sphere of activity with contempt by making jokes, witty remarks and all sorts of stupidities with such people living in Divine punishment, or otherwise he will be allowed to be suppressed as [he did] before.

2. My punishing hand is long-suffering towrards such loveless sinners, but it does not fail. Either they are punished already in this life or in the reincarnation, where they themselves have to suffer their whole lives from the same defects, because of which they disparaged, mocked and suppressed others, whether as a joke or for personal gain.

3. Therefore each one should consider well what he is doing, so that he will not reap in retaliation what he has sown.

168. The neglect (or oversight) of the Mother

1902, 30 October, Graz. Father Jesus explains that the formation of the child's face depends mainly on the mother's behaviour during pregnancy, but also partly on the father.

1. The behaviour of the mother during the first period of pregnancy plays an important role, as the child is still in process of formation. The soul of the child is as a spiritual being, in contact with the soul of the mother, therefore the mother must give great attention to herself during pregnancy, so that she does not make mistakes, which are then congenital to the child externally materially visible, or acting spiritually, or in the soul.

2. The child receives the qualities and passions of the mother through the blood from which it is constituted; the father's own passions are usually received through the spirit of the outflow from the father in his handling of the mother, for the soul of the child receives everything and uses it to build up the child's body and itself!

3. But when the mother looks into a person quite sensibly and lets her eyes cling to it for a long time, then the soul of the child becomes hypnotized by the thoughts and senses of the mother, and because the thoughts and senses form spiritual bodies in the mother's brain, the child's soul more or less adopts the spiritual impression to imitate this so sharply contemplated figure, which it regards as the mother's model, and so the children get the faces of known people, harelips, animal-like faces and various deformities that could easily have been avoided; but also the most wonderful head and face formations, if the object viewed is such a child or also a painted picture.

4. The formation of the body is often the mother's fault. Hence mothers! Be careful that you live according to My regulations [during pregnancy] and only feast your eyes on the glorious, the sublime! The extremely sad "seven woes of Mary" has already given her physiognomy to many a child. - Hence, take care! For head, eyes, ears, nose, face, etc. can become beautiful or nasty by looking at them, depending on what the mother has very deeply absorbed: The mother is the draughtsman, and the child-soul, the master-builder according to the design.

5. But parents are also the model of the child's soul for brain-formation and the intelligence of the child. - As it is said in the *Prayer Book*, the child gets a part of the father's spirit and a part of the mother's spirit, with these two, the child-soul is in constant electrical contact with the mother and with the father, and with what the mother and the father are occupied spiritually, that come over the soul through this electrical connection, that is why it happens that where parents - for example, the father, gives special mental attention to a science, the child gets the intellectual current of intelligence from it, therefore intelligent children mostly comes of intelligent parents, if not in the meantime, judgement errors or mistakes of the parents impair or even destroy what is good in any way. The intelligence of the father is particularly effective on the child when the father is near the mother, because thereby the child-soul electrically and contemplatively attracts the intelligence formation of the father and assimilates it.

6. If, however, the parents make mistakes in life during pregnancy, then there is no talk of native intelligence of the children, [then] they are ordinary products in which the germ has already been put to bad use.

7. There are exceptions, but these are again of a spiritual nature, through one of the parents, or through intelligent surroundings where the child-soul sees only noble, sublime things, or through later unconscious continued awakening of the child's mind, whereby an intelligent child becomes of it, because man continuously absorbs what is offered to him from the first day of conception until the end of his life for his soul-spirit.

8. Therefore, if you want to have beautiful and intelligent children, you must proceed as the spiritual education of the child requires. For everything depends on the parents, how their children become. If

the parents live according to My Divine regulation and know how to use this regulation correctly, they will have such children as they wish themselves, because the senses of the parents of the child-soul are the pattern for their own education; and if the parents are not of beautiful shape and facial formation, so can the mother by a beautiful picture, by her constant continuous longing and deepening or mental imagining of this image and in the fixed belief that she will have such a child as in the picture, create the reality because, when it's done that way, unattractive parents can have a beautiful child; the mother, of course, in her longing and deepening, should not rely on herself, but also on Me for the fulfillment of their wish, and it will happen.

169. Cleptomania

1. People say: If the mother steals something during pregnancy, then her child becomes a thief.

2. This view is erroneous; that thieving parents educate their children to be thieves is a matter of course, and that parents who themselves like to steal do not punish their children when they acquire something foreign, is in the nature of the matter; 'small habit, long done', however, is already founded in the proverbs and well-known, only the so-called cleptomania lies on another basis, and this is: Some thieving persons cannot discard their habit either as persons or as spirits, so they are occasionally reincarnated into rich families, where they have an abundance of everything, so that they do not arouse the desire to steal, since they can buy and have everything with money. If it does happen, there is such a great mania for stealing that even the excess is not quite able to prevent it, but the nasty passion is diminished in any case.

170. Why do Thieves, Robbers, Murderers and other Criminals also have Children, since they are Likely to Spoil them?

1903, April 23rd, Graz. Father Jesus explains that the spirits of criminals come into the world again through criminals because they expressly want to have this, although sometimes progress is achieved through coincidences of life which lead the young offspring to a different occupation.

There are spirits who have such an intense urge for reincarnation into a family that corresponds to their impetuous desires and lusts, that they have no desire nor wish for any other views and goals. Since nothing can be done with such spirits, therefore, their urge is complied with and they step into the flesh again. Sometimes such wildlings continue the old once led life, but some find another direction by circumstances which lead them on better ways, and thus progress is achieved by reincarnation. Therefore no-one is to judge the matter wrongly; for it does not depend on Me, but on the explicit and persistent desire and urge of the spirit what is to become of it, better or worse, since I consider the freedom of the spirit as far as possible.

171. The Third Gender. The Hellenic Love

1901, 13 March, Graz. Father Jesus explains that people with Hellenic love need an early marriage in order to abandon unnatural love.

1. People with hot blood and unnatural sexual love live in hot countries; cold regions rarely have such a person - because this is influenced by the climate.

2. People, where man longs after a man and is hotly in love with him, are spawn of spiritual madness. On the outside you see nothing special about them, on the inside it is different. They are wildly lustful with a disgusting urge for human union in the wrong direction, because the natural has no attraction for them, also some are afraid of the consequences.

3. It is hardly possible to heal such people, because they are too wildly hot for it. They need reincarnation under conditions that will allow them to have a natural love soon after reaching manhood, so that they will become weaned off unnatural life and will be people of ordinary type.

172. Why are there Hermaphrodites in the world?

1901, 13 March, Graz. Father Jesus explains that hermaphrodites are great fornicators from the past who are tamed by mutilation.

1. Every human should tame his lustful desires as much as possible and not give them free rein, so that they do not become wild.

2. The hermaphrodites are people who in their previous lives, led a scandalous sex life and in this life, degraded themselves to human pigs. Having arrived in the spirit realm, they continue this life with like-minded people in the most horrible way. Their body shape is half monkey, half snake due to the representation of the degenerated original sin of fornication: Monkey as a lewd animal; serpent as the equivalent of the Paradise-serpent of voluptuous selfishness.

3. Since the soul of a lewd man is not so easily tamed, the gender had to be mutilated in the reincarnation, in order to set a large barrier on the impetuous urge for lechery.

4. That is therefore the cause of the hermaphrodites and it would be appropriate to teach such people how they came about, so that they do not again reach the hereafter unhappily. It is best to give them this enlightenment to read.

5. That they appear so unequal in terms of male and female appeal, is again the cause of whether they were of male or female descent. The inclination is the decisive factor, since the mutilation does not reach beyond the gender line.

6. As far as artificial (hypnotic) prevention is concerned, it is not permitted before Me; for I can change with My own power, and need no helpers; But I will that every man should earn his own heaven, otherwise he will not come in, so do not rob them of heaven! - The teaching must take place freely in the awake state.

173. Inclination of Man to Man and Woman

These are Hellenic libertines.

174. Inclination of Woman to Woman and Man

These are Hellenic libertines.

175. Inclination of Woman to Woman

1. Such a woman is a man in soul and only a woman in the flesh, in order to tame the lust thereby.—

2. All such libertines are possessed by fornicating spirits. Their improvement is usually only possible in the world, because they keep the decency and moral law in check; in the spirit realm, where there is complete freedom, the improvement of such souls is poor. That is why one is to draw the attention of those on earth to the danger of their activities and to teach them everything so that they do not reach the hereafter unhappily.

176. A Valid Proof from This Side and Beyond

The fact that the fleshly sensual humans also have the same vices in the spirit realm and differ little from animal-souls, is testified by the story when I, Jesus, wanted to drive out the evil spirits from the possessed in the Gergasene region. They asked Me to let them go into a herd of pigs so that they could continue to live according to their sensual inclinations and desires; but the pigs were purer than these spirits, therefore they became wild when the spirits drove into them, ran directly into the sea and drowned in it, whereby the evil spirits were again free and homeless and had to search somewhere else for their accommodation because they found no redemption from their vices by drowning the pigs.

177. Transformation of the Soul in Reincarnation

The reincarnations of the soul of a man as a woman or vice versa of the soul of a woman as a man do not occur in the ordinary state, an exception is only the third gender, as was explained above.

178. The Reincarnated. About Reincarnated Partial Spirits

1904, August 23, Zurich. Father Jesus enlightens us that there are neither reincarnated spirits nor partial spirits of high heavenly spirits in human beings that are associated as guardian spirits, and therefore this is a false doctrine registered by spirits or Satana.

1. My dear children, there are some of My children who do not properly grasp the teaching of reincarnation and think that there are also partial reincarnations, that is, that high spirits remain in the main parts of heaven and only a part of their ego reincarnate and come to earth, even that such high spirits reincarnate their soul into several people as partial spirits, or that such a partial spirit reincarnates itself into it as the leader of some person.

2. This teaching is quite wrong because such a false teaching that flowed through the spirits, or Satana, will be taught to you in the following enlightenment.

3. Every human is for himself a complete ego and two people cannot be united into one body because everyone has other talents which do not agree with the talents of the other, therefore two people can never be united into one body - *recte* (more correctly said), into one soul.

4. On the other hand, it is the rule that every man has to become out of himself what he wants to become, and that everyone himself is responsible for doing or not doing before Me. How then would a partial spirit of a high heavenly spirit be added if the soul of a reincarnated man were to go astray, so that the partial spirit of an archangel would also be corrupted and dragged along to hell!?

5. Wouldn't the spirit of an archangel suffer great damage, which often can not be made good for hundreds of years? Yes, he would be decidedly at a great disadvantage, because the partial spirit would only have to buy back what had been lost after some time, after thousands of years, and make up for what had become bad!

6. If, however, in the other case, the soul of the reincarnated would advance well and thus reach its perfection, but would at last be separated from it by a partial spirit and re-incorporated into the owner, the reincarnated would have hatched a kukuk chick, because he would have troubled himself to also train the partial spirit, which would have been incorporated into him without his knowledge - highly spiritually, but not as his own ego, but as a slave of another - because every incarnated or reincarnated [soul] starts completely afresh to develop and train, for the former is covered and stored, so the reincarnated one would be a cheerful worker as someone different.

7. You can easily understand that such concepts of reincarnation are completely wrong, because it would be a fraud story, first of all from My side, to whom I would allow something like this, on the other hand from the angelic spirit, who would have undertaken such fraud, smuggling with his partial spirit.

8. You know that today many archangels are reincarnated, and yet you see that outwardly they are indistinguishable from other men, indeed that there is no difference at all, who is a spirit of hell and who is a spirit of an angel in a child? Many angelic spirits and high spirits from other worlds are even darkened so much by today's method of education, books denying God and literature pulling everything higher spiritual through the dung, that they themselves perish and deny God and the survival of the soul.

9. The question is: What would be the advantage of such an angelic partial spirit in people who have become devils? Loss, and nothing but loss and loss of its quality, because no-one of the reincarnated ones know anything about their past lives, but everyone must develop anew from the

root.

10. So you see that there are only two ways open if there would be reincarnating partial spirits as [part of] incarnated or reincarnated souls: Either deception of the reincarnated who would do the frontline-service for another, or loss of spiritual quality of the partial spirit.

11. There are also those who think that a high spirit does not descend from heaven, but only lets its soul reincarnate on earth from a partial spirit.

12. This view is also completely wrong, because the center of the soul is the guiding part of the partial souls, because they are only the thought-bodies of the soul and completely dependent on it as well as your thoughts, that you send to some known place on earth. As long as you are dwelling there, you are also there with your double [doppelgänger] as thought-body, but as soon as you lead your thoughts elsewhere, the double-body, which is nothing else but a spiritual thought-body, also vanish in a flash, like the mirror-image, when you leave the mirror.

13. Such is the case with the partial spirits in reincarnation: Either the soul of the person concerned is completely incarnated or reincarnated, or it is not incarnated at all. Take note of this as enlightenment from your Father Jesus. Amen.

179. Earthly Incarnation is followed by Earthly Reincarnation

1902, November 3rd, Graz. Father Jesus announces that those spirits which once were incarnated on earth will no longer be incarnated into other sun, planet- and star-worlds, except into the moon, as a prison of earth for those with a too great love for earthly goods and women.

1. The reincarnation of a soul that has already incarnated in this world, takes place again and again on this earth. An exception is the moon as prison for the souls who are too worldly-minded, which falls in love completely with the matter of the earth and have only its goods, its houses, its movable and immovable property in their heads, these do not come to earth but go to the moon, where there are very miserable fortunes, which puts an end to the love of the earthly goods - in which it becomes clear to them that it is precisely because of their preference for visible earthly goods, that they are incarnated in the punitive school of life on the moon.

2. This measure brings them to reason and by this means, they begin to hate the matter that has made them unhappy.

3. Also those who, besides the earthly goods, showed their wives a special preference and did not think much of God, go there. Now they have to carry their wives on their shoulders as punishment from their marriage-day, for which they are already being trained as children. (see '*The Moon*' §. 2)

4. Inhabitants from other stars, suns and planets are incarnated on Earth, but not from Earth to anywhere other than the Moon, as it is a planetary part of Earth and is its prison for secularized souls.

180. The Earth as the Last Incarnation–World of the Souls

1854-1904 Father Jesus declares that once incarnated on earth, one is no longer incarnated in other stars.

1. There is a teaching developed in spiritualistic circles that the spirits, once incarnated on earth, are also incarnated in other world-bodies after death.

2. This teaching is untrue; for the earth is the last heavenly body carrying spiritual implication for the soul. I, Jesus, have made - through My incarnation - the earth the elect of all star-worlds and therefore: Who has once been incarnated on earth, he will no longer come into the world through the normal progress of the soul in any other star, because the earth forms the last and main stage in the transmigration of souls, because only from here can the childhood of God - through the suffering and death of the cross - be acquired and determined:

3. Whoever has not yet entered this earth, will not come to the childhood of God, because here the greatest and most difficult tasks of the testing of the flesh are to be fought through, after which the rebirth of the spirit is to be attained.

181. Interrupted Recollection of the Incarnations

1902, November 3rd, Graz. Father Jesus explains why man loses the memory of his past life with every incarnation and compares this with the awakening from magnetic sleep.

1. Man does not remember his past life in the world and in the spirit realm for the sake of not becoming dazed with all his former memories in the incarnation and reincarnation, so he loses all the events he had lived through before.

2. This measure is applied, because every time man steps into the flesh again, he must go through the whole development of life anew, so that he collects new merits in everything, because with every reincarnation, when it has been lived through happily, new life acquisitions from the bitter and sour are added to those already acquired from the previous life.

3. The state of awakening from the hypnotized or magnetized sleep-state, where the awakened person has no idea and no memory of what he spoke or did in the sleep-state and what had happened to him, resembles forgetting or not knowing anything from the previous life, when entering a new reincarnation. I remove the memory of a past life in reincarnation - in hypnotic sleep, the connection between the soul and its brain is forcefully removed; in magnetic sleep, however, it is the magnetism which comes between the soul and the nerve-spirit as the mediator to the brain.

182. A Word of Truth about Reincarnation

1874, June 16, Trieste. Father Jesus explains through Gottfried Mayerhofer that the reincarnations of deceased people are not a condition, but rather an exception.

1. You have often asked Me what is true about this teaching set up by spirits (especially in the spiritistic direction of the romantic school founded by Allan Cardec in France-Paris) since even in My '*Household'* and in My '*Great Gospel*', there are examples which point to the reincarnation of the soul of a deceased human being in a body on your earth. I have never given you an explanation about this point, everything remained mute in your heart; but today I will now give you – unasked - a few hints about this word, because I know best when it is time that you, or in general all seekers, should hear something clear, so that false doctrines do not continue to spread.

2. Well, as far as a reincarnation is concerned in general, as some spirits have announced in spiritualistic assemblies, and, so-to-say have made it a necessity, as if one could not advance without it, so I - who knows better than all spirits - must tell you that this idea is a very weak human one, which the deceased or "passed-over" spirits took with them from here to there.

3. For it would probably mean to have very little knowledge of God's wisdom and omnipotence if one did not want to trust God with any other means to improve His spirit-particles set into the world than by a new incorporation into earthly bodies - and even more so without any consciousness of a previously lived life.

4. What nonsense have these short-sighted spirits cherished, which, if it were true, would lead to no end at all; for if reincarnation is to be a punishment, the one who is punished should know something about it, otherwise it is no punishment for him. What does the farmer know, why he was born and brought up as a farmer, whether he was perhaps once a king or a man-eater? He will live and die as a peasant in his state, in his circumstances, and since the soul there does not become omniscient and all-seeing, he will continue to live as a "peasant soul" there for a long time until his limited concepts of "world", "man" and "spirit" have been purified by other spirits.

5. See, My children, this idea is a very childish one, of a man in his limited earthly situation, where I am in fact, in your religious teachings, always portrayed as a punishing judge, where vengeance [and] revenge plays an important role; for the short-sighted man and the short-sighted spirit from over there, believe: 'Just wait, you royal tyrant soul, now you must become a farmer, to endure all the sufferings that you, a ruler, once caused the peasants!' How is such an idea compatible with a God of love, gentleness and infinite grace?

6. If men only want to think a little about these manifestations of spirits, they would have to be ashamed to have such a "vengeful God" as the highest being before them, of whom they would have to be afraid; but never the love which a child would certainly feel for his father.

7. In addition it still shows as a whole what a limited and petty idea men have of Me as Creator, when they assume that I, who created this universe with all its wonders, knew no other way to punish or improve lost souls than earthly reincarnation.

8. Look at a mite, an infusorial animal - what millions of laws had to work together in such a small organism in order to create these little animals in such a way that, with the first millions of years, their whole cycle, their reproduction and their further development was conditioned to higher stages.

9. I created the material world only once; only once did I say the word: "It shall be!" With this word I established laws, which always sustain the world, reproduce the genders, and move all from one stage to the next, until matter is spiritualised in the spirit-world, repeating the same laws - but only in spiritual terms - the continuation of the progressive purification process, starting with all that is created from matter, to completion in the spiritual.

10. See, in the visible nature you can perceive how a certain gradation prevails from the seemingly dead rocks [up] to man, how one develops from the other, how the organisms gradually perfect themselves.

11. All these souls bound in matter, push for higher development, and precisely because - often from one stage to the next - the intelligence-particles of a single animal are not sufficient to fill the soul of the next one, it is precisely the rapid production of the lowest animals that is necessary to always have the material available for higher physical elements.

12. Thus, starting from the soul of the earth, which as an impulse - in the smallest as in the largest - works according to the same laws in order to free, develop and guide higher what is imprisoned in matter, the great stepladder is formed, which at least on your earth, concludes with man as a visible keystone.

13. These people are thus formed from millions of subordinate soul-specificas, are pulled "upward" in their migration, and never turn back, according to orderly rules of progressive life, in order to occupy a lower degree again; for as they come as spirit into the other world, so they find within them their own law, their own judge, who places them where they have placed themselves by fulfilling or omitting the Divine rules.

14. There they must continue to "work", with full consciousness on their own ego, whether bad or good, until they have completed the purification walk as they had to make their soul-specificas once from the lowest animal to man, i.e. the spiritual way from the dark and unclear of their own position, to the purest, highest consciousness of Divine descent and eternal continuity.

15. Just like the laws in the material, the laws in the spiritual are always the same, always repeating, only as befitting the different relations and circumstances according to every individual.

16. If, as I said in the beginning, "re-embodiments" of spirits and deceased (souls of) men occurred and still occur, then this has another reason and purpose, which indeed exists within My laws, but must not be assumed to be the norm, that this must be repeated again and again! - I have already told you about this in other places, and will not discuss it further here.

17. My purpose with this word is actually to make these so-called "spiritists" - who so gladly want to accept everything that spirits say to them as "gospel" or the purest truth - aware of the false conclusions and implications they come to when they accept some spirit-messages at face value!

18. The "Spiritists" are just as much "My children" as you are, and I want, since they actually want to get to know Me and My spirit-world, that they do not walk in darkness for long, but recognize as soon as possible the right but also the shortest way, which leads to Me.

19. I want to be recognized by all people; therefore you have finally received some words about this questionable point of 'reincarnation', in order to inspire naive people to reflect; otherwise they are easily misled by especially "learned" spirits.

20. Behold, in this world of yours, among you men, you have to be careful every day and not believe everything that one or the other says to you; you have to consider everything well, whether true or untrue, exactly because you know that men in general work wrongly, deceitfully and lyingly to hide their own interests. —

21. Now, if you admit this, why would you not want to apply the same standard to the spirit-world that surrounds you [wanting] to give you their impressions and ideas?

22. What then are the spirits other than 'deceased people', souls who have passed over, who have left behind their material bodies, but not their passions, their views, with which they can only part with great difficulty, while it would have been easier here in the world.

23. Consider what I tell you, be careful and do not desire to present as doctrines, what has no reasonable ground, but is only humanly weak "suppositions".

24. Why have I been giving you all 'words' and 'explanations' about so many earthly and supernatural objects for many years? - Why then would I prove to you from the smallest, to the greatest, from the closest to the farthest, what I am, what My world is? Because you are to recognize from all of this, that there is a God of love, Who created everything for your development and for your greater happiness, when you are able to once understand and endure such.

25. Everything that I have communicated to you so far forms a spiritual whole, which - like a chain, connecting one link into the other - will once constitute My true teaching, My spiritual religion, My creed, by which whole generations, pursuing their goal, will then come into My spirit-kingdom far more mature and informed, than the currant arrivals [who] arrive there with such simple childish concepts of Me, My world and themselves.

26. Once I uttered this word: "Let there be light," and light had to be! Light in your hearts! Just as your sun daily warms the earth and all planets circling around it and stimulates them to further development, My spiritual light should and must one day kindle, illuminate and warm all human hearts by means of the Divine spark of love, be it to all creatures, be it to fellow human beings or finally to Myself!

27. People must recognize their God with all His attributes, must see clearly and learn to understand what His Will was when He created the universe, what His purpose was when He populated it with living beings, and they must learn to read in and from His works, His infinite grace, love and gentleness, so that wrong ideas and concepts do not darken the great light of truth, which can lead you to Him, to not one day become will-less creatures of His, but to become His children, whom He once created in his image, so that you - as far as it is possible for you created beings - can become similar to Him.

183. Re-elevation from Dead Matter to Reincarnation

1864, March 9, Graz. Through Jakob Lorber, Father Jesus enlightens us that in the hereafter, the people who have completely passed over into worldly love and self-love, will again pass into dead matter - namely through an unspeakably painful process of splitting up their souls, and that these split-up souls will then have to rise again from the smallest living beings, starting upwards and progressing upwards, in the course of uncalculated millennia, up to the human soul.

1. Without love, there is no life and without light there is no truth! Every effect that an attentive observer discovers in whatever sphere of existence and in whatever realm of nature, comes from love and from light.

2. The true love that is called life is that eternal warmth from the Divine centre which I, the Lord, indicate by the expression "Father". And from this Father, as a result of the eternally equal warmth of life, the light, which I Myself am (as Son), emanates into all infinity.

3. Who therefore actively receives from Me the light that exists in My teaching, he also receives the love or the life of the Father. When he has received this, then he has also awakened the Divine Spirit to eternal life in himself, as the effect of true love and true light.

4. There are, however, in addition to the only true light that comes from true love, especially on your material earth, a myriad kinds of love and light that also create products; but these products are just

as transient as the kinds of love and light and always leave behind more or less evil consequences; especially very often when they degenerate into selfishness and self-love and their supposed light in spiritual relationship becomes the barest and thickest darkness (compare John 1) in which such people then sink into the animal-kingdom and often come to the conclusion that some animals are further [developed] than they themselves are, and they are not wrong in this respect, and it is certainly no different with them - at least with the better part of them - as with the false prophet Balaam, who had to be instructed by his donkey, how it was with spiritual things. So such people have no love at all, therefore no life and no light; they do not even know that they have a soul and that it is immortal. Those many people, especially in this time, who are in such worldly- and self-love and thus in the darkness of life have brought it as far as ever possible, they will start again on the other side at that point and become more and more angry and material, depending on circumstances. And as true as I am the Lord who says this, *they will again pass over into dead matter and [that] namely through an unspeakably painful process and that for long times until they therefore again become hard rigid matter themselves, finally divided into many parts and after long periods again be placed as humans or creatures either on this earth or on other world-bodies; because with Me, a thousand earth-years are like a short day.*

5. What [soul], by itself, by virtue of the free will inherent in it, does not want to subordinate itself to My revealed will to all, is therefore not lost, but it has to expect a great and protracted correction.

6. There are currently people on earth who are incarnated for the first time; others already for the second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth and seventh times. Who does not mature here, often cannot reach any goal in the spirit realm, is therefore reincarnated, repeated in some, until they reach their goal and purpose, or re-received into higher paradisiacal regions.

184. Inner word. Reincarnation. Love as a spark of God

1889, 23 November, Kronstadt (in Siebenbürgen). Father Jesus discusses through Franz Hedwig the great grace of the Inner Word through the love given by Him, as the talent returning with interest and that this talent is given to people through the insight, worked through the great works of love Jesus is doing for His children. He further announces that the now reincarnated, were witnesses in the spirit at His incarnation and joined in the jubilating singing with the angels, and that we, as these reincarnated, now have the task we desired ourselves at that time, to be active as called ones in the vineyards of the Lord. Love as a spark and part of God in man. Report about our present life on earth.

1. Behold My child, I have been giving you the Word for a number of years now through the very love inserted in your heart. Hold fast to this love, for this is a lasting good which I have given you Myself. Love is the pound, which I distribute to the ones who are Mine, and in a corresponding amount. You just have to understand Me correctly, how and in what way I want to see more of this pound handed over to you.

2. I do not demand of anyone that he must do something extraordinary, but I only wish that each one manages the talent entrusted to him well and returns it to Me with good interest when I will demand it.

3. But the Pound of Love that I have given to each one of Mine is above all to be preserved in the same purity as I Myself have put into the hearts of My children.

4. Any one of you could easily raise the question: Yes, how and when did you give us this pound, and for what purpose? Well, I tell you all who have a concept of the innermost spiritual life in you, think a little deeper about the purpose of My Incarnation, and each of you will find the true meaning of the answer in yourselves in it.

5. Yes, My dear children, with the first step that I have taken into the material world of the earth to place Myself as the true God - as fleshly man among My children, I have laid a particle of My love in every human heart so that they may be successful in the knowledge of My love for humans as My children.

6. At the same time, I also bestowed these My love-particles on all those who had already been there, so that not a single one was forgotten.

7. 1904, September 16, Zurich. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus about this by Franz Schumi: "This love was placed and awakened in you through insight, because you saw what I have done for you: That through My passion and death on the cross, I redeemed you from the same passion and death on the cross that was inflicted on you, restoring to you the childhood of God lost through original sin, that through this you have been given to see God in My person, with which I have opened the greatest happiness of heaven to you and you have recognized Me as the loving Father in Jesus, to whom you can trustingly turn at any time, Who thinks of you with Divine fatherly love, cares and leads you to Himself on the way of salvation.

8. Thus My incarnation is and remains the actual foundation day of all those who are awakened to new life - yes, for those who lived before and after My incarnation on earth [as well as] the still living people.

9. In these words you will find the day, the hour, when you too have been given the particle of My Love, - you yourself cannot yet grasp this, for your senses and aspirations do not yet go so far that it could be clear to you where you yourself had your home at that time when I entered the material earth as a newborn child. Only this I tell you, - *all of you who just now in this time have the striving in you to truly embrace Me lovingly in your heart,* <u>you yourselves were witnesses to My incarnation</u>*, you all were so seized by the spirit of love, that also your innermost heart-life tuned in to the cheering song of My great angelic flock.*

10. Yes, all of you were witnesses of My descending into this dark continent and the great and mighty feelings that filled your whole being at that very time remained with you; but each one of you had to wait in the following time until the time of reincarnation, as well as the decisive time approached for each one to start the spiritual work on himself, which then enable you to be active in My vineyard.

11. Yes, every one of you is a called worker who - through his love showing for Me at that time - has set the time for himself to work silently for Me and for his neighbour from that time on, in the love given by Me to him.

12. Every one of you knows exactly My desire that is placed in him and will recognize the same even more clearly when he simply follows the love that he carries in him after the desire that becomes recognizable in the depth of his heart.

13. But this desire for love is a quiet, peaceful conduct in all living conditions and a firm trust in Me, because the love dwelling in you is a part of My ego. And this love, as a spark of My Spirit, is what draws you to Me, that is why you all should and must let yourselves be guided in the desire for spiritual good only through Me Myself in you; even when it sometimes seems - what very often happens - as if you are on the wrong track, then you are not to despair. Then also look up confidently to Me, and soon every true seeker will clearly recognize that he is going [in the] right [direction].

14. In every person's heart there are inclinations to be found that lead to different ways of life and yet it is not difficult to remain in the actual right and safest way because this is the only true way by which one can rely more - or so to speak - only on Me, your Father Jesus. But it is very easy to also acquire spiritual power in spiritual endeavour; but never should and may a child who truly belongs to Me, forget that everything belongs to Me alone, and in My love I only distribute discreet parts [of what] belongs to Me, to the ones who are Mine.

15. He who is conscious of this, will increase in love - the pound given to him will increase also without him having the faintest idea of it, so that when the time of the release comes, he himself does not know how this came to be; because living in love is a quiet, very much inconspicuous progress, but at the same time, such a far-reaching work, that no-one of you can even have the slightest concept of it; but [only] the one to whom I reveal it to, he has a slight idea of what it is like; but as it is, it is good for all of you. Believe firmly and confidently in My assistance, and you will surely walk the way of the Light.

16. I, your Father Jesus, tell you: be confident, because for each one of you the time has arrived where you stand on the ground you longed for at My Incarnation. No-one should complain about this or that, because many things are still hidden from all of you, and are yet to be given to you. I say again, live in the silently, eternally progressing love which I have given you Myself, to be able to give you even greater things. Amen.

185. Easter Greeting, Reincarnation, return of Christ

1890, 6 April,, Kronstadt (in Siebenbürgen). Father Jesus, through Franz Hedwig, clears up the great grace of humans being called children of God, whom He has delivered from the curse of judgement. Discusses the great amazement of the high spirits when they learned that Jehovah, the Creator of the world, became a man and a child and their amazement at His birth, as well as many now reincarnated people who were in the spirit also at the manger of Jesus. They promised at that time to be faith-fighters at the return of Christ, hence their reincarnation and practice in the spiritual.

1. My dear children! Thus I greet you anew on an Easter day with My old greeting as "My dear children" and yet you do not comprehend what is said in these few words in full depth.

2. The angelic brothers indeed understand what lies hidden in these words; for they tremble with delight and praise you overjoyed, even blessed, that such unbelievably great grace has befallen you - that I, the eternal God and Creator of the universe - what I am to many hundreds of thousands of purer spirits than you -are still unapproachable [to them] for still long times, am as close to you as a Father, since you recognize Me in Jesus and only communicate with Me through Jesus.

3. You find it quite natural that it is so, because you are not used to it differently, however you cannot understand it because it goes far beyond your earthly senses; only with the senses of the spirit you can understand it (or at least guess it).

4. Because I am humility, I humiliated Myself to lead back those who fell through arrogance and became a man like you on your tiny earth [which is] loaded with the curse of judgement, which is not so hard to understand, but [you] still do not understand it at all in its full meaning. The angels who are in holiness, whose garments are as white as snow, who once anticipated it when they heard the news, "The Creator of the worlds became a man, and a little child on your poor earth".

5. And because they suspected what it means - the Creator becomes man and is even born through a woman as a little child on earth - since sin came into the world through the first woman, whom the Lord created, and therefore her first-born was not a child of God, but a murderer of his brother, and because they suspected what it means - the holy Creator, Jehovah, the Lord of all heavenly hosts, became man, therefore a little child on earth, - so they thought it impossible when they heard of the incomprehensible counsel of God. That is why they were also astonished witnesses at My birth and you also were, as My grace has recently announced to you.

6. Awake and consider what is in these words. At that time, when you were allowed to be at My

manger in the spirit, you heard the news full of wondering devotion, thanksgiving and praying that I would establish Myself a school of God's children on earth, and now, when by My Grace, on your fervent requests and supplications, through reincarnation, you have now entered this school yourselves, you do not wake up - and do not recognize where you are from and who you are! —

7. *You once wanted to be God's fighters in the last decisive battle with the world. I was touched by your love and now I clothed you in the armour of the flesh and gave you the time to practice it. I Myself taught you to wield the weapons*. I showed you the enemy in your own body, I helped you bear the defeats, and I rejoiced with you when you have won a victory.

8. Now, as General, I call the fighters together, the trumpet calls are for the world, as well as for you. "Unite yourselves as brothers" I have called [out to] you, and I Myself unified you in spirit, but your hearts are not united.

9. Since I greeted you as children on Easter day, stand up united and joined, and leave in the tomb the linen cloths which have separated you so far. They were only the covering of the body, not the bodies themselves, but much less the soul and spirit.

10. So celebrate this Easter as a true resurrection-feast, throw from you the linen cloths of death - which envelop you as they once enveloped My body as long as it lay there frozen in death, but when I rose from the dead, they fell away from Me.

11. Stand up in the Spirit and celebrate Easter as your Feast of Resurrection, so that the old may be dismissed and I may begin a new spiritual life in you.

12. The great battle has begun - who wants to join, throw away the linen cloths which will hinder you in battle, and rise from the grave or from sin, as I once was, a new spiritual man - to walk new ways with Me. I Jehovah, as Jesus, am your Father and Leader in battle; you once stood close to Me in the light and now I stand close to you in your weakness as My weak dear children. The Risen One - and your Leader in battle.

186. Reincarnation and the Souls from Above

1894, September 19, ... Father Jesus explains that the one who wants to achieve the rebirth of the Spirit, must walk the same path of self-denial, humiliation and crucifixion of his flesh that Jesus once walked.

1. My dear child, you have Me in your heart at all times, where I am always present when you need Me and call on Me in prayer daily, yet I will appear to you in My Love through the Word of My Mouth, blessing the day of your external birth into the flesh. —

2. Behold, you often ask yourself in silence: Am I a soul from below or from above? And if the latter is the case, am I not a sun child? Because You, oh Father, have chosen me to serve Your children. Then I say: You are indeed a soul from above, but not a sun-child, but a spirit transferred from a star into another planet-world, which has not yet achieved the childhood of God, and therefore wants to pass the earth-test once, namely in the greatest possible lowliness, which also I Myself once chose; for when I went through the earth test, I became a servant and an attendant of all. I entered the lowest step to achieve the highest from it. I started where everyone who wants to reach the true goal has to start, namely at the bottom. Be he lord or servant, a king or a beggar, he must enter the lowest level, i.e. he must learn to overcome himself, subordinate his own will to the will of a higher, more powerful One, and renounce what his own heart - the unbroken will - strives for!

3. Whoever tries to avoid the way of self-denial, humiliation, even crucifixion of his own flesh, he will not reach the true childhood of God in all eternity, and whether it would be granted him to try his art for the hundredth time on this earth to reach his goal on another way than the one I have shown you, he will still have to decide in the end to finally go to that which he hated before, where you all started out from.

4. Do you now understand, My child, why you are chosen to serve? - otherwise you could not become My child! You are at the bottom of your heart inclined to rule and command, that is why you should learn to defeat your own heart and learn to obey by serving.

5. I put everyone - who completely surrenders himself to Me and has only one wish, to be once happy as My child - into such circumstances, that he reaches the goal.

6. Therefore rejoice, all of you; for to belong to Me is worth more than all the treasures of this world. Give yourselves with joy to your sometimes hard fate, to acquire bliss, to conquer heaven, and this is worth the effort and the sweat. All this shall only give you a certain hope of eternal life; and it shall show you, My child, that you walk with Me the way to life and that I give you power and strength to enter into the glory of your Father. Your faithful Father blesses you with this today. Amen!

187. Father's Word about the Birthday of an Incarnate

1894, June 10th, F...ch. Father Jesus describes through Ida Kg. on her name's day, the way of the incarnation to finally become a child of the Father, when the time of the spiritual completion has begun.

1. My child, behold, the Spirit of the Lord is upon you, therefore remain in deep silence so that you may feel the power of His Spirit and hear the Word of His Love and Grace which resounds in you for salvation and blessing for all who love Me with a childlike heart and keep My Word as the Word of life. In these I will show Myself mighty and bless them abundantly for ever; yes I will that streams of living water will pour out upon them through you, and will bless their seed and multiply it, just as I blessed Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and multiply them like the sand of the sea. I am still the same God, the same Father, who spoke to the arch-fathers, the same Spirit Who now speaks to you and leads you like the children of Israel into the promised land, into the land where milk and honey flow. You, My beloved child, understand Me well and know why I am showing Me to you as the God of the Old Covenant; because you know Me throughout and read My Word with your heart, you see the depths of My Spirit and penetrate to the bottom.

Oh child read on in this sense
And put My holy word in your heart;
My new word stands on the old ground
And just wants to renew the old covenant of love.
The dead shall rise to life
And to go towards perfection more and more.
That is why also My word does not bring you new things,
I only want to lead you to the eternal light;
Guide you to the purest source of heaven,
Where the water of life brightly flows in.
I will lead you there today.
And be with you on the day of joy,
Where you give yourself again to Me
and love Me with a love,
which gives Me inner delight
and free you from all suffering.

Oh look, nothing new I bring you,
Only My Love I Show You
In ever brighter light,
Until you see My Face.
Oh My child, rejoice and sing
a song to the Lord, thy heart bring to Him
and all that's inside,
He accepts you at any time.
Oh come, My child, and give yourself to Me,
For look, My heart longs for you;
It can't and won't let you,
Therefore let Me embrace you intimately,
And ignite you with new love,
Oh child, My child, let Me find you!
Look, so the Lord speaks to you
The same words that you have said to Me
From the bottom of your heart.
In many a silent hour.
I listen to your words
and was enchanted, as now you are,
Mine listen to drunk on love,
all lost in his father's love,
your heart is lovingly leaning towards Me
and says, "O Lord thy child is here,
You have taken me out of the undulating sea,
drew me by the power of Your love,
You saved me wonderfully;
that's why now and forever.
Only for You, my Lord, my God, do I still live
and strive for pure love,
the love that forgets itself,
and work only for others,
for Jesus' sake, carries everything,
and not for the world, nor for heaven."
These are the true signs of love.
My child, to reach it,
did you, not long ago,
on this earth, travel dress.
You have chosen the day for yourself.
And also ordered exactly the deadline,
the one you need to travel to;
before into the flesh you stepped,
everything before you was clear as daylight,
what now seems wonderful to you,
only one thing was still veiled to you -
The father's countenance wonderfully mild.
To acquire the Father's name,
to become His child, His heir.
Be chosen - what a lot,
too glorious, unspeakably big!
No mouth of man and no tongue,
no human heart and no lung.
Can grasp this holy word,
And the angels shall be pale to death,
In awe bend her knees
And bow before My throne,

To praise Me to their God and Creator
In high, pure angelic tunes.
You have sung My child as well
In angelic style with angelic tongues,
As kindled by the holy word,
You announce your wish to me out loud,
You asked me to be there too,
Me as a kid are getting small,
Take all the greatness you want from Me
And let Me walk only with you
Through this dark valley of the earth,
To be yours all of a sudden.
So it was your will to love,
Who will lead you out of the silence
In this earthly life quarrel,
Once in eternity.
The highest delight to enjoy,
Where you will melt in love
And become completely one with Me,
You stay in Me, as I stay in you.
Now you know, child, what that day
Which may mean joy to you;
It's the day to the new life
Gave you for your own good.
So move then, I remain yours,
So you shall rejoice at all times
And praise My holy name,
Your Father now says:
Yes and Amen!

188. God's Temple

1901, 7 May and 10 October, Graz. Father Jesus enlightens us that the human body is the material dwelling of the soul, and also the instrument through which it can materially reveal itself and be active; the image of the soul, but the soul is the dwelling place of the Spirit of God, who [resides] in its spiritual heart and therefore the flesh is a material temple of God, as it is identified by Christ Himself. This body is taken from the soul of Satana or Lucifer, solidified in matter.

189. The Flesh is the Image of the Soul

The body of man is the material dwelling-place of the soul, which dwells in him as the spiritual, eternally surviving man and manifests itself outwardly with him, or manifests itself working, because the flesh-body is the material shell and the tool of the soul, which can operate only through this visible matter; the soul as spirit cannot do this.

191: The Origin of Material Creation

The whole creation of the universe consists of the soul of the once fallen giant spirit Lucifer Satana, transformed and solidified into matter, and therefore also the earth. (*Initial theory* ChtS. 70)

193. Man as the Prodigal Son Satan

1. Thus people are in soul and body the soul of Satan revived by the Spirit of God. But therefore through the purification of the soul qualities, the soul of Satan returning to God in atoms.

2. For man himself is the "Lost Son" Satana-Lucifer, mentioned in the Gospel; for through man, who has ennobled, spiritualized and deified his soul qualities and love-desires, the soul of Satan returns to God in atoms. (Thorough clarification of the fall of Satan and the creation of the world in ChtS. No. 23 to read)

194. Man as the Temple of God

1. I, Jesus as Divine wisdom, called My body a temple of God by saying: Destroy this temple and I will rebuild it in three days. (John 2:19) And indeed the Jews destroyed him by the death on the cross, but on the third day,the Divinity of Christ entered the dead body - healed, enlivened and transformed it into spirit, so that from then on, it was only visible when I, Christ, opened the spiritual soul-eyes of the apostles and disciples. (Luke 24)

2. Just as I, Christ, carried a fleshly body through My incarnation and described it as the temple of God, so it is also the case with your body, as Paul writes in the first letter to the Corinthians:

3. Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and the Spirit of God dwells in you.(1 Cor 3:16)

4. If any man corrupt the temple of God (spiritually or physically), God will corrupt him; for the temple of God is holy, and this is you. (1 Cor 6:19) Paul expresses himself in more detail in chapter 6, saying:

5. Yes, do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, which dwells in you, whom you have from God, and therefore you are not the masters of your body? But Paul says particularly thoroughly in the second letter to the Corinthians:

6. You are a temple of the living God (2 Cor 6:16). - And in his letter to the Romans, Paul affirms:

7. That the same Spirit of God who raised Christ from the dead, may live in you. (Rom 8:11)

8. These cited evidences are so clearly expressed, that no doubt about God's existence can prevail in you anymore:

9. The Spirit that manifests itself in your hearts as conscience, is like the breath that I blew in Adam and thereby animated him, and this is the living Holy Spirit of Divine Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence [and is] Me.

10. My Divine Spirit who dwells in this living temple is no other Spirit than the Creator of the universe, the living God Jesus Christ, as My Paul says (Gal 2:20) - I live - but no, not I, but Christ lives in me.

Paul thus said that he had subordinated his 'I' to the wisdom under which 'I' am God's subordinate to love in humility, whereby man thinks, desires, speaks and does only that which is Divine and corresponds to love.

11. For love is the fulfillment of the law of God (Rom 13:10) and he who has love, is so rich that he can buy the whole kingdom of heaven, because the highest heaven is My seat and I am God's pure love (1 John 4:8,16) and therefore is My Divine truth: If you had sins like the sand of the sea or the grass of the earth and you have love for God and for every human being because he is God's child, all sins will be forgiven you. (ChtS. 10,24; Luke 7:47)

12. The temple of God refers to the material flesh-body, which is built up in the image of the spiritual body of the soul.

13. The material temple of God is cleansed by the sanctification of the soul with Divine virtues and raised to be a worthy temple of My dwelling place of love, by sanctifying this body by the [process of] sanctification, i.e. heart-cleansing, of the soul itself, because the soul no longer uses it as a sinful instrument of its desires and covetousness.

THE SOUL AS THE SACRIFICIAL HIGH PRIEST

195. The Creation of the Soul

1903, 17 December, Graz. Father Jesus declares that the soul is a product of Divine Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence, and is taken from the refined spirits of earthly matter as the consolidated soul of Satana.

1. Where does the soul come from, who educates it and gives it intelligence? The answer is:

2. The soul of man is an outflow of the Divine rays of light from the Divine flame of love, which is spiritually called 'Father' in God. Only these rays of light are now not taken directly from God, but from the refined, spiritual soul of Satana, which is solidified in matter; therefore the human soul is originally not taken from the pure Divine rays of light, like the soul of Jesus, which was pure wisdom from God (ChtS. 37, chapter III), but comes from impure rays of light. These rays of light were once the Divine wisdom which in the spirit of light (Lucifer), Satana, illuminated the infinity of space spiritually with the brightest electric light, but were considerably darkened in the fall of Lucifer-Satana. From these dimly shining rays of light of the fine spiritual of matter, the Spirit of God Himself creates according to His will and His Imagination, after many transformations of the body-shape caused by the souls' migration through the stone-, Mineral-, plant- and animal- kingdoms, the body-form of the human soul, being the last [form]; and gives the intelligence to the soul, that it can make use of the material body exactly according to its spiritual form, formed from the blood in the mother's womb, which it then materially and visibly uses as its home and tool.

196. Man as God and Satan in one Person

1902, October 5th, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus about how man is composed; illuminates him in his nature; and teaches him how to live in order to become a child of God; illumination of the contradictions which represent the Divine and Satanic in his life and actions.

1. Dear children, man in his body unites his God with the soul of Satana.

2. It is true: as God, I am the all-encompassing air, highly spiritually seen as a sea of flames, an indescribable, highly spiritual pleasure, far surpassing all human imagination of love!

3. No-one can enjoy this highly spiritual delight in the flesh, except in the first rebirth, much higher in the second rebirth; but only psychologically, not carnally, because the flesh would fall into fatal powerlessness with such highly spiritual pleasure. Thus, at times, when the body is asleep, a reborn man can achieve this high pleasure.

4. It is self-evident that I, as the all-encompassing air, cannot be represented entirely in one person; but this is not necessary either, for, first, the same love, wisdom, omnipotence, magnetism, electricity and divinity are represented in the whole air than in the small parts of it;Second, the human spirit can express itself like a deity; third, it is connected and one with the air of the universe, so it is powerful and mighty like the whole Deity, because it is not separated, but connected with the Deity of the universe.

5. The Godhead in man represents everything that is spiritual in man and cannot be seen and touched with eyes and hands - the mind, reason, thoughts, desires, language, feeling, taste, smell, hearing, will, and everything that can and will be put together with these, thus the whole life and movement, thinking and acting.

6. Satan on and in man, is the spiritual soul-body, the material flesh-body and its flesh-spirit. The soul can, through My will, see with its spiritual eyes through its soul-body and feel with its soul-hands, as you can see your flesh-body with your flesh-eyes and grasp and feel the flesh-body with your flesh-hands - therefore, in deep dreams, you do not distinguish between your soul-body and the flesh-body; because in dreams, only the soul-body lives and acts, while in this time the flesh-body rests and receives its impressions only through the nerve-spirit. The nerve-spirit remains in the body during the time when the soul moves and walks and acts outside the body. During this time, man does not dream, so he knows nothing about where the soul is and what it does.

7. The soul cannot see Me as its Spirit without My will and when I let Myself be seen in it, then it sees Me like a fiery cloud of light. But I am the One Who animates the soul - and through it, the flesh-body and gives it all spiritual senses and powers, because without Me, it and the body are without life and feeling of their own.

8. I as Divine human Spirit, present everything that is felt in man, spiritually Divine - for I am God, therefore everything that is divine in man, therefore God's flame of love.

9. My opposite pole in man is Satana's self-polluted soul in its self-love, of which the soul-body and the flesh-body of man consist.

10. Everything that I have created in man is good and pure, if it is used altruistically in the service of the love of God and neighbour; but if one uses the freedom of the Spirit in self-love and selfishness, then all spiritual good can be replaced with worldly wisdom and selfishness, and then it becomes sin, and man becomes Satan in himself. I then withdraw and man becomes dark, arrogant, full of self-love and selfish and only knows himself and commits all imaginable sins and crimes through this selfishness, because he becomes Godless and daring. See, this is man.

11. By placing your spiritual Father's virtues in unselfish service and doing everything out of love for God and neighbour, the most wicked man can again appear as God's child and eradicate all the evil done.

12. As I said, man consists of spirit, soul and body. The Spirit is I - God, Jesus Myself; - but the soul and the body together with its flesh-spirit, is the living Satan himself in miniature - because both are taken from the solidified soul of Satana.

13. This contradiction in man is the root of the rebellion against the will of God and the constant opposing activity against My will.

14. I am pure love, the spiritually uncultivated human [is the] the hatred, because of self-love; - I am humility, the human, the pride; I, the patience or long-suffering, the human, the impatience and anger; - I, the activity of love and mercy, the human, the lack of love, and heartlessness; - I, the loving forgiveness; - the human, brooding revenge and retaliation; - I, the crystal-clear chastisement, the human, in the mud of the lust of the fully fallen dirt, - I, the generosity, the human the greed; - I, the selflessness, the human, the selfishness; I wish and do all good things, man is jealous and only loves himself; I am the Servant and the Benefactor for all people, man lets himself be served and oppresses, deceives, cheats and exploits his brother wherever and however he can.

15. So you see in man - as long as he is not guided through My Divine culture into the true and spiritual - whether he is educated or uneducated, pure Satan, according to his way of acting. Yes, he is the representative of Satan in the world according to his passions; he alone is indeed the resurrected and true Satan according to soul and body, since he is called to redeem the world-soul of Satan in atoms and to bring it back to the glory of God; thus to make Satan a child of God and at last a god himself, under the rule of the Father-God.

16. Since you now have from the contradictions that always exist in you against the noble, the sublime and the Divine, have unwillingness against what is required of love, and where it is the truly holy Divine to unfold in you, you in wild selfishness, arrogance and revenge rebel against it and want to express your Satanic nature, the wild reins of self-righteousness, oppression and annihilation against the neighbour, say - doesn't that living Satan show up in your rage-breathing mind?! And what am I doing as Spirit of love against you, you spirits of hellish revenge? I do nothing but maintain loving patience and tolerance, which will rather suffer everything itself, than pay you back the well-deserved hellish reward.

17. Dear children, as bearer of My Spirit of Love in your heart, Who never agrees with your evil deeds and always through conscience expresses Himself against them and opposes them when you are up to doing evil, know who you are! Bend your Satanic in you and by My virtues, transform it into the Divine-spiritual, so that you may become children of Divine Love out of Satanic children!

18. You are to gather together all your soul-power in order to develop out of yourselves, since you are Satan in miniature yourselves - a spiritual Divine being - and to become gods yourselves as children of God, therefore from the wisdom of Satan, into the love which represents God in you.

197. Man as a god emerging from Satan

1903, March 2, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus, according to which man is a spirit born of Satan's soul, in which God dwells, who guides him to the formation of the Divine virtues in himself. The differences between God and man and between humans. Means for the development of man as Satan into a deity.

1. Human life in its nature is a struggle between God and Satan; for in the heart of man dwells the living Holy Spirit of God in His Trinity: love, wisdom and omnipotence - and this Spirit of God is called Jesus Christ, Jehovah Zebaoth.

2. If you now think about this holy name, you will find in it that in man, the Almighty God, Creator of heaven and earth, is represented as Father, Son and Holy Spirit in full power and glory; for as Father I have created you, as Son, I redeemed you from original sin and as Holy Spirit, I am the Regent of the world, in whose hands lie the strings of the destinies of all infinity; - but as God, I am your Judge and [also] of all the creatures of the world.

3. There dwells in you, oh man the Most Holy, the Most Mighty, the Most Glorious, the Most Loving and the Infinite all-Wisdom of God, therefore you are a miracle in creation, because you draw - as infinite in thought - from the grace of God, from the fount of Divine wisdom and therefore you continually create and invent something new.

4. Your sphere of activity is inexhaustible because I, God, am your Teacher, allowing you to receive from My infinite Wisdom the small gifts of Grace of My Fatherly love for [My] children.

5. But if you would live with Me united in love, humility, patience, purity, selflessness and compassionate mercy, then you - to whom I speak from My Love as Father Jesus - would be My majestic child and thus a god in Me, your Father Jesus, and at the same time, would be an inhabitant of the creation of the world, for where then your thoughts would dwell, you could be there spiritually - personally also with your eyes, ears, feelings and senses.

6. But as an inhabitant of the earth, you would create the world for yourself as gloriously as you need it, to dwell and live in paradisiacal conditions. - There would never be any other weather than what you would create for yourself; because as a child of God, you are in the absolute state of god and creator of your circumstances and states, and no counter-power could restrict, limit or even oppose you and destroy your godly will, because in your innermost self you are god, creator and ruler from eternity in the Spirit of Jesus Christ Jehovah Zebaoth yourself.

7. But since your soul and your flesh-body come from the soul of Satan's fallen spirit, which is solidified in matter, you are therefore a representative of Satan in miniature and therefore your stubbornness against the will of God, Who, through your conscience, continues and persists to encourage you to do good and warns you against evil.

8. According to your soul- and flesh-body - because both originate from the fine and gross spiritual of fallen Satan - you are the soul-body of Satan himself, revived in atoms, whose immeasurably great soul-body consists of all materially visible creation. All men consist of this body, therefore all are equal as long as they do not bow to the will of God.

9. Because you are a part of Satan himself and have the task in the world to purify yourself as the animated soul of Satan and to bring you back to its original glory and bliss in God, there is in you such a great and stubborn (unruly) counter-spirit against the fulfillment of the Divine will, because you are Satan as the counter-pole of God. Therefore and hence the inclination and the desire to do just that which God does not want and therefore the constant struggle between your understanding of the world and your conscience, because *there are only two spans' distance between hell in your understanding of the world and heaven in your heart*.

10. In your brain filled with the wisdom of the world, Satan has all his objections against what God in your heart wants and speaks through your conscience. Because God dwells in the heart, heaven is in the human heart, where Love is enthroned with all its world-encompassing virtues of Divinity; and so on the other hand the brain is the hell in man, in which the selfish wisdom of the mind lives and instills the following thoughts in man, if he does not yet live spiritually:

- Eating in itself makes you fat
- Money is power in the world
- justice must be served for my honour to triumph!
- I am my own neighbour, so first me, then neighbour.

11. For it are these four vices that form Satan in man, since by these he is made worldly - ruthless against his neighbours, as he walks over the corpses to the throne of his ego - and sees neither the misery of his fellow citizens, nor has a feeling for the neighbour, except when he hopes to earn something from him, to fleece and to maintain his own intellect-ego.

12. Man is a raging animal if his soul does not stand in the light of Divine refinement through spiritual formation, otherwise he only sees, hears, feels and regards himself as a human, while he considers his neighbours merely to be the sustainers of his carefree existence in the world - which one is entitled to exploit, be it through work, trade or otherwise. - But if such a hero of understanding is a denier of God and of survival after death, then he also approves the works of the spiritual darkness, if only they bring him money, honour and power over those oppressed by him.

13. Now we come to the question and answer: What should man be like as the child of a loving heavenly Father of all men, so that he then meets the requirements of Divine love?

14. Man is called to train in himself the Divine virtues according to the example of his spiritual Father Jesus, through which the Son of God, Jesus, was a bearer of the eternal Father-God, as the prophet Isaiah speaks about it spiritually in chapter 9 and verse 5 by saying: Jesus Christ, as a newborn child, is according to the Spirit the eternal God the Father Himself, therefore the newborn child is an incarnation or the becoming human of God; - Isaiah also says in prophetic words: "This child is the Creator of the world, therefore wonderful in His works of creation of Divine love and wisdom, which no one can imitate Him;- This child Jesus is the counsel because [He is] the wisdom of the Father-God, according to His soul, which is formed from the Divine Wisdom and in spiritual correspondence is called Son of God, because the Divine Wisdom was born from the Divine Love; - he is also called the power of the eternal God the Father, therefore the Holy Spirit full of power, might and glory in God; - He is the Hero of the Divine virtues, qualities and merits, therefore the bearer of the Godhead Himself; - and finally He is the spiritual Prince of the kingdom of peace in the human heart and at the same time a spiritual representative of the eternal spiritual throne of David, because according to the prophet Micah (5:1), He as the ruler of eternity can only be God as this eternal spiritual King, since apart from Jesus Christ - since 'Christ' is called the Divinely anointed King - whose kingdom is not of this sinful world - no other God ever existed, there will be no other God, whether the sinister wisdom of the world may believe or deny this. Because I am Christ the eternal, living and visible God for all who acknowledge and love Me; - but for those who do not like Me and can not acknowledge Me as God, their own faith is also their judge.

15. I, Jesus, as Son of Man, since My flesh-body was made up of human blood, shone before you with a worldwide love according to which one loves God more than anything else and neighbour as oneself, following the example of the Good Samaritan in the Gospel; but in serious need, ten times more than himself - because God already makes special demands on man there and therefore in serious cases, all barriers of self-love have to disappear; My life was also characterized by great patience with the weaknesses and vices of men; I was humility itself, though in Myself the Most High and Most Holy; - the purity of My Life testifies to you My Divine transfiguration on Mount Tabor; but never the sinister wisdom of the world, which rewrites novels of lies about Me from its spiritual eclipse; the Divine Mercy of My Heart are not only My miraculous healings, but especially My sacrificial death on Golgotha for My children, to whom I brought back the childhood [which was]

forfeited by Adam and Eve, which they lost by sinning together in the Spirit of Adam and Eve against the unapproachable holiness in God, which gave the commandment of chastity; furthermore My love for Peace, since I am the Prince of Peace, therefore My constant greeting: *Peace be with you*; and so also when I entered among My disciples after the Resurrection, opened the spiritual vision to them so that they could see Me in My spiritualized flesh and said to them: *Peace be with you! Do not be afraid, it is I, Jesus*; - and finally My selflessness, because I, who possess all the treasures of the world, let Myself be born in the poorest states of the world, and then lived like the poor and preached nothing but love for God and the works of charity, which I Myself diligently practiced.

16. And behold My dear children, these are My Divine virtues in Jesus out of which I call you: Be perfect as your Father Jesus in heaven is perfect, then you will become gods, because your Father is God and thus a royal priesthood of God, a sanctified people, exalting and praising the glory and holiness of God and dwelling and living in the bosom of God's love, Amen!

198 The Soul as the Eternal High Priest of God

1902, 7 February, Graz. Father Jesus teaches: "The soul of man is the spiritual and the only true man in the human body, who is the eternal high priest in this body, as the living temple of God, and is therefore the daily sacrificial priest of his vices and inclinations, which he offers up to God through penance, and thus purifies and sanctifies himself as a soul in its spiritual and material body, to be a worthy temple of God.

1. Since you know that I Myself dwell in you, then you also know that your soul is the eternal high priest of My Divine holiness in its material body; that I am in your body as in a living and unique temple of God, and that the soul may be strengthened through the continued renunciation of the joys of the world and denial of itself, of its merits and knowledge, and subordination of their will under My will; the same high priest who is going on and on through this penitential life, has to sacrifice to Me, your God, until it has attained the degree of perfection by the spiritual rebirth of the baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit, like the apostles once received at Pentecost.

2. As every father materially begets his children in his image, so I create My children spiritually in My Divine image. - But men are then corrupted by the education of the world and walk in the world with the serpent of arrogance and selfishness.

3. Now we come to the task which the soul of man has to fulfill if he wants to reach its goal quickly and become happy; for it is every man's struggle to reach his goal quite soon, because waiting too long makes one tired, lukewarm, lazy and indifferent.

4. Admittedly the task is a great one, which you have to consider, to live by it and to act accordingly, but the price is so unspeakably high that if men would know what awaits them, if they would like to fulfill My will then they would find no burden too heavy and no burden too great. Yes, nothing would discourage them from going towards this goal with all their energy and an iron will and perseverance.

5. But the task that I require of you is contained in the teachings given to you in My books; for...

6. ...as a stranger on earth you shall feel yourself a servant of all according to God's will, then you will become a royal priest of Jesus, this is now your only wish in life on earth.

199. The Penance of Life

1904, January 13, Graz. Father Jesus declares that the repentance of life consists in the fulfillment of His commandments and teachings, in keeping watch and prayer, and in active love for God and neighbour, which elevates one to the inheritance of the heavenly kingdom.

1. Every person loves what makes him happy, therefore he strives to possess the beloved and longingly desired. To achieve this, he must spare no effort and trouble until he has reached his goal, so it is also with the progress in spiritual life, that is why man is to pursue penance in all desperation to do justice to the demands of spiritual life.

2. These requirements are laid down precisely in this book, they are the teachings which man is to be regarded as Divine commandments, so that he will achieve his goal of life.

3. Watch and pray! For 'the Spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak', I told My disciples in the Garden of Gethsemane and I say the same to you, for this [reason] the Prayer Book has been published; there you see My seven virtues as Son of Man, there you have beautiful teachings and prayers, there you seek to use and fulfill them according to My desire.

4. Without fulfilling the Ten Commandments and My Teachings, without praying and without living according to My virtues, I am neither the Way nor the Truth nor life to you; because all this I am only to those who hear My words, accept them and fulfill them, because My sheep know Me in My voice; but who only twist My words according to his wisdom of understanding and criticizes them, he does not belong among My sheep when he also thinks his opinion to be in the right.

5. Do My commandments in childlike love, humility, reverence and devotion and this is the penance of life I demand of you. Do not unnecessarily [practice] fasting and chastisement, but only fulfil what I am telling and prescribing to you: Lead a life of a child of God, a life full of love, a life according to My virtues, teachings and commandments, and you have done what makes you high spirits - children of My love. This is the aim and purpose why I have put you on the world and would you fulfill this penance in love for Me in works of love for the neighbour, then you will become heirs of My heavenly kingdoms.

6. My commandments and teachings are based on the repentance of the soul, that is, on fleeing from such sins that only desire worldly pleasures; but precisely in this point, My truth is fulfilled: Who wants to find his soul in worldly dallying, will lose it for heaven and who loses his soul for the world for My sake, will find it transfigured in heaven. (Matt 10:39)

200. The Confession of Christ; Childhood and Seeing God

1900, 15 May, Graz. He who does not confess Christ before men, Christ will not confess him before His Father either, and therefore he will not come to the childhood and to see God.

1. Because of the sin of Adam's proud disobedience to God, neither he nor his descendants could come to God, but especially because of the fact that God was impersonal, therefore invisible.

2. Through the incarnation in Christ, I have created a human body for Myself, in this I now dwell and therefore one can only see Me in the person of Jesus Christ. But whoever does not acknowledge Me Christ (or Messiah) as God, as long as he insists on this erroneous view, can never come to Me,

God, and see Me. For so read the following words of the New Testament, which I spoke to My disciples:

3. *Matthew 10:32-33* - Whoever confesses Me before men, I will also confess him before My Father in heaven; but whoever denies Me before men, I will also deny him before My Father in heaven.

4. *Mark 8:38* - Whoever will be ashamed among this adulterous and sinful generation of Me and My Teaching, the Son of man will also be ashamed of, when He comes into His Father's glory with His angels.

5. *Luke 9:25-26* - What good is it to man if he gains the whole world but loses himself and ruins himself? For he who will be ashamed of Me and My teachings, the Son of Man will also be ashamed of, when he comes in His glory and that of His Father and that of His angels.

201. Innocent Suffering

Year 57, July 26, (New) Babylon (or Baghdad). The apostle Peter wrote the following to the churches in Asia Minor and Asia who have accepted the faith in Jesus, regarding the sufferings that one must innocently endure.

1. My dear brethren, it acquires grace when one suffers adversity and undeserved suffering with a consciousness devoted to God. (1 Peter 2:19)

2. On such an occasion look up to Golgotha on the Saviour of the world, who suffered the horrible suffering and most agonizing death on the cross, and all that like an innocent lamb led to the slaughter for our sins for which we ourselves should have suffered. Therefore, follow in His footsteps and follow His examples of how He lived for you.

3. It is not glory if one has to suffer chastisement for sins committed, but it acquires grace from God if one acts righteously and yet has to suffer.

4. You, as chosen and spreaders of the teaching of Christ, I tell you, it is in your vocation and I bring it with you that as Christ suffered for you and left you the example that one passes through suffering to joy – you should too, following in His footsteps, in all things.

5. Behold, He had committed no sin, no deceit was found in His mouth, or in His teaching, and yet He was blasphemed and He did not answer defending Himself; He was maltreated, but He did not threaten to punish the evildoers, but He remained silent and let Himself be crucified by the unjust judge, so that His children might be freed from the sin of the first covenant (Heb 9:15), and now can live according to the will of Divine righteousness; through His wounds, the sin committed in Adam and Eve was erased for us. (1 Moses /Gen 3:15; Hebr 9:15; Rom 3:25)

6. For by original sin you were separated from your God the Father, like wandering sheep without shepherds; by Jesus' acquittal of sin, you have been led back to the true Shepherd and leader of your souls, Who is your God and Father. (1 Peter 1:19-25 with improved text, as the Father Jesus blessed Me [with].)

202. Through Earthly Sufferings to Heavenly Pleasures

1903, September 5th, Graz. Father Jesus illuminates through various explanations that life on earth is a time of tribulation, and that only through earthly suffering can human beings attain true heavenly joys.

1. Man's highest is the knowledge between right and wrong, good and bad, joy and sorrow, sunshine and rain, winter and summer, in his spiritual life, so that he may grasp all knowledge in its true nature and raise everything to the light of love and of life, to the sun of divinity, which ever and always throws its light of love into his heart, warms him up and strives for true humanity.

2. He who has never felt and tasted suffering, does not know how to appreciate the good, he does not know how to measure the difference between good and evil, so it is good when man, through self-awareness, becomes clever and wise in what he does and don't do, so that he is always inspired to strive for the true, because there is a great difference between the truth and the lie in life, which are ready to lead him upwards or downwards.

3. Without suffering there is no true joy, because without suffering one cannot judge the value of joy. That is why there are so many bitter experiences and acid tests in human life, so that man may know their hostile and destructive power on the mind and wit and therefore flee their attraction if they are being raised and reared by his way of life.

4. Life is the examination school of the human mind, because in life on earth, the human mind must be tested so that it becomes fit for eternal life - man must know evil, in order then to appreciate the good; for otherwise he would not put emphasis on the good, if he did not know the evil, the agonising, the dissatisfaction of the opposite. The knowledge of evil, however, which forms hell in man, enables him to avoid evil and strive for good.

5. If man did not taste the pains of disease, he does not appreciate the pleasantness of health.

6. If man has never lived through misery in life, he does not know how to appreciate prosperity; therefore a rich man who has worked his way up out of poverty is a careful guardian of his wealth, because he knows how bitter it was to work his way up out of poverty and out of misery into prosperity.

7. Man, who always lives in discord and is annoyed every day, appreciates peace and tranquillity like a heaven of happiness on earth, once he has worked his way up from an mediocre man to a happy spirit-man.

8. No-one appreciates joy more than the unfortunate, when suddenly the redemption from his sad fate in the struggle for existence has risen like a sun after a dark night at the horizons of his inner life, which has suddenly illuminated all dark spaces of spiritual darkness for him and lit light and a joyful uproar of life in him.

9. Only through one's own experiences in the great contrasts between light and darkness, joy and suffering, health and illness, happiness and misfortune, harm and benefit, love and hatred, anger and peace, war and peace and hell and heaven, can man correctly distinguish the great contradictions between good and evil and learn to appreciate their great value in the light of truth.

10. Therefore be devoted to your destiny - which I will bestow upon you - that you may learn to know and appreciate the rightness of spiritual life and the wrongness or evilness of earthly-material life; because you are to be trained in everything so that you then are strong on the way of salvation and despite all kinds of obstacles and inconveniences of life, but do not leave the right thing discreditingly and return to matter from which you have laboriously worked your way out. Because life is a strong test of your soul-powers and your resistance against evil, which indeed proves to be delightful for a

short time, but at the end proves to be disastrous for your spiritual life.

11. So you see that all sad and bitter experiences of life only serve to awaken and develop your soul-powers to make you heroes against the temptations of matter, which storm against you again and again; they are Satan in the flesh, who wants to draw you into his area of darkness.

12. If people could see with open spiritual eyes and ears at the inside and outside of their lives, what evil influences and hellish beings sneak and want to sneak up on them and make them servile for their dark purposes, they would feel most unhappy in this hellish confusion of striving to make him a serviceable tool. But man possesses the intelligence, knowledge and power of resistance to fight against the dark forces of hell and to emerge from the struggle as hero and victor, to receive the reward to which eternal life in God, the crown of struggle and victory of earthly life is destined, for all who have courageously fought and victoriously endured.

13. Therefore always remember this enlightenment, which is to be a light for you on the dark ways of the struggle for existence for your divinity, which you have to gain for yourselves to once live with Me as overjoyed beings, as My children and enjoy the life of the heavenly blessings, who are prepared for you as the price of victory, and so that you then know to appreciate the price that is given to you after laborious achievements in the valley of tears, where light and darkness or God and Satan fight for dominion in man; for from there the great world-shattering events among peoples and nations are caused, which conjure up good and evil alternately partly in personal, partly on a larger scale, partly over whole peoples and countries.

14. So you see the struggle that men fight in themselves and among themselves and long for redemption from their unpleasant circumstances. But the victory of the battle always belongs to him who pursues higher purposes, but not to him who only strives for earthly comfort and the satisfaction of his desires. Therefore strive in all situations of life only for one goal, which is the ennoblement, spiritualisation and deification of your ego out of matter, that it unites itself with the ego of My Divinity in you into a light of love, wisdom and omnipotence in the true, noble and Divine and into a being of the Divine light of your being out of Me, your God and Father and will be one with Me in love and truth! Amen!

203. Father's Word about the Theosophy

1902, 10 August, Graz. Father Jesus explains the words Theosophist and Theosophy and various other things which refer to the Christian-theosophical doctrine and should be observed by the Theosophists, so that there are no more errors in the faith.

1. Theosophy is a Greek word and means, literally translated: Wisdom of God.

2. Whoever adheres to Theosophy is called a Theosophist, that is: adherent or confessor of the doctrine of Theosophy or the Divine doctrine. Theosophy, however, is the holy, the unapproachable in God! - So then the name Theosophist is the title of a man who lives according to the teaching, the wisdom born of Divine love, which gave the teaching of Divine love to mankind in Jesus.

3. Because not the reading and not the understanding and knowledge of My teaching brings you further in the spiritual, and also do not entitle you to bear this high honorary name Theosophist when you do not live and act according to the regulation, but the only fulfillment of the Divine law of love, is the entitlement to bear the name Theosophist, because a Theosophist should not only be a connoisseur of the doctrine of Theosophy, but he must strive by strict ascension to communicate with God, to let himself be guided by God through the prophetic inner word, to finally receive the baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit from his Father Jesus, as the apostles once did, he is only a full-blown

Theosophist, by assuming the rank of a Theosophist or sage of God, because he draws his wisdom directly from God and proclaims it to men. —

4. Many people use the high title Theosophist, but in order to bear this name with right and honour, one must also strive to fulfil the conditions which the Divine wisdom in Jesus prescribes to you. It is therefore the task of a true Theosophist to live in Jesus according to the teaching of truth and to practice the same in acts of charity.

5. The true Theosophist will pay attention to the earthly only in the sense that he will exchange the earthly for the spiritual by diligently proliferating with the gifts of the earthly and accumulating interest, which consists in mercifully and selflessly participating with the needy and sick and alleviating need and misery wherever he can.

6. He will foster love, humility and tolerance in himself towards all men; he will renounce all pleasures and advantages of the world, which draw him from the spiritual to matter; and he will deprive himself of all vices, passions, desires and cravings, which train man as an inhabitant of hell.

7. Every man should read the teaching of Theosophy, which includes the words of Divine Love, and strive to put it into practice, so that all men may become of one mind and action in life.

8. Therefore read through these teachings and consider whether they correspond to love and wisdom in God and if so - then they are out of truth, or Christ (John 14:6) wrapped in material-spiritual words and you do not need more than that to become happy after your spiritual completion.

9. The followers of Theosophy have the mission to introduce this spiritual life to all human beings and to work by good examples in such a way that all its members walk the way which is marked out in the teaching of Theosophy. For it is a pure religious doctrine, calling people to be educated as children of God. That is why it is called "Theosophy", because it is founded in God, because it flowed from the Divine Wisdom of your Father Christ, and is therefore exalted above all religious teachings of the world, because in it, nothing human is mixed in, where it came directly from the pen of a medium called by God; while other religious teachings have been founded by erroneous and sinful people.

10. Just as there is only one wisdom of God, namely Jesus Christ, so also only he is a theosophist or true Christian who lives, acts and walks exactly according to the divine teaching of Jesus Christ. - The difference between the true Christians and the name-Christians is that the true Christian lives and acts according to Christ's teaching; but the name-Christian only lives and acts according to his egoism or his selfishness.

11. Every Theosophist has to direct his eyes towards himself, and when he is in truth convinced that he walks pure before Me - which conviction has to be confirmed through spiritual gifts - only then he can direct his eyes towards others whether they walk justly before Me and men.

12. The anointing (Exod 40:15; 1 John 2:20,27; John 14:26; Luke 24:49) by the baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit - which I, Jesus, Father-God from eternity (Is 9:5) - gave to My true disciples, happens through those gifts and graces which the gifted one needs to walk justly before Me and to be a light to his brothers, who must learn from him. Because he who draws from Me, draws from truth, and in him is no lie. (1 John 2:27; John 14:6)

13. But only he who is already born again and who possesses the gifts of the Holy Spirit, which are published in the "Holy Trinity", can call himself a Theosophist, because a divine sage must lead a divine life which can be described as sinless. But this is not possible before the attained rebirth of the spirit, because the rebirth of the spirit simply brings the grace for man to walk sinless before Me.

14. Because I am Christ, the Wisdom of God (1 Cor 1:24; - *Holy Trinity*) or Theosophy, it goes without saying that Theosoph means a way of God that lives according to My former way of life. I now ask you sinners: Does it not seem presumptuous to you that you call yourselves Theosophists or Christs?

15. In order for things to fit into its true limits and places, I think that you are to make a difference between Me and you! - Because you can reach neither God the Father nor Christ, therefore do not use titles which do not belong to you and which - as long as you are not born again - are not granted to you by Me.

16. Titles like: Father, Holy Father, Most Reverend, Christ, Messiah, are presumptions against the holiness of God and therefore a great darkness where such is still seriously used. Honour My holy names and do not allow such to be applied or assigned to you, or to give such titles to anyone.

17. I consider this the right time to give this enlightenment to you, so that from now on you know what My will is. It means indeed: You have to follow in My footsteps and follow Me, but I have announced to you in the enlightenment about baptism, which appears in the book *"Christ and the church"*, what is meant under it, and what it means to completely follow in My footsteps, read the enlightenment there; hopefully you will understand that there is only one true Christ and no other.

18. The successes of a purely Theosophical life, as I announced it to you through My commandments and teachings, are special privileges of such a child of My love through the graces and gifts of the baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit, which enable man to ask from Me many things and to receive what is denied to others who still live in sin.

19. But the gifts and graces of the Holy Spirit are the following for the first rebirth:

- The inner word
- The gift of teaching wisdom
- The gift of teaching sciences
- The power-gift of a rock-solid faith
- The power-gift of healing the sick
- The gift of miracles
- The gift of prophecy
- The gift of discernment of spirits
- The gift of interpretation of the Holy Scriptures
- The gift to cast out evil spirits
- The gift of languages
- The gift of the power of the word
- The gift of prayer
- The gift of will-power
- The gift of teaching others
- The gift of eloquence
- The gifts of clairvoyance, clairaudience, perception
- The gift of ineffective poisons
- The gift of spiritual powers
- The gift of virtues
- The mercy and gift of love, joy and delight
- The mercy of patience and inner peace
- The mercy of humility
- and much more, depending on what mercy someone needs.

20. These graces are listed and described in more detail in the book *"The Holy Trinity"*; but they are not distributed in order, but according to My Divine insight. But there are many more gifts that are given to the person after the advanced stage, because everyone gets what he needs or deserves. The one who has these gifts and grace can say with full rights that he is a Theosophist or God-worshipper.

21. Here in this book is laid down mainly the Theosophical doctrine through which you receive the highest rules of life which are now possible, and through which you attain the rebirth of the spirit most

quickly. *"The Prayer Book"*, *"Christian Theosophy"*, "*Christ and Bible"*, *"The Sermons"*, and *Nos. 74 and 75* are the manuals which everyone should have and use as indicated in them.

22. Do not believe that not everything is from Me, your God and Father! That you do not find Me everywhere in it, is the fault of the false prophethood of your churches, of your teachings of different "Christs" who appear here and there and preach and spread their theological and rational teachings. Don't believe them! Because there is only one rabbi, only one teacher (Matt 23:8,10) and he is I, Christ - and My true teaching can only come from there where I dictate it Myself, but not there where everyone according to his opinion makes his way with his Christ-teaching and teaches it to others. Read what I taught in the *Announcements Volume 1*, page 108 about true doctrine, so that you may come out of the labyrinth of the many "Christs"! For it is time already. —

23. Herewith you know My will and so you can direct yourselves towards it to become aware of My blessing.

204. The Theosophical Teaching

1901, May 22nd, Graz. Father Jesus teaches the Theosophists to live and act in such a way that they are justified at all times according to His teachings.

1. Every tree (i.e. man) that does not bear good fruit is cut down (rejected) and thrown into the fire (of judgement); therefore by its fruits (works) you shall know them. (Matt 7:19,20)

2. Not everyone who says to Me: Lord, Lord, (recognizes Me as Christ) will enter the Kingdom of Heaven, but he who does (keeps) the Will (Divine Commandments and Teachings) of My Father who is in the heavens. (Matt 7:21)

3. Anyone who hears My Words and does them (according to their reasoning and following them), I will compare him to a wise man who built his house on a rock; but anyone who hears My Words and does not do them will be compared to a foolish man who built his house on sand. (Matt 7:24,26)

4. I said: “A sower went out to sow, some seeds fell on the hard way, some on rocky places, some under thorns and some on good land. The one who is sown on good land is the one who hears the word and takes it to heart, and afterward bears fruit and is active, the one a hundredfold, the other sixty-fold, the third thirty-fold.” When I said this very important doctrine, I exclaimed and said, "He who has ears, let him hear! (Matt 13:3,8,23)

5. We know that God does not hear sinners, but if anyone worships God and does His will, He hears him. (John 9:31)

6. If you know this, blessed are you if you do it. (John 13:17) He who has My commandments and does them is the one who loves Me, and I will love him, and reveal Myself to him and come to him and dwell with him. He who does not love Me, does not keep My words. (John 14:15,21-24)

7. John writes in the Divine revelation: "I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Write, blessed are the dead who die in the Lord from now on! The Spirit says: "They rest from their labours, their works follow them. (Rev 14:13)

8. A book was opened which is that of life, and the dead were judged after what was written in the book, all according to their works ". (Rev 20:12,13)

9. Behold, I am coming soon, and My reward with Me to give to each one according to his works . (Rev 22:12)

10. The Old Testament has similar explanations in several places: "After their deeds I rewarded them, and after the works of their hands". (Jer 25:14)

11. Jehovah, whose eyes remain open over all the ways of men, You give everyone according to his way of life and works. (Jer 32:19)

12. I will visit the people according to their ways, and I will repay them for their works. (Hosea 4:9)

13. Jehovah does with us according to our way of life, according to our works. (Zach 1:6)

14. That man should keep the divine commandments and teachings, is his life's task - as it is prescribed in the Holy Scriptures: You should observe My Statutes and My Rights; if anyone does the same, he will live through them. (3 Moses [Lev] 18:5)

15. Jehovah spoke: You shall observe all My statutes and all My rights by doing them (Lev 19:37; 20:8; 22:31)

16. Jehovah promises blessings to the Israelites if they keep the commandments; and hardships and tribulations if they would not keep them.(Lev 26:4-46)

17. The children of Israel were commanded to make tassels on the ends of their garments so that they might remember all the commandments of Jehovah and keep them. (Numbers 15:38,39) And these commandments that they should keep the commandments, were often repeated.

18. I, Jesus, taught in various passages of the New Testament that it is mainly the works of charity and mercy that make man blessed, which demonstrate that he who does good is accepted, and he who does evil is rejected; such as in the parables of the workers in the vineyards. (Matt 21:33-44) The fig tree which bore no fruit. (Luke 13:6-35) The talents and treasures which they should multiply. (Matt 25:14-31; Luke 19:13-25) The Samaritan who bound the wounds of the [man] wounded by robbers (Luke 10:30-37) The rich man and poor Lazarus. (Luke 16:19-31) The ten virgins. (Matt 24:1-12)

19. The Christian faith teaches that man is rewarded or punished according to his works, because the judge of life dwells in the Divine commandments, and man obtains judgement over himself by fulfilling the commandments or by omitting them. —

20. It is an eternal truth that only he who does good can be saved; for heaven is the place of good men, while hell is the place of evil men who do evil.

21. This fact must make it clear to everyone that it is based on the truth, because evil and good do not fit together, therefore heaven and hell, or angel and devil do not.

22. I Jesus said to the rich young man: "Sell everything, divide it among the poor and follow Me". And this means in spiritual words: Fulfill the law of love! Love God above all else; but your neighbour as yourself! - And so you rise above the law because you fulfill it, and that ennobles you and makes you the child of God.

23. Be God-fearing out of love for Me and serve Me out of love and reverence and not out of hypocrisy (Sirach 1:34); otherwise you will deceive yourself and only reap wrong things because you have sown lies.

24. Love all people out of love for God, because they are God's children and the Spirit of the Father dwells in them, but not for worldly reasons.

25. Live in such a way that no one will have to complain about your way of life.

26. Beware of evil men and do not associate with them without "must"; for they are possessed and surrounded by evil spirits, of which you yourself can become possessed if you associate much with such men.

27. Beware of evil animals too, for they are filled with malignant fluid that flows out of them and is easily attracted to you. Where there are evil people, there are also evil dogs and animals, because they take in the evil fluid of such possessed people.

28. Flee from all people where you feel that evil spirits are around them. Only where you practice charity, whether through teaching or alms, do not be afraid, because then I will protect you from uninvited guests.

29. Treasure the friendship of noble, spiritually advanced people, because you are ennobled in their society itself; for good spirits gather about good men.

30. Never jest and do not joke with spiritual truths as if they were not to be taken so seriously, but devote all your attention to fulfill them, for they have been made known for that purpose.

31. Always choose for your company those people in whose company you can only win in the spiritual; but those who just like to chat worldly, seek to lead them to the spiritual and to have spiritual conversations with them.

32. Never fail in your duties towards Me and your neighbour! - And immediately convert all your good thoughts and intentions into actions and strive that you let only love prevail in everything as the highest leader of your actions.

33. Always live faithfully to your God, whose dwelling is in your heart, and always remain with Him with your thoughts, so that the world with its charms does not attract you, and spoils you spiritually, which would be your spiritual death.

34. Do not choose worldly men as your friends because they draw you into the circle of their sinful worldliness and morally corrupt you. For if a single rotten apple already infects all healthy ones, how will you alone remain healthy among many rotten ones?

35. Live frugally with what you have, because others have even less and yet have to live. Man usually becomes overconfident when he has much, so be satisfied with little, that you do not suffer harm to your soul.

36. Learn to treat your brothers and sisters, as you want them to treat you. For this is the wisdom of the Wise Men, that they may radiate their wisdom through love and be brothers to their brothers.

37. Never say, "This cannot be done, I must not and cannot do it, but if My name is glorified by it, do it!

38. Do not be ashamed to publicly confess your God in Christ before worldly men; for otherwise also I will not one day acknowledge you before My Father, i.e. before My merciful love.

39. Never ask anyone for their views on religious matters if you think you understand everything right and well, because this is a good way of creating quarrels.

40. But if anyone asks you for your judgement in religious matters, then give him your judgement so calmly and composedly, that it will not cause a stir as if you were saying, 'This is how it is and not different!'

41. Never plague people who do not share your religious views to convince them, through your

extensive discussions, that they are wrong because they are offended rather than converted.

42. So also do not scold the church and religion of those of other faiths; for they do not know that they do not know everything right.

43. Therefore, when you teach anyone, do not scold and condemn in sharp words the religion to which he belonged until now; for he is not to blame for the fact that his church did not teach him correctly, but only calmly and serenely teach My true teaching, saying: 'This is what the Lord and Father Jesus taught'.

44. Do not let any opportunity pass that offers you an advantage of any kind for your salvation, and use it to the best of your knowledge and ability.

45. Never let yourself be longing for external goods, wealth, knowledge and advantages which have no spiritual value and advantage in them.

46. Think very often how much I have suffered for you and how careless you are in fleeing sins.

47. Never refrain from strictly fulfilling My commandments, so that I have no cause for complaint against you.

48. Fulfil all that I have commanded, willingly and humbly.

49. Whoever watches what others do is in danger of falling into unspiritual ways. And whoever imitates others usually remains behind; therefore seek to lead and do not look around what others do.

50. Never doubt My words; for they will come true when the time has come for them.

51. Hold My teachings high and strive to live and act strictly, or to the best of your knowledge and ability.

52. Let everyone see to it that he finally brings back to Me the talents which I have given him, well administered and increased with interest, i.e. changed into My virtues - if you want Me to recognize you as My child.

53. He who only does what is right and pleasing to others, will seek and receive a reward from men.

54. Love only the spiritual, the sublime, which leads you to Me, your God - and avoid everything worldly, like the plague and cholera, because it holds hell in it, which you will then not miss.

55. If anyone wants to seduce you, be sincere and immediately tell him the truth, so that you may be freed from his stunts and temptations.

56. When someone longs for dance music, worldly singing, theatre and other entertainments, which only conceal and spread out world-degradation in themselves, then he is to remember Me and flee from it for My sake and sacrifice his victory to Me.

57. It is not your task to be the servants of those people who want to use you for anti-Christian services and actions. Flee from such hell!

58. If you are another's servant, you are not their slave, so have your heart with Me and your hands with honest work; but avoid dishonest ones!

59. He who follows Me does not walk in darkness, say I, the Father Jesus. But the following of Christ consists in the fulfillment of the ten commandments, in the avoidance of sins and in walking in the seven virtues of Jesus as Son of Man, as both are taught in the *"Christian-theosophical Prayer*

Book".

60. Truly, the *Bible* is a holy book of the doctrine of God; the sayings of the wise men of the world are beautiful and noble; but if you knew all this by heart, all this does not help you without God's love and grace within.

61. The road to hell is paved with many promises and good intentions that are made to God and not fulfilled! (especially in confession).

62. But the way to heaven is paved with the precious stones of fulfilled love for God and neighbour, which is a noble flower garden in the spirit's innermost sanctuary.

63. Insofar as man is able to go out of the world and its tempting charms, so far he can enter into Christ; for the world is the hell of sins, but Christ is heaven or eternal life.

64. But if the Spirit of God dwells in your heart, then you feel the freedom of your soul and body; for God is love, and this wants freedom, therefore Paul said, "Where the Spirit of God is, there is freedom".

65. Try to fulfil your duty towards Me and the neighbour and thereby contribute that the enormous amount of human misery decreases on all sides, that men lovingly help and support each other and thus the kingdom of God on earth: One for all, all for one, to help erect. - One for all, all for one, to help standing up. - In union and brotherhood is power; and the divinity among men is spread through mutual love and humility.

66. An important word: The one who has a better livelihood, or otherwise saved money or even greater fortune than his brothers and sisters, should never exploit the goodness of the less well paid or less wealthy by borrowing books from the poorer to read, but does not buy any himself, but eats well with the money, drinks well, buys his home furnishings, but has no money for the Divine word! - Such action is exploitation of the brothers and sisters, because the rich should support the poor and not the poor the rich, i.e. the better-off.

67. Since this injustice already exists and would unfold even further, therefore the truth must be clearly spoken here; for to live spiritually at the expense of the poor, that is to say: to exploit them, is nowhere prescribed in My teaching.

205. The Life of Lies and Truth

1. Man lives an external life in the world, a life of education in the religious, political, legal and social bad state, therefore a life of lies and deception towards the neighbour, as the prophet David says. (Ps 116:11)

2. The true life of man is the inner spiritual life and this alone goes - after the death of the flesh - with the spirit into the hereafter. Just as he thought in the world for himself, as it is right and reasonable for his view of life, this is then his true life in the spirit-realm, because there is no mask anymore to show himself differently, since one is then in the truth.

3. In the world, people compliment each other, say 'nobility oblige', pretends, are hypocrites, and spittle-hackers in front of bosses and superiors, against whom the heart often foster resentments and broods revenge, because the slavery of the spirit is unbearable to him; the same goes for performance, civility and often lying friendliness towards one's neighbour. But once the mask is gone, you have the living devil, the pronounced Satan before you; because he must show himself and speak as he thinks, because the time of the art of disguise is over, because one looks into the

heart of the other, how he thinks and observes what he speaks.

4. Therefore, in the world, get accustomed to outwardly displaying, speaking, and doing what you think to be true in your hearts, from a refined, pure, and loving heart - then you will be angels of light, and not dark spirits of hell in the hereafter.

206. The Twofold Value of the Good Faith

1. Man can do good in two ways - one is his own way from his own good will, this way is comparable to lesser metals, brass, copper, iron, even lead, if the arrogant self-love is at play, which wants to honour itself for doing good to others and thank-you notes, hand-kisses and newspaper reports, where the name of the generous benefactor to the poor and needy is mentioned, also the sums of the foundations for churches, hospitals, and other charitable institutions, proclaimed to fatherland and fellow citizens.

2. The silver and gold, on the other hand, as pure and noble metals, one can compare to doing good, if man does so out of pure love for God and unselfish love for his neighbour, and sacrifices everything to God's glory, without ever taking consideration of himself; for then it is pleasing to God and will be attributed to man for eternal life.

207. The Three Forms of being Good

1. In human life, goodness is present in three forms. There are people who bow to the law and never try to act against it, this is called civil good, because man acts in everything according to the law - such a man is then an honest citizen of the world, although in dry wisdom form. If he does this out of love for God, Who told men that one should obey everything good (This basic word has eliminated the former censorship - Ps. 116:11), therefore to be obedient to authorities acting according to Divine doctrine - then it is meritorious before God, but if he does it only because he has to bow before the law, then he is double-tongued, because the spirit-man or the soul thinks differently than what the flesh-man does.

2. It is morally good for man to observe religious and state moral laws. If he does this out of political considerations, in order not to contradict the law anywhere and in order to be considered a moral man before the world, then his moral purity is of qualitative value before God, not at all silver nor gold - but if he does it out of love for God and his neighbour and sacrifices it for the glory of God, then it is good and pure and brings in the reward before God.

3. What man does out of pure love for God and unselfish love for his neighbour and lives and acts only out of this love, is spiritually good. Such people become citizens of heaven, fulfilling all religious and state regulations in the spiritual sense, leading to heaven.

208. Man as an Instrument of God

1. Most men think that they think and act out of themselves but that is not so, man does indeed has the ability to think and act as out of his own ego, but he does not know that this ability comes from the Spirit of God, who dwells in every man and who is the principle of life in him.

2. Jesus teaches through the evangelist John that man can do good and evil out of himself; he has

the ability to do this, but that man cannot do anything really good out of himself: *"Man cannot have anything unless it is given him from heaven."* (John 3:27) *Jesus speaks even more clearly through him in another passage: "He who abides in Me and I in him, bears much fruit; for without Me, you can do nothing ..."*. (John 15:5)

3. The appreciation of this verse is that: As long as man does everything out of love for God, the Spirit of Christ works with him and man bears much spiritually good fruit; if man leaves God and works without God, then he works from his own wisdom and this only his own ego knows. The sacrificial altar of such a spirit of wisdom is self-love, and this is Satan in man, because he is honour-seeking, therefore man cannot do anything pleasing to God out of the wisdom of self-love because he denies and rejects God and the Divine effect in man, that is why his works are not good, but worthless.

4. But those who believe in Christ and do good out of Him, will be:

- called children of the light (John 12:36; Luke 16:8)
- So also wedding guests, (Mark 2:19)
- and children of the resurrection (Luke 20:36)
- then, children of God (John 1:12)
- born out of God (John 1:13)
- see God (Matt 5:8)
- the Lord will make residence in them (John 14:23)
- that they have the faith of God. (Mark 11:22)
- that their works are from God. (John 3:21)

5. The value of the confession that Jesus is God the Father from eternity (Is 9:5), is explained in the following verses by John: *"As many have received Jesus, He gave them power to be children of God, to those who believe in His name; who were not born of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God"*. (John 1:12,13)

6. To believe in the name Jesus therefore means to believe in the word which He brought from heaven as good news or gospel, and preached to live and act after it.

7. Those who do what is prescribed in the gospel, will be children of God, because they are not made of blood or "human weakness" according to the inclination of man, not even according to the will of the flesh, which is the 'self' in the will of man, which in itself is evil, still according to the will of the man who has his own in his mind, which in itself is the wrong thing to do, the evil, are born - because those who are in evil and wrong, want to do, think and speak all things out of their own, while the children of God do everything out of God and therefore are born out of God, that means, they are reborn in spirit.

8. It follows from this that what man does according to his wisdom is not good, but only that what is achieved and worked according to the teachings of Jesus, is good.

209. The three Kinds of Charitable Works

1. What man does good for his neighbour, for the sake of good, without having any secondary thoughts about himself, is good [even] if man is also a sinner; for it is bad only when it is done out of self-love, ambition, desire for advantage, arrogance or any other consideration relating to one's own person.

2. [It is] Divine, because it is linked to the reward of eternal life, it is the work of charity, which is done especially out of love for God and sacrificed to God for glory.

3. The difference between these two kinds of work is therefore that the work of intention, because it is good and noble, looks *like silver*; but the work of love for God and offered up to Him for glory, like a *diamond*.

4. But the one who works the works of charity out of selfishness, self-love, honour, arrogance, and for the sake of his own advantages, does not work any works that could expect rewards in the spirit realm, because he sought the advantage for his person here on earth, and found it in one way or another.

210. The Dual Life

1. When a person visits the churches, listens devoutly to the sermons, reads the word from the books of edification, goes to the love-meal, prays daily, even thinks a lot of God and of bliss, and yet [do] evil [which] is sin, for example deception, adultery, hatred, blasphemy, envy, arrogance, and the like, which he considers insignificant, and which he knowingly sins for the sake of advantages in life, then the pious thing he does is of no use to him, because it is deceit, hypocrisy, and presumption against the love and mercy of God, and therefore has no value before God.

2. But if a priest does the opposite of what he teaches and preaches, then he is even worse off than the above-mentioned devout and at the same time a gross sinner, because he is a pretender and a hypocrite; but if he himself does not believe what he teaches others to keep, then on top of that he is also a deceiver of the people. - And when his false life comes into the public eye and becomes a nuisance to others, then his fate is a deeply sad one in the spiritual realm because he only worked as a preacher to earn his bread easily.

211. Serving two Masters

1. I, Jesus, said: No one can serve two masters; for either he will hate one and love the other, or he will cling to one and avoid the other; you cannot serve God and Mammon. (Matt 6:24)

2. This verse says that one cannot serve two masters and among these two masters are spiritually meant God and the universe, which is also called Satan, because one can never be equally represented on two sides; because either one will neglect God or the world; both at the same time is impossible, because Satan is the opposite pole of God and God is the opposite pole of Satan.

212. Pretense and Hypocrisy

1. If man expresses himself externally differently than he is in his heart, he is like the Jewish scribes and Pharisees, to whom I preached the following sermon:

2. "Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites, who resemble whitewashed tombs, which appear externally beautiful, but are full of dead bones and uncleanness within. Likewise you also appear just externally, but inside you are full of hypocrisy and injustice. Woe to you, for you cleanse the exterior of the cup and the bowl, but the interior is full of robbery and immoderation. Blind Pharisee! First clean the inside of the cup and the bowl, so that the outside also may be clean". (Matt 23:25-28)

3. From this it can be seen that pretense and hypocrisy are virtues of hell and also find their place in hell.

213. The Goodness and Truth of Love in Human Beings

1. There are two kinds of people in spiritual life - some are more humble and accept more from the goodness of love, others are more attached to wisdom, prefer to accept the truth of love; that is, in man there are spirits of love and wisdom, as in the kingdom of spirits, where these divide into children of God or angels of love and into blessed ones, as wisdom-spirits, that is why their bliss also differs.

2. One should diligently work towards love and humility, the virtues of Jesus in general, and towards truth only as much as is necessary in order to walk the path of truth, so that one does not end up with wisdom in the wrong direction, or in hell. For wisdom is good only in so far as it is paired with love, otherwise it is the opposite, or hell. Love and wisdom must never be alone, but always one or united, so that man may live in the truth, which is Christ. (John 14:6)

214. The Love of God

1. I expressed Myself about this and said: "he who has My commandments and does them (that is, he lives and acts according to them and thus fulfills them), it is he who loves Me; but he who does not love Me does not keep My words" (John 14:21,24) and elsewhere: "if you keep My commandments, you remain in My love" (John 15:10)

2. It is a known fact that man can only fulfill the commandments and teachings of God when he loves God above everything, because only great love for God is able to save man from transgressions, but not the prohibition against sin.

215. Faith in Jesus

1. When the Jews asked Jesus at Capernaum, "What should we do to work God's works? And I answered them, saying: “This is the work of God, that ye may believe in Him whom He hath sent.” (John 6:24,28,29)

2. This faith encompasses all the prophecies of the prophets that the Messiah is Jehovah's Incarnation, that Jehovah-Christ is God and Saviour, that Christ is the Divine teacher of the faith, and that the one who believes in Christ, has to believe everything that Christ taught, that it is true and to your salvation of souls, so that you do not simply believe all the teachings of Christ, but to live and act according to them, as I as Jesus Myself taught, (John 14:21,24; 15:10) if you want to attain eternal life, which is Christ. (John 14:6)

216. External and Internal Faith

1. The man who believes the Christian truths, but does not live by them, has faith only in the fleshly

brain, but not in his spirit.

2. When such a mind-believer dies, his faith remains in the flesh-brain, alone in the spirit he has no faith of truth; for if he had had the spiritual faith, he would have lived according to the Divine commandments and teachings. And since he did not have them in the spirit, therefore when he died he was without faith; he only had the worldly or material faith, but not in the spirit, and therefore he could not take it with him into the spirit realm. True faith is therefore only that which manifests itself through the works of love for God and neighbour. But since men who pay homage to sin do not flee from evil and wrongdoing, there is little or no true faith in such people, because true or spiritual faith only manifests itself through love for God and the neighbour, who consists in fleeing from sin and in doing works of love for the neighbour.

217. The Phlegmatic Tolerance

1903, 28 May, Graz. Father Jesus illuminates the attitude of tolerance in matters of faith, where the neighbour runs the risk of heading for hell in his false prophethood.

1. There is a difference between tolerance and tolerance in religious matters, which is not understood correctly by everyone, because people have no right education in the Divine.

2. Man practices charity when he tells his brother the truth of the facts that concern him. Every warning given to one's neighbour when he is in danger, is an act of love. But when this love is particularly concerned with the salvation of his neighbour's soul, it pursues the attainment of the higher purposes by which the neighbour was to be led from a false doctrine to the truth, whereby he is lifted up into the acts of the children of the light of Divine love in the circle of his chosen brethren of the heavenly Jerusalem on earth.

3. Immature knowledge in matters of faith, preaches phlegmatic tolerance or indifferent tolerance towards people of other faiths, and it is right; for as long as one is not pure and certain about the doctrines of faith, whether they are good and genuine, one should not make propaganda for them, because the mere opinion is still no light in the matter; the situation is different with Christian Theosophy; here everyone who for a time is concerned with it, sees that it is the only light from above that shines clearly and brightly, so everyone should be eager to spread this Divine light of faith as much as possible, in order to warn his fellow brothers of the danger of hell or false prophethood and to possibly save them.

4. Here the phlegmatic tolerance would be so little in place as if one would indifferently watch the thief who steals from the poor instead of intervening to chase the thief away and thus protect the poor from misfortune and harm.

5. Everything has its limits, so also the tolerance towards people of other faiths, therefore it has its limits to save what can be saved, but with love and peace, not by wanting to impose by force. This serves as a guideline for you, so that you are not indifferent where you are to be extremely active and make spiritual charity a living act, so that your own inheritance of the goods that are measured for you, is not lost!

218. Mission Instruction Manual

Year 32, October 15.

If someone wants to teach others, it is good to let the people whom one wants to win over to the

truth, empty themselves of their reasons from the bottom up. If they have done this with all their energy, then they no longer have any main power in them, and only then begin to have an attentive ear for the opponent, then also begin to enter into his higher truths, reject their false reasons of their own accord, and you have won them over. (Ev J. Chr.IV. Chap. 165)

219. Religious Fanaticism at Conversion

1901, November 23rd, Graz. Father Jesus declares that no violent conversion is Divine, but infernal, and advises that one should prepare oneself through prayer and ask Him to support and promote with His omnipotence, the work of conversion which is to be carried out through love and patience.

1. It often happens that men who grasp My teaching but do not understand that I only want to have love spread among men and no violent conversion - that they get into a fiery religious zeal and believe to serve Me by making people My children through loveless, violent teachings.

2. Such procedure is neither according to My love, nor My teaching - but without love - and leans towards the camp of My counter-pole. If I wanted to convert men by force, I would be able to change the whole world in a moment, so that it could think and do nothing other than what I want. But I do not want to make animals or machines out of men, therefore be full of love, humility and patience with teaching and conversion and abstain from every excitement or violence! Because I Myself am in people - be not rough and loveless, therefore, against your neighbour, in whom you are face to face with Me. Think about such an occasion: The counteraction and contradiction is because the brother cannot grasp the matter yet.

3. That is why you should pray before you start teaching and converting others, that I support you and bestow the grace to find the right words for the mind and understanding of your neighbour to be taught, by putting them on your tongue, then it will go much better; because without Me, you can accomplish nothing; but with Me, everything.

4. Men are differently inclined and need different treatments and therefore you have to seek out Me as Helper and do not rely on your own knowledge and abilities, so that you will not often fail. But if someone comes to you with adversity or with God-denying wisdoms, leave him standing until he changes his mind; because you're not supposed to put pearls before pigs. So be gentle and pray for them whom you want to convert, so that I may help you.

220. The Goal of Christian Theosophy

1901, November 14th, Graz. Father Jesus discusses the great goal of the doctrine of Christian Theosophy, which is to unite the people of the whole world into one Divine brotherly people.

1. Every human being has the task of living in such a way that he knows at all times where he is going and what he would encounter if he had to die at that moment. That is why he must always be careful to lead a life that is just before God and people.

2. Theosophy is called the doctrine of Divine wisdom, which is Jesus Christ according to His soul, because the Christ-soul was formed directly from Divine wisdom by the omnipotence of God in human form; (*Holy Trinity* chapter 3) because every soul consists of the wisdom of God, but only the soul of Christ was formed directly from the crystalline pure wisdom of God; - but the souls of men consist of that wisdom of God, which Satana once polluted by its lack of love and disobedience against the commandments of God and which now forms the fine spiritual of the soul of Satana in solidified matter. - This is the difference between the soul of Christ and the human soul.

3. Because the soul of Christ was formed from the wisdom of God, it is therefore the personified wisdom of God who stepped into the flesh (John 1:1-14) and taught the doctrine of Divine wisdom or Theosophy; and therefore the doctrine of Theosophy is the origin of Divine truth preached by God Himself (Holy Trinity) in the body of Christ to people. (John 14:10)

4. This teaching encompasses in itself everything that earthly man needs to become happy one day. Any [possibility of] deception is excluded here, because the words are purely from Me, given by the Divine love in the Father, are therefore the only true and genuine religion of God, which makes men children of the heaven of love.

5. **The dignity of a man consists in the fact that he does everything out of love for God and man. This action ennobles man and makes him a higher being among his peers.**

6. Therefore, everyone should strive strictly to fulfill the duties of the Divine teaching, so that he may become a dweller of heaven already here on earth, and may become an example of virtuous change for all - for a true man who has entered into the flesh, who fulfills the regulations which he had once intended to fulfill there, thus attain heaven on earth.

7. Because **silence promotes progress**, so be careful when someone tells you the vices, qualities and passions of your neighbour: Listen to him quietly and silently if you cannot lead him to another conversation or if you cannot leave the speaker. But do not be tempted to participate in the scolding and to help make the garbage bigger; for I the Judge listen to what you say. In the Sermon on the Mount I taught: "Do not judge that you are not judged by God, with the measure you measure others, you will be measured back! Therefore always think what is waiting for you, when you act against My teaching! —

8. You are full of mistakes and sins, and [you] see them not!? Purify yourselves and be humble and lovingly forgiving, then the mistakes of others will not poke you in the eyes! But if you only see the faults in others but not your own, then there is quite a lot of impatience, pride and lack of love in you, and that is a great evil!

9. Keep silent about others who can live without your alignment and always strive to eradicate your mistakes, then you will mature quickly in the spiritual. But when you only see the mistakes of others, criticize them and speak condemningly of them, then your clear insight about yourself darkens and you walk backwards in the spiritual; because silence promotes progress, but talking promotes regression in the spiritual, that is a spiritual rule that you are to memorize well! —

10. The philosophical interpretation of theosophy, that every follower has freedom to believe, to think, to say and to write what he wants or thinks to be good, since there is no dogma in theosophy that one could be the opponent of, *is certainly no theosophy or wisdom of God*, but today's wisdom of the world - according to which one can be a Theosophist whether one is Chinese, pagan, Mohammedan, Jew, Catholic, atheist, Darwinist, or God-denying social democrat. - It is absolutely unthinkable, even completely impossible, that all these conflicting and mutually spiritually and politically opposing beliefs and parties could be united with love, humility and mutual tolerance and acceptance of a faith, combining in these three virtues into a flock under Me, the spiritual Shepherd, called Theosophy of Jesus Christ, without a special ethical flow of their reason.

11. Everyone has the right and the freedom to believe, to think, to say and to write what he wants or thinks is good, because Divine wisdom does not obstruct anybody; but he himself has to taste the consequences if he does not live and act according to the Divine teaching. And no one has the right to hold his neighbour accountable or even to fanatically persecute him.

12. What is offered to the brother through loving instruction from My true teaching, that is good if he accepts it; but every coercion in religious matters - or hostility, slander and contempt for it - is out of hell and leads to hell; for I do not need evil zealots and tyrants in My teaching of love. But nevertheless, only Christian Theosophy is My pure spiritual teaching; all the rest are philosophical belief systems founded by men. —

13. Therefore: Whoever wants to bear the name Theosoph with some rights, must also fulfill the conditions which are attached to this name. I Jesus, as the Divine Wisdom, *Theosophia* in Greek, according to Apostle Paul in the letters to the Corinthians (1:24), shone before you all as the Master of moral virtues.

14. And as such I drew together the 10 Commandments of God into 2 commandments of love and said: "Love God above all things; but your neighbour as yourself, for in it Moses and the prophets are included; with this I wanted to say:

15. If you love God above everything, then you will always think of Him and out of this highly spiritual love, seek not to offend Him with any sin; and if you love your neighbour as yourself, then you will again seek to do to him all that you want him to do to you if you were in need.

16. How else could you say: I love God, if you do not love your neighbour, because as in you - My Spirit of God lives in your neighbour as well - and you see how your deeds are weighed and valued with the golden scale, what you do, or do not do!

17. This teaching is therefore the Divine truth and the light of spiritual life according to the teaching of the Ten Commandments, according to the Sermon on the Mount and according to all teachings that you have from Me your Father-God Jesus, contained in the pure spiritual sense of these teachings.

18. [This teaching] therefore has the task of refuting the wrong interpretation of the doctrine of God and of working and fighting against anti-Christianity through spiritual enlightenment and teachings; for everything that is not according to the doctrine of Christ, is anti-Christian.

19. Therefore you are not to wait for the personal appearance of the Antichrist, for he is contained in the society of all human classes with millions of heads, who do not live and act according to the doctrine of Christ.

20. Christian Theosophy embraces the doctrine which from now on will be taught throughout the world, so that everywhere people will have the same views, the same customs and practices of moral life, originating from God - will have progress and perfection, and by which gradually all differences [will be eradicated] in religion, customs, traditions, religious- and political views, as well as nationality, language, and bodily formation – which makes one nation strictly different from another - for example, the Moors from the Whites and other peoples.

21. This balancing of humanity into a single race is the culmination of the brotherhood of men and nations of the whole earth. Then no one will find anything repulsive, foreign and meaningless like a European the African, Mongol, Asian savage, American Indian and Australian. This is to become the result of the observance of an authentic doctrine of God by the whole world, so that all human beings in every direction, both religious and earthly, may become a fraternal people of God's culture, and thus every difference in the doctrine of God, in language, in clothing, in body and face formation, in tools for work, in education, in the training of craftsmen and in everything that separates peoples from one another, will gradually disappear; because Theosophy is the teaching of the love of God, which will be the only decisive one in the millennial kingdom of the Holy Spirit of Christ on earth and through this, all announced things will be set into action and introduced through Me.

22. Today there are such great differences among the peoples of the earth that a brotherhood of mankind is impracticable for various reasons, therefore My scribe asked Me for these high graces with tears, that I introduce and carry them out, so that love may spread through all the peoples of the earth and embrace them as a Divine people of love and brotherhood through all five parts of the world into one brotherhood of people (as in My heavens), where every difference that separates people from one another on earth according to language, costume, nationality, facial formation, political schooling and religious education, ends.

23. So see dear children, while some of you walk the ways of My love in the wrong direction, My scribe worked on the greatest problems or undeveloped questions, to turn the world into a paradise, and when I your God the Father tell you, you may well believe that everything that will come out of the world in the future, will come out of the requests of his love, which I hear.

24. My teaching of love thus has the task to transform people into spiritual idealists, which makes no differences among people as children of one God - but [create] equality and fraternity, and to ennoble themselves spiritually through love, to unite all the people of the world as brothers and sisters under one eternal Father, because that is their striving and their spiritual final goal, which is what the Divine teaching of Theosophy aspires to - to reunite with Me, your Father.

221. The Fulfillment of the Theosophical Prescriptions

1903, February 5, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus that only by fulfilling the rules of virtue, especially chastity, one has the right to bear the name Theosoph.

1. It is the task of every man who wants to honour My name, that he fulfills the conditions which are prescribed to him. But these lie in the following virtues: love, humility, patience, gentleness, mercy, peacefulness, chastity and sacrificial selflessness, which the Divine Wisdom - after which you as Theosophist bear the name - demands of you, in fact, to keep it, to live and to act according to it.

2. You can never rightly call yourself "Theosophist" if you do not cultivate chastity; for because of the original sin of chastity, I - the Son of God - descended from heaven to the dark earth to erase original sin as victor of Golgotha and to clear for you again the way to the Father, who was barred to you by the original sin, because you, as spirits from the spirit of Adam and Eve, once participated in it.

222. Man and Matter

1901, May 23rd, Graz. The great contradictions between human beings, as the spirit clothed in flesh and the matter hostile to it, as the consolidated soul of Satan.

1. Human life is a struggle between spirit and matter. The spirit strives for the spiritual, matter for the material.

2. Man is torturing himself all his life in order to wrestle as much from matter as possible; only matter does not recognize man as its equal, but it always repels him in one way or another, as if it wanted to say to him: 'Oh man! What are you looking for in me? You are an inhabitant of a spiritual world, therefore take care to win it, and wring as much from it as you need. Because see: I offer you only deception, I apparently offer you prosperity and wealth, but that does not make you entirely happy, for you are afflicted by sorrows, diseases and all sorts of inconveniences, so that you see clearly that the earth is not your true home of happiness, rather you see that everything is only a deception that keeps you in bonds of deception for a while.

3. Therefore do not worry about the earthly, for it is transient, it is only your misfortune, it draws you to matter, which is Satan's solid soul-body. How can you hope for a happiness from Satan that is permanent and truly satisfying? How can you seek your happiness in hell? How can you find your happiness in Satan?

4. Behold oh man! it is all only deception, all deception, all appearances, but nothing really true, which [could] make you happy forever. Therefore do not seek your happiness in matter, [but in] your heaven; for it pushes you mercilessly away, shouting to you, You are spirit and the kingdom of spirits is your homeland, what do you, stranger, seek in me, since I belong to another world, for I myself am a bound slave of a master who lords over me because of my lies and deceit and purifies me from my evil vapour!

5. That is why you, as a dweller of a bright world, are unhappy here - because I cannot give you true happiness, not knowing any myself! Do not collect and gather together my earthly treasures, for they are mine and you will leave them to me when your hour of death will come; but you will also find nothing where you will go, because you have spent your time, instead of acquiring spiritual happiness and heaven, acquiring material lies and deceit.

6. Instead of encountering light, joy and bliss there - which you have been put on earth to acquire - you will find darkness, death and disappointment, which will await you as the reward of your endeavour on earth, for instead of life in the Spirit, you sought and gathered only for your death in matter. Therefore, tear yourself away from me and gather the treasures of eternal life for your true home in the spirit realm; for here you are only a passing wanderer who has to train and steel himself in the tribulations of earthly life as the hero of the virtues of eternal life.' Amen.

223. Flesh and Spirit

1903, 28 August, Graz. Father Jesus describes the striving of the flesh and the Spirit as two separate poles in man fighting each other.

1. The striving of the lustful flesh for worldly pleasures brings with it the spiritual death of the soul, because then it only cares about what the flesh desires; but the spiritual death of the soul is exactly the spiritual darkness in man in which man here on this world builds himself hell for the spirit kingdom, because [he] forgets about God and his soul only feeds the death-bringing desires of

matter, which is the solidified soul of Satana-Lucifer. The question is: What can man acquire if he only cares for Satan and diligently entertains and feeds him as his dear guest with thoughts, words and deeds? The answer, of course, is that whoever is worried only about satisfying his Satan of flesh, hell will not fail him, because Satan and hell, with their torment of the soul, are two inseparable concepts.

2. But the striving of the Spirit of God in man is freedom, liberation from matter, and entering into the spiritual life where love and peace enlivens the heart and carries it into the bright heights, where like-minded people live in the light of Divine love and indulge in everlasting joys and pleasures, that is, in the homeland of the blessed, who fought here with Satan the flesh, suppressing his lusts and desires, but have built heaven on earth for the eternal home of the Spirit and thereby have acquired God as the price of eternal life.

224. The Kingdom of God on Earth

1. *John 6:45* - Year 64, December 24, Patmos. "They will all be taught by God," it is written in the prophets:

2. *Isaiah 54:13* - 2nd year 723 before Christ, 25 May, Nain. Jehovah speaks to the people of Israel and promises: "All your children are taught by Jehovah and there will be great peace for your children."

3. *Jeremiah 31:33-34* - 3rd year 602 before Christ, December 23rd. Jehovah says: "This shall be the covenant which I will make with the house of Israel after this time (once in the future): I will put My law in their hearts, and write in their minds; and they shall be My people, and I will be their God."

4. And no-one will teach the other, nor one brother the other, and say, 'Know and worship the Lord', but they shall all know Me, both small and great, says the Lord! For I will forgive them their iniquity and will never remember their sin." (Jer 33:8; Isa 42:25)

5. But why will the Lord forgive their iniquity and never remember sin? The Lord will therefore never remember the iniquity and the sins, because the children will have love alone as their companion, and it is love that erases all sins. (1 Pet 4:8)

6. But this is done with the dawn of the kingdom of God on earth, which is already at the door. And it is through the Christian theosophical books dictated by Me, that all My children are taught directly through Me.

225. Spiritual Education

1901, 9 September, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus on how to live and act in order to reach the highest perfection in the spiritual.

1. Every man can school, train, self-educate or coach himself, because the ability to do this is innate to him - and therefore I want to give you the rules for this spiritual training so that all My children [can] enjoy one and the same school and nobody is curtailed in it. Because your progress in the spiritual depends on the right spiritual training, and therefore everyone is to seize the offered means with joy and use them for his benefit and progress, so that nobody remains behind, but progresses and bears good fruits. But the rules are as follows:

2. Live in such a way that you always live in peace and friendship with each person and that no-one can say anything bad about you.

3. Strive to complete your knowledge in the spiritual in all directions, in general you shall acquire all that can characterise you as an educated man, therefore read and learn also in all the books forming My new school of the world, for you shall strive for the whole perfection of the knowledge in you, which the rest of your brethren acquire in order to stand there as fully educated men.

4. Do not despise anyone because of his little education and training, but rather teach him so that he may progress.

5. Aspire to do everything that love, wisdom and education demands of you as a link in the chain of mankind, and always be friendly and courteous also to [those] less than you, because also in them dwells the Father-Spirit of Jesus, same as in you.

6. Do not be one-sided and phlegmatic in promoting the good and useful towards both individuals and everyone.

7. You shall never forget that because you have the same rights as your brethren, you shall also strive to fulfill the same duties.

8. Consider every man your brother and child of God - your spiritual Father - and therefore seek to treat him as your love for God and neighbour dictates.

9. Respect the spiritual teachings of Christian Theosophy, learn them by heart so that you may always remember them, for they are signposts to rebirth and guides of progress into all eternity, so do not be indifferent; for I have not given them for knowledge, but for fulfillment, that is, to live and act according to them! —

10. Let watching and prayer also be yours, as I told My disciples in the Garden of Gethsemane - therefore the *Prayer Book* is an essential, indispensable part of the teaching of Christian Theosophy. Until now many have made praying to Me quite convenient according to the opinion of some false interpreter of My teaching, because praying is not everyone's business.

226. The sins of Man

1903, 13 May, Graz. Father Jesus explains that every human being should investigate the vices and bad qualities recorded in the prayer book in order to purify and sanctify his sinful body in the sense of the divine commandments and teachings.

1. No-one is pure or without sin, therefore no-one is infallible or holy, this is the meaning of the word "good" that I once spoke to the young scribe.

2. Since indeed no earthly man is infallible and therefore there are no exceptions, so everyone is a sinner before God, but therefore it is also a main task of man that he knows how he is constituted, and recognizes the sins to which he is still subject and which prevent him from ascending a higher level in spiritual life.

3. But man hardly recognizes his vices and bad qualities, because they often grew up with them from his youth and have become a habit for him, so that he no longer even knows that they violate My Divine commandments and teachings, therefore each one should read the record of sin in the Prayer Book more often, and reflect on whether he has already overcome all that is listed there as sin!

227. Prayer

1901, 12 September, Graz. Without prayer no hearing, therefore I taught: "Ask and it will be given you".

1. Everyone who approaches Me must approach Me in a humble, loving and praying mood! What do My Cherubim and Seraphim do? They worship My Holiness. But you want to come to Me without prayer? Children, do not be your own enemies! Humble yourselves and do what I teach you about praying in the *Prayer Book* and do not contradict My announcements! Because the longer you take a stand against certain books, which were published in My name, and criticize them as not coming from Me, the longer you will be repeatedly tested and that until you become friends with all books published in My name; because criticizing know-it-alls don't come to rebirth. —

2. If you have doubts against this and that, then you know how you can get certainty. Without asking and praying, nothing can be obtained. I keep on saying that you should pray, and yet your fleshly nature is against it! In the Prayer Book, you are told everything so clearly and many of you clog up your ears against My teaching! - Wake up for once! And pray that you do not fall again and again into the temptation of your flesh.

3. The fact that you are only heard through prayer, is proved by prayer for the sick who are in great pain, because only through prayer can give them relief when no medication is no longer helping.

228. Pray and Work

Pray and work.
Always raise your heart to God.
He gives work and alleviates distress.
Liberation from sin imprisonment,
gives strength to prayer in love,
it is the one creating God's children.
As citizens of the earth you are born,
to Glorify God in faithful Love,
to worship him was chosen by grace,
As a child of God in devotion of heart.
May the love of love adorn your breast!
The faith strengthens your courage!
Up to the holy throne of God;
from whom God will give you the reward of your love.
Pray unceasingly to eternal love,
For it is God in your own breast!
Don't ask, what am I, poor child doing?
Be well aware of your childhood of God,
The Father Jesus gave you for love,
it is the highest - think what I have.
In love, always worship your Father;
For Jesus is your everything in the world,
Work at it with all your strength,
That you may remain His child as He chooses you
and keep you heir to His holy love;
Therefore bend your knees in His honour,
To worship the Father with a loving heart.

229. I AM Spirit and Whoever Worships Me must Worship Me in Spirit and in Truth

1901, October 7th, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus on how to worship God in spirit and truth in order to win eternal life and take heaven by force.

1. Many people love Me but few are those who truly understand to worship Me in the sense of the above words from the evangelist John, because they lack true insight to understand this as I mean it. Therefore I will explain the matter to you completely according to your material understanding, because you are still too weak to understand My words in the spirit as I present it to you.

2. Many a child loves Me strongly in spirit, but very little or nothing at all in truth; - Others testify to Me their love in truth and do not understand how to love Me in spirit, and still love goes ahead in spirit, followed by truth - but none may be alone, love has to be both in spirit and in truth. But how this is to be understood, I want to make clear to you, so that for once the light of truth in love might open up to you like a central sun and illuminate everything - and therefore also the farthest corner of your being and brightens it most clearly.

3. When you want to worship Me in the spirit, then your thoughts must always be with Me; you must be so much in love with and absorbed in Me, that everything you do and do not do, will start and be completed with thoughts of [your] love towards Me. - out of love for Me, ask Me for My blessing in it, sacrifice the work or whatever you always do, for My glory! - And then begin to work and think of Me as much as possible during the work, ask Me in loving words for the happy progress of your effort and work and when you have completed it, thank Me humbly for My blessing and the good completion of your work, your endeavour; sacrifice this gratitude for My glory and ask for the spiritualization of your sacrifice.

4. Do so every time and always and everywhere where you are and whatever you do. Do not rush into anything in a hurry, for I can speed up the work-time you take to fulfill your loving and humble duty towards Me, and so you will not lose anything with the sacrifice of your love for Me, because in such cases, I do not wish for a long prayer but merely a few loving words, as the *Prayer Book* teaches. To sacrifice a few seconds to Me for My love and glory, can impossibly be neglect and a waste of time at work; - one instead neglects and wastes time, if he acts and works without Me, because he works in the darkness of hell, because he carries his love - instead of towards Me the Eternal Light - into matter, therefore into eternal darkness; and what someone sows here, he will reap there in the spirit-kingdom.

5. And when death will also stop in My millennial kingdom, it will only stop for those who will walk on earth in the spirit of love and truth - until the time will dawn that all will be born again, pure of sin and free from death.

6. All you do and offer up to My glory are the pearls of eternal life with which I will adorn and glorify your soul, as My dear bride. - I Myself certainly do not need anything from you; for I Myself am the Giver of Grace, and all that you have has been granted to you by Me; but it is about yourselves, you are poor, bare, naked and nothing without My help, - I am the only caring, nurturing Father, gathering riches for eternal life. But I do not do this Myself, but you have to do this yourselves, but I am the Teacher and Promoter of the good will for it, namely in the way I find it good - so that you grow in the virtues and make yourselves spiritually more and more perfect.

7. If you want to be serious and according to the situation always on watch over your actions so that you walk through life pure of sin, then you must never forget that I am always present with you and look at your actions with the eye of the Father, but weigh them with the balance of the justice of a judge.

8. Therefore always take Me with you as a companion! - Never lose your thoughts in the world of earthly weaknesses, but go your ways in constantly deepening, loving thoughts of Me, your inseparable, eternal companion; caress Me in the spirit and worship Me through loving childlike words, which you bring to Me from the *Prayer Book* or from your impulse!

9. Like children speaking with their loving parents and always nestle around them to receive enlightenment about this and that, so also stay with Me and ignore everything that does not have spiritual value and no important need for your daily life, because it fascinates your senses that stay with matter at the expense of the spiritual, and neglect the spiritual.

10. But when you always concentrate your thoughts on the fact that I stand with you and go with you, then you become serious and always considerate towards Me and your neighbour as you will always think of Me in thoughts: What shall I say? What shall I answer? What shall I do to please the Holy Father Jesus, who listens to Me and watches Me? —

11. Behold My children, this is the high school of the spirit! And this school has to be attended, if you want to reach the rebirth of the spirit. - For if you will not always think of Me, My teachings cannot take firm roots in you, because the world draws you to matter and selfishness. But when you will always have your thoughts with Me, your heart will always be full of humility, reverence, surrender, discipline, mercy and love of peace - and the world will have no power over you.

12. These virtues will radiate from you after activity in the work of neighbourly love, since I am only properly worshipped through this activity in truth, and through nothing else! —

13. There are children who caress Me in the spirit of their love, but in truth they hunger, thirst and suffer all kinds of misery and distress. Others love Me in truth especially through works of charity in that they are very charitable but because they do not love Me in spirit, they again forget themselves in other occasions and crucify Me through lovelessness and ruthlessness both towards servants and other fellow men and complain especially about the splinters of their neighbours; - but do not want to see their own mistakes and beams at all! - These are still far from the true following in My footsteps. —

14. But there are also those who worship in the truth, who fully understand and do all that is prescribed, but do not understand prayer in the Spirit! Even these are not on the right path; for it is said that one must worship Me in spirit and in truth, and not only one-sidedly! - Now I want to describe the matter to you quite clearly and according to your material understanding - the true worshippers in spirit and in truth, and so listen diligently, to finally understand Me well:

15. Think about it: I am your love and I am actually the Love itself. I live with you and you know that I am love, and you love Me reverently: You create for Me to eat and drink what you can and know that I like it; you create for Me a wonderful dwelling, the most beautiful clothes, you worship Me and love Me so much that you do not know what you can do for Me to give Me joy and satisfaction, so your worship is obtained in truth, against which I have nothing to object; but I am still not satisfied with it and hunger and thirst and suffer misery with you, despite your exuberant neighbourly love and you do not think that love again wants personal, spiritual love! —

16. Behold, you love Me by caressing and embracing Me in the spirit, but not in perpetual thinking, speaking, caressing and pressing on the heart, as you understand it materially - I also want to have it in the spirit of your love, because that is what it means to worship God in the spirit, <u>because what you do in thought, is spiritually-materially done in the spirit</u>!

17. So I'm telling you: Truly! Truly! He who worships Me in spirit and in truth, has gained eternal life and walks sinless before My eyes. But what it takes to fulfil this great task is laid down in the three coherent books of *Christian Theosophy* (*Prayer Book: The Christian Adept*) [and the *Holy Trinity*?]. Therefore, do not be only readers, but mainly doers of My teachings; because he who will not seize heaven with the power of his love and unyielding following of My commandments to fulfill it, he will

also not come in.

18. But you should take care that you do not pass over into the sensual love of flesh, which is the case with persons who are not yet pure, and would then pass into the wrong - into Satan's ministry.

19. The love with which God is to be loved above all else, also spiritually-personally ends where the sensual feelings are awakened. Only the blessed can have the privilege of participation in the spiritual delights of Divine love.

* * *

20. The Lord says: I asked you My child: 'Have you never felt that prayer to Me gives comfort, strength, bliss and delight when prayer is addressed to Me from the bottom of the heart? And who then prepares this feeling?' See, this is I, flowing My strength through the wounded souls. Where is a magnetic force whose effect could be compared with this feeling of bliss?

21. You shall try it and lift your heart to Me, your Father in deepest humility; the soul shall present its sufferings and sorrows to Me, shall sink down before My Throne, into the dust of nothingness - and when it lies there, powerless, crumpled up, and leaving everything to Me only when it has humiliated itself to the smallest point, I will lift it up; because in its deepest humility it is closest to Me, then I will let the consolation, the love and the strength of spirit flow into it, in order - first of all - not to look so darkly at it in supposed displeasure and, secondly, to be able to bear itself more easily.

230. Worship of God in Spirit and in Truth

1902, July 5-7, Graz. Father Jesus teaches what the worship of God means in spirit and in truth, and points to the books according to which one obtains the knowledge of Divine precepts.

1. My dear children! The life of humans is an examination school of their flesh and spirit, and only given in the flesh, because it is the only way to become quickly happy when one begins to eradicate the evils at their roots, and this can only happen in the flesh-life because it is arranged in this way, and because through this, also matter - since it is the solidified soul of Satan - is redeemed, spiritualized and again deified.

2. Now comes the question: How must man live, that he, as Satan revived by soul and flesh, achieves the goal which elevates man, as Satan revived in atoms, to the children of God and therefore to gods? —

3. Since the soul of man consists of the fine-spiritual, but the material body of the coarse-spiritual out of the soul of Lucifer-Satan transformed into matter, man - as long as he has not yet received the baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit, as once the apostles did at Pentecost - is nothing else than a resurrected Satan in miniature, and therefore full of evil inclinations, qualities and passions and lustful desires, which pulls him [away] from God to matter or Satan and make him hellish.

4. According to the spirit of love in your heart, you are indeed children of God, because the Spirit of God dwells in the soul of man and guides it through conscience to good, when it allows itself to be guided. He is brother to Me and is at the same time a child out of Me, because [he is] taken directly from My 'I'. That's why I always say, "My dear children." It is not the case with your soul and body. These two are both taken from the soul of Satan, therefore you are after these two, children of Satan - therefore the revived Satan himself. (See chapter 188-193.)

5. Behold, this fact you should especially imprint and always remember who you are! - So that you will always clearly see why you are so reluctant to obey and why you always twist My Divine teaching according to the wisdom of reason, which is the actual representative of Satan in your head, so that you can move more comfortably and freely and thus invalidate My commandments and teachings through your cleverly and wisely weaved-in alternative interpretations, disrobe their inner earnestness and degrade them according to your discretion, to worthless regulations.

6. This your way of interpreting My commandments and teachings at your discretion, is the spirit of Satan in you, who influences you in every possible way to draw his property, namely the soul and the body, as taken from him - therefore his being - away from Me and [back] to sensual matter where he, the prince of lies, reigns from hell.

7. With this I have revealed to you the basic evil which rules in you and rules that you always interpret the Holy Scriptures, especially the New Testament, in such a way that you overlook the truth and elevate untruth to truth - because untruth causes you little responsibilities, much leisureliness and great promises, in one word, you find yourselves so happy and just before me in your interpretations, according to your opinion, that you do not want to hear anything else but from that what you consider to be good and salvific; everything else is heretical and from Satan. —

8. In order to control this basic evil of your error, I have decided to give you means by which you can convince yourselves whether you interpret Scripture correctly and whether the books of Christian Theosophy, in which I Myself speak in the first person, are of Me or not. The first means is deposited in the first book of the "*Announcements*" and in the esoteric school "*Adept*" of Christian Theosophy, which reads: 'Enlightenment on how to be convinced whether the doctrine in the Bible was correctly interpreted and whether the dictates in Christian Theosophy originate from God and Father Jesus.

9. The second means is the grace that one will be able to speak personally and visibly with the deceased about important questions of faith individually or in society at any time of the day, in order to convince oneself where the deceased have come with their views of faith and afterlife in the spirit kingdom. You can read more about it in the book "*The Human*". Now we will discuss the individual regulations in Theosophy.

10. The individual prescriptions of Christian Theosophy are found scattered throughout all Christian Theosophical books here and there, these are now more thoroughly and summarized in the "*Prayer Book*", in the "*Christian Theosophy*", in the "*Holy Trinity"* and in the esoteric school *"Adept"* of Christian theosophy, from which the duties of a genuine Christian life are exactly explained.

11. So the worship of God in spirit and in truth is that all the regulations towards Me and the neighbour, as well as towards the whole creation - animated and guided by Me - are fulfilled according to these high spiritual teachings given especially in the '*Prayer Book*' and in *'Christian Theosophy*'; i.e., lived and acted according to ability.

231. Much Knowledge

1904, January 14, Graz. Father Jesus enlightens us about the spiritual responsibility of those people who here know a lot about faith and also teach it, but do not care about it themselves, but live carelessly in sins.

Many people know what sin is because they have great knowledge of religious truths, but they do not digest their knowledge, they live like the evangelical one-pounder, or like the five foolish virgins, because they are lazy and turned to the world. Such people never test themselves, they live in their sins, they teach others how to live, but they themselves do not obey the commandments. Such are subject to much greater responsibility, because they knew the truth, but paid homage to and lived the lie. The much knowledge does not make us blessed, but life and action according to the commandments and teachings.

232. Keeping Silent

1903, July 22nd, Graz. Father Jesus discusses the great value of silence, since man is responsible for every useless word before God (Matt 12:36) and explains the advantages of spiritual and the disadvantages of worldly speech.

1. People who speak a lot must also have a lot of material to discuss, if it is speaking about Divine truths, then one can speak if he teaches and discusses these truths about life and action according to them; for man is always to have the Divine word in his mind, keeping its meaning and practical application always before him, because that is the life-task of man - to meditate on the Divine word and to animate, spiritualize and deify his inner core, by putting it into action.

2. Silence is always to be observed if one does not have moral, spiritual, higher things to speak in mind. For silence deprives you of the opportunity to speak worldly chatter, or as you would express it, worldly tattle.

3. Through silence, man gains the time to think about God and the Divine; but through speech he comes into all sorts of temptations, because men speak only worldly, sensual and sinful things to keep up, to illuminate this or that better and to make it even more worldly than it already is, but it follows from this that man himself listens to the worldly, the sensual and the sinful and thus falls into the whirlpool of everyday life, who politicizes, scolds, and directs everything, criticizes the mistakes of others, slanders them, and often also speaks knowingly or unknowingly untruths about his neighbour and begins to busy himself with things which do not concern him, but which colour his soul-dress the brown-grey of the unbeliever, which make him a spirit of hell in the flesh.

4. But he who remains silent, where he has nothing wise to say or talk about, he avoids all such worldly temptations; he gains time and love to enjoy spiritual truths and grows visibly in his whole being to become a pure vessel of God - because love, humility, peace and tranquility, as well as the other virtues grow in him and always render him satisfied and in a good, friendly mood.

5. That is why man is to keep silent outwardly as much as possible, but all the more inwardly spiritually strive to speak to Me, his Divine Spirit, because that will make him satisfied with his fate and happy.

6. On the other hand, one withdraws through silence, oneself from laughter, jesting and jokes, which must be decisively fought against and refrained from before one attains the rebirth of the spirit, because worldliness is and does not rhyme with the gift of rebirth, therefore the rebirth of the spirit cannot be attained if one finds pleasure in worldliness.

7. Therefore keep silent where nothing spiritual is to be spoken and taught, because what man has to say about the usual life has recently happened, but man is supposed to lead all remaining [future] life in the spiritual sense and that will promote his redemption from matter unto union with Me, his God Jesus.

233. Speaking about the Worldly, draws you to Matter

1904, October 12, Zurich. Father Jesus teaches His children: They are not to speak unnecessarily worldly things, but only spiritual things to one another, so that they may always dwell with God, their Father, throughout their lives, and so that He may once make them overjoyed as His children.

1. My dear children! The world is matter and if you take care of matter, you are drawn to it and captured by it. Therefore take care of matter only as much as you have to take care of it, but otherwise, flee matter as much as possible.

2. The much talking about material things pulls you to matter and therefore away from the spiritual, therefore away from God to Satan; because matter - or the worldly - is the kingdom of Satan and therefore flee from him as much as possible and doable.

3. The kingdom of God exists in the spiritual, it consists in the fulfillment of the ten commandments, the two commandments of love of Jesus, in the life according to the seven virtues of Jesus as Son of Man, it consists in watching and praying and in living and acting according to the teachings of Jesus.

4. He who talks a lot when he talks worldly things, he talks a lot of things that do not agree with the mentioned regulations, because a lot of talking is a lot of loose gossip, which is very harmful to the soul, because it mostly offends against the teaching of God.

5. You know that I taught: Two lords - that is God and Satan - cannot be served at the same time. Since Satan presents everything material, worldly, sensual, directed against My commandments and teachings, therefore unspiritual, be therefore as cautious as possible to speak such things that violate spiritual life, that pulls you away from Me and towards matter, and thereby alienates yourselves from Me.

6. When you discuss worldly things, then you will become worldly-minded and therefore forget about Me and [become] loveless against your neighbour. - You have to prevent this by avoiding everything that alienates you from Me and makes you worldly in mind and deeds.

7. Think what you are in the world for?! You are not in the world to consider the world your home, no! But you are to spiritualize the world around you and in you, therefore redeem it and lead it back to the light and to the truth. Because matter or the visible world once was light and Divine life; through separation from Me, it is dark and death has become contained in itself, it is therefore My counterpole and lies in constant struggle with Me.

8. When you deal with matter, then you are the prey of its darkness and its death and so you distance yourselves from Me, your Father, and go over to Satan! —

9. What then becomes your life - your fate - when you do not stay with Me, the Father - who offer you the unspeakable for it, when you pay attention to My word and fulfill it - but rather go towards darkness and death and there seek your salvation of the soul in hell?

10. Therefore, dear children, listen to the words of your Father [Who is] worried for your salvation and remain with Me in thoughts, words and deeds so that I may consider you My children and once make you overjoyed. Strive for light, for Me, Who am I - the eternal Light of Love and Life. For only in this light is life, is happiness, is the joy of life.

11. Your thought shall always be up there where I dwell in the circle of My children, where indescribable joys and bliss await you. There I wait for you, there I have prepared for you a home of love and peace, there I want to have you; because I have bought you with My expensive blood on the cross and therefore My heart bleeds when you disdain My love and flirt with matter, which offers you

nothing but hell with its darkness and its torment.

12. You are to rise up to Me, into the bright heights of the Spirit, because you are Mine since My death on Golgotha and therefore are to remain Mine and serve Me - Me, the eternal Father who waits for you with open arms, to make you as My children, heirs of the Divine kingdom where you will live and rule as rulers and kings of the love of God. Amen.

234. Sin against the Neighbour

1904, January 14, Graz. Father Jesus explains the relationship of human to human, as brother to Him and as child of God, in whom the Spirit of God lives and judges the mutual actions of people.

1. My teaching is: Love God above all things, but your neighbour as yourself, so do to your neighbour what you wish him to do to you.

2. **This doctrine is the main one**, because it is the basic doctrine in God. I am the love or Father of all men, therefore all men are My children; because this is the full truth, so it is natural that, who loves Me above all, he will also strive to do all for My sake; because one loves Me only when My commandments are fulfilled.

3. The one who does not love his neighbour as much as a brother - if he is not a transgressor of the commandment - does not know how to love God either, because he does not love his brother as his Father's child; For men, children of God are brothers and sisters unto one another, without distinction of rank and class in which they stand; for the latter have no value before Me.

4. Because man is a child of God and the Spirit of God dwells in him - regardless of whether man is good or evil - man does not love God above all else, if he does not love God's children, or even despises them. *Therefore, every sin which man commits against his neighbour is also a sin against God* - if the neighbour does not himself create the cause of unwillingness and an impulse that [makes] his brother's love for him cool down.

5. Always strive for this main commandment to keep your thoughts, eyes and ears open so as not to act against it; for all evil you do to your neighbour, you also do against Me, as spirit in every human being, as My child and My tool, in which I work spiritually. I meet you in every man, behave therefore towards every man as such, that your behaviour ennobles him in his customs and actions, then you have lived and acted according to My will.

6. The disregard of My commandments is the disregard of My Divinity, and the evil against the neighbour is then a double sin - firstly against Me and secondly against My child, whom you should always have before your eyes, to live and act according to them and through that, to attain the salvation of eternal life. Amen.

235. Intentional Sins

1904, January 14, Graz. Enlightenment, that in the hereafter sins are only attributed to man if they are committed for selfish purpose and in the full consciousness that they are sins.

1. In the spiritual world, only those sins are ascribed to man which he knew to be sins; but deliberately denied that they are [sins], with the justification of being committed out of fearlessness towards God. Whoever therefore acts in this way sins against all the commandments, because in the ten commandments God is included as Judge in the commandment.

2. But whoever acts against the commandments without knowledge and without the deliberate counter-argument that it is sin, but out of insufficient instruction and knowledge of the truth - and who is willing to act differently as soon as he learns the truth, will be forgiven for his sins through repentance and the intention to avoid these in the future.

3. For in the hereafter, everything is considered according to the purpose, the intention and the final goal, whether one therefore commits sin in order to gain and have a selfish benefit from it; but if sin is committed without premeditation, intention and selfish final purpose - but out of lack of religious education, knowledge and out of a brisk worldly life where the spirit is darkened - then it is excusable, therefore man in the hereafter is only condemned or excused according to the final purpose of the goal [of the deed].

4. The final purpose of the action is decisive; for when one does something with good intention, it finds recognition in heaven; but if one does it out of any kind of selfishness, then it is recognized and examined in hell, and after the death of the body, man arrives at what he served in life, because his good or evil love, draws him there.

236. Suicide

1901, 17 September, Graz. Father Jesus explains the sad fate of suicides in the afterlife, as they are usually sunk into the lowest hell as madmen. - And the "new grace" for them before they fall into suicide.

1. The sad feature of the godless and god-denying modern age is suicide. Many people who do not believe in any God and in any survival [after death], decide to commit suicide unless everything goes according to their wishes.

2. They believe thereby to get rid of all worries, tribulations and all knowledge of existence. They think that death is eternal sleep, an entrance into nothingness, just as man was born out of nothingness. But how absurd such a view is, they have no idea. Out of nothing is after all nothing, as if I have created the world out of nothing. So also something that exists cannot become nothing in any way, there is a transformation of substances, but destruction is impossible. This transformation continues through the whole of creation, the spiritual puts on a material garment and becomes visible, when the time has passed in which the maturing of what is solidified in matter comes about, then the spiritual leaves matter and it [matter] falls into decay, oxidation or combustion and from it a new material or spiritual life forms, which become refined and take up a higher level of existence.

3. So it is also with man, as he lives according to My commandments, he reaches the maturity of his soul and his body, depending on how he lived.

4. But with suicide, man shortens his life, does not let his soul and body mature and on top of that, commits a gross and great crime against himself. You consider a murder or a robbery to be a great crime if it was committed intentionally. Is not suicide supposed to be just as big a crime? Certainly! It is a murder-robbery of self; for one robs the soul of its body, which it has to care for and spiritually bring to a higher level, because also the flesh-body has its spiritual complement, as everything in nature has its spiritual similar supplement, which cannot get lost - this supplement takes the soul like a tightly fitting suit when leaving the body but of course quite light in shape as if cast on it, into the spirit realm. The more pious and spiritual the person has lived, the whiter and more beautiful is this suit as a glaze on his soul-body; but if the person lives a wrong life or is self-disembodied, then the spiritual flesh-body is nasty, of a grayish dark colour, by which one recognizes the lower spiritual quality of the soul.

5. Besides this deprivation of the soul of its body and darkening of the spiritual flesh-body through the crime of murdering itself, the soul is the actual criminal of the murder of its flesh-body, which was created for it out of grace to be materially active in it and to undergo the spiritual examination school of life through the material body; therefore it falls under the spiritual punishment, consisting in that it, as a gross criminal, in the center of the earth, is sunk into the darkness of the lowest hell. If the suicide is otherwise of good character, he may have a faint twilight, but if he is also otherwise a gross sinner, then he is completely without all light - that is, in complete, deep darkness.

6. When he arrives there, he enters the circle of similar criminals, who receive him with a more sad, but mostly malicious face and take him into their midst to begin to question [him] what drove him to suicide. When he has told them everything, he remains in the sad and malicious company of the evil devils of the lowest kind, without knowing how, or being able to help himself in the least.

7. Since the third hell contains the worst, meanest, rawest and wildest rabble in itself, you can imagine the picture of the most sad existence that a suicide can have - but what then when such a suicider is robbed of his senses during the suicide?! Then woe to such an unfortunate man! - He remains stuck in this perspective of the moment of the suicide, and he repeats this and feels the pain in himself and on himself that he felt at the last moment - and that often lasts a long time, even years - until he comes to himself, [realizing] that he is only a lunatic in his actions; The prayers of his relatives helps much for his clear consciousness of his situation; - Some people, when they cannot even reach a clear consciousness by themselves, are finally made to realize after 10, 20, 30, 50 or more years by compassionate spirits, that they merely live in insanity and they give them a hint on how they can save themselves from it. Happy is the suicider who has not lost his clear reason in the deed, because suicides usually turn into madness at the moment of the deed, through the excitement of the soul.

8. If now a suicide with clear reason comes to the lowest or third hell, he usually remains there for many years, because he thinks himself to have to remain in eternal damnation according to previous church teachings, without any enlightenment and his situation is of course unusually sad, gloomy and hellish! He wanted to rid himself of a small temporary discomfort by committing suicide, instead he fell into the terrible hell with all its darkness, remorse, anger, rage and wild desperation in the sad and terrible never-ending situation! - That is the lot of suicides after the deed. —

9. But also I will graciously set a barrier to this crazy activity of men that from now on, I will in advance, open everyone's spiritual eyes who want to commit suicide, so that he will see the situation into which he would plunge through suicide. Whoever regards this as a fantasy-construct and yet commits suicide will then not be wronged, for he has been warned and yet has ruthlessly committed the deed: "*volenti non fit injuria*". —

237. Inner Contemplation

1902, 8 May, Graz. Father Jesus discusses the great value of the daily inner self-examination of what one has done good or bad, because according to this, one can render the corresponding satisfaction and atonement to God and men.

1. Every person sins, so every man also has a duty to reflect on his sins and to consider their greatness and to weigh their gravity. This happens in the following way:

2. After work is done, one should sit down, preferably before going to bed, let go of all other thoughts and worries and immerse oneself in one's inner self, in one's spiritual life, examine oneself thoroughly and search for all areas where there is something stored up which one has committed during the day and which has offended God or man. This self-examination is very healing, because man judges what he has done, good and bad. If one has carried out this inner self-examination thoroughly, then one should also measure the consequences of the wrong done, because one should not only consider and evaluate the momentary sin, but also its consequences, because thereby the greatness of the sins is evident and one can make a due apology to Me and to the people involved, because everything has to be made good by repentance, apology, compensation and penance.

3. Such inner introspection is very fruitful, because man becomes more careful during the day and commits fewer and fewer sins, and he humbles himself as a sinful man; for if man must often make good his spiritual crimes before his neighbour through atonement, he will be ashamed and will strive in the future to be more reasonable in his action towards his neighbour! —

4. So also he will commit less and less sins against Me, because he will come daily to the conclusion that he is a careless repeater of the same sins and that will accuse him of not obeying My instructions.

5. Such an inner contemplation about doing and omitting should happen daily where possible, since one should ask Me daily for forgiveness of sins, otherwise one forgets many things when one omits it for several days.

238. Self-control

1902, 10 October, Graz. Father Jesus indicates how to proceed with temptations in order to fight through the struggle of life happily and become happy one day.

1. Self-control is man's most difficult task. It is a struggle - more difficult than with rapacious animals.

2. If any flagrant injustice occurs against you, and woe is done to you, - and if the evil one whispers vengeance to you, - then think to yourself, what a tremendous injustice your almighty God, Creator and Redeemer, on the Day of His Crucifixion, silently and forgivingly endured, and you will reassure yourself; for having forgiven your transgressors, you will earn eternal merit for the hereafter. Call three times with full humility and love, the name "Jesus" for help against the evil temptation, and it will be given to you! —

3. If you are in danger of lust, cut off your whispering thoughts with contempt and disgust! - And think what God demands of you! And ask the Father Jesus in love, that He may help you to overcome this danger - and if you have survived it, then thank your God lovingly for this grace.

4. If this or that godless thoughts bothers you, turn again and again to God for help in temptation, and

think about the consequences of an inconsiderate act!

5. Prayer contains the wonderful strength with which one must diligently strengthen oneself daily, otherwise one can fall again soon. - And even if one falls repeatedly, do not fall into oblivion! - But, one prays more and more fervently to God and is more and more indignant about the lower passions, - finally one will win. - But flee from all temptations, and if you cannot avoid them, call on God's help in advance, that you will emerge happily from the battle. But do not flee from the fight unnecessarily, for without a fight [there is] no victory, without victories, no merits for the hereafter! - See Jesus' virtues.

239. Suppress Sinful Thoughts in the Germ

1902, 25 May, Graz. Father Jesus teaches His children how they should immediately stifle any burgeoning sinful thought so that it does not strengthen and become an act.

1. Dear children, the most difficult task to escape sin, lies in the cause - that man let it germinate, and grow and grow into a mighty tree. If it once stands there like an oak tree several hundred years old and has deep roots in the heart, then it is a very great task to become it's master. And yet you can control it - and that very easily:

2. One should practice love, humility and patience towards one's neighbour, and as soon as one notices any tendency to germinate into sin, one should immediately suppress and destroy this germ by sacrificing everything to your Father in Jesus out of love for Me and turning away the thoughts of hatred, arrogance and anger, become phlegmatic and undermining every reason for sin by evading incentive, by giving in, silence and the like.

3. Behold dear children, this is the teaching according to which you will mature most quickly in order to be able to receive spiritual gifts from Me. Therefore, follow this teaching and mature to the eternal love of the Father, to be soon called his spiritual children. This is what your Father Jesus tells you. Amen.

240. Insult

1901, January 29, Graz. Decisive enlightenment of the Father Jesus, that mutual insults have to be personally delivered and made good again.

1. Live in peace with all people, is the rule of God! But if, despite this rule, people get into conflict and division, then they have to become friends again, ask each other for forgiveness and live peacefully together.

2. But if the offended forgives, but the offender for some reason does not ask for forgiveness, the offender and the offended may harmonize well with each other, *but if the offender does not humble himself and does not ask the offended for forgiveness, then the matter with Me is not balanced and forgiven*; for herein is the arrogance of the offender, that he - either out of shame for his wrongful acts, or out of arrogant [opinion] that this was no longer necessary - since the offended had forgiven him and they had become friends again - not according to My will, because I as God and Life in a person who is actually offended and when the offended person out of love for Me humbles [himself] and forgive the offender on his own initiative, so is the more more reason for the offender to ask the

offended for forgiveness, be it before reconciliation, or after. So who acts differently is arrogant before Me his God, who was offended, because I am everything in every man - because with it, he maintains his arrogant right to the insult. —

3. Such persons can not count on the rebirth of the spirit until they have humiliated this gross arrogance before Me, the insulted Spirit of God in man. The matter would be balanced by the reconnection of friendship on soul-level, but only Divinely when the commandment has been fulfilled by personal humiliation before the offended.

4. If the insult occurs in the presence of witnesses, it is not necessary to humble oneself before them, but only before the insulted, as has already been said.

5. But if someone insults his neighbour with a rebuke, but immediately tries to please the insulted person with friendly courtesy or good deeds, and this person appeases himself and is immediately good with the insulting person again, then the insulting person has relieved himself through his action in neighbourly love, so that he does not need to ask for forgiveness after reconciliation, because this has happened through the work of neighbourly love.

241. Forgiveness

1901, January 29, Graz. High enlightenment of the Father Jesus, concerning the forgiveness of insults, sins and crimes which people have to forgive each other.

1. Every human being has enemies and has anger against his neighbour, because people, as they live today, are more evil than good. But meekness or forgiveness ennobles man, because it heightens his spiritual level and brings him closer to God.

2. If now your brother or neighbour insults you, or causes you sorrow in one way or another, your task is not to be angry with him, but to forgive him everything in love for Me, as a mistaken brother; for if he knew what he was doing, he would not do it to you, so act towards him as I did when the henchmen hit the blunt nails through My hands and feet because of Pharisaic sins, for amidst the terrible pains I asked: "Father forgive them because they do not know what they are doing", and remember that I suffered and died then instead of you! —

3. So I taught in the Sermon on the Mount: "Love your enemies; do good to those who do evil to you and pray for your slanderers and persecutors." - For if you had no enemies, with whom would you fight and over what triumph, and how would you win the reward of eternal life? Your adversaries are the opposite pole at which you are to transform your vices and passions into the virtues of charity, by fighting to overcome them.

4. In the Lord's Prayer you expressly ask Me: "Forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive our trespassers!" Here the Lord's Prayer is your oracle, with which you yourselves pronounce the judgement on yourselves: "Do not forgive us our debts or sins if we do not forgive them as our trespassers or enemies!" - Yes, children, if you will not forgive, you belong to Satan and his hell! - For you then ask Me through the Lord's Prayer: [that] I shall be just as devils against you as you are against your brother or sister! I believe that this enlightenment speaks clearly to you on how you should act towards your enemies! - Yes, forgive, do good and pray for your enemies that I give them insight into their way of acting and a good will to solve them in the Divine sense.

242. Three Remedies against Being Right, Unchastity and Harassment by Spirits.

1902, 7 October, Graz. Father Jesus gives the means by which one can powerfully resist and protect oneself against three of the most dangerous sins and suppress the temptations to do so.

Being right

1. People always want to be right in everything and forget that this vice is a sin of arrogance which, on the one hand, deprives and suppresses the brother of his right with all the force of the supposed prerogative and, on the other hand, brings about self-exaltation and superiority over the brother, pride is always at play everywhere, because self-satisfaction triumphs over the injustice of one's neighbour after winning a victory!

2. Since this is one of the most dangerous sins, therefore the antidote must also be vigorously applied and executed, because man, after such a defeat of his neighbour, has the self-satisfied thoughts against other people, that he has won a moral, scientific, judgemental or adjudicating victory, by which he imagines himself in the eyes of those present as the victor and flatters himself. Through this effect in the triumph of victory lies the grossness of the sin of arrogance, because the neighbour has been humiliated and the know-it-all has been exalted!

3. Therefore My child, do not triumph in your heart because of your supposed 'being right', but present My Person to yourself as your punishing Judge, who contemplates your inner thinking with sharp eyes and places the gravity of your sin on the bowl of Divine Justice and notes it in your Book of Life for punishment!

4. Sober quickly and think of this My Enlightenment before you attack the brother with correction, then proceed according to the rule as prescribed under "self-denial" and by thinking quickly of Me and My Judicial Presence and sacrificing your action to My Glory! Humbly sacrifice what was stated under pride. When you think so quickly of My judgemental presence, and sacrifice everything to My glory and proceed according to the regulation, then you will calmly give your enlightenment and instead of judgement, only work for reward. Remember that if you have shamed and humiliated your brother, you have hurt his honour as much as the violent one who physically knocks down his opponent and works him with hands and feet.

5. It is innate in man that he likes to claim the right in everything. Here is the field of Satan in man, because what man thinks he knows rightly and well, he does not deny, but asserts his rights until he is shown proofs of a spiritual or palpable nature. - But the defiance to be right, is always the greatest sin; flee from pride, and triumph as from the plague, because it entails the death of the spirit.

6. It is not agreed that a man would always have to be right - even if he has it, because the loving harmony with the brother has more value than the defiant justification, therefore be loving, humble and yielding, so that I too can dwell among you, because I am not among the righteous, arrogant, angry and quarrelsome. That is to serve as a warning to you that one has to bear and endure many things out of love for Me, to be found as just before Me.

THE STRUGGLE WITH LUST

1899, 8 June, Graz. Father Jesus declares that during the day one should protect oneself from the rise of lust in order not to be overwhelmed and defeated by the power of the spirits in sleep.

1. Without struggle there is no victory and without victory there is no merit. One of the most annoying and most difficult enemies of the soul to fight is lust. Man was created to procreate mankind, but according to the laws of God - not according to carnal desires, because the first man was defeated by the latter.

2. Lust can be overcome by day, but one should be careful not to take up a self-willed fight with it, because the evil one will then also start the fight in your sleep when you are completely powerless, and commit the most livid lustful sins with you, even if you know that it is not right, and he can give you intense stimuli and pleasures, without you being able to defend yourself or flee, for your will is powerless, unlike when you are awake - then it is too late.

3. Suppress therefore every voluptuous suggestion most emphatically, as long as it is still time, if you do not want to succumb, because what can you do, if you come defenceless under hungry wolves! You should therefore avoid the self-willed fight, i.e. don't get yourself excited during the day - for only by self-excitement and then fighting against it, can the evil one fight and defeat you in your sleep. But you can calmly confront the small, not self-intentioned fights, because if you hide from all the world, then you will have neither fights, nor victories, nor merits.

4. (Compare this with something similar in ChtS. 48 B, page 5): "The weak avoids battle, and even the strong wisely avoids danger. But the one who is in danger fasts and prays; for fasting weakens the flesh, and prayer gives strength to the spirit. Amen.

5. Unchastity is one of the strongest incentive sins in man and woe to the one who is strongly devoted to it, he has enough to fight against it, and will come out only with difficulty as a victor, because he not only [fights] against his flesh, but [also] against the impetuous demand of a multitude of unchaste spirits, who have nested themselves in his flesh and thereby made him possessed and lustful.

6. The struggle is an unequal one, [from which] man rarely emerges as victor, but mostly as defeated - therefore the following powerful means will render you extensive services when you will use it powerfully. This is:

7. When temptations begin to vividly remind you and excite you through thoughts and images or past deeds, then you already have a lot of indecent spirits active in you, which you are possessed with, or are attracted by your imaginations. It is difficult to send them away, because they do not give way, but they want to enforce and enjoy their will. If you pray, they usually behave quietly, if you stop, it does not take long and the thoughts, images and incentives are back. And if you lend them your willing reflections for a while, then suddenly the indecency can break your resistance, due to the power of the stupefaction they cause, and you are hopelessly lost for the moment when you have not been fighting with the uninvited guests for long yet.

8. One's own flesh-spirits are not violent, but if the indecent spirits intervene, then good advice is not easy to create.

9. However, there is a remedy which has a decisive and powerful effect if used correctly. It says in the teaching: "You shall act against your brethren with love, humility and patience - only against unruly spirits the above teaching has no application, on the contrary:

10. As soon as the temptations and incentives arise, then become indignant with all disgust about this and thunder inside (keep your mouth closed!) and start to dub them by their right title: Get out,

you common rabble and return from where you came! Who called you to come to me?! So get out! Out of here! Mean pack from hell! But look truly indignant serious, as if you want to knock the whip off with the greatest zeal, to chase them away!

11. Deal like this with these wild guests when they do not give you rest, and they will yield, because you yourself will become reluctant against the lust. Once you have rest, try to immediately suffocate the slightest thought that wants to lift itself up to the desire, so that the incentives do not gain strength. Therefore one must be careful that the eyes and ears do not feast on seductive charms and words, but avoid everything that awakens the thoughts and stimuli by turning away, and go away from the place of temptation, and direct your senses to the suffering that I had to taste because of this sin, and deepen yourself with all the power of the senses into the pains that I suffered in the process, so you will be able to defend yourself and protect yourself from these temptations to sin.

243. The Fight against Doubting God's Word

1898, January 14, Graz. Father Jesus discusses the harmfulness of doubting His Word and gives instructions on how to suppress the rising doubt with indignation and thereby render it harmless.

1. The dear Father says in the spiritual menagerie: "*The doubt of God's word is like a dagger - thrust into My breast"*.

2. To this question, what should one do when doubt does arise? The dear Father replied: "Doubt must be rejected with indignation as soon as it arises; do not be deceived when doubt arises, but remain firmly convinced that the first understanding one has of the matter is correct, and pursue it vigorously. So the doubt will pass harmlessly for the spiritual life. This will be the guideline to all doubts of your dear Father Jesus. Amen. (E. and J. III. 68.)

3. But a radical remedy for doubt consists in the following: As soon as doubt arises, be horrified by it, take on a highly serious mood and resolutely say: "God does not lie! It is decidedly true; for My dear and supernatural Father and God told me this, therefore it is true!!!" When in this way one has stood up for the truth, or for the realization of a healing, etc. with all the utmost determination, and when one is in the degree of faith and love for Me as I teach you, then it happens what one so firmly believes when I Myself have to work a miracle!

244. The Power of the Word

1902, August 5, Graz. Father Jesus advises that one should always think and speak good things about one's neighbour, so that we may spread divine life of love around us and build a dwelling place for heaven.

1. Man's life lies in his thoughts, words and deeds. Through these three, man builds heaven or hell already on earth, so every man should consider well before speaking a word, whether this will produce love or hatred.

2. Man should therefore always strive to speak words of love that express love, joy, bliss, contentment and benevolence and delight to the neighbour who hears them or to whom they apply.

3. If, on the other hand, words of hatred, envy, denial, bereavement, wickedness, of evil and of harm

are spoken, they please only evil men and spirits of hell, because only these have joy in the harm that another has of it.

4. Therefore, always be diligent to think and speak only Divine, loving and benevolent things about your neighbour, so that you and the neighbour will have the blessing of it; because a good word finds good a place, yes a good word even makes the enemy peaceful and makes you inclined, because through loving words you spread Divine things around you and in that, you can never create or harvest hell; For what you sow, you will reap spiritually, so beware of sowing weeds instead of wheat, that you yourselves do not become the deceived and the damaged.

245. Life and Action According to the Word

1. The Word as the eternal truth from God only has power in itself if man lives and acts according to it. My words are based on this fact by evangelists, in whom I speak:

2. *John 13:17* - "If ye know this (that ye should be humble and as brethren among yourselves), blessed are ye if ye do this".

3. *Matthew 13:23* - "He who is sown on the good land is the one who hears the word and notices it, and bears and does fruit from it" (what is said in the word).

4. *Matthew 7:24-26* - "Every one who hears My words and does them, I will compare to a wise man who built his house on a rock; but everyone who hears My words but does not do them will be compared to a foolish man who built his house on sand".

246. Nurturing of Thoughts

1901, December 20, Graz. Thoughts follow desires, from desires follow deeds, the result of which is the building of heaven or hell in man; for as man's thoughts are constituted, such like-minded spirits he lures with them to his spiritual society, which then inspire man with their thoughts, in good or bad. Teaching about the care of thoughts to promote progress in the spiritual.

1. Your thoughts represent your light or shadow world and in which thoughts you move, that spirit-sphere you bring into your surroundings and movement, because your thoughts are your heaven or your hell, because with good thoughts you are with God, with bad thoughts you are with Satan, who presents the world.

2. believe Me My child, that your thoughts build your heaven or your hell; for what you think are then your desires, from desires follow words and your deeds, and these are always the result of your thoughts, for without thinking you would neither wish nor do anything;

3. It is therefore your constant task to keep an eye on your thoughts, so that you can conclude the right thing from your thoughts.

4. **If you have good thoughts, pleasing to God, and take diligent care of them, then you step into the heavenly harmonies of good spirits and angels; for these are always immersed in good and noble thoughts of love, like how they can serve God better and out of this love also serve His children, and out of this, you can think that when you are filled with good thoughts of love unto God and your neighbour, you are always surrounded by like-minded high spirits;**

for whoever's heart-strings are touched by your heart's love, the same harmony resounds in like-minded spirits that surround you.

5. In the minds of the spirits it is just like in a music society: If music plays a sublime melody that lifts you up into higher regions, then you are completely pious and immersed in God; - if a quirky waltz or a polka is played, the dancing-pleasure is awakened; If one plays a melody with a lewd undertone, your thoughts - if you pay homage to lechery - are in the swamp of lecherous sins; if it plays a merry march, then you are inclined to march to the beat of the music; - if a funeral melody is played, you are sad yourself; - if something really funny and cheerful is played, you are cheerful too. So it is also with your thoughts, they are music for the spirit-world and awaken those spirits that harmonize with your thoughts, while others behave passively or even against it; for if you cultivate sinful thoughts, you cannot attract heavenly dwellers, because they flee from sinful thoughts, - but if you have highly spiritual heavenly thoughts, then the evil spirits flee from you, because the Divine is bland and tasteless to them.

6. Every sinful thought awakens like-minded spirits to you in the spirit world, who are with you at lightning speed in order to strengthen your thoughts and to see and enjoy with you the consequences of the deeds which were brought forth from your thoughts. - If you have fallen into unchaste thoughts, you will immediately have a greater number of fornicators around you, who will encourage you to enjoy the fruits with you, because they are able to enter into your flesh and enjoy them with you. - Beware therefore of unchaste thoughts; for whores and fornicators do not go to heaven (Eph 5:5). He who pays homage to fornication is possessed by immoral spirits who have a permanent abode with him.

7. If you are brooding revenge, you draw to yourself spirits of revenge and anger, which even work wildly on you to put your supposed right into action. He who is angry in nature is always possessed by the wrathful spirits who have the best home of their infernal virtues with him. Therefore beware of thoughts and even more of acts of wrath, the gross sin of arrogance, which makes you hellish; for with anger and thoughts of revenge, with thoughts in general, if you take hold of lovelessness in yourself, you are always in hell and in contact with hell-spirits, therefore, if you are in haughty anger, then you are in thoughts of retribution and to play a trick on the hated, and therefore always so wild and fierce, because you are already a spirit of hell by that, when you ponder how you could harm your neighbour and do evil to him; for you are never alone, but you are as soon as you go to hell - i.e. *as soon as you enter into thoughts against your neighbour or brother to <u>justify</u> yourself and to <u>repay</u> him after your vengeance-breeding heart – you are possessed and seized by hell-spirits, which continue to <u>incite</u> you against your spiritual brother to seek your justice and to repay him by evil means*.

8. So it is also with all other thoughts which are subject to sin that one always draws the like-minded spirits to oneself, in whose company and with whose instilling of their thoughts one is encouraged and cheered on to commit sinful and infernal things.

9. If someone, on the other hand, only cultivates loving spiritual thoughts, then he draws love-spirits from the heavens to himself and lives in heavenly harmonies of angels and good, loving spirits. The more the life of love for God and the activity of the works of charity grows, the higher kind of spirits one unites around him, the higher one climbs into the love-regions of those bright heights, where the Father dwells with His children and lets Himself be seen face to face and loved in highest feelings of delight.

10. The decisive effort which a man must make to free his soul from matter, especially from fornication and lewd thoughts, is contained in nipping every thought which rises up, in the bud immediately, every opportunity where matter draws you to itself is to be avoided, the eyes are to be turned away from where they find and have pleasure in the evoking of lust.

11. It is true that one does not sin with one's eyes if one's thoughts and senses do not feed themselves and create thoughts of pleasure; - but the stimuli increase and one is drawn more and

more to the feast for the eyes, until one sins and then it is too late.

12. But as long as the eyes are lustful after such charms, there can be no talk of the granting of higher spiritual gifts - neither matter nor spirit; one cannot serve two masters.

13. And so every stimulus you have is an obstacle to progress in the spiritual. Renounce therefore, if you want to rise spiritually, everything to which your eyes and thoughts draw you with impetuosity and with which you think of this and not of God; because where your thoughts are, there is your treasure, remember that. Therefore always think logically and morally and you will walk the path of salvation and progress in the spiritual.

14. Through your thoughts, you form the inner quality - or spiritual form - of your soul, because through the thoughts man forms his environment, his world, even health and illness. - An unbending will of thoughts is a miracle-worker, a creator through the continued care of one and the same thought: That is what I want, that must be!

15. Therefore guard your good thoughts leading to God like the most precious pearls and precious stones, so that you may become the inhabitants of heaven through them!

247. Mastering one's own Ego or the Forces of Nature within Oneself

1901, May 8th, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus, how man can control the powers of his nature and how he can become a spirit-man.

The preceding enlightenments show how man is to live and act in order to become blessed, laying the foundation on which man develops himself into a spirit-man. This education is the suppression of the impetuous forces of human nature, which manifest themselves in arrogance, anger, hatred, envy, lust, fornication, selfishness and self-love. Every man must become master of these forces of nature, otherwise he will not advance in the spiritual. But if man has become a master of his natural powers, then no obstacle stands in his way to receive the gifts of the Holy Spirit when there is enough love and faith in him.

248. Jesus as an Example of Humble Living

1901, 17 May, Graz. Father Jesus discusses His humble descent to earth and His humble life like any other poor man, although He is King of Kings and Creator and Ruler of the universe, to give us an example: that the greatest should be the most humble and a servant of all.

1. I Jesus, as the Wisdom of God stepped into the flesh, shone before you through My examples of life how you have to live in order to satisfy the Divine demands on you.

2. I, the only world-ruler from eternity (Micah 5:1) and a king of all kings (Isa 9:5; Matt 2:2; Rev 17:14) should have been born in a magnificent royal palace if Divine wisdom were the same as the wisdom of the world - and what happened? My birth palace was a dark hole in a mountain, which served as a cattle stable. This was certainly a humbling and humiliation without comparison in the world; for kings are born in royal palaces and not in mountain caves. From this you can also take the example

that the greatest humiliation and self-denial shows the highest stamp of spiritual advancement.

3. I, the great king of spiritual life, lived a life of poverty and walked barefoot like the poor. The people of the world had little regard for this, as it is still the case today; but the greater this appeared to the spirit-world, My angels and archangels; these could not marvel enough at My spiritual grandeur and greatness, unattainable for their light-wisdom - small before men, Divinely high before the spirit world. And all this applies to you to show you how to be the greatest, the most humble, the simplest, the most loving and a servant of all, as I also as your God and Father am it daily, although you never think in your worldly thoughts that your whole life and being owes its existence to an eternal service from My side.

249. Humiliation before God

1901, March 5, Graz. Father Jesus explains the reason why people, as children of God, must show the highest reverence and deepest humiliation before God.

1. Men are led by means of humiliation, which a man has to unfold before Me, to considerations of why man, as child of God, is to humble himself so deeply before his Divine Father, since this is strange after all, why the child is to show such great humility and reverence before his Father, because that does not compare at all to the earthly image between father and child.

2. I will answer you clearly to this contemplation, which many of My children receive, so that you will have no special views, namely: the difference between the holiness of My 'I' and your being is as great as between the light of the sun and a candle and also this tiny light is My ray of grace, for you to have a spiritual light at all!

3. Furthermore, you are taken from the soul and body of Lucifer-Satana, which is solidified in matter. But I am eternal, unapproachable, because I am the most holy, basic light of love in God, the all-powerful Creator; - you are tiny beings, like atoms in the universe; I am the All-Spirit, in whose bosom the whole gigantic creation is located; - I am most holy and crystal-clear in everything, you are sinful in everything and full of vices. And because I want to raise you to Myself, you also have to do the extreme in your humility - applying violence - to completely destroy arrogance. It includes kneeling, which is lying prostrate before Me, as the extreme humiliation and thereby purification from arrogance. Through this you now also purify yourselves crystal clear, to become one with Me. So not because of Me, but because of you I demand the highest reverence before Me! - The longer you do not make yourselves crystal clear, the longer the time for reunification with Me will take. —

250. The Kingdom of the Messiah

1901, 26 October, Graz. Father Jesus explains the duties of a theosophist towards the divine rule, so that he does not become impatient and anxious.

The kingdom of the Messiah consists in patience, love, gentleness and in complete devotion to the Divine will; - for with God nothing can be broken over the knee, nothing forced, and least of all, defied! - But if I will find it good for you, then I will also lead you into the higher revelation (ChtS. IX 146, 6-9)!

251. Appreciation of Mankind

1901, November 5th, Graz. Father Jesus in high words illuminates to people how they are to fulfill their duties and follow the teaching of God's love.

1. Consider the atheist and misbeliever no less than yourself before God, for he too is a child of God like you. It only depends on whether you, or the atheist or the misbeliever proves greater love for your neighbour in giving and doing good? The one who works more works of charity under the same financial circumstances has a nobler heart and thus more Christian than the most famous nominal Christian, whose heart shows no love because his hand does not practice any works of love. The time of the conversion of a man with a noble brother's heart, is only a moment of the Divine ray of love into his heart. —

2. *Many people believe that they live sinlessly if they do not insult, deceive, cheat, rob, murder or ever cause damage to anyone.* These self-satisfied people do not know that man is not in the world to merely abstain from insulting, deceiving, robbing, murdering, and damaging his neighbour, but they should know that he who does not gather, scatters - and thus such people, by wasting time otherwise, scatter out the little good that they have, hence the Protestant truth: He who has little will lose the little if he does not always try to collect new things and carry them to the pile. That's what it means to say: You are in the world to gather the fruits for eternal life. For the one who brings no fruit when he enters the spirit kingdom, will not have the eternal life of happiness and the delights of heaven. And these fruits are works which one exercises out of love and mercy for one's poor and sick neighbour. For these, one receives eternal life or heaven as a reward.

3. With the mere faith in God and calling Him the good Father is no help to Me and you. I want to see the fulfillment of My commandments and teachings by you, only then will you be justified before Me; - but not with your dreamed justice before Me.

4. Many people rob widows, orphans and their neighbours of their rightful possessions; - how many indulge in arrogance with their wealth and waste it in the most sinful way and cause their brothers and sisters to suffer misery and distress, who desperately call for help to heaven; - how many murder the youth by bad examples of their lives; - and how many are stingy with the spiritual endowments which they should utilize for the good of all men and keep them only for themselves and their kind, instead of making them the common property of all men and thus spiritually and materially promoting prosperity. All such people walk the wrong way of life and not the way that God has marked out for them.

5. The number 666 in Revelation of John chapter 13, verses 11-18. This number indicates the love of the beast from the earth. I have already explained this number in dictates to Jacob Lorber, so I will point it out to you (ChtS. 21, p. 117; - 133; - 135, old edition) and only mention the most important here.

6. The animal from the earth is called "the industry" and its number is 666, which is distributed as follows:

so it is:
600 = self-love of the manufacturer,
60 = Love for the worker,
6 = Love for God.

How it should be:
600 = love for God,
60 = Love for neighbour,
6 = Love for yourself.

7. The spiritual ignorance of the educated, the materialists and the whole mass of humanity is to blame for the fact that the whole of humanity has so far wrestled and fought among itself: the rich oppressed the poor and lived at the expense of the latter; the poor, however, had feelings of revenge against their oppressors.

8. The poor, who were deprived of civilization, were exploited by the clever and therefore the poor despised the laws, because it unnaturally protected the rich and the clever and judged or condemned those who wanted to get justice and revenge out of their own power as evildoers or criminals.

9. So far you have encountered nothing but selfishness and arrogance in all corners and ends, and in all classes of men, therefore war, deceit, hypocrisy, falsehood, vanity, envy, hatred, jealousy, passion, scholarly pride, delusions of grandeur, persecution, pretense and pious exploitation of mankind, buried or stuck in spiritual ignorance.

10. But if everyone and all know and believe what the teaching of the love of God teaches, then the dead (in spirit) will rise from the graves (of sins) and shake hands for friendly brotherhood.

11. But the teaching of a righteous God and loving Father, they so far listened to as a pious fiction, therefore they did not follow the Biblical teaching of Jesus; - they are to listen to nature and this will speak to them - and then loveless men will come to the insight that they as children of the Creator of the earth have indeed come to enjoy this, but only as brothers and sisters living on the property of their original spiritual Father and Creator.

12. The people are *the poor blind*! They search for truth and are full of darkness, because the truth, to which they stretch out their hands, is devised by common sense and deposited in books by the world. I, Jesus Christ, am the only truth, because I Myself am God and who will not seek the truth with Me, he will not find it, because men are liars. Therefore do not go there to seek light where darkness of wisdom of understanding is enthroned, but come to Me, the eternal truth - come to God, your Father in Jesus, and he will become light and truth to you in abundance of Divine love.

252. Self-denial and the Order of God

1902, 25 January, Graz. Father Jesus declares that man should not impose self-loving denial on himself, but should only fulfill with love and devotion that which is prescribed or sent to him by God.

1. Man should never impose chastisements of the body on himself, which are not prescribed in Divine teaching, but he should only do what My teaching prescribes him.

2. It is not necessary that man does more than I prescribe but he is to strive to only conscientiously fulfill what I want him to fulfill, and that will suffice.

3. If it is necessary, I will certainly send the sufferings and diseases which remind man of Me and clean his soul of the worldly filth and lift it up to Me so that I may recognize him again as My child and take him into My grace.

4. That is why each one should only focus his attention on what I require him to do, and if he has done this conscientiously and well, why should he do more and do it differently than necessary?

5. These few lines are to be enough for you that you are to take care of nothing else than the fulfillment of what I Myself demand of you. When I now send you things that seem bitter and painful to you, then do not grumble about it and bear it willingly and out of love for Me, and you will reach your salvation; for I charge you as much as you need in proportion to bring about the purification of your soul.

253. Reading Books and Magazines

1901, 25 July, Graz. Father Jesus explains that the true faith that leads to God must not be compiled by philosophers, but be revealed to men by God Himself; - and warns against reading the books and newspapers written by worldly men.

1. Read no other books than those with spiritual-Divine contents, but mainly read those books which are dictated by Me - because nowhere but in them you will find the pure truth, in others however mostly very much lies and worldly or wrong things, invented by men, which is the chaff of the wheat.

2. Because the reading of all kinds of faith-books, when one is not completely proficient and thoroughly trained in My teachings, can easily seduce you, making you think according to worldly understanding that what you find good and right, is right. But just by searching and compiling doctrines from different religions, one gets into the dogmatic clauses or into the faith-statutes issued by men, which have no value with Me, because they are not a religion out of Me, your God, but a wisdom-religion, compiled from the wisdom of the wise of the world, because it is not revealed and given by God.

3. They are philosophical belief systems with which one can never reach Me as long as one has not completely stripped them off and accepted My pure religion of love, which I Myself have dictated and revealed to men.

4. Therefore do not fabricate philosophical human statutes for your religion because it is not My Divine Light of Love but human wisdom, without Divine love and truth, no matter how reasonable and good it may seem to the wisdom of understanding.

5. Also beware of diligent reading of political newspapers, for they are party papers full of lies, deceptions and poisons against spiritual life and drag you into the death of matter, that is, they make you partisan, raving for the worldly and hating the other party because the parties throw dung at each other.

6. Each magazine pursues its purposes and hates and defames the other party of all evil. But hatred and slander are not from heaven, but from hell, and lead the readers who pay homage to this faction-drive, to hell. With very few exceptions, all newspapers live off this poison, on which the readers die for the spiritual and Divine and head for hell.

254. The Sermon on the Mount

1896, January 10, Graz. Through A. Sch., Father Jesus explains the inner value of the graces in the Beatitudes of the Sermon on the Mount.

* The Sermon on the Mount is printed in the New Testament Matthew, chapter 5-7. I did not copy it, because fragments of it are explained in the following teachings and because the Father told me that I should only indicate where it is printed.

1. My dear child! Today I want to announce to you great things for all children and you shall give the dictation to all, for I want it to be read and followed. And so write:

2. In the sermon on the mount *, I said:
   - Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven!
   - Blessed are the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

- Blessed are the mourners, for they shall be comforted
- Blessed are they who have a pure heart, for they shall see God.
- Blessed are the meek, for they shall possess the earth.
- Blessed are they that hunger and thirst for righteousness, for they shall be satisfied.
- Blessed are those who have Me in their hearts, for they possess the Kingdom of Heaven!

3. In these words the kingdom of heaven is clearly before you, and they alone tell you what heaven and true bliss consist of. Heaven you carry within you, when you exactly fulfill the requirements which I have given you in the Sermon on the Mount. **Be poor in spirit**, i.e. recognize that you are nothing in yourselves, and what you are is only out of Me, then you have found Me and with Me, also the kingdom of heaven.

4. **Be peaceable!** For as in eternal bliss, in God true peace, eternal rest dwells, and in this very rest, the great preservation of the whole universe; so also the spirits of God's Spirit must fight for true rest and peace in their souls, which not the world, but only the Divine Spirit gives, then they are also the children of this very Spirit.

5. **Blessed are those who mourn**, for they will be comforted, i.e. blessed is he who sees his sins and feels true grief about them, not because he himself lost true happiness, but because he insulted Me. I let Myself be found again soon by these, and am the best support and the noblest comfort to him in the sufferings he has to bear.

6. **Blessed are also those who suffer persecution for the sake of justice.** Because who bids farewell to the world and clings to Me, he has the whole pack of the world on his heels and is sought by it in every way to hinder spiritual progress, and only with all his power, he can gradually free himself. Heaven is difficult to win and exactly because of this, it is also the highest reward of the spiritual fighter.

7. **Blessed are also those who have a pure heart**, for only in such a heart can I be found.

8. Also **blessed are those who seek the truth**, for they receive the flow of the wellspring of their spirit-water (which means "spirit of love") and it cannot stand and become stale and desolate, but remains in fresh vitality until it finally breaks through to the stream of the Spirit, and finds in it what it sought.

9. **Blessed are also those who are gentle** and willing to forgive their neighbour, for true love, humility and patience are shown in them.

10. **Blessed are** also - and this Word is the summary of all - **those who love Me eternally and have thus built in their heart a Temple for Me alone**. For there is the Ark of the Covenant of the New Testament of Love, which now approaches and shakes the whole world with a mighty breath. The ark of the covenant shall be restored as before, but spiritualized. The heart shall be it, and in it shall lie, not with the stylus of severity, but with the golden letter of love, written the law: Love God, for He loves you, love your neighbour, for He is of your Father, who is called God, Jehovah, Zebaoth. Amen.

(*Ev of John I*, 76; *Ev of John Chr I*, Chap 37 ff)

255. Divine 'Shall'-Advice

Year 32, May 26 ... Father Jesus declares that He never gave the people the laws of 'must', but only laws of 'shall', and that therefore, through learning the commandments of God, everyone should be left with the full freedom to accept them or not.

1. I (God) never gave a 'you must', but always only the free: 'Thou shalt'; My commandments and My Fatherly counsel! - For all the commandments which I gave to men were never actually laws, but only advice which My eternal Love and Wisdom gave to free men.

2. Out of people's opinion to show Me greater honour through the strict observance of laws, they sanctioned non-observance with temporal and eternal punishments. - Moses himself did many things to give the Jews even greater respect for the revealed will of God! Others did the same ... that the cause of Christianity now stands on such indescribably bad feet, is an inevitable consequence of the fact that men (*Ev. J*. Ch. 8, Chap. 20) have made mandatory laws out of My freely given advice.

3. But how can a law of necessity be reconciled with the most free will and with the equally free and unrestricted intellect of men? —

4. The free will will certainly gladly and always with the greatest thanks accept a bright enlightenment of his mind as a grace from above; but he will curse a strict law of 'must' with his will and mind! - For this reason, every man who is under a law of 'must', is judged almost immediately, and thus cursed! - *Whoever therefore will give man compulsory laws in My name will instead of My blessing, give them only the hard yoke and the heavy burden of the curse and make them new slaves of sin and judgement! —*

5. Therefore, when you spread the word, be careful that you do not put a new yoke on their necks, but that you make them free from the old. When man will recognize with a free mind and see the true light of My teaching and My best Fatherly will, then he will spontaneously, with his free will, make of it also a free compulsory law [for himself, out of himself] and act freely according to it, and that alone will also only give him the true welfare of the soul; but a mandatory law for the free will of a man given to him, is completely against My Divine order, because it only darkens man and never enlightens him; and secondly, because with the law of necessity the lawmakers immediately presume a higher power, which belongs only to them, therefore soon they become proud, arrogant and domineering, and to add to the statutes pronounced as purely Divine, also from a presumed Divine right to violence - before which their believers often have to tremble and shudder more than before God Himself - their own bad statutes as Divine and newly revealed will, and to insist on their observation as purely Divine commandments.

6. But from this comes dark superstition, idolatry, hatred of those of other faiths, persecution, murder and the most devastating wars. Men justify themselves with all sorts of sinister nonsense, that in the end they become of the opinion and belief that they are doing God a pleasant service when they commit the greatest transgressions and misdeeds against their fellow men of other faiths! And it is only the lawmakers who owe it; but for this reason they will surely occupy the first places among the most relentless lawmakers in the hell beyond, whose zealous servants they were here! - For in My heavens only the highest freedom reigns, but through it also the highest harmony is brought about through pure love and greatest wisdom. —

7. I have now faithfully and openly presented this to you and explained it to you full of light, and you now then also know freely, without the slightest inner compulsion, what you have to observe when spreading My gospel; but when someone from you or your disciples will want to act differently, then he will certainly be warned, but I will not therefore impose an inner compulsion on him. But the better men will soon notice whose spirit-child such a disciple is, by the rotten and bad fruits. —

8. But now that I have made this known to you, you should not believe that I thereby am abolishing the law given by Moses; for it is exactly the same thing that I am giving you back - in its original purity. - I only lift the old rusty 'must', and give you the old full freedom again - and it mainly consists of the work of the redemption of your souls from the hard yoke of judgement and the actual Satan, the prince of the night already known to you - and darkness, that from now on you are not to stand anymore under any mandatory laws in My name; - but just as I now give you all full freedom out of Myself again, so you also do the same in My name to your brothers! —

9. Baptize them in the name of My eternal love, which is the brother of the word, which is the Son who became flesh of the Father, and His Spirit of all truth, and thereby extinguish in them the old hereditary evil, which is now well known to you and a damnable 'must' of the law.

256. The Exaggerated Zeal of the Martyrs

The exaggerated zeal for faith is comparable to those people who died in ancient times as martyrs for My (Jesus) teaching; I did not demand this sacrifice from them; they would have been far more useful to Me if they had remained alive, - they certainly stand there as examples of highest sacrifice for themselves, but they would have been of more, even far more use to Me, had they not gone too far in their zeal for office, and they would have proved over a longer time, bit by bit, what they wanted to accomplish with their once-off heroic death. (This is an important hint for zealots.)

257. Spiritual and Material Fasting

1901, 25 April, Graz. Father Jesus explains about material and spiritual fasting, how He Himself preceded us as human beings with the example and how fasting is to be understood to be correctly applied.

1. The difficult thing in My dictates is that everyone wants to have it interpreted according to the wisdom of his ego, to what suits him, and therefore again and again, discord arises through disagreement.

2. Little children, let yourselves be guided because you are not mature [enough] to always clearly grasp My words. Do not assert your opinion taken from your wisdom as the only the right one! How does an ordinary reader want to know better than a medium; even a medium that is still wise - is not always reliable, because it reveals its own views. You are to think a little and investigate where a reliable medium is, who does not let himself, but only Me alone be valid, even if it would be against his view.

3. So also you are not pure with the word 'fasting', and therefore I will explain the truth to you Myself:

4. There is a spiritual fast, which is to live according to My - Jesus' - seven virtues in human form, where the soul crucifies its lusts, desires and passions and has to reject everything the soul wants to taste and enjoy through the five senses, but that is harmful for its spiritual life and progress.

5. But it is also a material fasting, an abstinence from the consumption of flesh according to the sixth commandment; and the fasting by not fattening the flesh, when it becomes voluptuous through good and much eating and tempts you to transgress the sixth commandment. You are indeed to nourish and care for your body to meet the daily demands that are placed on you; but if through a well-fed or fattened flesh you plague yourselves with thoughts of immorality, then you are to pray and actually materially fast, by denying yourselves the food to the extent that it is necessary for you to bring the

immoral flesh-spirits to rest, for so I did as Son of Man Myself, (Jesus' youth story, ChtS). IX, 299, 9. 10: Jesus often fought the good life and the lust for women by hard work, lean food, frequent fasting out of need and also out of free will, by prayers and by dealing with wise men; ChtS. 48 c p. 40) Therefore judge yourselves according to Me and you will be helped according to the flesh and wisdom. Amen.

258. Spiritual Repentance and Penance

1901, January 5, Graz. Father Jesus explains how to repent of sins and do penance to obtain forgiveness of sins, when one has offended God; and how to observe the same towards one's neighbour.

1. Every man commits sins in his earthly life, so everyone must repent. But there are divided views about repentance and therefore disunity among men in this direction. That is why I want to announce My will to you here, which everyone who strives to live spiritually, is to fulfill.

2. It is already explained elsewhere that one has to ask Me for forgiveness when one insults Me; and the neighbour, when one has insulted the neighbour; and how one has to make good to the neighbour everything what one has done badly against him, so it is also the case with Me: repentance and corresponding material and spiritual penance just shows that man is sorry for having insulted Me and everyone knows what he has to do to make up with Me again.

3. That I am not satisfied with merely ceasing to sin, is easy for you to learn from your own life. Are you satisfied when someone stops angering you, insulting you, cursing you, giving you all kinds of names, harming you, stealing from you, slandering you and doing everything imaginable that is most unpleasant to you?! Will you not repent, apologize and make a firm promise that the sinner will no longer do this to you? Surely you will demand it before you forgive him for his sins committed against you.

4. If you demand so much consideration and esteem for yourself, how can you make Me a fool who has to be content with it when you merely sin no more? Does it not mean: You will not be released until you have paid the last cent!? That is, in relation to the sins committed against Me: I will not forgive you until you have fulfilled your guilt to the last point. So confess your sins to Me with contrite repentance, show that you are truly sorry for having committed them because I have been offended by them, impose corresponding material or spiritual repentance for your sins on yourself, make a firm resolution to sin no longer, go over to love, love Me more than anything that was dear and precious to you so far, and your neighbour as yourself; fulfill the law of love according to all the prescriptions presented to you; and no longer sin, and it will be forgiven you.

5. The fulfillment of the law of love will bring you forgiveness of all sins and avoidance of sins will foster your spiritual growth. So this is spiritual fasting and spiritual repentance as I demand and expect from every human being towards Me and the neighbour.

6. He who then, after repentance and forgiveness of sins according to My 10 Commandments through Moses and according to My 2 Love-Commandments was done, in addition walks in the footsteps of My seven virtues as Jesus in human form, and in renunciation of all worldly things and denial of himself before the world, and keeping the special commandments I gave in Christian Theosophy, he then practices penance throughout his whole life, because he sacrifices everything worldly out of love for the glory of God by keeping and fulfilling everything I ask of him; and more is not necessary to do to attain eternal life if one does all this out of pure love for Me, the Father Jesus!

7. But a repentance that only arises because of the fear of the forthcoming punishment has no value before Me; because a genuine repentance valid before Me, has to arise out of love for Me, but not

out of fear that one will go to hell after death.

8. So it is also the case with penance; the man who wants to do penance has to do it out of free living faith and out of true love and reverence for Me, and because of Me also towards offended men, because only such penance has value before Me as God. But if man repents only out of fear of hell, then it is not out of living conviction and love for Me, but out of slavish fear, and therefore without use and value, even if it would be in long prayers, self-mortification and bodily anguish. —

259. The Gratitude of Love

Year 919 in Adam's time. God as Jehovah or Father explains the different stages of love according to which man thanks God, or out of love becomes grateful to Him for everything.

1. The dear Father spoke the following words to Lamech, the later father of Noah, who asked him how he could duly thank Him.

2. “Listen, My beloved Lamech - when someone recognizes the greatness of My mercies and favour in himself and recognizes it alive in himself, that his heart then forever ignites for Me, so much so that he feels inept in thanksgiving because of the greatness of My beneficence to him, and he also finds no words with which he wants to express his thanks, of which all his inner being stands in the highest and purest flames of love of his heart to Me; - see, this is the most pleasing thanks to Me! (It is a state of mind in which man is unable to find and say the true words of thanksgiving because of the grateful delight of his heart).

3. But it very rarely happens that a man gets into such a high degree of love that he could no longer thank Me because of the greatness of his love, and as this is a fact, therefore every man is supposed to, as long as he has not burned for Me in such a love that passes over into rapture, nevertheless always and always thank Me in all love and humility, be it inwardly in words of love or spoken with the mouth; for what comes from the heart is love, and there the words must be spoken, whether it be with the open or closed mouth, it remains the same.

4. But as it is with the thanksgiving with words, which rises out of you out of love and humility, so it is also with saying thank you through a deed. No-one can thank Me with an act as one thanks a man by doing a work and with it, the beneficence through the work, but what man does out of gratefulness to Me, must be through awakening of a great love and when then this love drives him to work for Me - and in this love to only promote My kingdom, be it through spreading My love-teaching, through instruction of those who seek healing or through works of neighbourly love - and this only out of love for Me and through Me to the neighbour, because I dwell in the neighbour and he is My child, see, such a deed of gratitude - because it is done out of love and not out of the dry gratitude of a man, is always dear to Me and well appreciated by Me.

5. For the true intimate love, which is not satisfied with loving Me alone, but whose heart expands outward and seeks a greater field of love-activity, because mere loving and words of love no longer satisfies itself, but wants to increase this love, which can only happen outwardly to the neighbour, whether material or spiritual - see, such a love is heavenly, is Divine, because I do the same day after day and all the time!

260. The Balance of Righteousness is in the Commandment

1901, June 3, Graz. In the fulfillment and omission of the commandment lies the blessing and reward or curse and punishment.

1. The time of My intervention into the fate of the world and of men has dawned. I have announced to you My Second Coming and the Last Judgement in the *"Holy Trinity"*, which must precede as cleansing of the earth before I transform it into a paradise.

2. The world is pure hell and people are devils in it. Fleshly you still look human, but highly spiritual, as I and My children see you, with the exception of those who form My new plant nursery, you are tearing animals and snakes full of evil vices and passions.

3. I do not come to you as a punishing judge, but as a loving Father with My pure and authentic teaching of Christ. And that is where the judgement begins for you: If you become believers in the teaching, humble and willing to accept it out of love for Me, and live and act according to it, I can bless you, give you grace, and accept you as My children, and establish a paradise in you and around you. That would be the reward and blessing in your deeds.

4. But if you become rebellious, cursing and grumbling against My orders - then you yourselves trample with your feet on My offered favour, and the result will be that I cannot take care of you and that through this, you yourselves will conjure up the curse and the punishment as the result of the evil actions over you: You will create for yourselves purgatory on earth, but hell after death; while the obedient children acquire spiritual and material Paradise and will no longer taste death, for death will also cease with the cessation of sin. You are free to choose the good or the bad, the judges and the creators of your cause, are yourselves! —

261. Jesus, Bridegroom of the Soul

I as your Soul Bridegroom am very jealous, and therefore watch very reluctantly when you speak of worldly things instead of Me.

1. My Children, you already and anew find the above saying printed in the books of My Teaching given to you; but what good is it to Me if you know My Teaching but do not follow it - do not want to make it alive?

2. My Evangelist Matthew (18:20) says: "Wherever two or three are gathered together in My name, there am I in their midst".

3. Behold dear children, the teaching that I once gave is the same that I now repeat: when you come together, you shall come together because of Me and not because of worldly or material conversation. And what do you do? Usually the opposite, I am only mentioned incidentally, but [I am] not the main subject of your conversation. And yet it is impossible to make you happy as long as I am not your love - therefore your main object of thoughts, desires, words and acts of neighbourly love through Me.

4. Dear children, be quite serious to regard Me as your love; because as long as you do not love Me, your inner being will not encourage you to direct the conversation towards Me, and that is a measure by which you can judge yourselves and your brothers and sisters. You must be really sad if you

consider this measure! I am not saying that you are not allowed to speak [about] anything else, but the worldly should not be your main conversation, because I am regarded as a 'stepchild', let alone as your love. And - and - dear children, do you know that I charge this to you as an offence of love against Me?

5. Be not only gentle, but also wise for [the sake of] your spiritual existence. The time of trial and grace is short, but repentance is long! Therefore heed this admonishing words of the loyal Bridegroom of your soul, and become diligent doers of love and not lukewarm and lazy followers of the spiritual way into a better future that I would not have to exclude you because of your laziness, instead of making you happy.

262. The Relationship of the Soul to the Spirit of God as His bride

1904, August 24, Zurich. Father Jesus explains the relationship of the soul of man to the Spirit of God and why it is called the bride of Christ.

1. The glorious truth that the soul of man is a bride of Christ, would have to fill every man with joy in his inner being; because the meaning of this truth elevates man far above all earthly things, namely to those bright heights where the New Jerusalem begins, for there is the dwelling place of My most holy Divinity.

2. Little children, this honour of being a bride of Christ, transcends all human concepts because it rises above the comprehension of earthly man, and that is why men put so little emphasis on this highly significant term.

3. The soul, as the product of the Spirit of God, formed from the fine-spiritual of matter, enjoys manifold spiritual designations: the primordial man called it silâ, that is to say the "light" or the "lamp", - the Slavics calls the spirit 'Duh' ("breath" or "puff") but the soul female Duša, that is to say "spiritess"; - the Greek called it 'psyche', which also means "spirit"; the Romans called it 'anima' from "to love" and 'imâ', the female suffix of substantiation, together 'animâ urlatin', "love" therefore the feminine of the 'animus' in man, which means courage, heartiness, the wisdom of the soul-power.

4. So you see that in all four main languages of Europe of antiquity, the soul was characterized as a female spirit over against the spirit, as love, as a light of love over against wisdom, or understanding in man.

5. This enlightenment is correct, for from it you see that the ancient peoples had a much deeper and more spiritual view of the nature of the soul than today's.

6. Now we ask: Why is the soul of both the man and the woman called female, since the soul of the man is formed quite differently and equipped with different feelings? See, this is because in both, love is placed as the main purpose of life; because both are called to witness out of love; to love one's neighbour and to glorify and praise God above all things in their hearts.

7. This is the main value of the soul, because it is to include everything in the realm of love for God, for one's neighbour, for one's own reproduction, as well as in the loving spiritual exaltation of one's personal ego, and to strive to bring about perfection, refinement and spiritualization.

8. Through the fulfillment of these tasks, man is spiritualized and deified in the power of the soul. Now that the Spirit of God is in the heart of the soul as the the Creator of the soul, is God, Father and Saviour Jesus, to whom it owes everything and Who also teaches it, guides it and strives to bring it

ever higher in the spiritual, therefore, it is its task and duty of gratitude to also love this Spirit of Love of God, who loves it unspeakably, and guides it towards love, intelligence and vitality.

9. This is therefore the relationship between the Spirit of God and His bride, the spiritess soul, or love.

263. One for All, All for One

1901, March 2, Graz. Father Jesus declares that equality and brotherhood is achieved through love combined with wisdom among men, because these two virtues united, form the truth in man, transforming the world of hell into a paradise of the children of God.

1. It is the snake of selfishness and self-love among men that did not let the noblest intentions of divine love emerge, because the anti-Christianism of the Church and the State already suppressed this in its seed.

2. But now a time has dawned in which I am Jesus, as your God, and also spiritual Leader, also your King and Lord - and the concept "One for all, and all for one", as it arise out of Me through My children, will now become a reality.

3. I am the Life and the original Idea from which all good and honest ideas of men emerge, and so also the truth that none of My children enjoys and are preferred regarding the interests of the whole of mankind.

4. Already the Divine truths: equality (Is 40:3; Luke 3:5) and brotherhood (Matt 23:8,9) contain the meaning that all people should consider themselves as one body in holy love and should reach out their hands to each other, so that all may be well and no-one may suffer want.

5. So the world could become a paradise and all people would feel happy; for only Love paired with Wisdom is the Divine truth. Therefore unite love and subordinate wisdom to it and make of them both the truth which surrounds you, and your hearts ignite in Divine Love, that you, as children of one God, may exalt yourselves in a sublime way above all matter and the Divine virtues that are in My little child, dwelling in the heart of your soul, so that the kingdom of the Eternal Love from the heaven of your hearts, can step through you into the material world, and refresh the world with its Divine breath.

6. If the cooperation of all towards one single aim: to make love and wisdom the truth, be the thought and desire of all men on earth, then My blessing hand will stretch out over the meadows of the earth and bless your work and aspirations, and your earth will rise out of the dark miasms of hell of selfish serpent-spirits, and become a light-world of the children of God, embracing all the love which is your God and King Jesus.

264. Jesus is the Way, the Truth and the Life!

1901, 27 November, Graz. At the Last Supper in the year 33, on March 24, Jesus spoke the decisive words: "I am the way, the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father but through Me". (Joh. 14:6)

1. I said these words to My disciples when they did not know Me [well] enough yet; for they regarded

Me as the Son of God but not as the Father Himself, Who - in this carnal human form - was called Jesus instead of Jehovah. Thus I wanted My disciples to remember the name Jesus as the basic principle of Divine Love. The name Jesus is thus the inner love of God, which came into the world under this name to redeem its children from the sins of hell.

2. Every person who wants to reach the childhood of God - the heart of God the Father - must acknowledge Jesus Christ as the redeeming love of God, thus acknowledge God the Father Himself, otherwise he can never become the child of God, but only a blessed spirit, but only as a child of God, can he see God the Father in Jesus.

3. But he who regards Jesus only as a worldly sage, will never be able to see God, for no-one can see God and live (Exodus 33:20), save in My love in the likeness of Jesus, which I created to approach My children, and make them happy through the body of Jesus.

4. Therefore, children, you well understand that I as Jesus am the way to the Father, to the truth and therefore to life and therefore also I Myself am the way, the truth and the life, because My Spirit is the whole fullness of the Spirit of God. (Col 2:9) Therefore do not enforce your understanding of the world, but believe Me and live according to My revelations, which I announce to you, they lead you to Me and therefore to the all-gratifying love of God. Amen.

265. Luxury, Arrogance and Servitude

1902, October 5th, Graz. Father Jesus explains the sad conditions in some families, always because of luxury, arrogance, megalomania and ambition, treating servants like slaves; and [He] announces the judgement He is imposing on those with heartless nobility in the spirit realm because of these vices.

1. Dear children, there are families where there is a great luxury, halls and salons and a great arrogance. In such families, if they are less rich than arrogant, the servants have hell; because the "your graces" often do not know out of sheer nobility and arrogance that the servants are also humans and indeed equal to them before Me. The poor servants are regarded and treated as slaves of labour. One hires one servant because you can't keep and pay two, but he is driven to work for two, often three, from early in the morning until late at night.

2. The floor needs to be rubbed or wiped; the dishes have to be polished every day, like new, yes often better than new; - the 'your grace's' hand has to be kissed with a lot of 'kiss the hand's! From early till late, the servant are in torment, observing every step and move in fear and anxiety of the "gracious Madam", so that nothing is missed and forgotten!

3. At every entrance into the room where the "her grace" sits, one must knock, because that belongs to the majesty of the lordship, - but 'her grace' never was properly enough educated, that she too would knock if she entered the sleeping chamber, which is often only a dark kitchen. - The 'graces' still act today like the ancient Romans: 'Quod licet Jovi non licet Bovi' that means: We are gods, the servants are domestic cattle: What is permitted to us, is not also permitted to the "cattle".

4. There is never enough work done, never enough rubbed, never enough cleaned, never enough wiping of clothes, shoes and rooms, never enough dusting done in the outer corners; always and always the madam finds something to criticize and scold and tease and call the servant lazy, careless, dirty and the like!

5. If the servant dares to answer something in his defense, then the fire is in the roof! There is scolding, the poor creature has the Levites read; the men complains; the visiting coffee-gossip sisters are told and excited about the bad servants who are void of all virtues and full of all malice and

worthlessness!

6. The 'your graces' are the angels of goodness; the servants are the wicked rabble who will not work and are devoted to this or that evil.

7. There are families where the servants only get what the "gracious lordship" left over for the house slaves to eat - sometimes also leftover soups from the plates of the children and adults poured back into the soup bowl, and the bad pieces of meat and half-gnawed bones, because everything is good for the servants, they do not even deserve that, is the opinion of 'the graces'.

8. How often must some servants ascend and descend the high stairs to perform all the capricious services of the 'your graces'? From early in the morning until late at night, the slaves doing the housework, have to struggle, rub and wash, and in the end the madam comes in her boundless demand to criticize the shortcomings and mistakes of the work done, while the servant's feet hurt from kneeling or leaning forward, his hands from the effort and the body from "too much of the good" of heartless imposition! Woe! Woe! The poor think in their despair, crying out: 'It can not be worse in hell!'

9. Even more annoying are those arrogant dames (Dam-e is a Sanskrit French word, it means "housewife") who are not ladies, but tyrants taken over by arrogance, who starve the poor servants much, because they have too little to eat; and for every transgression of the order introduced in their household, give slaps, punches and animal-names! For one does not speak and engage with the servant, but commands him, and he has to do it in silence, even if he is often payed far too little, and is even reduced by deductions due to damage caused by chance or misfortune.

10. Herewith I have described the sufferings of the servants, though not completely, but rather precisely. But now it is My turn to tell you from My side the truth how such treatment of the neighbour is regarded in My Divine eyes:

11. Luxury and pride are in My eyes - especially when pride also rests on luxury - two vices which find punishment in the second or even in the third hell. Your luxurious tinsel work, which you hang on your decorated and perfumed body and strut around with like a peacock, is replaced in hell by dirty, torn rags on a dirty and nasty body, which barely cover the nakedness or even the nakedness that should be covered. There is all decency, arrogance and luxury turned into filth, torn shreds and stench, so that the arrogance and megalomania on earth may be chastened by well-deserved punishment.

12. As the servant is treated, so am I directly treated, because I, as the Spirit of God, Jesus Christ, dwell in the breast of every man. What you unjustly and hellishly did to the poor servants you did to Me, for I sit enthroned as a just judge in every man where I cannot dwell as a loving Father. Woe betide you infernal 'your graces', if you will not heed My enlightenment here and undertake to do differently with Me, the just Judge, in My maltreated children - namely to proceed humanely! - Hell will become your future home and the devils will become your masters, namely mostly the servants mistreated by you, who will repay you everything, the capital including interest and compound interest, into their revenge and rage, because through their hellish treatment you have turned them into nasty, revengeful spirits of hell, who will repay you the injustice done to them.

13. Look, that's My office of judge! You are to come to know Me that I am right in everything and therefore I leave the office of judge and the repayment to those who have themselves received the same from you before. I will not punish anyone; but I will administer Divine justice in such a way that neither the offender nor the maltreated can complain that I am unjust. - Therefore I say at the end, "Convert yourselves and repent before it is too late!"

14. Treat therefore the servants as your brothers and sisters and always remember that they are My Divine children and I, your God and Father dwell in them and look at your treatment of the servant with the eye of the Judge!

15. And you servants! Also the same regulation applies to you as to the employers, I also stand before you as Judge, and judge how you serve your employers and you will give account to Me of your deeds and your actions. For both the employers and the servants are presided over by My truth as Judge: Whatever good or bad you do to the least (or greatest), it is as if you had done it to Me personally, because I Myself am in every person as receiver, but also at the same time as Judge and giver of rewards.

266. Appearance of the Cross

In people who strive to live spiritually, it sometimes happens - when they anger God by directly acting against God, by criticizing or reasoning about the word or its basic meaning from their wisdom of reason; or maltreating his neighbour or the servants, whereby the Divine Word of the doctrine of love is dragged through the dung - that the unjust man suddenly sees a cross with or without Jesus' body on the wall or wherever, but it disappears just as quickly. This means: God indicates to man that he is crucifying Him by doing so, because in his life and actions, he is violating Divine commandments and teachings.

267. Death of the Soul

1902, July 4th, Graz. Father Jesus discusses the sad state of the human soul when it enters the spirit realm, when it has only served matter in earthly life.

1. My dear children! It is My will that you have a right light in everything as far as spiritual life is concerned and so listen:

2. Every man has two sides in life, one is material, the other spiritual; the material side draws him to matter, the spiritual to the spiritual; there is a constant struggle between these two natures in man.

3. The material side is all that matter draws to itself and this is: Man wants to enjoy the world in eating, drinking, and in all kinds of entertainments and pleasures that are offered to him; he just does not want to deny the body anything that is pleasant, and this is his worst offence against himself, because matter is the enemy of the spiritual. But this offence against oneself consists in man making the soul completely material through fleshly desires and dying to the spiritual, because the spiritual is exactly the opposite of the material.

4. When man now strives only for matter, all spiritual dies in him and through it he becomes dark and disinclined against everything that does not bring material advantages. It then depends on what man will work out of himself for the sake of these material desires, and exactly this one-sidedness in relation to life is the death of the spirit in man.

5. So when such a man dies, he comes into the spirit realm as a homeless beggar and has nothing at all that would have a spiritual value for him. He is a stranger to everything in the spirit realm; for the flesh, which he so diligently provided for and abundantly cared for, lies in the grave and rots; and the soul, which became one with the flesh in earthly life, stands there without light, without knowledge and without strength to become something of itself, it is like a little ignorant child, not at all knowing how to help itself.

6. In this loneliness, it clings to everything that it has ever heard and experienced and thinks about what it should do and begin, because nothing really appropriate can present itself to it - therefore it is

most pitiful and because it is still the same as it was in life, it does not want to hear anything, nothing about the spiritual; and this state of the soul, is the true death in which it buried itself. Amen.

268. The True Stone of Wisdom

1902, November 24, Graz. Father Jesus describes the high value of love as being the true stone of wisdom for a good child who seeks and finds Jesus, the Father of love, as his ideal.

1. Glowing love from the surging heart is a 'stone of wisdom' when it seeks and finds its ideal in God. For love makes life happy and turns human hearts into a heaven of bliss and joy. Who wouldn't research and search for this 'stone of wisdom'? Who would rather be stuck in the darkness of hell, which develop out of daily care for material life?

2. High spirits of all zones glow in the love which they bring to their Father Jesus, and make all their surroundings happy with their radiant light of love. Everything that breathes love makes its surroundings happy and there is nothing that love does not want to make happy.

3. Everyone can form this 'stone of wisdom' in himself, everyone can improve it until it becomes a gemstone, even a diamond. So man can, through his love, become a shining star in creation, because man must become a god through love, for pure love is the only love God recognizes as equal to His being.

4. Turn therefore your soul completely to love, humility and meekness; for this brings you Divine peace, spiritual peace of heart and heavenly bliss, because I, Jesus, dwell in your breast; therefore if you want to come to God, go into your heart so humbly and full of conviction to the love that is Jesus, the Father of love.

269. The Enlightened Soul

1903, February 5, Graz. Father Jesus declares that the enlightenment of the soul happens through the love for God and neighbour, which comes from the true doctrine of Christ.

The enlightenment of the human soul happens through the love for God and the neighbour when the soul achieves it through the Divine teaching, because the spiritual love also forms the spiritual light in man. But if man receives the training of his soul through the world's wisdom-teachings of the philosophers, then his soul is indeed very wise in the way of the world, but worldly wisdom darkens all love, hence all light in man - and he will grow out of this world-wise training as a dark spirit of hell.

270. Bliss

1851, October 2nd, Graz. Father Jesus illuminates the contradictions between head and heart and gives the instruction that one should not do something oneself, for which one is not yet mature, but one should train oneself and mature, in order to then become an instrument of God.

1. Believe Me (Jesus) - the heart full of love for God and for the brothers and sisters, and an always activity-enjoying and activity-filled mind, will establish the true eternal happiness for every individual as well as for all people as a whole.

2. Your heaven lies in your heart and will be revealed to you when you - and the more you - have mastered the above basic principles of all life.

3. Behold, in the *head* sits the soul's cold, calculating *mind* and his henchman *reason*, which is like a far reaching arm, all eyes and ears for the soulish physical mind.

4. *The mind* extends this arm more and more, and finally wants to seize the whole infinity with it.

5. This vain endeavour of the intellect, however, is the very *dangerous* quality of the soul, which brings death and *judgement*, in and of itself, and which is described by the word 'arrogance'.

6. *But love rests in the heart, as a spirit, taken from the Spirit of My Heart.*

7. But this spirit, like My own highest, already has innumerable things in it that contain infinity from the greatest to the smallest.

8. When now the lofty mind, recognizing the vainness of its foolish effort, its aforesaid arm, which is its reason, or more clearly speaking, its capacity for reason, instead of stretching it out into infinity, and wanting to reach the unattainable, humbly and modestly withdraws, then this arm no longer stretches out vainly into infinity, but into the heart, when the dwelling of My Spirit in man directs and guides it; then one makes a 2 to 3 span long journey from head to heart, and in such a way reaches the true, eternal life, the true blessed rest of it, and then finds everything there together, that contains the whole infinity.

9. This then of course only gradually becomes apparent, as one [thing] after another is revealed, just as a plant [emerges] from the small germ hidden in the centre of the seed.

10. But whether the seed of My works will grow out of this germ lying at the bottom of the spirit sooner or later and richer or less richly in development and maturity, depends only on the strength of love towards Me, as well as on love towards the neighbour; because the love of the heart for Me is like the light and the warmth of the sun, and the love for the neighbour is the necessary fruitful rain.

11. "But if sun and rain work together in a just order, every seed will surely thrive and mature in the near future. For a better understanding of this matter however, I will give you an easily comprehensible picture, so see!

12. "It is as if a father took his little children out into his garden in the summer, which is full of trees laden with ripe fruit.

13. The children now become full of desire, and want to climb up the trees immediately and pick the fruits with great haste and eat in excess.

14. But the wise father says to the inexperienced little children, "Little children, stay with Me, and if you were to go up into the trees with your weak powers and take the fruit, you would easily fall from

the tree in which you are, break your hands and feet, or even fall to death.

15. But I and my servants are great and strong enough and know how to evaluate the fruits of the trees; so wait calmly, and I myself will get them from the high trees, and they will lay them in your bosom; then you will be able to enjoy them calmly without any effort.

16. But when you will be big and strong in the future, then you will also become masters of the high trees. - Do you understand this picture? (ChtS. 42B, II. 422-4)

271. The Father and His Children

1902, 17 November, Graz. Father Jesus portrays His action as God and Father in nature and among His children, and opens to them the sight of His guidance among His children, who from the depths of Satan, rise up into the heavenly heights to children of God and therefore to gods and heirs of God.

1. The glorious sun proclaims the holiness of Divine love for the children who, in the valley of tears, walk the paths of their thoughts and works that lead them in two ways. Some walk in the spirit of love for their Father, who lovingly looks at them from the height of His grace; others walk the paths of their own reason and walk like the lost sheep without the shepherd among the many ravishing animals in human form, which they threaten to take at any moment into their midst and to kill it spiritually with the daggers of their poisonous speeches and works, which they display in the circle of their surroundings.

2. Woe betide the unpleasant sheep, which lose themselves among a herd of this kind of rapacious animals, for they are lost, if they do not leave immediately, otherwise the stupefying smell of poison takes over, that they indulge in it as in opium-ecstasy and perish miserably through the darkening of their soul.

3. Oh children! With how much sorrow do I look at your timidity around such rapacious wolves from the depths of hell, how you feel externally carefree and well, while the darkness of hell creeps up on your soul and spreads ever more strongly around you and envelops you.

4. Yes, if you could look at this with spiritual eyes on yourself, you would flee from it like from a mugger who wants to murder you and rob your possessions. - But you are spiritually blind at home, at church and the worldly school and do not see the abyss of hell threatening to take you into its domain and make you unhappy.

5. Dear children, you should always think: Where did we come from, why are we in the world, where will we go after the death of our bodies? For today there are enough means to convince you that you have an immortal soul, which lives on after the death of the body and tastes the reward of pleasures or pains, as it has lived in the world and made itself ripe for paradise or hell.

6. You are human beings, which in the original German language is *man-isk-ki*, which means 'thinker, thinking', or 'thinking beings', and you should be faithful for this high name and think like higher beings in creation, which is the goal of your coming, being here and going forward, so that you are also clear about your being in the world, and walk on ways worthy of your high descent.

7. As thinkers you are mainly to think about of what lineage you are and what you can become when you heroically fight your way through the dangers of life against the attempts of evil, which is in your flesh and threatens to destroy you and pull you into its dark net of hell.

8. You know that you consist of the soul of Satan and that you are therefore full of evil qualities and

vices that slumber in you and wake up for the slightest reason and take control over you. That is why you always have to be on watch and nip every thought in the bud so that wishes, words and deeds do not arise from it, which draw you out of the light into darkness.

9. Despite the fact that your soul and your flesh-body consists of the soul of Satan, which is solidified into matter, you are also My property there, because Satan's soul was taken out of Me but then through disobedience and lack of love, it was made malicious and dark, therefore you are called through the guidance of My Divine Spirit, who dwells in the heart of the soul, to bring back to Me in atoms, the soul of Satan (*recte* Satana) through ennoblement, spiritualization and deification and thus also as children from the soul of Satan, to elevate to children of God and to take up again the high Divine rank of childhood, that once existed in the primordial foundation of times.

10. That is why I call you by the love-name "My children", because you came from Me and [are] *en route* back into Me to enter the house of your Creator and Father. That is why, under the veil of oriental floral language, I call you the "Lost Son" who goes home to be taken back to the Father's house.

11. The prodigal Son represents the entire world-creation of the innumerable worlds of suns, planets, and stars, and until all of their spirits, solidified in matter, are released into the flesh, the return of the prodigal Son goes on and on, and it takes innumerable millions of years.

12. By knowing that you yourselves are Satan in miniature, therefore let yourselves be led so that you redeem yourselves according to the Divine rules of life, which I present to you here especially through Christian Theosophy, through which you reach out of the sad states of matter into the bright heights of the spirit of Divine love and so redeem yourselves from matter, which forms hell for you.

13. Eternal love works and creates in the circle of its children, who have already gone through the path of ennoblement, spiritualization and deification, and these are in overjoyed states of the supreme heaven and dwell around their Father and Creator, where they indulge in the greatest pleasures of Divine love.

14. That you notice nothing spiritual in the flesh, is owed to the fact that matter is so coarse and thick that it does not let the spiritual of the soul through to unfold and expand outward. You notice this fact with the sick who are very emaciated, but of a good spirit, that they are often clairvoyant in such morbid conditions, and see things which they did not see before the illness, and also do not see any more when they are again healthy and well fed. That is why you are to judge yourselves accordingly and think about the situation.

15. But this state of ignorance and uncertainty will from now on come to an end because where the Light of the world becomes ruler and king, the Light also has to reign, that is why I have given you so much new favours through the books, which I release through Schumi, that all darkness will disappear and you will see that your spirit is surrounded by spirits and that you are only in the flesh for the purpose of reaching your goal more easily and at the same time redeem the soul of Satana and bring it back as your property to the Creator and Father.

16. The goal of man is his own deification. Formed out of the depth of the abyss, you ascend out of the soul of Satan and are taken and guided by My Spirit into the circle of His activity. And there it goes askew and crooked, over thorns and thistles and bumpy ways of life, always fighting for existence.

17. I must, as the life in you, take part in everything, because I do not function as judge and God, but only as Father and Leader and announce to you through your conscience My advice or My unwillingness.

18. Thus man walks forward in the flesh-and spirit-life and often hardly knows that there is a God, often also not if he had averted his ears and senses from the good teachings of faith. But I do not let

go, and wander Myself into the deepest hell with the criminal and warn him as I have warned him on earth about his grey deeds of hell.

19. Sooner or later he awakes from his spiritual death and sleep and starts to lend willing ears to My gentle whispers of conscience - and once that has happened, then he again goes from the deep back up into the heights, from the darkness of the ground, to the light of the spirit, up to God, to the light of life and love.

20. Man and Spirit recognize in God his central light and his Creator and therefore strive to Him who is everything to him, and who has become his only hope in the storm of the roaring sea of life. From God he passes over to the Father and finally recognizes himself as the child of the Almighty God, who has become a loving Father to him.

21. The names 'Father' and 'child' connects both to an intimate chain of love. Man recognizes that he must be something sublime, something great, because God Himself allows Himself to be called 'Father' by him.

22. Yes, children, it is indeed something so sublime in these two names, 'Father' and 'child', that you can hardly suspect it, but under no circumstances can you grasp it properly. Think about what God is! Think of His omnipotence of the gigantic world creation, which He created out of Himself and put into existence and holds in His hands. - Think of the splendour of His holiness and love, which gives light to all the worlds of the sun and the stars - and also think of the infinite love of God, which creates and works eternally and leads back what Satana corrupts - into heavenly glory.

23. And this eternal, omnipotent, all-wise, omniscient, exceedingly holy and loving children of God the Father, are called 'you'. Can there be anything higher than being called a child of the Almighty God?

24. God is your Father, therefore you are called to one day become what God your Father is - gods, because [you are] children of God. This inheritance is the most high thing man's tongue can pronounce; it is something so sublime that no man can comprehend and no pen can describe what awaits you when you will follow Me and do what I teach you here.

25. What human reason can comprehend the greatness of the gigantic realms over which I want to appoint you as heirs, because [you are] My children! What is the tiny earth against the other gigantic creations? And what effort would a man put in to be a sole ruler for just one lifetime? While you will be eternal rulers and kings and act as gods over the kingdoms in which I will appoint you! —

26. Therefore, children! Let it be your concern to fulfill My Divine will to the best of your knowledge and ability, so that I too can one day fulfill My promise to you. Amen. (Cf. the household of God (ChtS. I.) 266, 5-26; - 269, 4-26; - 272, 8-13)

272. The Children of Heaven

1902, April 6th, Graz. If you do not become like children: innocent believers, sinless and childlike good beings, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven.

1. This truth, which I told the apostles, remains eternally true and in effect.

2. People don't understand that you just have to be sweet and childlike to become a child of heaven. They do not want to be children and I only want nothing but children - that is, people with a good childlike mind - in heaven, because I have only opened a childlike heaven, but not a heaven of the clever and the wise! —

3. I have given you in this book the teachings which aim to make of you children of love; for if you do not convert from your wisdom of understanding and become small in being like children, you cannot attain your spiritual goal! - Therefore you are to make every effort to become childlike in faith and not to waver whether My words immediately come true or not - because you never know where you stand, whether I am maybe testing you; whether the answer was a captious one coming from a spirit, or whether it was a foreign answer and not Mine.

4. Here applies: despite it not coming true in the time when you thought and believed it would, that you do not waver and lose faith in Me. In this respect you must be children, but also heroes in faith and never hesitate or despair because I want to have children and heroes in faith. - Simon son of Jonah was a hero of faith, so I gave him the nickname "Cephas", that is Peter or Rock, and so you too should be rock-solid believers like Peter, and not let go of the firm faith whether it happens or not in the time when you expect it to happen.

5. Your thoughts must be of innocent nature as the children are, who still have no knowledge of the sins of the body and flesh, and you are to become like them in innocence, by stifling the thoughts of sin in the germ and not only start to suffocate them when you have already lent them willing senses for a while, because through that, spiritual sins were already committed.

6. You are to be childlike sweet and tolerant and not hold any grudges, also not make any wise presentations out of yourselves, but think nothing bad and be devoted to each other in love. You shall also never present yourselves differently than your inner being is, so that the childlike may unfold in you, everyone should therefore well consider, that it is the truth; for he who does not speak the truth, always commits two sins: The lie and the deceit of his brother who thinks nothing bad.

7. You are therefore to be **unsuspecting, believing, loving one another in childlike simplicity,** and you are to be full of love, faith and hope towards Me so that My blessing of love towards you, may have the true effect because only when you become like children: unsuspectingly believing, chaste in thoughts, full of love and without resentment and grumbling - as children are to their parents, you are able to inherit and win the Kingdom of God, otherwise not; therefore heed My words and become what I want you to be!

273. Knowledge of Higher Spiritual Laws and Powers

1901, 25 March, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus that the higher spiritual laws and powers in creation are the tools of intelligence with which God, as the supreme law-giver and leader, creates and works in nature.

1. When men consider the whole world-creation, they have to see and recognize - if they are not spiritually darkened - that in the whole creation, there are higher spiritual laws and powers, which manifest themselves in the most varied ways.

2. But these are exactly the bearers of the whole spiritual life, which you notice in creation. When you now notice these and recognize these, that they conduct the world-creation, then the thought has to arise in you: What are these higher spiritual laws and powers, and who is their founder and leader?! And when you then think about it calmly and sensibly, it must occur to you that they are only machines and tools of a higher intelligence and omnipotence, which guides the whole thing like a skilled mechanic constructs a machine and guides it, so that it performs the tasks for which it was built.

3. So it is in nature, too. I am the Supreme Legislator and leader of the whole and nature is the machine with which I work with My will power and give it the necessary intelligences in individual components so that it germinates, grows, builds, transforms itself, blooms and bears ripe fruits. He

who regards nature in this way, regards it as an instrument of Divine love, wisdom and omnipotence, which make it a material reality.

274. The Earnestness of Life

1903, October 7th, Graz. The Father Jesus explains the seriousness of the times and admonishes that everyone should strive to come to the rebirth of the Spirit in order to live heavenly happiness on earth.

1. I, the eternal Sustainer of all life, am always concerned that My children receive the necessary teachings which lead them to Me. The higher you ascend spiritually or want to ascend, the greater demands I place on you; because the reward that awaits you when you comply with My will, My desire, cannot be compared with My demands, that you may receive the reward for it out of My hand - but the price is so great, that you cannot have any idea of it until you are in possession of this reward or price.

2. What I want you to take from this dictation is this: You are to take life so seriously as if you were always about to enter the hereafter and come to stand before Me! —

3. Think about what you would face when you would indeed stand before Me: You must now enter the hereafter to receive from Me the reward for your life?

4. Would you not think about your life so far full of fear and terror and say: 'Oh! I am not prepared for it, I never thought seriously about preparing myself for the hereafter'. Well, see, My children, this is only the transition to the afterlife; - what about your seriousness for My return to your earth, how about the preparatory work for your rebirth? Bad, isn't it? 'Yes, bad', you answer, and I confirm your quite correct answer; for the mere reading and knowing of My dictates is of little use to you, and also nothing, if you are not serious enough to live and act according to them.

5. The earnestness of time urges that I now come to you with the sincere desire: Children! Make no fun of My patience! For I want to see earnestness from you and therefore I say to you earnestly:

6. Dear children, start getting serious, do not make jokes and comedy for entertainment anymore; for this is trivial! Therefore also avoid places and people where such are common practice for entertainment and amusement. You are to imitate My virtues as My children, and it is written in the description of My person how it corresponds to the truth that nobody saw Me laughing, as an adult human being; - also, no-one ever saw and heard Me making a joke or a witty remark. —

7. I was friendly and presented a benevolent, inviting look - but not a laughing face - to My surroundings, and that instilled a high respect in everyone; for seriousness is a sign of reason and of the corresponding view of the situation.

8. Time is pressing - you are to become more spiritual; you are to have the virtues that I have, for Me to recognize you as My equal children when I come to earth to all My children.

9. Therefore make every effort to make good use of your short time, which is still granted to you, as long as it is still possible for you to make up for what has been missed, so that I can use you as My messengers among the remaining children of the world, and that you do not still have to work to cleanse yourselves when I already need to have you clean.

10. Flee every opportunity, which has an unspiritual effect on you, because rebirth is one of the greatest tasks and cannot be attained with the least carelessness against My commandments.

11. But from this you see how careless you are because you feel no progress, which clearly testifies that you do not act, live and walk according to My commandments.

12. Pick yourselves up once and for all and follow Me! It is My wish that you are to mature for the new kingdom, therefore read My dictates concerning this and think again whether you comply with My demand!

13. You say, considering your negligence, "Yes, the Father is merciful, he will certainly forgive us and take us with him in His grace."

14. No, My children, it won't be like this! I may forgive you your sins, but I cannot take you into the new Kingdom, into the forecourt of heaven; for the passions of committing the same sins that I forgive you cling to you like bad luck, and you would also then commit it, therefore either you stay until the end where you will have to go through all inconveniences, or I have to leave you in the cleansing outskirts (in desert, barren and infertile regions) of the new kingdom, where you have to prepare yourselves slowly to finally be admitted into the kingdom of love or to the rebirth of the spirit after you have accepted all good virtues. - That's how the hopes for the future stand for you! I repeat, make every effort to make full use of the time of grace given, in order to be immediately happy. Amen. —

275. The Spirit-Man

1902, 12 July, Graz. Enlightenment on how Father Jesus guides people through life to one day become children of God, and the description of books according to whose teaching - if man fulfills them - he can attain the highest formation and perfection as a spiritual man.

1. My dear children! People are formed from the lowest beginnings of life to a perfection which culminates in God, their Father.

2. We begin with a man of whom there have already been many - to be an example how a Divine child develops out of a devil, in order to understand the great task which has been set for man since his birth and which serves him for this purpose, to become once an accomplished spirit-man in the true sense of the word and to overcome all temptations of the world in which he is placed as if in an examination school of the flesh, and to gradually work his way up from a flesh-man to a spiritual light-man.

3. Let us suppose that someone has discarded everything Divine in himself through wisdom of understanding and has become a decided denier of God. But when one denies God, he also denies the existence of the soul, as well as the survival of the soul after death. For him there is nothing else but pure matter to which he clings and from which he wants to exploit as much as it is possible to live well and to participate in all the pleasures and attractions of life that the world offers him. He has thereby become a complete flesh-and-matter-human being, and knows no higher ego than himself. His belly is his god, but the world is the milking cow to sacrifice to this god and make him indulge in all the comforts of life.

4. Thus he lives into the day, becoming increasingly darker in spirit and wilder in the pleasures of the flesh, and thus no means is too vulgar for him to seize and exploit it for his own advantage. Neither theft, nor robbery, murder, deception, nor any other common means is bad for him if he is given the opportunity to continue and maintain his enjoyable life at the expense of the poor deceived, oppressed, exploited, bestolen or even robbed and murdered.

5. Once man has reached the point where he does not shrink from using any means to win money and things with which he can indulge his life in orgies, then he is a complete devil, a spawn of hell,

which necessitates the use of even mighty means to tame. For he has long since suppressed the warning voice of conscience by ignoring it and seeing it as the fear of free and unbound life instilled by parents, school and church, and therefore rejecting it.

6. Thus such a man lives godlessly, although endowed with his manners and outward appearances - in hiding a desolate life of immorality and mischievous meanness, which only plans on robbing his neighbour in secret and merely recognizes his own life as the sole beneficiary of self-preservation.

7. When such a man has arrived at the height of godlessness and I have a special cause to rescue him early from his hell, then My rule begins and one woe after the other breaks in and seizes him mercilessly and punishes and persecutes him until he comes to the insight that he is lost and no salvation exists for him anymore in the world.

8. So painful illnesses are sent to him, he suffers sustained losses in his financial undertakings until his fortune is gone. His friends leave him, because without money he is not their equals; his family is struck by this and that blow: misfortune, death, disease and adversity until the misery is finished. The 'your grace', who once drove around in equipage, harassed and maltreated the servant and had her hand kissed for hunger and continued work, has to take bushel and rubbing ravioli herself and earn her living with hard work for herself and her bread. The man moans in bed; the children are now hungry and suffer from this disease, then from that disease, because they have stored up disease substances in themselves through wrong upbringing and incorrect way of life, in a word, where once there was wealth, living in salons, eating delicacies and abundance of everything that makes life pleasant and cheerful - there now is poverty, misery, distress, hunger, and has only one poor dwelling under the roof or in the basement. Everything is gone, only the naked truth stares the despairing puzzled one mercilessly in the face.

9. Where God was never mentioned before, where the name God was something ridiculous and only good enough as a deterrent for servants to prevent them from thieving and badness, He is now often called upon, lamented to [about] the misery and asked for help in the great need. Where one used to mock prayer, one hears: "Children come and let us pray to God that He will give us work and health so that we can earn something and not have to starve." Pride through wealth has turned into humility, because it is always only through humility that we can move forward: God does not hear unless one humbly prays and asks; and people give neither work nor bread unless one humbly comes to ask for work and works diligently and sometimes also puts up with injustice. Life becomes bitter and angry, no star shines in the greatest misfortune.

10. This is how the transformation to the good has already happened. Instead of wealth, which bore witness to arrogance and idleness with all its virtuous and immoral passions and vices, life has been transformed into poverty, humility and diligence in work, where there is no more time, no more opportunity, no more money for worldly pleasures.

11. Now, by apparent chance, I let a friend of mankind be found who brings the true teaching of My Gospel to the family and explains it with zeal. The family members, humiliated by blows of fate and convinced by My love and mercy through answered prayers, soon understand the truth and begin to read My books diligently. But especially the father becomes aware of how much he has missed, and that only by this counteraction against the commandments of God, all the evil has befallen the family. This makes him soft and receptive to the truth and he begins another, a life opposite to the previous one and becomes a pious penitent in Christ's sense - that is, he begins to avoid evil and do good and becomes a religious leader in his family himself.

12. Such converts, to whom I also restore health at the right time, then get some suitable occupation, but in which they still have enough time to provide for the salvation of their family, and so a pious Christian family lives.

13. Instead of wealth, there is a decent livelihood; - instead of arrogance, there is humility; - instead of contemptuous hatred of ordinary people, they see only their own kind and feel one with them,

therefore charity is nurtured and preserved; - instead of waste and pleasure-seeking, everything turns into order and caution. - Since they must serve all, it is a commandment of self-preservation that they patiently endure the whims and biting words of other people and remain silent. - Since they themselves have gone through much hunger, misery and hardship, they understand the pain of being poor and hungry, and so they need to know nothing more than that the highest of God's commandments is the merciful love of neighbour, and then they gladly share with those poorer than they with all that they have more of; - And the commandments of God and their own experiences admonish them to a chaste life, and they are commanded to cultivate peace among themselves, in the family and towards their neighbour, through Christian teachings. Thus lives and acts such a family, converted by bitter experiences in life and converted to spiritual life.

14. The diligent reading of My teaching, praying and living and acting according to My commandments, spiritualizes the family by turning it to good, and if it continues in this way, it experiences more and more proofs of My favour. The frequent falling and rising from sin strengthens their intentions, until it comes to the point that one or the other sin is no longer committed; for man must never despair of his own strength and ability, that he is able to defeat something he has intended to conquer by struggle; - and so he also must not doubt My eternal and infinite mercy, that I again and again forgive him the sins committed when he has the firm intention to remove them from himself, therefore no longer to commit them. Every new fall from sin demands intense remorse, a request for forgiveness, and the firm intention to put even more effort in the future into not committing sin any more, but to avoid it according to practicality and to flee from it; for only such will be forgiven by Me, but the reckless sinners not - everyone should remember this well.

15. In this way, man progresses in the family or individually, until he has gradually stripped away all the vices, passions and blasphemies of sensual life.

16. But one should not think that this can be achieved in a few months or in one year, it takes years of diligent striving, repeated feeding of the soul with good reading; otherwise it will again become forgetful and lazy and soon again fall into sins and mistakes.

17. But when man has suppressed all vices and passions in himself - then the spiritual riches, the favours and gifts of My love increase in him and he will become great in My eyes and will be well suffered by all, because his behaviour will only give him joyful and good spirits, and he himself will find inner peace, contentment and pleasure in everything where the spiritual and the Divine will be the subject of discussion and contemplation.

18. Many a one has already become happy in this world, because he has enjoyed My love and grace in personal experiences; but how much more is for him there, where there is a place of reward for earthly efforts and plagues?

19. Behold, I have shown you the life of a man as an example so that you may see from the natural life as it develops before you, how I lead men to save them from the swamp of sins and hell and to bring them to the glory of God's childhood.

20. You now have the *"Prayer Book"*, the *"Christian Theosophy"* as esoteric school, the *Gospel [of John]* and other books which contain for you the highest teachings of Christian life. Read through everything with great attention and where possible, repeatedly; namely the books which are given to you by Me, you are to buy because you are to think that they are from Me and therefore the tools with which you are to work on your life! How would you like to practise a craft without tools? And how will you spiritually work on the building of your heaven without always using the tools which teach you how to live and act?

21. These instruments are the teachings to raise you up to highest spirits, but you have to read them more often and turn the teachings into action, then life is spiritualized and deified in you and through this I recognize you as My children for whom I have prepared heaven and created worlds as earths. Amen.

276. God as Father of Humans

1902, April 14th, Graz. Father Jesus explains the greatness and sublimity of the truth that people have their Father in God, as a spiritual parent, and what indescribable inheritance of possessions and graces they can expect if they want to live and act according to the will of their Father.

1. Great is the meaning contained in this title which testifies to you that you are children of one God, and destined to become gods if you wish to walk the ways which I am making known to you through My order in the Divine teaching of love.

2. The meaning of the word, that God is your Father, is hardly comprehensible for your earthly concepts; it embraces infinity and is sublime above all ideas of the boldest imagination of a man.

3. Think of My infinite greatness, holiness, love, omniscience and omnipotence! I am everything that exists in the material and spiritual world. I am the Creator, the King, the Ruler, the Leader, the Judge and the Lord, God and Father over all.

4. No-one can measure and comprehend My greatness and infinity - you can fill the world of your earth with numbers, if you wish to represent Me with numbers what reason and understanding cannot comprehend and I tell you, the earth is not big enough to contain the numbers, even if they were as small as the letters of a printed book to express the greatness of My Spirit reaching infinity in numbers!

5. You can well marvel at this tremendous statement, but you can never understand it! And look, this infinite God is your Father, yes he is your Father and Mother because I represent your spiritual parents and if I were not your spiritual parents, then there would never have been and still are no earthly-material parents; because I first have to create and form them, in order to be your fleshly parents, but they are also not that, because if My will would not work through the soul, then eternally the flesh and the bones from the blood could never form by itself, therefore even there where you believe that you yourselves are the creators of the flesh-body - I am the creator of it because without Me, the whole of nature would be rigid and dead. This you see from the fact that you yourselves cannot defy nature: If I want it, you will have children; if I do not want it, you will not; neither can you determine the gender of the children, since you have neither the knowledge nor the power; all that, depends on Me.

6. And behold, this holy and Almighty God is your Father, and loves you, and cares for you day and night, and will draw you out of your hell, and receive you into His heavens, and make of you gods of love, wisdom, and omnipotence, as He Himself is.

7. Can you children understand what it means: Your Father is God the Almighty Creator of heaven and earth!? And since I am your Father, I take care of you like an earthly father to provide the adult children with an inheritance, that they may become independent; and thus I take care of you but with the difference: Because I am God, My children are gods, therefore they must receive worlds as their inheritance, even worlds in ascending greatness, the extent of which you cannot imagine. There they will create and rule like gods and kings, and revel in indescribable blessings.

8. Dear children, you are to use the reason given to you and, instead of acting against My love-laws, spare no effort possible, to fulfill My will so that I can make you happy and join in the company of My blessed children, Amen.

277. The Value of a Human Soul

1899, December 2nd, Graz. The Father Jesus explains that He would rather dissolve ten worlds into atoms before He would let only one soul perish, because it is His love.

1. Love is supposed to be the motive of mutual treatment between people, so it is most regrettable that there are people who, by cursing and condemning their neighbour, if he does not act according to their views, give vent to their thoughts, as is unfortunately the case with the teachers of human statutes.

2. Man is a child of My Love and My Divine Spirit lives in him; therefore if you curse and condemn man to hell to burn in eternal flames, you curse and condemn Me, your God and Father. —

3. No man can grasp the love I have for My children, because it is Divine and that means so much as sublimely above all human concepts.

4. I would rather dissolve ten worlds into atoms than let a single soul of a man perish; from this you can judge how great My love for every one of My children is. But that is why man is to offer everything to do justice to this Divine love of Mine; because I want to make him overjoyed; I want to have him beside Me and let him rule with Me over worlds that are destined for him - his inheritance.

5. Love the love, oh children! For it lives, thinks and works only for you and wants to live and love with you for eternity. Amen.

278. The Truth

1903, 27 May, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus that the truth is the fulfillment of the divine commandments of love and doctrine and that only through them, one acquires the kingdom of heaven.

1. For the Theosophist, the Divine love and wisdom united, is that truth of which I spoke before Pilate, and this truth contains in itself that power which alone brings about the spiritual connection of men with God and nature. This truth creates in you a spirit of love, humility, mutual tolerance and thus unity and harmony, despite the multilateral deficiencies of your virtues, views and education, as well as the here and there still deficient concepts of faith.

2. Only within the Divine truth is the way to the ennoblement, spiritualization and divinization of humanity; for the truth is the greatest commandment in the law which I defined before Pilate in the following way: ***"Truth is love connected with wisdom, and this is revealed in the highest love of the heart for God and in unselfish works of love towards one's neighbour.*** (John 18:38) This commandment of truth I, Jesus, fulfilled through My Divine teaching of love and through My works of charity. And the same tasks and duties are also prescribed in the teaching of the wisdom of God or Theosophy, as a reflection of the name Jesus, which I am according to the soul as the Divine wisdom, while I represent according to the spirit, the Father of God, or love in God. The content of the doctrine of Theosophy is thus nothing other than the fulfillment of the doctrine of God, which you find in the Holy Scripture as prescribed by Jesus Jehovah Zebaot.

279. The Religion of the Future

1876, February 12, Trieste. Father Jesus, through Gottfried Mayerhofer, explains the religion of the future, how it will shape itself; where no priests and ceremonies will exist, because the Father Jesus Himself will be the Teacher of His children.

1. Your friend and brother sent you a pamphlet with the title "The Religion of the Future", which did not satisfy him while reading it, and which he sent you with the request whether a word from Me would like to shed more light on his doubts or clarify them?

2. Now that you have correctly judged this Scripture according to your inner being, I also want My opinion to be written down here for you and for all, so that you may all be clear about what you can actually expect from the future and what is called the "religion of the future". It is a word which has long since appeared as a question not only in individual people, but has already occupied many thinkers, who do not like the creed of the majority of people, and who have often yearned for something better, so that the word might come true, that I once said that there should be "only one shepherd and one flock"!

3. Before we answer the question: How will the religion of the future be shaped? We must take a closer look at the past with regard to religious tendencies and movements, and not forget the human mind, in which the fierce urge for a religion could never yet be completely extinguished, even if it was suppressed in isolated instances among the people, but has always reappeared again.

4. Now see, when you start from the creation of mankind and go through the whole history up to your time, you will find that no people, yes no man, is without religious ideas - then you shall also see how at first fellowship with Me, thus an approach, later again falling away from Me, thus distance; differences in understanding of what I said, then by denying the same, different religious cults appeared, having a god, or several gods, as invisible beings, of either wood, stone, or living animals, which are pure ideas and aberrations, which, as products of the human spirit, alternated with each other - and thus, mostly serving only worldly interests of a caste of priests - had caused an undulating back and forth of all possible concepts, until then - for the time being -individual people, then individual sects and later larger masses of people and peoples, who founded the religions that existed until now, which now begin again to go where they came from; that is to say, that the individual main effects dissolve; and in the end, as it is already the case with many, the people, each individual, build up their own religion, adapted mostly to their individualities, or even all religious talk is turned upside down and - like animals - nothing higher is believed, so that the lowest passions are all the more undisturbedly pursued - and that, at the expense of all mankind.

5. From all this it follows, however, that in all times and in all corners of the world the majority of people, following the inner unconscious urge, always sought their peace, their consolation outside of themselves, and if they did not immediately know why, they - beside the visible world - constructed their own spiritual constructs, higher beings, spirits, good and bad assumptions, and believed their influences into human destinies.

6. It is the same as if a savage worshipped a wooden log or living snakes, the sun or the fire etc. - he suspected something spiritual, wanted a visible for it, and carved himself one, or personified it with living animals, which he thought to have qualities which he assumed to be divine, or with which he believed to find similar characteristics.

7. Everywhere you find this search after wonders, of invisible beings - from the wildest peoples to the more educated ones, depending on the individual educational perspective of the peoples, and thus this mysterious working in the human soul very clearly prove the basic principle of their own being, as well as their divine descent.

8. Only in most recent times, the trend began to change, to even deny the suspected, or often indisputable pride, and to place man himself and his mind as God, as the highest – at least on this earth – where most of these thinkers, as they are called, start from a false base; though everything else is correctly deduced from it, men can bewitch and plunge themselves down from the level to which I have put men as spiritual products of two worlds.

9. At first, religious faith was a great source for the caste of priests to seize wealth, splendour, and power. But now, when on the one hand, the peoples begin to see more clearly where the policies of this caste are going, and whereto all sects of all religions always aim, namely *money and power*; now the peoples want to free themselves from everything, and instead of unconditional faith, they no longer want to believe anything, which then leaves the reins free for human passions, and in this progression, as your proverb says: "the child is poured out with the bath water".

10. Then, already in that time when I started My walk on earth, there was so much darkness in the religions, so much error, that without My descent, the world would have fallen into decay; man would have sunk in his dignity far below the animal world, as the final reasonable-spiritual member of this earth.

11. A religious cult, or a religious direction still from earlier times, which was most suitable to bring My spiritual kingdom to this earth again, had been preserved in the Jewish people with an advantage, for it was not necessary to overthrow the existing one, but only give a closer illumination and better enlightenment of everything what prophets or otherwise wise men had left to the Jews through My input, of which only the priest caste made bad use.

12. Well, it was also proved by My Word, when I said: "I have not come to overthrow the Law and the Prophets, but only to explain and augment them".

13. No further explanation is needed as to what I have now made of this Jewish religion, as I explained it and then exercised it Myself during My walk on earth and proved [Myself] to be Divine with My death, resurrection and going home, but to mainly point out that *these dogmas and simple teachings of My religion will never be overturned, will never be destroyed and that no better, more reasonable, purer ones can and will ever be followed*.

14. It stands unmovable that that which I united in that time into two laws of love, as long as the world stands, will remain the simplest but most sufficient religious basis, which most pleases the life among spiritual, rational beings and can be the only, singular spiritual connection between beings; because love is the only thing that I once introduced as law to the Jews and, as you now know well enough, I have placed in all created things, in all natures, because descending from Me, they should also only have this quality as the main attribute, which resembles their Master, their Father, the most. —

15. The desire for love lies in Me and also in every human nature - the desire for social life, the desire for communication, the desire to have the comfort of others.

16. The more man, according to his spiritual formation, is on a certain level of knowledge to understand this nature, which calls to him at every step in nature: *"It is Me, I have not forgotten you, poor creature of the earth"*. The more a human soul hears this voice in his heart, the closer he is to his God, his Creator and his Father, who does not want to see the created creature crawling in the dust before Him, but since His former walk on earth has raised them to be His children, who can faithfully associate with Him, present to Him their sufferings and pains, but also hope for and expect relief from Him. Now this understanding of the visible nature as expression of a Divine love, however, is so multifaceted and varied as there are human beings, and for this very reason also the idea of God, according to this spiritual understanding of the visible, had to bring about just as many concepts of religion, which unknowingly all rest on one basis, from where all went out, and have to return [again] over time.

17. As long as the greatest number of people thinks and lives materially, so long will material-symbolic worship alone be sufficient for the same; for they want to see *visibly expressed* what they *do not comprehend in the invisible*. But once the majority of men will also be spiritually educated and through that will also be able to look at the visible spiritually, then also they will well suspect the actual core under instruction and later even recognize it [themselves].

18. The different religions spring from these states of soul of the majority , and from them the manifold sects, because here and there a man or a priest stood up, illuminated this or that more or less, explained it differently, thereby gained followers, established himself a separate cult, according to the viewpoint most appealing to him and his followers.

19. Beside this, albeit sometimes a sincere search for truth, there now stand the materialists, the nihilists, etc., who all want to fathom with their tiny common sense what lies far beyond it, and only accept as really existing what they can comprehend or weigh.

20. These - sometimes called scholars or professors by you - are the most pitiful; for, as history itself proves, almost no one has yet died who has not looked back with regret on all the nonsense of which he himself did not believe most of, but only wrote what was fashionable or earned him money.

21. The so-called religion of reason stands on very weak feet; for all researches are limited, and before long, a law of nature faces the researcher, exclaiming to him - to here and no further, for where seeing, feeling or hearing ends, the premonition begins. But only the heart or mind or the soul can feel [suspect]; the mind wants to know, and the knowledge soon find its limit.

22. The materialists write books and also find many willing ears; but the learned cannot provoke a lasting echo at the same time, for in practical world-life, they face so many contradictions that if they could ask their former professor, he himself would often find no answer for them.

23. The more scientific research progresses, the more people will come to realize, not that they know something, *but that in some things, they don't know anything*. And this confession of their own powerlessness must lead them back to where they came from, namely *to faith*; but not to the unconditional, but to the childlike belief that, as visible nature shows them everywhere - behind and within it lies a great kingdom of spirits, which builds up matter, preserves it and makes it pass away, and the same always leads from one stage to another, according to the spiritual principle of its origin, urging closer and closer, where then, after millions of metamorphic transformations of the matter, as with the butterfly, falls off as a pupa, and the spiritual element freely raises up towards the focus of all existence, from which it itself emerged.

24. As soon as such views become general among people, another religious view of the visible world will develop; There will no longer be any need for a cult which gathers people in stone houses, called "churches" or "temples" by you, but the free unlimited nature, everything visible around, from the smallest atom to the last star of the most distant nebula, will be the teacher who will lead attentive observers from the material to the spiritual; only then also My words will be completely understood, which I once spoke and had announced to men during all centuries up to today, that *he who wants to worship Me has to worship Me in spirit and in truth*. *Because I am Spirit, and spiritual prayer means to feel what is hidden in all of God's spirit, feeling how He has put His love into everything, feeling how only with and through love, every world, every habitation and every worldly situation can become paradise, feeling that it is only love, which sustains everything and is the greatest good of a human heart, when every prerogative towards its environment, be it man or animal, is dutifully exercised by itself according to its own descent, and so only God's love can fully comprehend and grasp what is contained in the two laws of love, namely the whole visible and invisible creation; for without love, it would not have come into being and without love, it could not continue.*

25. Without love it would not have been possible to let all the great abominations and aberrations on your earth go by so patiently, without love it would not be conceivable that I, the Supreme Lord, would speak to you lost children as I am doing just now.

26. Without love there is no trust, no confidence and no consolation. Only the thought - love cannot punish - raises even the most deeply bent, a gentle warmth flows through his heart at such thoughts, and when he first learns to understand the whole of nature, how everything breathes love, where love keeps on working even among the most manifold contradictions, then everyone will be aware of a religion, a religious confession, which will lead and guide him in all cases, no intercessor with a Divine Father will be needed, and the only judge on earth will be one's own conscience, and then, mindful of the gentle, always constant Father above him, *will establish a religion as this only one preached by Me and followed by you*, should constitute the religion of the future, where in everything the Spirit of God is seen as the life-giver, the working and leading; therefore the Love of God is represented everywhere, which bears the name "Father".

27. If, after all the aberrations of the human spirit, after all the bitter experiences which men have acquired through their own conduct, it is useless to resist Divine laws - laws which are and should not be iron but gentle bonds of love, just as they are the only ones of eternal peace between Father and child; then *My return to your earth*, who the good ones impatiently await, and *where I as the only Shepherd will gather all My sheep around Me, will take place, when I will then lead them all to their appointed purpose*.

28. This will be the religion of the future, but not as one or the other has concocted it in his head, but cosmopolitan, that is: all humans must then become citizens of the world; but not only to your world or small earth, but by "world" you must understand the whole visible and invisible creation, to which you as living or dead always belong, and where in the other [world] there is only the continuation of the one here, which leads you forward from step to step to true spiritual religion cult, but where instead of a thousand thoughtlessly spoken words, one look into My universe is enough to make you understand what I am and what you can and also should become!

29. The religion of the future can never express itself in a cult; for every ceremony, every other visible means of education is too inadequate, too small, to give even a weak image, a weak idea of its Creator, to the aspiring spirit. The religion of the future needs a greater scale, it must learn to comprehend and understand everything created in itself; it must, as I said above, enclose everything in itself from the last star to the smallest atom. This church - called the universe - must be an altar and place of worship, where from millions of beings rejoice every second about their existence as prayer flows towards the Lord, and where this will never stop as long as a spiritual progress is possible.

30. All your churches and cathedrals are too small; your customs may consist of so many symbolic representations, but they are not sufficient where understanding of My Nature prevails, and where there is no need for supposed gathering places to exhort man to spiritual exaltation over his worldliness.

31. Man must become aware that he is everywhere in free nature before his Creator, and must recognize and feel Him in everything as life-giving power and effect, and must be conscious of his descent as well as his spiritual mission, clearly understand of which world he is a citizen, then all barriers of one-sided religious beliefs and religious customs, which men have invented to profit from the gullibility or stupidity of others, fall.

32. Because I created man as lord of the world, he must feel himself to be lord, but he has to also act as a lord, thinking of his childhood and the eternal love, which did not equip him in vain with such spiritual qualities, but which with this gift of favour, wanted to make it part of him to remain a free lord of his actions, but still also a bound being of his conscience, which will never speak differently than according to the laws of life.

33. So man has to carry religion in his heart, which is to lead from the external world, through the inner feeling of his own self again far beyond what is visible, to Him who once proclaimed the great laws of love in human form - and through them, wanted to educate people to be human and through

their observance, be His children.

34. This general aspiration to live by these laws, to discover them everywhere and thus persistently continue to strive for the great final goal, this is the religion of the future; but not only the religion of this earth, but the religion of the whole universe and the great spirit-world.

35. So you understand it, not to a limited, but great extent, how I breathed the Divine spark into man, how I through this, made man a world-citizen of My kingdom, where eternally no sun goes down, but always the spiritual sun of My own 'I' will shine to all who will once bring spiritual eyes to receive their rays. Amen.

280. The Five Signs of God's Presence

Year 32, October 15. Father Jesus explains what the five signs of His presence are, in and among people, and what one should do to achieve the graces associated with them.

1. A Greek asked Me, Jesus, for a sign by saying: "Lord, Lord, God and Master from eternity in Your Spirit! You may now leave us in Your visible personality, but we ask You that You remain with us with Your supreme Spirit of God and that You only now and then give us a sign that is our guarantee, that You remember us and that You are also with us in spirit!

2. I said: "Yes, that will also be until the end of the times of this visible world! But not *only one sign*, but you are to have *several at all times,* showing that I am *present in the spirit with you*, among you and in you; so these sure and never deceiving signs will always and eternally be following:

3. First, that you love Me more than everything in the world; for if anyone loves anything in the world more than Me, he is not worthy of Me; but he who truly loves Me above everything, he is exactly through such true love in Me and I in him.

4. The second *Sign of My Presence* with you is also that out of love for Me you love your neighbours and fellow men young and old (spiritually) as well as yourselves; for whoever does not love his neighbour whom he sees, how can he love God whom he does not see? … When someone will truly love Me in the heart above all by *living and acting* according to *My* Will *revealed to him*, to him I Myself will come *personally in the Spirit*, and will *reveal* Myself to him (through the inner word) fully presently.

5. The third sign of My presence with, in and among you, will also be that everything will always be given to you what you will earnestly ask the Father in Me in My name! - but it goes without saying that you do not ask Me for stupid and vain things of this world; because when you do, then you obviously show that you love such things more than Me, and that would certainly not be a sign of My presence with, in and among you.

6. The fourth sign of My mighty presence, in and among you will also be that - when you lay hands on bodily sick men out of true neighbourly love in My name, it should become better with them when the betterment serves the healing of their souls.

7. But it goes without saying that you always say in your heart, "Lord, not my will, but Your will be done." For you cannot know whether and when the betterment of the body of a soul is useful for healing, and eternal life on this earth in the body, is not granted to any man, therefore the laying on of hands cannot always provide liberation from the evils of the body for every human being; but you will still not commit any sin through it when you show the indicated love to every sick person; I will certainly be the helper when it is useful for the salvation of man's soul - what I alone can know.

8. Even if ye have heard from afar that one or the other of your friends lie ill, pray over him, and lay your hands on him in spirit (towards the region of heaven, where he is), and it shall also be better with him. But the prayer to be pronounced in the heart consists in the following few words:

9. Jesus the Lord wants to help you! May He strengthen you, He heal you through His grace, love and mercy.

10. When you will express full faith and trust to Me about a sick friend somewhere, no matter how far away from you, and keep your hands in the spirit over him, then it will get better with him at the hour when this is useful for the salvation of his soul.

11. But the fifth sign *of My presence* at, in and among you will also still be that if you do My will at all times, you will reach rebirth of your spirit in yourselves, which is the baptism with the fire of the Holy Spirit; this will be a true *baptism of life*, as you will be filled with My spirit and thereby introduced into all wisdom.

12. Everyone should strive after this fifth sign above all. By whom this sign will be realized, he will already have eternal life in this world, because he will be able to do different things through Me; for he will be one with Me there. Now I have shown you the signs of My presence; do accordingly, then you will truly become aware of My Spirit with, in and among you. (*Ev v J* Ch. IX, Chapter 43)

281. Enlightenment on How to seek God

Year 32, June 18. - The one who seeks God with his intellect and strives to fathom Him has a laborious job, and it is difficult to make even one step further; but the one who seeks God with love in his heart soon finds Him and easily reaches the true goal of life. (ChtS. XIX, Chapter 108)

282. The Period of Spiritual Perfection

1855, 26 November, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus by Jakob Lorber about life, through which one reaches spiritual maturity and the perfection of life.

1. Spiritual works and spiritual ways are not measured by hours and cubits, but only by the power of will, faith and love for God and neighbour! - Who at once could deny himself so completely and separate from all the world, dedicate his treasures only in the right measure out of pure love for God, and have no drive after the flesh of women, - he would truly in the shortest time already stand as perfected. - But who obviously needs a longer time to cleanse himself of all earthly waste products and appendages, with him of course, the most sole blessed state of the true spiritual perfection also has to wait longer.

2. Nobody thinks he is the position and the office of honour and prestige! - The honour and prestige of the office is the law, and you are only its helpers. - But if you are faithful and good and just, so you will stand in honour and prestige of the law; and the law merits men who are kept protected and quiet and safe by the law, and this then is your benefit before God.

3. You can also be exceedingly rich people, but also your great wealth is no obstacle to reaching the pure spiritual state when you deal with it well, with true love towards God and towards the neighbour like good and wise fathers in relation to their children, and not meagre and stingy with the support of the poor; For with what measure you will grant your love to the poor, in the same measure God will

reward you spiritually at all times and in case of need, also naturally (earthly). - But if you think that God does not at all help man who busily and earnestly continues to walk on the way to the kingdom of God and life of the spirit, when he now and then becomes tired and weak, then you are significantly mistaken; I tell you:

4. Who once has seriously entered this way, he will also be helped by God without his knowledge that he continues and finally also safely reaches the goal. - Of course God will certainly not force with His omnipotence the unification of the soul with His Spirit; but he will enlighten man's heart more and more and fill it with true wisdom from the heavens, and through this man will grow spiritually, become stronger and always easily and confidently overcome all obstacles that could still stand somewhere in his way to his greater testing. - But the more love a person has for God and his neighbour, the more he begins to feel alive in himself, and the more merciful he becomes in his mind, the greater and stronger the Spirit of God has already become in his soul! - *For the love of God and therefore of one's neighbour, is the Spirit of God in the soul of man; and as this increases and grows, so also does the Spirit of God in it.*

5. When in the end the whole man has become pure and most benevolent love, then also the complete union of the soul with the spirit has already taken place and man has eternally reached the highest aim of life set for him by God. - *God Himself* is in Himself the *highest* and *purest* love, and *so is also the Spirit out of God that comes to every human being*. - If through its free will the soul becomes out of God very similar to the love of the spirit, then it is also clear that it becomes one with the spirit out of God in it; but if it becomes that, then it is also perfect. —

6. Now - for this no exact time can be determined, but the soul's own feeling must tell and indicate it to itself. - The true, pure and living love is in itself *most unselfish*, it is full of humility, it is active, full of patience and mercy, it *never* becomes an unnecessary burden to anyone and gladly tolerates everything; it has no pleasure in the misery of its neighbour; it helps any neighbour [who are] in helpless trouble.

7. Pure love is also chaste to the highest degree, and has no joy in the lust of the flesh, but the greater the pleasure of the pure discipline of the heart. - When man's soul will also therefore be conditioned through its individual striving and aspiring, *then the soul is also already like its spirit, and is therefore then also perfect in God*. —

8. And so you now also know exactly what you have to do to reach the pure spiritual perfection; he who will diligently and zealously do everything of it, he will also most likely be perfected.

283. How do you Take the Kingdom of God by Force?

Year 31, October 18, ... Father Jesus teaches His listeners what the Kingdom of God consists of, and that whoever does not take it by the power of his open confession before the world, he will not come in either.

1. The perfect observance of the recognized will of God is the true kingdom of God in you! - But the observance of the recognized will of God is not as easy as you imagine, for the people of the world are very much against it, and persecute the true purchasers [acquirers] of the kingdom of God.

2. That is why the one who wants to completely appropriate the kingdom of God, must have no fear of those who can only kill the body of man but cannot harm the soul; but man should rather fear God, who according to his unchangeable order, can also cast the soul into hell! - Who fears God more than men, and despite the persecution that men can do to him, does the recognized will of God, he is the one who seizes the kingdom of God by force, and who does this, he will also infallibly conquers it. —

3. In addition to this, there is also something that is part of the enormous cultivation of the kingdom of God, and that consists in man denying himself as deeply as possible in all things of the world, forgiving all his offenders with his heart, having no grudge or anger against anyone, pray for those who curse him, do good to those who do evil to him, do not rise above anyone, patiently endure the temptations that come upon him from time to time, and refrain from over-eating, gluttony, fornication, and adultery; he who does this to himself also inflicts violence for the kingdom of God, and takes it by force upon himself. —

4. But whom does recognize God, respects and loves Him above everything, and also loves his neighbour as himself, but at the same time also respects and fears the world, and is afraid to openly confess My name because that could bring him some worldly disadvantage, he does not do violence for the kingdom of God, and will also not completely conquers it in this world, and then still have to endure some external battles until it is completed. —

5. He then who knows and believes that I am the promised Messiah, must also do what I teach, have taught and will still teach in the future, otherwise he is not worthy of Me, and I will not particularly help him with the formation of his inner life; - But I am the life of the soul through My spirit in it, and this is called the love for God; who therefore loves God above all else, and therefore also always does His will, his soul is filled with My Spirit, and this is the perfection and eternal life of the soul; - but if someone knows Me, but still fears the world and says to himself: "Yes, I know the Messiah very well, and believe secretly in all that He teaches, and I do it too; but the world is as it is, and one must live with it, I do not outwardly let the world see what I secretly confess in myself, so that no-one can reproach me for anything evil", - such is not a true confessor of My Being and Name, and has not yet the true and quite living love for God, and will in this life on earth hardly obtain the fullness of the kingdom of God in himself, for the fullness of the kingdom of God consists precisely in the highest love for God, and this love has no fear or awe of the world. Whoever confesses Me before the world, if need be, I will also confess before the Father in heaven; but whoever does not confess Me before the world, when needed, I will also not confess before the Father (Eternal Love in God is the Father, and His unlimited wisdom is heaven) in heaven! —

6. Who loves God above everything, he confesses God, and therefore Me (Jesus) before all the world, and I also confess him in My love, and in this the true eternal life of the soul of man consists, because only through such living love, man reaches God and also the highest wisdom; but such is the heaven or the kingdom of God, - and so man has thereby also overtaken the kingdom of God in himself, which will then no longer be possible to be taken from him forever! (*Ev.J.Ch. I*. On. V, 157/8.)

284. How does one Attain the Childhood of God?

1857, December 29, Graz. Father Jesus gives Jacob Lorber the three different degrees of man's work-activity and how each is then rewarded according to their degrees.

1. Who demands much, will receive little. - Enlightenment: If someone does a small service to God and demands a great reward for it - he will receive little.

2. The one who demands little will receive much: - If someone renders a great service to God and demands little for it - he will receive much.

3. If any man has done to God all that he ever desired, and in the end demands nothing; for he did all things only out of love for God, he gets seated at the right hand of the Father, and in all things will be in equal possession with God.

4. Only those will receive the childhood of God, who acquire the preceding virtues of Christ, and sacrifice everything out of love for Him and will love Him above everything and their neighbour as themselves. But neither because of the advantages, nor out of fear of hell. (Cht.S.)

5. The children of the highest heavens live in eternal harmony of love, so there is only childlike simplicity and humility, and God and charity in highest capacity. - But that's the opposite of the world:

1. Opposed to simple, childlike faith and trust in God, is haughty wisdom, wanting to know everything better than God Himself, Whom it negates. —

2. Humility versus pride and megalomania

3. Charity versus selfishness, lack of love, persecution and oppression of one's neighbour. Therefore the earth is pure hell compared to heaven.

285. Advice on Rebirth in case of Temptations

1898, November 3, Graz. Father Jesus gives strong advice to remain calm and patient amidst the temptations and to fight and defeat them ourselves with the fullest seriousness and courage, thinking of His suffering.

1. Dear children, there are many pieces of advice which I have given you for the attainment of rebirth and yet there are still important teachings which I can present and illuminate to you better and more thoroughly and decisively about your thoughtless absentmindedness in life. And so I come to you with the first enlightenment about the temptations that again and again befall you.

2. In the temptations in life are so many spiritual tasks that end in either victory or defeat. Between these two lies the serious decisive will to fight and win with My help; or the unwillingness with the accompanying impatience, grumbling and anger. The serious and powerful struggle against temptations, be they spiritual or material, leads to victory and thus to spiritual progress; unwilling, impatient whining and complaining, grumbling and anger leads to defeat and thus to regression. From this you can calculate how your life is, and whether you are going spiritually forwards or backwards.

3. Dear children, your whole life is a struggle and it is up to you whether you want to walk upwards to Me or downwards from Me. I advise you as your caring, sincere, loving and merciful Father, do accept every temptation with calm, patience and humility, turn to Me and ask Me for strength and perseverance in battle, and do not let the weakness of the will (impatience) or inertia overcome you in such spiritual trials for even a minute! The struggle of life is serious and no-one goes to heaven unless he takes it by force.

4. Therefore first consider the cause of the temptation and think: It is a touchstone for spiritual life and progress, and therefore think about how you bear this test through peace, patience, humility and love towards Me; and if it comes from a neighbour who is a brother (or sister) still living in darkness that you do not want to anger him, nor want to pay him back vengefully, but decide with love and come to Me with a humble request that I give you strength to be able to patiently bear the temptation or trial, may it come from Me or your neighbour, with humble devotion in My will.

5. Do not lament and complain impatiently about your sufferings as trials, but think: ah, what is this against the sufferings of my dear Father Jesus, which He took upon His holy shoulders out of love for me, and which I myself should have endured and had to endure in order to satisfy the Divine righteousness for my former pride and disobedience under Lucifer against my God and Creator - Father Jesus? But since I have committed and still commit the same sins of pride again, it is just that

I should suffer and taste a little of what my dear Father suffered, when He had to endure the terrible sufferings, pains and mockeries for me, the ungrateful fallen pride-spirit in the flesh.

6. So consider, My child, when temptations haunt you and always think: "Now is the time and opportunity to fight, and I will fight and triumph with the help of My dear Father Jesus, who will give me strength, willpower and perseverance." and then I will look on you with love, My Child from My Grace, and bless you, so that when the time of payment comes, I can give it to you with full hands. So dear children, earnestly accept this My teaching and use it in the time of temptations so that you will be given blessings and spiritual progress, and think that everything only happens for your best and you are to thank Me that I allow it, for you to go ahead spiritually. Amen.

286. Subordinate your Will to the Divine Will

1900, September 23rd, Graz. Father Jesus illuminates the reasons why man should subordinate his own will to the Divine will in order to become a master of life and through that, unite with God in love and humility.

1. The wisdom of the worldly mind urges man to use his mind-wisdom as a weapon against God's wisdom-decrees, to fight the latter, and to think himself wiser. —

2. But that Divine wisdom and the order established out of it cannot follow the dusky wisdom of a man, is testified of by the whole creation, which He obviously has put into existence what He has thought up as good, useful and appropriate. Human wisdom sees and understands that everything created stands there in its perfection; but it can neither create something new nor imitate the existing by itself; therefore a reasonable man - if he wants to besides be really wise - is compelled from this irrefutable evidence to recognize that Divine wisdom and omnipotence stands above all worldly wisdom.

3. Let us take an example from daily life to understand that man must put aside his will and his wisdom in favor of the Divine will and divine wisdom and only consider and accept what God wants as good:

4. A boy, according to his will and mind, considers only walking around in the forest, climbing trees and taking young squirrels or young birds out of their nests, as joy, pleasure and mind-wisdom - and therefore, the very best; But the school-teacher demands nothing but bland and adverse effects, quiet sitting and learning, thus suppressing all one's own wisdom and doing what the teacher demands. And see, the more the child follows the teacher, the smarter, more intellectually minded and more reasonable he becomes, and as it is the case here with the school youth, so it is also with subordination of one's own will and intellectual wisdom, to the will and wisdom of God.

5. Or must not every individual will in every teaching, in every training, pass over to the will of a foreign person, who is the master of a science? Yes, he must pass completely into the will, as this strange person wants - otherwise nothing would ever become of the teaching. But if the disciple has completely connected his own will with the will of his master, which means that the disciple has become attentive and thinks of nothing other than to proceed exactly according to the order of the teacher or master, then he has given up all his thinking in favour of education and has put it into the high art and science of the master. Behold, such a disciple, who now has nothing more in his head than to live according to the will of his Master, soon becomes himself a master of the art and life of his Master.

6. But since God is the Master of all Masters, the Wisdom of all Wisdom, therefore it is self-evident that you will only become wise when you will act according to the will which results from the Wisdom of God and not according to your wisdom of understanding which is so dark before the Wisdom of

God that I called it folly. (1 Cor 1:19)

7. Man is a perfect vessel for the reception of the Divine will and only through the reception of this will, he becomes a truly powerful master over all other creatures of the world, just as he can become over the world itself. Man can *get hold of the Divine will perfectly* by the *fulfillment* thereof, so he must have received it completely before. But no-one can absorb the Divine will as long as he does not let his own illusion go; But how does man let his will go?

8. Man let go of his will when he uses it for the purpose for which it was given by the Creator. - But what is the purpose? - So it reads: "Man is to do the will of God out of his own will, and for that purpose, he is to know it." To whom such things become completely serious, God will soon also let him recognize His will to a just degree; but in how far someone then recognizes the will of God and does it according to his own will, in so far as he has recognized God's will, he then unites his own will with the Divine one, through which only then a true reconnection - which is the actual religion - is brought about between God and man.

9. The more man therefore strives in this *state of religion*, to recognize the *Divine will* and to *act accordingly*, the more he also connects himself with the *power of the Divine will;* and if one have made the divine will his own to such an extent that he absolutely no longer has his own will, not even to fulfill the Divine will, but all will in him has already become *purely Divine*, Then man has not only connected himself with God, but he has *united* himself with Him; - and this is the purpose of religion, that man should unite himself with God, i.e. he should have no other will as reason for action, *but the Divine.*

10. The one who has only the Divine will as motive of all his actions, acts easily and exceedingly effectively; for the omnipotence of the Divine will is documented everywhere and in every person when this will appears as the pure motive of one or another action.

11. "He who loves his brothers and sisters lives already in their hearts and in his own; but he who loves God, lives in God and God in him! - But no-one can love God out of his own love, because *God is the fullness of life*. But if someone has received his brothers and sisters alive in himself through his love, *he has thereby expanded his own sphere of life*, so that only then can he receive into it the fullness of Divine life; - for one's own life through love is far too powerless to bear the fullness of Divine life; but a united brother's and sister's life through love in a man's heart, can be strengthened first and foremost so that it is then able to receive the fullness of Divine life in itself. - Therefore love your brothers and sisters so that you can love God, because without love for brothers and sisters, no-one can love God." (Religion in the planet Jupiter, more in *The Sun No. 2*, chapter 42 of the ChtS.)

287. Contentment

1903, 18 May, Graz. Father Jesus describes the states of souls, how they have to be formed in human beings in order to become one with God and therefore self-satisfied already here on earth.

1. People want everything possible, one wants money to do with it everything he wants; the other wants to shine everywhere and be highly regarded; a third one wants to rule over all and deal with people as with servants, and so everyone has different wishes and desires that rarely come true.

2. If you want to be happy and satisfied, people have a homemade philosophy:

One wishes for sunshine;
Another for a mild rain;
With content gaze, I look,
and tell the two of them,
'I don't mind'.

3. So always be content, and agree with your heavenly Father on everything He does for the good of His children; for He alone knows what it must be like for everyone to receive justice, even if they do not see it in their limited minds.

4. That sunshine and rain cannot be at the same time, because that would be a miracle and even harmful for the growth and health of people, so also cannot everything happen to all people according to their personal wishes and therefore often the innocent has to suffer because of the guilty, with obvious exceptions, it should not take place, because that would belong to the directed coerced faith - and the people would have no freedom of decision to be good or bad,and would therefore would be no better off than the animals, which are under My Divine compulsory judgements and can and must only do what I permit.

5. Men are liberated from these must-commandments because I, the unlimited Freedom, dwell in them and I Myself respect their freedom so that they work themselves up what they want to become, either My children or My counterpole children.

6. **If you want to have an earthly heaven in you and around you, then be undemanding, content with everything, living in peace with all people, serene and reconciling with your enemies, not angering anyone, not accusing anyone of his weaknesses, wishing everyone only good, blessing them, praying for them, never demanding privileges before others, but out of love for Me, be content with the given situation and seeking satisfaction only in Me, which consists in you always having your thoughts with Me out of love for Me, and seeing everything as allowed by Me, whether it is good or bad.**

7. If it is good, then you have your joy in it, if it is bad, then it is for your examination and purification, thus again for your best, for progress in the spiritual. When you look at everything in this way and always deal with your neighbour in love and harmony, then you create contentment for yourselves and this delights man everywhere, because he sees My guidance and permission everywhere and feels united with Me, because he desires nothing more than what I give him to purify him spiritually, to ennoble him and to spiritualize him to one day be accepted as perfected in My holy House of Love and to become exceedingly happy.

288. Characteristics of Maturity for Rebirth

Year 31, August 21. - Father Jesus gives the characteristics of the human being through which one recognizes whether one has become a perfect spirit-person - and the soul has become one with the Spirit of God.

1. How can a person experience that his soul has become one with the true Spirit of God in it?

2. You will know it: If you will feel in yourself **no pride, no craving for glory, no envy, no craving for possessions and splendour, no self-love, but all the more living and true love for your neighbour and for God; and this will give you a true, deeply touching joy of heart to have distributed all your belongings to poor and very needy brothers and sisters in an emergency; - yes - if you will feel a proper suffering in your heart, not being able to help some poor person! - if God is everything to you, the whole earth with all its treasures and riches is nothing to you at all, then your soul is already completely one with the Spirit of God in you,**

has reached perfect eternal life, is wise, and where necessary, able to perform miracles through its pure will.

3. But in order to establish the souls of men, many a pious soul, which has become one in itself and in God, has been granted by God the Divine miracle power to a particularly high degree, so that it may be a witness to the weak and the unbelievers of what God has determined men to do, how they have to live and how to act, to bring such destiny within itself to the fullest truth! And a true miracle worker certainly does no miracle to be admired by the stupid and blind world, or even to win something that only the material world attaches importance to, but to show his neighbours the true way of life, to give them courage and confidence to fight the world with its evil passions, to show them the true reason, value and purpose of life, and in this way to bring them on a very short way to what God have called them all to be, namely - to true eternal life and its highest bliss. (*ChtS*. I. Aufl. III, p. 435.)

289. How Head and Heart become a Kingdom of Peace

1893, October 11, F. ... Father Jesus explains through Ida K. that man must unite love and wisdom into one being in order to unfold the true life of the Spirit and to grow in knowledge of the true and the good.

1. Love must grow through progressive knowledge, i.e. the heart must not act without reason, and the mind must not act without the heart; both should be educated and guided equally, because neither the mind (for itself) nor the heart (alone) takes the right position in man, both can lead to destruction, if I am not their Leader and Guide. Because with the heart alone you will just as little reach the right goal as with the intellect alone, - I have given you both because you need both, and that is why you are also to use both wisely and not think:

2. When you are My children and cultivate heart-intimacy with Me and put Me, Love, above everything, you should and are not to put the intellect completely aside and let yourselves be led alone by the heart!

3. I do indeed teach you in your heart because I am Love and Love has its abode in your heart but not in your head; because all your actions are to come from your heart, therefore, originating from Love, *the reason for all your actions is to be love*.

4. But to also keep love in its limits, I have put the intellect into the head of man - that is to say over the heart - which is to lead and guide you especially in things of this world - you are to use your intellect, but only insofar as it does not suffocate the heart, or even kill it.

5. The mind is in the actual sense the enemy of the heart, it is the opposite pole of love, because I have organized it thus.

6. But now there shall be one shepherd and one flock, there shall be peace among you, and all enmity shall come to an end; the wolves shall dwell with the lambs under one roof, and none shall be against the other. (Compare Isa 11:6; 65:25)

7. How is that possible? Who are the "wolves"? And who are the "lambs"? Behold, these are all your household members, that is, the *good and evil instincts dwelling in you*, - the passions of all kinds, these are "the wolves" who want to eat up the good in you that is symbolized by lambs.

8. But how is peace established? And how can good and evil (peacefully) dwell under one roof?

9. Behold, peace and unity in you will be established when everything is organized and regulated in you, and everything fulfills its purpose.

10. Not only your heart, but also your intellect have to be guided by Me and taught to use it properly so that it is no longer an enemy, but a true director of your heart; then he will also only want good; and so you have made peace in yourselves by reshaping the wrong love and exchanging vain knowledge with the "true wisdom" from Me.

11. Behold then heart and intellect are in the right place and will reach out their hands to each other because each recognizes the other and the striving of both has become one - the heart now seeks to love Me and the intellect recognizes Me.

12. This will now clearly show you - how love and knowledge stand in relation to one another and how you are to grow and increase - not only in your heart but also in your mind, so that the right knowledge in all things may come to you. That's what your Father Jesus tells you. Amen.

290. Childhood of God

1842, 25 December, Graz. Father Jesus explains to Jacob Lorber the relationship of the Father in God to men as children of God and that wisdom in God - spiritually called the Son of God - has become one with the Father through its transition into love, and that therefore the Son of God Himself, is called Father Jesus.

1. I called the people of this earth out of the centre of My heart and created them completely in My image; and they should not only be My creatures, but My dear children who are not to recognize Me as God and Creator, but only as their good Father who wants to take them back completely to Himself after a short examination time, so that they are to have everything there what He Himself has, and would rule and judge the universe with Him.

2. But behold, all My creatures love Me as their Creator in the grateful joy of their existence; only My children do not want their Father and disdain His love (ChtS. 1 Chap.3,3). (Matt 19:28; John 5:40-42; 14:2; 15:18,25; 17:24)

3. Behold, I am sad when I see how every hour thousands - and so little by little thousands wither and die. Oh if only I could help them! Is it not sad if the Almighty cannot help? (ChtS. 1 Chap.3,4). (Jer 13:17; Matt 13:58; Mark 6:4,5) You ask Me how that is possible? Oh yes, I tell you, that is very possible. See, all My creatures are attached to My power, but My children are attached to My love - My power commands and it happens, but My love only desires and commands in all meekness the free children; and the free children clog their ears and do not want to see the face of their Father; therefore, because they are free as I am, I cannot help them if they do not want it; for My power is above all, but My Will is subject to My children. - But everyone should write it behind the ears: I am your Father, but I am also your God, and there is no-one but Me. Do you want Me as Father? Or as God? Your deeds will give Me the decisive answer. (ChtS. 1 Chap.3,5) (Micha 2:7; Hosea 9:17; 11:7; 13:6; Sirach 15; 14,7; 16:12; Obad 15; Mark 4:39,40; James 1:22-25)

4. So take note: Love dwells only in the Father, but this Father is one with the love of the Son, who is the wisdom in God, and therefore the wisdom or Son of God is now called "Father Jesus". But the one who despises this love will fall into the hands of the mighty Godhead, and will be deprived of his freedom forever, and death will be his part; for the Godhead dwells also in hell; but the Father dwells only in heaven. God judges everything according to His power; grace and eternal life is only in the Father, but since the Father and the Son are both one in love, the Son Jesus is now called "Father". The Godhead kills everything; but the Son, or the wisdom that has passed into love in Me, has life, gives life and makes alive (ChtS. 1 Chap.3,6). (John 5:26; 16:28; 1 John 5:11-12)

291. Concentration of Thoughts in God

1901, 13 July, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus on how one must always concentrate one's thoughts in God in order to kill off all material secondary thoughts in oneself and thus achieve the rebirth of the Spirit.

1. My dear children! The highest perfection of man on earth is when he reaches the rebirth of the Spirit, therefore man must make every effort to reach it.

2. In the following enlightenments you see the highest light, which is given to you for ennoblement and spiritualization out of My love:

3. With every thought concentrated in God, a world full of wonders of the most beautiful glory opens up. Thoughts carry worlds within them, so with each thought one can conquer a new world, therefore one should turn all thoughts from the world to God and connect all worldly things, which are not under sin, with God, and cultivate the thoughts occupied with it as highly spiritually as inventors and discoverers sink their thoughts deep into the object of their love, which they want to explore and bring about the invention or discovery from it.

4. The one who always pursues a thought and repel all peripheral thoughts, always opens himself to new ideas out of the main thought and perfects them, therefore one must hold on to this one thought and only spin and weave on it.

5. If in this way you concentrate your thoughts in Me, I am the concept that you want to develop; and because every high concept requires the full focusing of the senses and thoughts, it goes without saying that the highest concept also requires the highest effort in order to achieve the goal that you have set for yourself in your head.

6. You can associate Me with everything that does not involve sin and naughtiness of thought; for you must always keep in mind that I, though Creator of everything, am nevertheless holy and exalted above all material things, and so it is to have respect and fear for Me where sin and naughty thoughts want to bring Me into relationship with matter.

7. Everyone can concentrate his thoughts when he embraces something with love and so also I am the object that has to be embraced by everyone who steps towards the rebirth of the spirit with all love and thought-concentration when he wants to reach his goal.

8. You can have your thoughts in the mineral, plant or animal kingdom, but you shall always connect everything to Me, and so also among people. Because there is nowhere where I would not also be, nowhere where I would not be the Creator and Leader of the object or being, nowhere where I would not be the connecting line from one to the other. But because this is so, all you need to do is think about what the object or being is, where it comes from, what it is for, what it does for man or the world, what it is for in the world, or what it has to do in the world, and you will have enough material to think about it. All these thoughts have to be brought into connection with Me and thoroughly thought through that I Myself create all this, direct it and it is My property and taken out of Me, that is why I Myself am in every object and being as the one who creates all this, directs and is in this or that form.

9. If you know all this, you know what you have to do to fulfil My Will, for if you know that I dwell in the heart of every living object and being in the flesh as Master, Who created the object or being, you also know how to deal with the object or being so as not to arouse My aversion.

10. Protect therefore every object and being as if you were the creator of it, for indeed your spirit is the Creator, but your reason and understanding know nothing of it while they still think worldly. No human soul can grasp this as long as the soul is not completely pure and clear. - But the fleshly

reason has to absorb this through learning, because it is not capable of a spiritual comprehension. But when the soul and the flesh-brain are both ripe to understand this, then there is a mutually complementary harmony between the spiritual and cerebral or fleshly brain-mind and thus also reason. And this is then called the harmonious man in the true spiritual sense of the word.

11. *Compare and take what is said in the* "Prayer Book" *for guidance into the rebirth of the Spirit.*

12. If you concentrate the thoughts on and in Me in the way described above, the wisdom and material as well as carnal thoughts will gradually die in you and the more you immerse yourself in Me, the more the opposite pole's thoughts will disappear from you and finally disappear completely, and thereby you become ripe for rebirth.

13. This is the master key to rebirth. In addition to this, there are all sorts of other keys that belong to the master key as supplements, such as the various teachings.

292. God's Rod of Discipline

1905, March 9, Zurich. Father Jesus explains the difference between the term "punishment by men" and "punishment by God", since the latter only implies an educational improvement.

1. My dear children, in My teachings I once again say: I do not punish anyone, but man punishes himself by not observing and not fulfilling My commandments; another time there is again talk of My disciplining rod and of punishments which I send on men. What is the truth there?

2. Behold, My children, both are true here; for evil, riotous and feral children must be punished; otherwise they will become lost to Me.

3. There is thus only a misunderstanding between the expression 'punishment' and 'improvement'. Men on earth punish the evildoers according to the articles of law with imprisonment and corporal punishment, but in the end nothing good comes out of it, but the prisoner or punished becomes only bolder, more evil, more mischievous, more careful and often also vengeful against those who chastise him.

4. But with me there are no punishments according to articles of law, but well thought-out admissions of the conditions through which man is improved and yet not punished in an earthly way, you see this very clearly in the reincarnation doctrine.

5. But there are also extraordinary excesses against Me as a holy, unapproachable God for gross sinners, as well as against the salvation of their own souls, with which man strips of everything human and becomes animal, hellish and devilish, and the longer he is left in this state, the more angry, daring and therefore satanic he also becomes, so that he becomes a completely useless being for the holy goal of becoming My children.

6. Such wildlings of hell sometimes have to suddenly leave the scene of their activity in order not to get worse, or even to trap others. You can see such cases in the Holy Scriptures listed in *"Love"* Volume I, page 60.

7. The question is, am I a punishing judge or not, since those who are seized receive their reward? You say, "The father who does not punish his children when they deserve punishment is not a father, but a useless educator of his children, whom he educates only to become evil men instead of good ones". Therefore I must also punish, but only not in the earthly wrong, but in the Divine sense; I educate and better My degenerate children, even if with different, often very bitter and woeful means,

while men - especially the judges of the articles of law - punish, but do not improve, but mostly only worsen.

8. My anger is "zeal for love"; - My fury is "zeal for truth"; - My punishments are "punishments out of love, that men should not perish", it is My loving guidance to the insight of children walking on the wrong paths, that they do not become ever angrier, darker and more devilish in their vices. So understand My punishments and My rod of discipline, then you will recognize the difference between God's punishment and man's punishment, and understand My saying "I punish no-one", although you see daily punishments and convicts of My love, which I lead through the manifold fates of life and educate better, and so, to [become] men. Amen.

293. Love, Humility and Patience in Jesus

1903, January 5, Graz. Father Jesus describes His own love, humility and patience, which serve as an example that man in His God and Father should contemplate the pattern of life.

1. Above all it is love which has its central focus in God, because God is love, namely such a consuming love which burns everything material as fire and makes it its own, as well as spiritual love, which burns everything else in man and subordinates it to its love.

2. Thus you see Me, your Father Jesus, that out of love for you I denied all My Divinity and became man to make you like Me. My love surrounds you and wants to draw you to itself because it is precisely the Father who is with you.

3. Through this love I have created the world and cultivated and refined it until it became suitable to put you on it. I have sacrificed millions of years to this process of becoming, until it has been ennobled to the point of becoming a home for My children. From this you can calculate the patience and endurance of My love - it has no limits; and when the children began to leave it and walk the wrong ways, it took pity on them, came down from its heavenly glory and among them, humbled itself, taught them to walk the ways of eternal salvation and when all this was not yet enough, it did the utmost, it had itself crucified for its children, in order to gain on the one hand their knowledge and gratitude as reciprocal love, and on the other hand the original sin, which was committed by the haughty disobedience against the Divine commandment of chastity, to atone for it and to clear for them again the way to their Father.

4. This act of crucifixion was something so infinitely great for you, that you will never quite grasp how it was possible for Me, the very highest God, Creator and Ruler in the universe to take this boundless humiliation on Me, what you would have had to do for yourselves to again acquire the childhood of God. Yes, I tell you, the pains of the coronation were so horrible and penetrating that all hell trembled because it was meant to destroy them. It had them brought up and therefore they had to hear that it was accepted and [that it] suffered in order to destroy them, and for the redemption of the spirits from hell.

5. You cannot fathom My humiliation before the arrogant Pharisees; it can only be comprehended when one can have a picture of the glory and holiness of My Divinity as a thorough connoisseur of everything that I am. But one can only do this when one has risen so high to understand Me - Me the incomprehensible infinite God, therefore only with the third rebirth, which will take place after an infinite period of eternities, when you become as pure as the purest crystal in everything.

6. My love is the purest spiritual primordial light and out of this, all other virtues and qualities have grown up in God and are mutually connected. Only look what patience I have with you and yet My love is never offended against you, although you cause much adversity against Me, because you do

not follow Me and again and again walk wrong ways.
7. But I want to give you some special instructions in the next chapter, that you may know how you can walk justly and according to My will before Me.

294. Life, Charity, Creation

1901, February 3rd and 5th, Graz. Father Jesus gives various rules of life according to which man should lead his life and regulate and observe his behaviour towards his neighbour and towards creation.

1. Believe Me, as you act against others despite My clear words, so you act against Me because you still do not think at the right moment, that I Myself am your neighbour who judges you according to your thoughts and deeds. - Who else, like Me, must listen to everything you say about this or that!? And yet I Myself am the one according to the spirit, even if not according to the soul, - but this [the soul] is My bride, and a bridegroom does not want to hear the berating of his bride. Therefore, leave people in peace, and each look only to his faults, weaknesses and errors, that he eradicates them!

2. Everyone who wants to be My disciple must respect My words as holy and always live and act according to them and not only temporarily.

3. Anyone who walks towards rebirth and has or receives the "inner word" should keep silent about what I specifically say, promise, do or give him - and not divulge everything, for what good is that? Is it necessary? If no one asks about it, then don't tell [anyone] without being asked and without My permission.

4. Always be careful what you say and do, so that you do not awaken worldly vices in yourself.

5. Look at everything that is made by human hands or animals, that I am the Master-builder and Master workman of it, because I gave the intelligence and the power to manufacture, produce or build it and therefore *I am the Master who brought it about through His tools, so all work done is My own work, a creation through tools*.

6. But everything that grows or moves is – because it is created - to be regarded as a creature, and I Myself gave in thought the form of the creature: spirit, soul, body - and likewise in animals; be it a flower, a tree, an herb or any other plant and also in bipedal, quadrupedal or poly-podal animals as well as creeping or swimming animals, everywhere is the Trinity: the visible form of the object or being, in this is the soul (i.e. the spirit-soul) and in the heart, I Myself as the spirit and leader of life, like in the whole universe. Therefore, consider everything that is growing or moving as the divine thoughts in this establishment, where I Myself am represented as the Leader of what is yet to be cultivated and refined.

7. But the water, the earth, the stones and minerals are the gross spiritual matter, which is cultivated, ennobled and refined by Me in order to finally be transformed into the spiritual.

8. Live in such a way that you become a pattern of life for yourself and for all people. - But in order to live like this, it is absolutely necessary that you consider the world on which you live to be what it is in the Primordial Truth, namely:

9. Every man is your brother and is a deity in the core of his ego, because I Myself am his spirit. Think of him as your Father Jesus, who as the bearer of matter, is its leader and sanctifier. Therefore have respect for every human being, show him reverent homage in the sense of his inner self, be pleasing to him and behave as virtuously before him as if it were I, Jesus Myself, standing before you - for in fact I am, but invisible to the carnal eyes.

10. Every person is your neighbour and your God Jesus Jehovah Zebaoth, even if the outer shell is rough, raw, wicked and full of all vices. This one is in the process of transformation, refinement and spiritualization - it is only animated matter, while the core of the person is the living God Himself, who lives and weaves the universe divided into innumerable persons and yet is only a spirit of the universe, he is only the multiplication of the one God, who ennobles, spiritualizes and deifies the fallen soul of the original spirit Satana, and thus leads it back into its original state.

11. If you see the material and spiritual representation of your God in every person, you will be able to treat all people lovingly and enjoy them, even if they do not live and act according to the teachings because of their ignorance. Everything has its time and so even wicked people will one day become angels and archangels. Show them respect and esteem, because I am the existence of their being, because only I deserve the reverence and esteem, and is to be shown it through the person.

12. One is indeed to be careful of evil men, but never forget that I am the inner life in them, who sees and observes everything what goes on.

13. The children are to be loved as an aspiring 'Me', to guide them, to point them towards Me and to deal with them decently; but never forget yourselves and mistreat them, abuse them and hurt them without cause - because also in them I am the same God as in an archangel or the very best man who sees and guides everything.

14. Never speak anything unpleasant or even bad about people in their absence; because that is not only what I hear as the Spirit of that person, but also what the soul of such a person hears, because the soul of every person sees and hears everything what concerns it. Therefore take care never to complain about a person because that is neither dear and pleasant to Me the Spirit, nor the soul of the person concerned - and leads to spiritual coldness, unpleasant encounters, fleeing from the person, division, hatred and revenge - because the soul sees and hears what the person concerned speaks of it and does against it. If this were also known to the brain, then the world would be the purest hell of discord, revenge, persecution and oppression. Such is kept for the world beyond the grave, where everything comes to light, then the payment and compensation for hidden and open sins against one's neighbour, happens there.

295. Means to Awaken the Spirit to Rebirth.

Year 919 since Adam, under-Lebanon, at the river Bostrénus. Description of the conditions and procedures for entering into the rebirth of the Spirit and how to behave.

1. But therefore the way, and this is the only awakening of the Spirit, is that all of you turn to the Most Holy Father in your hearts, that is, in the most perfect love, full of trust and just, unselfish devotion.

2. But when you will see that the love in your heart is getting hotter and hotter, then pay attention to your heart; for then the time of ignition and light is already there; and then your whole heart will ignite to God, the most holy and loving Father, then look into yourself, and you will see in yourself the wonders of eternal life.

3. But take well notice that you do not begin to love the most holy Father solely because of this; because the most holy Father wants to be loved for His own sake; and this love of you should not be as if it were to last only from today to tomorrow; for not even the weak woman is satisfied with a love that is only temporal, let alone the eternal God!

4. But life will be created according to this love, and if this is the sole requirement of life, then there is

no light in such love.

5. But if love is shaped for all eternity, life will be likewise; and behold, such eternal love is the first light of the eternal Spirit, who himself is nothing but pure love.

6. That is all - act accordingly, that you will soon be able to look at yourselves inwardly. Amen.

296. The Inner Perfection of Life and its Three Degrees

1876, May 23rd, Trieste. Through Gottfried Mayerhofer, Father Jesus describes the qualities of man progressing through three degrees of spiritual perfection, how man relates with Him in every degree and how he, as an accomplished spirit, relates with God.

1. Man has the equal free will to sin and to do good. Man's will to sin always finds great support in himself, in the incentives and passions of his flesh; But for the will for good he finds no support at all in his flesh, but only in faith in a true God and especially in love for Him, and also in the hope that the promises made to him by God, will be fully fulfilled. **Whoever, therefore, by the firmest and liveliest faith, by the love for God and neighbour and through undoubting hope, can fight against all the evil passions of his flesh - and thereby becomes lord over himself completely, will also soon become lord of all outer nature, and by becoming perfect master of himself, he is already in the first degree of the true inner perfection of life**, although there will be no shortage of all sorts of temptations on several occasions, which will tempt him to commit one or the other slight sin.

2. If he now also **understands how to make a firm covenant with all his senses to the effect that they turn away from all earthly incentives and only turn to the pure spiritual being**, then this is already a sure and vital sign that the inner spirit from God has completely penetrated the soul, and man is there in the **second degree** of the inner perfection of life. - To this degree man has also acquired that strength and freedom of life that, because he fills his soul completely with the will of God, he can act according to it and thus no longer commit sin! - For since he himself became pure, everything is pure to him. - But as man then is already a perfect master of all nature and has the brightest conviction in himself that he cannot possibly fail anymore, as all his doing is guided by true wisdom from God, he is and remains through this only in the second degree of the inner perfection of life. -

3. But there is still a third and highest degree of inner accomplishment. But what does it consist of? - and how can man reach it? - This consists in the fact that the perfect man - knowing well that he can now do whatever he wants as a mighty lord over all of nature without sin, but nevertheless keeps his willpower and might humbly and meekly in check, does not just do anything with each of his actions out of the purest love for God, which is also a very hard task for the perfect lord over nature, because he always recognizes in his full wisdom that he can only act rightly out of God according to the will dwelling in himself. —

4. But a deeper going spirit also recognizes that there is still a great difference between the special will of God in him and the freest and most endless general will in God, and he **completely subordinates his special will to the general Divine will and only then does something out of the already inner power when he is directly ordered by the only and most individual will in God**; he who does this, has attained in himself the **innermost and supreme perfection of life**, which is the *perfection of life in the **third degree***. - The one who attains this is also *completely one with God, and like God possesses the highest power and might over all things in heaven and on earth*, and no-one can take it from him forever, because he is completely one with God. —

5. But every archangel has the power to bring about in a moment all that which God himself can bring about endlessly; but notwithstanding this, no archangel has an effect purely out of himself, but only when he is called to do so by God Self. This is why even the highest archangels ask God at all times, when they see this or that deficiency - especially in the people of this earth - that God would call them to do this or that. - If I say to such a person - who is in the full third degree of the inner perfection of life, whose will is already so good as an accomplished deed: - 'Now act purely out of yourself and for yourself', then he will also do and show what is in him. —

6. But no-one can attain this supreme accomplishment of life, in which the archangels are, until he has attained the first and second stage.

297. The Delights of our Heavenly Father

1. Father Jesus says: "Oh what are all the joys and blessings of My heaven for Me, the Father, compared to being loved by My beloved children as the only true Father! —

2. Behold, I give you every delight for just this one thing, which I have destined only for Myself, and that is why My children are also not to call anyone but Me - only and exclusively Me, their Father; because I am also it, and that also with all rights, and nobody can take away this right from Me, because I am the only One - the only One - and besides Me, there is none. (ChtS. 1.3, 11 - Joel 2:27; - Matt 23:9)

298. Humility. The Seven different Spirits of Humility

1901, December 8, Graz. Father Jesus explains the seven different levels of humility through which man purifies and sanctifies himself to become a child and heir to the Kingdom of God.

1. Humility is a highly Divine virtue, (see the register in the *Prayer Book* under 'Humility'.) It is the basis for building up all virtues - especially love - by which your spiritual Father recognizes you as His child. Without humility there is no progress in the spiritual, because the counter-virtue of humility is pride, and this is the main sin of all sins. (See in the register of the *Prayer Book*, the topic 'Pride'.)

2. In the floral language it is represented by the violet. Look at such a violet, it is an ordinary flower, but its fragrance is highly appreciated by everyone, so it is also the case with humility, for with it man shall win the hearts of men everywhere, as does the violet; therefore nurture humility, for it is the heavenly violet, by whose colour, form and smell you all know that you are children of Eternal Love and humility. Now we divide this heavenly flower into seven spirits of humility towards:

1. God
2. the neighbour
3. a superior
4. a minor
5. enemies
6. peers
7. God in the adversities of life

3. First, humility to God. You must be like Me, your spiritual heavenly Father - you must become perfect as I am, otherwise you will remain behind in the spiritual and cannot inherit all that I have

determined and prepared for you. Oh children! Your task is great, you are to become gods, creators and rulers, but before you are fit for it, I cannot put you in your inheritance, because as unsuitable instruments, instead of making happy, you would only make the creatures entrusted [to you], unhappy. Therefore cultivate humility, this gloriously fragrant flower of heaven, so that I may have joy in you and can give you gifts and graces.

4. Read chapter 298 and 299 in My Youth Story [*Childhood years of Jesus*], how I thereby exemplify the example of My Life to you, to know how to fight against the vices.

5. Second, humility towards the neighbour. I have given you a great light on various pages about humility in the "*Prayer Book*", so you will also have to read about it in the "*Prayer Book*" to know all that My Love has given you. But I am inexhaustible in everything, therefore listen to Me, what I again announce anew to you:

6. Your neighbour is no one else but Me, although the soul-garment of Satana hides Me from you. Once I have warmed this dark garment with My Holy Sun dwelling in the heart of your soul and penetrated all the mists and dark clouds of your sinfulness through love and humility towards Me in your neighbour, then you will see that paradise in your heart will already unfold on earth and send its joyful compulsions outward, and so man will be made happy and will return again to the Father's House, which he left in his worldliness, as a part of the prodigal son Satan, whose soul-clothing you wear, and He will bring it back spiritualized and in the light of divinity.

7. Third, humility towards superiors. It is very difficult for man to bow before his superiors and to humble himself. But this humiliation is a school that can be understood properly. Of course every man from the highest to the very least is your brother, but behold: There must also be superiors who lead the less advanced and lead them to Me. Nowadays there are all kinds of superiors who administer their office or their own affairs in many ways in arrogance, and whoever has to serve, must humbly compliment them and carry out their orders without hesitation or objection.

8. This humility, which one has to foster, have to want to humbly sacrifice to My honour and do quietly and devotedly what one has to do. For this humble behaviour on your part, you are welcomed by your superiors and well-esteemed and paid. So this is earthly reward. - But when you bear everything out of love towards Me and patiently accept every trouble in humility towards Me and sacrifice your being to Me for honour - see, then you have marked the spiritual reward according to Divine measure from Me for you, which you will not miss when your time of humble tolerance has expired and you will come to Me to receive your spiritual reward.

9. There will also be superiors as leaders of the brothers and sisters in the material and spiritual in the kingdom of God of love on earth; because where there has to be an order, there also has to be the steward, otherwise everyone does what he thinks is good. Because your spiritual tendencies are sevenfold, advanced people are needed to lead all and everyone according to the will of My love, otherwise soon discord, strife and lack of love would arise.

10. Therefore already now be humble so that you build up heaven in your heart; for as long as you do not imitate My Divine virtues and do not obey My Words, I also cannot come to you to make you happy.

11. Fourth, humility towards those lesser than you. To bring this into a true balance, is only possible for those who observe My teachings of spiritual life and strive with all their fire to put them into practice. - You shall never measure those lower than you according to clothing, body and education, but according to the spirit that has made His dwelling in them. And this Spirit is I, your God, Creator, Judge, Lord and Father. Look from this point of view at the poor and sick, as I so gloriously announced to you in the "*Prayer Book*" (chapters 18 and 19) - [I] who see *your* humility and weighs everything on the gold scale and makes notes of it to give you the reward after your deed, when you will leave the temporal to come into it.

12. Fifth, humility towards enemies. See dear children, this is a chapter of spiritual life, even to humble oneself before the enemies! - And so it happens: when man stands independently against the enemy and still let humility prevail, instead of crushing the adversary with the weight of evidence and spiritual superiority and shaming him. This is not bravery, but the maturing of the virtue of humility, in order to ascend faster into higher spiritual regions and to come closer to Me.

13. The love in you is humble because I, your God and Father, live in it - but wisdom is arrogant and therefore My opposite pole - Satan - in you. Therefore be humble and loving at every opportunity, even if your flesh-Satan must suffer a little shame, but in return, the Godhead triumphs in you, and only He you shall serve, and always crucify Satan in you.

14. Sixth, humility towards your equals. Consider your neighbour who has the same office, the same faith, and the same rank in everything as you, not indifferent, but loving, courteous, and humble! Not because of him, but because of your humility before Me, Who live in him - speak and act all that is good.

15. Seventh: Humility to God in the adversities of life. Behold, My children, I am sending you some inconveniences in life to suppress your stubbornness and make you more spiritual. In fact, I do not send diseases and misfortunes to people, but they are the consequences of a disorderly lifestyle; in fact, on the other hand, I allow this because man enters through this into My spiritual school where I purify him and make him think about the causes of illness and unpleasantness, and he is bound to bed, gains time to think about Me, My teachings and the consequences of an unrepentant life, where a feared death, judgement and hell stretches their throat to devour the sinner.

16. Always be humble towards Me instead of grumbling, because it is a high favour from Me to protect you from the abyss of hell, it may be illness, loss of money or another unpleasantness because all this belongs to the testing of the flesh and school of purification of man in the world. You do not see the spiritual causes and get angry and grumble and complain against your fate while **I do not allow anything that is not to your advantage**.

17. Many people come to earth from other stars, planets and sun-worlds, to seek and find Me, their Father; but here they fall into the school of Satan and become devils themselves and arch-devils and corrupt completely. And there it often happens that I let all kinds of tribulations come over them to save them from hell.

18. Therefore be composed, think of Me when things are not going according to your will, and sacrifice everything in humility to Me for glory, and it will once rise to your glorification in the light of Divine love in you and around you to the throne of My holiness in God.

299. Various Teachings on Humility

1901, 16 February, Graz. Father Jesus, on the basis of new words and some given by Jacob Lorber, explains the value of humility in order to advance spiritually and become a child of God. - The cretin as an example of a history of arrogance.

1. When man recognizes that he is a brother to every man, then he is diverted from other viewpoints, which wisdom gladly teaches him. Man as God's child - since I am Spiritual Father-God of you all - is brother to all people in the world, whether they be rich or poor, educated or uneducated, beautiful or ugly in shape; for the ugly figure is the result of too little care given to love and wisdom in his past life and as man was inwardly, before his reincarnation, the same signs of spiritual ugliness he now displays externally on his body. - As an example of this sad truth, let the following fact serve you:

2. In Styria there are many cretins or fools (or idiots), called "Tocker" in Carinthian, who are partly laughed at, partly pitied. These poor fools were highly regarded in their past lives when they lived in the world as writers, dancers, actors, rich, talented, arrogant people, people of lofty spirit and all education. Instead of exploiting it all for the good and happiness of mankind, in order to lead them spiritually to God, it only made them ripe for hell. Finally death came, they were buried with great honour and great pomp and much was spoken and written about their talents and merits.

3. It was different for the deceased in the hereafter: Arrived there, they were barren of all virtues that lead to Me, but full of the sins and crimes against their fellow human beings that they had committed through their lives , through which these were led to hell. They lived animalistically, died animalistically, therefore they were transformed into animals, whose virtues they indulged in in life, because there was nothing divine about them. —

4. After a long agonizing life in the hellish spirit kingdom, I took pity on them again and let them go through a new reincarnation, in which they now live as more animal than human, laughed at and abused by the little ones, shunned and pitied and feared by the big ones.

5. And behold, such a cretin was a talented [person] in a past life, a highly regarded person who had, however, in haughty wisdom, misused his talents for the spiritual ruin of his fellow men. He has to go through a new reincarnation to again become a normal man to reach his spiritual goal, which leads to Me.

6. Humility is that virtue which is prescribed to you as well as love; for humility is a principal virtue which I demand of you because - as noted above - its counter-virtue is pride, or Satan in you. Therefore, note that in heaven, love and humility flow through all men and make them mutually dear and beloved to each other. Therefore cultivate humility, for it is the foundation of love that lifts you up into those bright regions of the Spirit where I, your Father Jesus, King of love-spirits, throne.

300. Through the Battle of Life to Heavenly Victory

(A Christmas gift from God.)

1. "Not for nothing did you call a feast "Christmas." - Yes, it was a consecrated night when I - the infinite Lord of creation - also consecrated Myself dearly to you and all mankind as a *sacrifice of humiliation, by putting on a fragile perishable garment*, which, among millions of other living beings, stands far behind the highest type of a human being because in other worlds - as far as the external is concerned - many are so equipped that earthly man appears only as a faint, weak imitation, in what I, as image of My own Self, have put into this form.

2. And yet, even though men living on other worlds are in many ways superior to the inhabitants of the earth, the latter are spiritually destined to something far greater than those living in the paradisiacal worlds and suns, - because while those have eternal springtime-laughter, while they live in conditions that your earthly imagination is not able to reach - *so the clear knowledge of My ego, My spiritual creation and My Fatherly love, is still lost to them*. - they are good, because no evil tries to tempt them to the opposite; - they recognize a supreme being, sink down with reverence before him, but *none of them dares to think as if this supreme being wanted to press a being created by him against his father's breast, and give him the sweet name of child*! - This was reserved only for those who had to achieve such a position through struggle and victory, so that they could become children of God.

3. So where the educational school of such children is, is - besides the greatest possible spiritual elevation - also the opposite, the greatest possible humiliation or apostasy from the good, which must

take place, so that between such extremes, a progress for the better, a victory over all possible obstacles, is possible, etc. (ChtS. 44 p. 9-10)

4. The basis for love is humility, through which you will never imagine or treasure yourselves, but out of love you will always grant your neighbour a right and where possible a privilege, but through this you will draw them to your well-tried friends and brothers in your heart, who will then observe the same thing towards you.

5. But as all evil, so also all good is imitated, and so you will shine a light on them through your good example and make them unconscious benefactors to you and your neighbour.

6. But when you have achieved this, then it is time to approach them, and to teach them how they can put the good to use, for the attainment of bliss through it, which will then bring you as teacher, and them as followers, to eternal life.

7. You ask: Father tell us, how and where shall we humble ourselves? Well, I will make it clear to you where humility begins. You think I demand humility and subservience only before your superiors or before higher personalities? Oh no, for you are compelled to do so for the sake of your own personal or political advantages, or out of a sense of necessity, subservience or lowliness; humility, as you see it, does not begin there, but somewhere else, - namely where you think that you should be met with compliments, praise and thanksgiving for the good and noble things done to your neighbour, there you are to publicly confess that you are only tools of Divine love to men and all honour and thanksgiving for it is to be given to God only, who has instilled in you the noble thought and who works through you. Behold, dear children, if you do otherwise, worldly thoughts and views will then be arrogance, which do not unite with My love-teaching on humility.

8. If a beggar meets you in the street or somewhere else and he asks you for something, then do not consider yourselves as those who have it and therefore also can give it, but consider the poor as a brother in the spirit and do the good you want to do, as if you would give it to Me, therefore with humility, as if you would imagine Me in this ragged and poor form, then this has a completely different value with Me; for I am indeed dwelling in the heart of the poor, and look well upon your action, your heart, in the gifting of the poor - with what feelings of compassion and humility you give to the poor.

9. Should a beggar, a gypsy or otherwise an unsympathetic person ask you for information on the street or wherever, and regardless of whether people are around you or not, you are to listen to the person and answer the question put to you with all necessary polite courtesy and help them out of embarrassment according to your best knowledge and ability; because you are to think that they are also your brother or sister because they are My children and that I, being the highest Lord and God, am not ashamed to live in them, so that also you have no cause to look [down] at them for being lesser than you yourselves. Thus you are to treat your neighbours and you will fulfill My commandment of love of neighbour and humanity, if you, besides this, also fulfill the obligation of love of neighbour already known from the Bible (Matt 25:35-40).

10. If one leads a beautiful, exemplary life, one should never be bragged about and praised before the world, because that easily turns into arrogance and overestimation of oneself.

11. Do not let it be known that you are capable of more, and understand more than your brothers, but consider them equal to you and your knowledge and your progress, so that you are not seized by pride and megalomania, which then throws you spiritually into hell.

12. Be content with all that your neighbours do to you, and judge their works not with the wisdom of worldly understanding, but with the love of the heart and humility. For your neighbour's unpleasantness is the temptation for you to steel yourself in good virtues.

13. Never heed the flatteries of brothers or sisters if they do not meet the demands of love for Me.

14. Suppress rising pride when others appreciate and acknowledge or even praise or flatter you for your work, knowledge, wisdom, and virtues. A Theosophist must be humble and immediately sacrifice every praise, which would be given to him, to My honour and think thereby: I am nothing without You, but You are all in Me as the Spirit of God, therefore all praise and all glory, of what I have and am - all, is for You.

15. Do not consider your knowledge, merits, and progress with the feeling that you are more than your weak and sinful brother. - You may have merits and advantages, but don't let him know! On the contrary, your spiritual merits must shine forth in the fact that you are the most affable, humble, courteous, merciful, selfless, and loving brother out of inner inclination and not out of compulsion, for compulsion comes neither from love nor from the freedom that must rule man's heart.

16. No one is to let himself dream that he is perhaps considered more with Me than other of My children, no matter how worldly they are; because such a thought already reaches into arrogance.

17. It is humility when someone confesses the mistakes he has made, repents of them and no longer commits them, out of love for God.

18. Do not allow yourself to long to rule over others; for the ruling gives birth to arrogance and self-importance, and this leads you to hell, but ask your Father-God for humility, that you may serve others and be subservient to them.

19. Do not strive for riches, because these too readily draw men to the world, to the craving for pleasure and thus to effeminacy, whereby he becomes incapable of standing in the fight against the world and its temptations, which build him hell on earth for the hereafter, but content yourself with little, so that you may be relieved of temptations; for it is better to be poor in heaven, than to wander rich in hell.

20. Money is the basis for all kinds of human weaknesses, because one can have everything for money, therefore his name is Mammon, the second god or the true Antichrist in the world.

21. He who has money knows that he has it, he knows that he has preference everywhere, he knows that because of money, everyone compliments him and prefers him in everything; but that makes man self-confident, then arrogant, self-opinionated, vindictive, if he is not the first and others are preferred to him. Nor does wealth satisfy; on the contrary, it causes dissatisfaction, because the rich man desires more and more money, the riches of the whole world can not satisfy him. Therefore do not wish for yourselves unnecessary much money or wealth, be content with little so that you can serve Me more easily and take care of the salvation of your soul, so that it will not one day happen to you as it will happen to the evangelical rich man, to whom I said: that a ship's rope will rather go through an eye of a needle than that a rich man comes into the kingdom of heaven.

22. It is certainly pleasant to possess riches, but in them usually lies the death of the spirit - or hell - therefore rather remain poor in the riches of the world, but rich in works of love, because the former pass away, the latter last eternally. But no-one can serve two lords because each places a different demand on the servant, for the one lord is I, Jesus, the other is Satan or the world with its material attractions and pleasures, which lead to hell. You need to be told this, that you have no greed after money, go through the world, and become dead for the spiritual - for heaven - while you were precisely put on the world to earn heaven.

23. Do not push yourself forward to shine first, but rather take the lowest place, because the one who exalts himself will be humbled, but the one who humbles himself, will be exalted.

24. Always seek to fulfill the will of God in you; for the Lord your God shall reign in you and with you, that He may make you fit to become an heir to His goods and worlds.

25. Always strive to fulfill the Divine will; then rest and peace will enter you, because the Spirit of your Father will be satisfied and be one in you and with you.

26. Explore carefully whether you have already gone through the *school of humility* enough, whether you are able to regard your insulting neighbour as a minor god. - (because [he] also carries a Divine spark) - to love *out of love for Me* and *because of Me*, and when necessary, *to repay evil with good*, even if it costs *sacrifice and denial of yourself!* - out of pure love for Him who sacrificed *His* life on earth for you *out of pure love* on the Cross in all contempt of the world.

27. See, My dear children must first of all examine the school of humility closely; all this I demand. Yes, it is not so easy to become "My child" - the very best remedies are bitter; but with My help, man overcomes all; if he is of a firm will, My blessing is not absent! (ChtS. 39,39)

28. The humility of the heart. My dear children! The first thing love needs as a foundation, is true heart-humility, which first begins in itself (with self-knowledge), whereby the heart feels its total inability to will out of itself and achieve what is good, without assistance from above. The truly humble [one] knows that his will does not want what is right out of itself, but is guided by grace as if it were himself, while everything happens under My influence.

29. Who therefore once has come to the insight that all spiritual growth happens through My influence, and who before, through outer means - be it through teaching or through contact with children of God - has come to this viewpoint; and who feels thereby driven to turn to Me, I will enlighten him about his own incapacity, and this will be the first favour done to him, which forms the beginning for further knowledge and surrender of will.

30. If this once, even if imperfectly, has proceeded within a soul, then often means are necessary to lead it further in its striving, which are completely incomprehensible to you, because only I as Father knows why I have to act like this, for none of you can see through the other and know what often either is attained, or first has to be removed; that is why trust in Me is so necessary, through which you can also reach true humility.

31. Through true humility, love for one's neighbour grows; for he who still finds himself weak and defective, will also not demand anything more from his neighbour, but patience and often compassion, will be the feeling he carries and acts from, which will then be received as love for one's neighbour.

32. That is why humility is the foundation of love; therefore work hard for this indispensable virtue so that also the other virtues, which are connected with it like a chain, become your own; begin to firmly receive humility and love in your heart and I will illuminate to you everything else that is still necessary for your perfection.

33. These My Words, as I am sending them to you here, are a testing stone (of humility), whether you think about them with your knowledge, or whether you receive them with childlike joy to be quite suitable for you, and want to judge yourselves accordingly (ChtS. 45, C 13)! Amen! Your Jesus.

34. When the mother of My body, Mary, was questioned by her aunt Elisabeth about the conditions in the temple in Jerusalem, Mary answered her in her humility: I beseech you, aunt, ... release me of talking about the temple, for it will not become better or worse; but if the LORD is just, He will chasten the temple at the right time. But Elizabeth recognized in these words the deep humility and modesty of Mary, and said to her: "Yes, you gracious virgin of God! With such attitude, one must also find the highest grace before God! For, as you say, only the most pure innocence can speak; - and the one who lives according to this, can surely live justly before God (ChtS. 9 Chap. 6 V. 24-29) and all the world. - But Mary said: - *The righteous life is not ours, but the Lord's, and is a grace!* - The one who believes himself to live righteously lives the least righteous life before God; but the one who always confesses his guilt before God is the one who lives righteously before God. So let us speak and act

as such!
35. Man can only reach the rebirth and baptism of the Holy Spirit through the humility and great love of his heart; he must give back everything he has of the world, back to the world, to the last cent, thus also the arrogant sciences of his head; - otherwise chances of rebirth and power-baptism of the Spirit, will be terribly slim. (ChtS. 27, 26. 27)

36. Everything we do at any time, we do to the glory of God! In the Spirit we honour God when we keep ourselves low and embrace each other lovingly, and assist one another in all and everything; but we in fact honour God when we use our powers to refine what He has indicated to us that we should complete for His glory. This is the whole religion on the planet Uranus, (ChtS. 2 chapter 44) which is also recommended on our earth for imitation.

301. Why every Human being without Exception should be Welcomed and treated Humbly?

1. If any of your brothers or sisters meet you, greet them with respect, for know: I am in his company as the Spirit of love and life in him to whom the humble greeting is addressed.

2. Take your hat off to every known person, for everywhere I am with you too, and think that by greeting your brother respectfully with bare head, you alone pay Me tribute, but not to your brother or sister; I am with you everywhere, and I go with you, and think that you, by respectfully greeting your brother with bare head, pay Me tribute alone, but not to your brother or sister; because they don't need to be met in any other way than as your brother in the flesh. And only after you have greeted him with My greeting in all seriousness can you ask him what he is doing, reading and how he is doing. But leave aside all material questions and try to speak only spiritually.

3. In order to avoid repetitions, do read about humility and self-denial in the "*Prayer Book*" 3d edition, chapter 11-16, but in verse 4 it is written only for the spiritual mature; - further chapter 19, verse 5; - chapter 48 and 124. In general, the siblings who do not already have a closer acquaintance and the necessary full ripeness, are to be judged according to *Announcements* 1st Volume, page 77, 30. Read also in the *"Holy Trinity"*, chapter 1, verse 9.

302. Mercy or Charity

1901, 18 November, Graz. Father Jesus illuminates through various teachings how to practice mercy through the works of charity and how to gather treasures for the kingdom of heaven.

1. Be every man a good neighbour and do services of love to friend and enemy, and you will win all hearts for yourself. Such services are of course always classified as works of charity.

2. Live only for the welfare of your neighbour in the spiritual and where it is necessary and possible for you, also in the material and let Me take care of you. For even if you will not have abundance, you will not suffer hunger; but you will be in high esteem with Me and will soon reach your goal.

3. For it is your duty to care for the good of your poor brother and to help him as much as you can, for all that you do for him you have done for Me, your Father Jesus, Who received your benefits in the poor and needy.

4. Think much about the quality of your love and humility towards Me and neighbour.
5. Therefore, beware of luxury clothes and furniture! You should be dressed pure and decent, but you should not buy things that make you "nobility," because you have provided too much for the matter and too little for the spirit - so you have scattered instead of collecting, because therefore the works of charity for the poor and needy had to be neglected.

6. Any money that is unnecessarily spent, will be lacking for you to practice the works of charity. But since one can only buy the kingdom of heaven in this way, how will you get into it?

7. The Proverbs of Solomon says: He who has mercy on the poor lends to the Lord; He will well repay him again. (Proverbs 19:17)

8. You read it yourself: The one who does violence to the poor, blasphemes God his Creator; but the one who has mercy on the poor, honours God. (Proverbs 14:31)

9. In the psalms of the prophet David is written: Blessed is the one who takes care of the poor. The Lord will save him in the evil time. (Ps 41:1,2)

10. So the evangelist Matthew writes in his story about the Last Judgement: And the king (Jesus) will answer the merciful on the last day: Truly, I say unto you: What you have done to one of My least brethren, you have done to Me. (Matt 25:40)

11. Accept no payment for the works done out of charity, for otherwise they have lost all their right to be paid by Me, because the world has paid you.

12. Consider yourself lucky to draw from the Father's source and gladly bestow your spiritual knowledge upon your neighbour so that they may also receive bread from the Father's tables.

13. Think much of the poor, needy and suffering! Visit them and give them spiritual and bodily food. For these are the altar of sacrifice of your neighbourly love before Me, your God and Father.

14. If you belong to the class of those who value their works, be Christian and not un-Christian in your bills!

15. Make every effort not to let your work overpay you; for what you have calculated too much here, you will have to serve yourself back in the hereafter, under great effort and torment, because you will pay back again as much to the poor, as you have extorted from them here. Therefore:

16. Beware of every oppression and exploitation of your neighbour! It is blood money - and will therefore have to be paid back with a hundred times more difficult self-earning! —

17. Each one should investigate how his love is for Me, for his neighbour and for himself! Compare the number 666 or 111, namely: 600 for Me, 60 for your neighbour (if he is in need) and 6 for you - or: 100 for Me (since you are to love Me above all else), then 10 for your neighbour and 1 for you, and strive to bring these numbers into the right proportion, then you have reached the goal of life.

18. Many people indulge in the abundance of their incomes and do not know how to consume and waste it through various pleasures, while hundreds and thousands of poor families have to endure an appalling misery and hunger and need. Here My children is the only sacrificial altar that I as God have set up in the Old and New Testaments, while all other material sacrifices and ceremonies before Me are an abomination, as I already proclaimed and revealed in the Old Testament through the prophets.

19. Think about how much you consume monthly for yourself, and how much of your abundance you give to the poor, and how you give it to them, whether for love or pure duty! The latter is a very questionable value. - But the one who gives the spiritual food from My teaching, does best.

20. Do not count how much you give in My Name to the poor! So that I may not have the cause to show you the number of your sins and tell you how much I am doing you good daily for which you do not thank Me! —

21. If any man gives a feast and invites his rich neighbours and friends to it, he has not sinned in it, but in heaven he will have no reward to expect, because his friends here can pay him for it. - Therefore invite the poor to be guests, and it will be rewarded to you in heaven; for the poor cannot reward you here.

22. This is also the case with those who lend them a lot of money at interest and after a certain period of time demand the return of the capital. - They commit no sin by doing so, if they do not practice usury, but in heaven they will have no interest paid. - But this is indeed the case if they lend money to the poor in their need without interest and also without repayment of the capital. - So to help the poor of all kinds in every possible good way, is the true work of charity.

23. Renounce worldly wages and transient worldly honour! - But collect treasures for eternity! Do not let the officials and clergymen of charitable associations give you praises of remembrance of your sense of charity, for that is all against My Divine teaching. Still give what you want to give, and see to it that the given reach its destination.

24. But whoever trumpets his donations in newspapers with names not only receives the worthless transitory honour in public in the world (Matt 6:1-4), but there is also some self-love and pride in having made his name known everywhere, that the world knows: He has it, he can do it, he does it - and others also have it, but they do not do it, because they are selfish and merciless. - Do not let yourselves get puffed up by the prideful sin of alms-giving, as happened to the Pharisees!

25. Supporting poor relatives, friends and acquaintances is a kind of sense of duty that the supporter cannot escape if he does not want to be trumpeted as a miser. Therefore this kind of giving alms is not like when one gives alms to complete strangers, because towards the latter, no sense of duty, but only compassion and mercy take action - and out of love for Me, the neighbour is helped. This giving has an incomparably greater value than where a sense of duty exhorts and urges, and therefore such giving has a very low value. Admittedly, true love can also be given there, but how many do that? —

26. Do good whenever and wherever it is needed: for the recipient it is a blessing; for you it is a blessing and a treasure of grace with which you attain heaven. Therefore you shall do good, because men are children of God and God Himself dwells in them.

27. When man shares of his abundance with the poor and needy, he enters into the circle of his divinity, doing the same as his Father in heaven does. He is transferred from his wealthy special state of humanity, where the hell-spirits have so far mostly resided, to the bright heights of the heavenly spirits, when his prosperity comes from true love for God and neighbour and is worked in quiet concealment.

28. Through the silent work in neighbourly love, man becomes a heavenly spirit, a child of his Father in heaven, and withdraws himself from the earthly depth, which draws him only to matter, the result of which is death and hell. It is only through the quiet work in the circle of poverty and misery that one collects the treasures through which the heavenly gate opens for you and heaven is bought. Who has nothing of these spiritual treasures, if he had enough of earthly treasures in earthly life, becomes in the spirit kingdom a inhabitant of hell - naked, hungry and thirsty and plagued with spiritual suffering, according to the standard of his present possession without doing good.

29. Happy is the man who correctly embraces his life's task according to Divine regulations and puts it into action, for he will receive the reward of life, which is the conquest of heaven with its beauties, its glories and supernatural pleasures.

30. Publicly worked support for the poor shall not bear the stamp of the public; for I taught: Your left hand shall not know what your right hand gives! And this saying of your eternal Father remains eternally in force. —

31. According to My latest announcements: When you publicly sound the trumpet of what you have given to the poor, mankind knows about it through the newspapers, speaks about your alms-giving and praises your mercy; but with it you have reduced - if not completely forfeited - your reward with Me, your God.

32. He who gives alms, let him give them himself; or, if he gives and this is to be handed over to the public in the newspapers, he should not give his name publicly, but only the sum which someone gave should be mentioned under some caption, then his benefit to the poor and needy will be rewarded to him hundreds and thousands of times in heaven; because the left - which means the world, has not experienced anything that the right, i.e. love has done in its compassion and mercy. (Matt 6:1-4) Therefore you must give alms in such a way that it does not nourish the pride of the giver, and it is sensitive to the recipient's honour as an equal person, not offending him.

303. Proof from the Sayings of Jesus that Man, through Labouring Love as a Reward, obtains Eternal Life, which is God or Heaven

1. *Matthew 21:43* - Jesus told the Jews who would not do His will: The kingdom of God will be taken from you and given to a people where it will bring better fruits.

2. *Luke 3:8-9* - Bring fruit worthy of repentance, for the axe is already at the root of the trees; and every tree that does not bring fruit worthy of repentance, will be cut down and cast into the fire.

3. *Luke 6:46-49* - Jesus said: "What for do you call Me Lord, Lord, and do not do what I say; everyone who comes to Me and hears My sayings and does them is like a man who built his house on a rock; but he who hears them and does not do them is like a man who built his house on earth without a firm foundation.

4. *Luke 8:21* - Jesus spoke to His listeners and said, "My mother and My brethren are those who hear and do the word of God."

5. *John 9:31* - We know that God does not hear sinners, but anyone who fears God and does His will, them He hears.

6. John 13:16-17 - When Christ washed his disciples' feet, it was a symbolic act of love and humility, in which the forgiveness of sins and thereby the cleansing of one's neighbour from guilt committed, was indicated by the correspondence of the washing of the feet, regardless of whether the one who humbles himself is also higher than the other, and Jesus emphasized: "If you know this, you are blessed if you do it!"

7. *John 14:15,21* - He who has My commandments and does them is the one who loves Me and I will love him and reveal Myself to him.

8. *John 15:8* - In it My Father is glorified, that you bring forth many fruits (of eternal life from the activity of charity).

9. *John 15:14,16* - You are My friends when you do what I command you; I have chosen you to bear

fruit and abide in your fruit.
10. *Matt 12:33* - Make the tree good, that it bear good fruit; for by the fruit the tree is known.

11. *Matt 3:8,10* - (You sinners) bring worthy fruits of repentance; for every tree which does not bring good fruits is cut down and thrown into the fire.

12. *Matthew 13:23* - He with whom is sown on the good land is the one who hears the Word and bears fruit.

13. *John 4:36* - Whoever reaps (in spirit) receives reward and collects fruit for eternal life (on this side and on the other).

14. *Isaiah 1:16-17* - Wash yourselves, purify yourselves, remove the wickedness of your works, and learn to do good.

15. *Matthew 16:27* - The Son of Man will come in all the glory of His Father and will then repay everyone according to his deeds.

16. *John 5:29* - Those who have done good will come forth, for the resurrection of life.

17. *Revelation 14:13; 20:13* - Their works follow them and they are judged, every one according to his works.

18. *Revelation 22:12* - Behold, I come quickly, and My reward with Me, to give every one according to his works.

19. *Zacharias 1:6* - Just as Jehovah Zebaoth intended to do to us according to our ways and according to our actions, so He had done to us.

20. From all quotations one can see that God rewards or punishes every human being according to his way of life and his actions. I, Jesus, also taught the same thing in the parables, several of which conclude that those who do good are accepted and those who do evil, are rejected; as for example in the parable of the workers in the vineyards, (Matt 21:33-44) of the talents and pounds which they had to increase, (Matt 25:14-31; Luke 19:13-25) also of faith.

21. *John 11:25-26* - Jesus said: Whoever believes in Me (and therefore obeys My teachings and My commandments and fulfills them) will not die for eternity, but will live, even if he dies in the flesh.

22. *John 6:40,47* - This is the will of the Father, that whoever believes in the Son (and fulfills what He taught to do) may have eternal life.

23. *John 3:36* - He who believes in the Son (and in His teaching of active love for his neighbour) has eternal life; but he who does not believe in the Son (that all that He taught must be done) will not see life, but the wrath of God remains upon him.

24. *John 3:15-16* - God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believes in Him should not perish, but have eternal life.

25. *Matthew 7:12; 22:35-40* - Love God above all things, but love your neighbour as yourself; doing to him what you desire, that he may do to you in case of need.

26. *Matthew 6:1* - Take heed that you do not do good before people to be seen by them; otherwise you have no reward from your Father in heaven (because strangers praised you for your good deeds).

27. *Luke 6:35-36* - Love your enemies; do good and borrow where you can hope to receive anything

[in return]; then your reward will be great, and you will be children of the Most High, who is also benevolent towards the ungrateful and the wicked. Therefore be merciful, even as your Father is merciful.

28. *Matthew 10:41-42* - He who receives a prophet as a prophet will receive the reward of a prophet; and he who receives a righteous one because he is righteous will be treated as the righteous one. And whoever gives one of the least of these even a drink of fresh water, because he is a disciple, truly, I tell you, he will not be unrewarded.

29. *Jesus said*: "For one penny given to the poor in My Name, I give an earth to the giver as a reward, and for one drink of fresh water, a sun. Truly I say to you: the least service of charity will be rewarded in the highest, the most ineffable. (ChtS. 1, c. 3,1; Ps. 147:4-5)

30. *I said*: Truly! I tell you, what you did to one of My least brothers, you did it to Me. (Mark 9:40; 12:42, 43)

31. Conduct your *good deeds* as such, that the benefitted recipient is not humiliated, but what you give, give more secretly, and do not wait for special expressions of thanks, - and when they do come, then sacrifice them immediately to Me; because otherwise your doing good will be of no spiritual benefit to you, because you have *kept the world's wages for yourself* instead of immediately offering them up to Me.

32. What you do to the poor, naked, hungry, thirsty and prisoners out of love for God, has the right value and will also be rewarded according to Divine judgement, because it has so much value as if you had done it directly to God.

33. When you do something good for your neighbour, do it as if you want to do it directly to Me, your God, Jesus, because remember: Jesus is the heavenly Father, He is given power and honour in the heavens and on earth, - everything that is there belongs to Him, therefore, when you give something to the poor, you give it to Jesus and therefore you must remember Him [when you] give to the poor; - but if you give out of self-love and for the world to see you as benefactors, then you have received the reward in this world, but in the other world it will be dark and empty for you, because you will still bring little with you, even if you have given out millions for the poor on this world. Give as much as you can, but your left hand shall not know what the right hand gave, even less your ability to calculate, for if I, Jesus, am your Love, then you will do everything out of your love for Me and will not make calculations; God knows what you will receive there for it. What true lover makes gifts out of his love [in order] to get it back from her hundreds and thousands of times!? Would not every wise girl say to such a lover: You are only courting my money, but I am your means to an end like this, so get away from there, you miserable deceiver! And so also Christ will declare all your worldly actions null and void if you do not love Him as you love a poor girl and are willing to sacrifice wealth and life for her. *This is the true love that I, Jesus, <u>desire of you</u>* and whoever seeks Me in this way and as they say "love unto death", is only anxious to gain the possession of what he loves most, without any calculation of advantages - he will have this invaluable gem and thus everything that is there.

34. Forget about all worldly advantages and clog your ears, close your eyes to such books, which explain the love for Jesus differently to you, - you have to give up heart and reason, i.e. everything, to win only this unspeakably high love in the Father Jesus through it, because in possession of this *love* - will all your thoughts and senses be like a devouring love, which neither sees nor hears anything - or do you want more? - can you bear more?! - If you have ever on earth felt a completely chaste - highest love in your heart, - then you have understood Me; but if not, - love Jesus as a true mother loves her child, who at all times is willing to sacrifice her wealth and life for the preservation of the life of her child. —

35. **<u>Abundant gifts</u>. Paul writes in the year 58 to the Corinthians (II. 9:6-15): "But I say this: 6. Whoever sows meagerly will also reap meagerly, but whoever sows abundantly will also reap abundantly. 7. Give every man according to the free instinct of his heart, not with indignation,**

nor with compulsion: for God loves a joyful giver. 8. But God is mighty enough to bless you abundantly with all kinds of good things, so that in all things you may have enough to do, and you may still do all sorts of good, 9. As it is written, He scatters, He gives to the poor, His righteousness is everlasting. 10. For he that gives the seed unto the sower, and gives bread for food, shall also multiply your seed, and multiply the fruits of your righteousness, 11. if ye have abundance in all things, for all charity, which through us brings thanksgiving unto God. 12. Because the service provided by this (mild) support not only helps the needs of those living pure (Paul says: "saints"), but also bears rich fruit through the thanksgiving of many towards God, 13. who praise God because of this proven charity, for obedience to the Gospel of Christ which you confess, and for benevolent mercy towards them and all; 14. and by their prayer for you, because they love you heartily because of the abundant grace of God in you. 15. But be thanked and praised unto God for his inexpressible gift.

36. What you do for God, you do out of free love for Him and not out of fear, for it has no value neither for Him, nor for you. Your Father will have you as children obeying Him out of love, but not as fearful servants.

37. "I prefer a free non-observer of My will to an obedient [one] without will, out of fear and [with] a servant-mentality." These words are certainly spoken clearly enough - think and act accordingly. (ChtS. 48 a Dictation of 2 Oct. 1894)

38. "The one who loves the *life of the world*, will lose the *life of the Spirit*, but the one who loves the life of the Spirit and despises the life of the world, will also inherit the life of the Spirit. So the one who loves the life of the Spirit and gains it, has divided himself (like a tree) and opened his innermost life to My light; - and this light is the true wisdom-drill that penetrates everything and that was from those points where all things and beings converge into one (God). (ChtS. 2, chapter 70)

39. In the *Revelation of John 12:1,* the love of God and of one's neighbour is most gloriously quoted in the spirit-language as follows:

40. A great sign appeared in heaven (i.e. 'in the heart'): A woman with the sun's robe (i.e. 'love of God'), under her feet the moon (i.e. 'love of neighbour'), and on her head a crown of twelve stars (ten commandments of God and two commandments of Jesus for love of God and neighbour; - refer to Exodus 20; - Matt 22:37 - enlightened according to the new proclamations of God.)

41. Learn from the bee about diligence in work, and collect, like [the bee], the sweet honey - this you do by fulfillment of the greatest commandment in the law to the neighbour, the eternal love from God!

42. And so learn from the children [about] their simplicity and love for their parents, that you may awaken the same to your heavenly Father; for simplicity seeks God and the childlike purity of the heart seizes Him, and rejoices in His love which refreshes and delights the heart and the senses. For it is the children, who love God with a simple mind, who fulfill the saying of wisdom: **"What no understanding of the wise can see, a childlike mind practices in simplicity"**.

43. Do not calculate the great sum which you spend for the purposes of charity, for the greatness of the sum does not make the difference, but the noble attitude with which you give something is what God looks at and credits to you. But to have much and to give little is not according to Divine will, because one should not be stingy with one's ability, but should lay it on good spiritual percentages. You cannot buy yourself a heaven with the worldly fortune, because you leave it behind in the world, but you can if you considered that this might carry much spiritual interest for you, which you [do] take with you into the hereafter; for your works follow you and form your garment of the resurrection-body after death, which is your day of last judgement.

44. *I say to you: "A single heart on your earth that truly loves Me weighs up all the imaginable beauty of an entire solar universe (which is like paradise); yes, I say to you even more than that: Such a heart is in itself inexpressibly more beautiful than the whole wisdom-heaven of angels, and also more*

beautiful than the second love-wisdom heaven of the higher angelic spirits. I need say no more to you".

45. Divine love is the example for man how his love for his neighbour must be.

46. When in My original totality I still had the whole creation in Me as atoms of becoming, I knew quite well how this once will form itself, yes I saw it in Spirit before Me; but this did not make Me, the all-powerful Creator, happy - because I Myself should have admired the works of the miracles of My creative power, but there had to be beings, who could rejoice and delight in My work, in My love, that I have created with so much beauty and goodness for them, and this rejoicing and delighting of My creatures, which I placed in the world out of Myself and thus as children of My love, should be the reward for My love, which I want to work on the neighbour in order to be completely happy and blessed with the happiness and bliss of those who delight in My love and be satiated with joy.

47. Therefore the almighty word "let there be!" So that My love would pass into activity towards the neighbour, in whose existence and in whose joys and bliss My 'I' could blessedly praise itself, to have done and created everything for the happiness of the neighbour. My personal love found its satisfaction, bliss and contentment only in the unselfish work of charity.

48. Be thus your self-love in love for your neighbour to the main expression "Let it be"! For in becoming and growing in charity, you will find the satisfaction for yourselves, which creates for you a bliss which will mature in heavenly beauty, like the flower in bloom. If you want to be children of My Love and as perfect as I am, act as I act and continue to act - all for others! And seek your joy and blissful love in the happiness of others!

304. Seven Ways of Compassion towards the Neighbour

1901, December 2 - 20, Graz. Through seven different ways, Father Jesus illuminates the compassion and mercy through which people can help each other in love, and thus - as love spirits from the heart of God the Father - approach and unite with each other.

1. Gentleness. This word is a collective word for love and humility, further for love, humility, (Under it the works of the neighbourly love are understood, see *Prayer Book* 3d edition chapter 17; - 19, verse 7) compassion and mercy, and finally for compassion and mercy and in the last sense, the term 'gentleness' comes here into consideration. Man as a child of God is called to work in the spirit of his spiritual Father, so that men love one another and in all circumstances of life, lovingly support one another. But this is especially required as a duty of charity towards the poor and the sick.

2. In the language of flowers , the gentleness of compassion and love of mercy, represents the beautiful white daffodil. - And this divides into seven spirits, as:

1. Gentleness towards the neighbour
2. Gentleness towards God's creation
3. Gentleness towards animals
4. Gentleness towards your kind
5. Gentleness towards those lesser than you
6. Gentleness towards your enemies
7. Gentleness towards evildoers

3. First: Gentleness to the neighbour is the flower, the mercy, the pearl from the crown of charity. The one who practices charity, is a prince of the heavenly kingdom, if it is practiced spiritually on a large scale; the one who practices it materially, is a prince of brotherly love, if he knows how to accomplish

it on a large scale. But it is forbidden to do good by unfair and fraudulent means. Therefore open your ears and hear what the Spirit of truth says.

4. Second: Gentleness towards God's creation, which contains everything you see in it. As a Father, I have created everything, and I am everywhere the life in nature. Therefore, never allow yourself the desire to damage and destroy anything I have created, neither as a joke nor for fun, if it is not necessary under circumstances, because you always intervene in the realm of creation as an iniquitous one.

5. Thirdly, gentleness towards the animals. Animals are in the world to contain a series of living beings which belong to the whole of human soul-specifics; but not for man to murder and torture them.

6. My Spirit is just as represented and active in the animals as in man and it is I who has created the animals and put them into the world - it is therefore your task to consider the forest, field and domestic animals as a foreign good, to which you have no rights at your discretion, treat it crudely, torture and murder it, as their Creator stands beside you and sees your doing and letting it be with either pleasure or displeasure.

7. I ordained the animals' order of life, their duration of life, which they have to spend in the world and no-one has the right to interfere in My order and to deal with it as he pleases; for I am the Lord over them as God and their Creator, and not you.

8. The animals have their instincts, their desire to live, their love to live, to multiply and to enjoy life, like you as humans; why don't you grant them this? How upset you are when the unreasonable animal in some way goes against your order and love! - And shall I accept everything quietly and calmly when you torment and murder My creatures? Do you believe that any animal could live if I do not want to live in it as a life Myself and guide it? But if this is fully true, consider in future to not deal with My animals like thieves, robbers and murderers deal with foreign goods! —

9. It is not good of you, as intelligent creatures, to be degraded to barbarians, animal-tormentors, animal-murderers and animal-eaters; for with the eating of the animal-flesh you accept the qualities of the animal, because the juices of the animal-flesh become your blood, the spiritual in it becomes [part of] the mixture of your soul, hence then, your wild animal-nature, - your barbarity against humans and animals. If you were to eat all the meat of wolves and tigers, your cruelty and lack of love would be horrible – no, unbearable. —

10. Man is designed to be a plant-eater, both in the south and in the north of the world, or as you say, vegetarian; for this food alone, if prepared properly (and not spiced with spices and other ingredients, or more correctly, manufactured, tampered with), makes man healthy in body and soul.

11. How do you lament if someone damages you and causes you pain; and see how heartlessly you sometimes torment the animals and have no ear and no heart for the cries of fear of the poor tormented animal, which often has to bleed to death under your hands in order to serve as a treat for your carnivorous eating. No! I have not created the animals for this and I tell you that the eating of meat will have to stop, otherwise I will not give you the rebirth of the spirit! - I watch calmly and am patient, but also My patience has its limits.

12. You want to make excuses for the Jewish diet. - You can do this because it was another time where man was not yet as far spiritually developed, then I only allowed the eating of flesh on request and *under special conditions*, it had to be pure (or kosher). - but you enjoy it unclean and together with the blood on which *My curse* rests, because Cain killed Abel out of self-love, as you killed the animals out of "*self-love*".

13. Now reflect on what great transgressors you are against My Commandments and how greedily you stretch out your hands for pork flesh, which is an impure flesh incompatible with human nature

under natural conditions, because pig and man according to the flesh and blood and thus also according to the spirit - which man takes all up into his ego by eating meat - and assimilates it and makes it his own - form quite incompatible soul-specifics in himself. The same goes for pig fat, because the pig is of a completely different origin in terms of blood-formation than man, which you will only be able to really understand after the rebirth of the spirit.

14. The spirituality of pork meat only becomes suitable for the transition into the human soul through the purification it undergoes in the course of the transmigration of souls.

15. Humans allow themselves to deal with animals as if they were there only to fulfill the wishes of man. But this is not the case; they are only there to be useful to you, but not that you have a right to torment them (*Prayer Book II*, Chapter 15 and ChtS. 28, p. 122) by expecting them to do more than their power allows them to do.

16. This is especially true for oxen, horses, mules, donkeys and cows. These poor creatures are often beaten and tortured so heartlessly by one or the other human animal-being as if the animals were nothing but villains, while these are human beings. You first learn to treat the cattle properly yourself, and it will obediently do what it can.

17. The animals are created to form a set of soul-specifics for you in advance. But if such a brutal animal-tormentor is also godless, then it happens that after death he is transformed into a soul of a cow or horse, so that he himself can taste the lashes he once gave to these beasts of burden and tormented them. Such a human soul, transformed into an animal of burden and begotten into an animal of burden, keeps the memory of past maltreatments, which it once inflicted on the animals as a human being, but it cannot help itself, because it is equipped only with animal intelligence and animal qualities except for the memory.

18. Behold, this is a bitter but well-deserved punishment for such a hellish animal-tormentor. He must now work his way up through the animal kingdom for many centuries and savour everything unpleasant in the animal kingdom, always with the memory that this is the result of unkindness towards the animals when he still lived as man on earth. *So it also happens to the heartless professors at the universities* who torture the living animals in the most heartless way known as *vivisection*. Also these vivisectors, because they are usually atheists, because of their heartlessness against the innocent animals, have to step back into the animal kingdom and that with human memory, what they were and what they did, costing him this animal-soul-life for long periods of time! —

19. The punishment is bitter, but self-inflicted. Who taught you to be beastly, mischievous and heartless? Was not My Divine teaching also given to you? Why have you rejected Me and My teaching and became ravenous animals? Spiritually, you have not become a man but an evil animal through this and as soon as you leave the human body, the well-deserved and just but terrible punishment hits you! - Seek to become human beings while it is still time, otherwise woe to you, *"animal souls" in human form*! Only a great penance can transform your animal soul back into a human soul!

20. People might argue: What use is this punishment, even if it is well deserved, to man? When he is reincarnated as a human being again, he no longer knows anything about it and so he can again become a merciless animal-tormentor and thus commit the same sin all over again.

21. This view is not valid: The soul of man keeps its memory, so then such a reincarnated [soul] is a merciful man towards animals, without the flesh-brain knowing anything about why and from where this comes. —

22. Fourth, gentleness to your kind. Every human being is your equal as a human being in the ordinary sense, but there is a difference between your neighbour and your equal. Your neighbour is every man in the world; but your kind, is the one who is the same as you are; your kind is the one

who is like you, but to whom you shall be as kind as to your neighbour, so that the bond of love, humility, compassion, and mercy may be wrapped around all mankind; and every man, without exception, shall be close to your heart, because sometimes envy or other vices makes you to be colder towards your kind than the neighbour all over the world.

23. Fifth, the gentleness to those lower than you. According to today's education, man is a spoiled being who is ashamed of his lesser neighbour and shows little consideration for him. This vice should not occur and man should never be ashamed of his brother, and therefore should help him in every trouble and strive to pull him out of his lowliness and to lift him up and therefore to grant him compassion and mercy.

24. Sixth, gentleness towards enemies. it is easy to show compassion and mercy to those whom have never caused you sorrow, but it is difficult to show compassion and mercy to enemies, and the one who can bring this upon himself, exercises gentleness in the Divine sense, because I am compassionate and merciful towards My enemies, and such overcoming is Divinely rewarded in My Kingdom, because the child has risen up to My Heart.

25. Seventh, gentleness to those doing evil against you. Behold, My child, this stage is the highest which a man can climb, because everything is rearing up against such an action, to help the evildoer, who has done you much harm, in need, and to help him and support him in his need with compassion. Who accomplishes this, approaches the perfection of his Father Jesus and has a justified belief that I will acknowledge him as My child, receive him and reward him Divinely for it.

305. Rules for Correct Conduct in Charity

1902, October 27, Graz. Father Jesus gives teachings on how to work charity in order to spread blessings instead of misfortune, for a wrong place and too much at once, can do more harm than good.

1. Many people read My teachings about working in neighbourly love, but few know how to apply them properly. That is why I will briefly give you here a small instruction according to which you can judge yourselves.

2. The Gospel says: "Be gentle as the doves, and wise as the serpents," and this proverb also applies here. Therefore do what the teaching tells you and your heart dictates you, but always do it in such a way that you do not completely strip yourselves, for today nobody will compensate you for it, when tomorrow you yourselves have nothing; but give according to your best knowledge and ability - therefore in such a way that you can also do good tomorrow and the day after tomorrow.

3. It is also not good to give too much all at once to a poor man as he can easily stray from the true way, being suddenly rid of all worries and conditions that kept him turning to Me daily. Give often and in many ways, but never too much at once in one place, so as not to do more bad than good.

4. Poor, good people are My disciples and walk their prescribed path. But when they are suddenly brought into prosperity, then My school is interrupted and My disciples are corrupted, and in this, man have done a really bad thing with too much good, and have taken away My disciples from good discipline and guidance and put them on bad paths.

5. Do good where good is in the right place and appropriate, but be careful not to act against My teaching, and do not be deceived and swindled in your love for the neighbour by the sneaky, lazy and mischievous people through much crying and whitewashing, where it is black or brown.

6. Therefore: Where you want to give much, first ask yourselves diligently on all sides whether you are placing your gift in the right proportion with the need, not to give too much to one, but then to give too little or nothing to others.

7. Whoever proliferates his talents unwisely can, instead of reward, perhaps work himself into punishment, so be careful while being merciful, so that you know that what you have done well, has actually been properly applied.

8. It's good to be considerate of everything, but not to think: I have done good, I don't have to worry about anything else. No, with such letter-riding of My commandment of neighbourly love, sometimes more spiritual damage is done than good worked. Observe My teaching therefore exactly and live and act strictly according to it, so that through the fulfillment of the advice given, you benefit and no harm is done.

9. Most people understand by the term "neighbour" the person who is close to you through blood-relationship, friendship and acquaintance or social class. No! All these are not meant primarily because one likes to give such people something out of personal affection when they get into trouble, therefore such a concession out of friendship, blood- or class-affinity is a so-called 'noblesse oblige' or sense of duty, that has less value before Me, but the neighbour is every man, friend or enemy who is in need and needs your help, as was the case in the story with the Good Samaritan. (Cf. Luke 10:29; ChtS. 30:38; 38:21)

10. Act towards your neighbour in all circumstances in such a way that God's love is always the reason and *neighbourly love the expression of this God's love*. - It is n*ot the deed itself* that ennobles your mind and elevates it, but it is *the noble will* with which you have done it. (ChtS. 38)

11. *Recognize and love Me as God, the Lord, above all <u>through the fact</u> that you love your neighbour - if possible, even more than yourselves;* so then you already have true *love*, as true life, and true light, as eternal truth for time and eternity in you and so you are already here according to the spirit - where I am, because therefore I remain with you until the end of the world! I tell you this, whom you may well recognize from His language and its sense, Amen.

12. Those to whom God has given, give. He distributes with wise love the treasures which God has given him, but let him give mostly of the spiritual treasure. Christian mercy does not consist so much in scattering money among [those in] misery, as in pouring out love. On the contrary, money needs to be distributed with more wisdom than love. (Ch. and W. In *Harmony* 1st edition 82)

13. Truly I say to you: "Whoever will do something good to one of his poor fellow men out of true, pure love for God and the fellow men, he will do it to Me and it will be rewarded him a thousand times over! - But also the bad and evil that one commits against one's fellow man" (ChtS. 10)

306. Widows and Orphans

Moses told the Jewish people that they should take care of the widows and orphans with their abundance; but Moses never said anything about the provision of any house of prayer or teaching, except that he had appointed a tenth for the tribe of Levi! (Joseph, the foster father of Jesus' speech when Jesus was 20 years old.)

307. The Works of Love

1. Above all, seek to form and strengthen your attitude towards life according to My teaching, feel with the poor their misery, and alleviate it according to your powers and your ability; console the sad, clothe the naked, feed the hungry, give water to the thirsty, help the sick where you can, redeem the prisoners and preach My gospel to the poor in the spirit. - This will lift up your emotions, your disposition, into the heavens, and your soul will soon and easily become one with its spirit from God on this truest path of life, and thereby also partakers of all His wisdom and power; and that will certainly be more than knowing many things in the world, but to be an unfeeling man towards your neighbours and to bear witness to the fact that one is still very far away from true life in the spirit!

2. I, Jesus, tell you: The only living spirit in man is love and its most tender and eternally benevolent feeling; he who therefore tries more and more to receive this love and its most tender and eternally benevolent feeling into his self-loving soul, and also with eagerness becomes stronger, more powerful, more courageous and more submissive, promotes thereby the full union of the spirit with the soul, - and then the soul becomes pure love and wisdom according to its most tender and most benevolent feelings, then such a soul is also already *completely one with its spirit,* and is therefore also in the most living possession of all the wonderful life and existential abilities of its spirit, and that is surely worth more than having gone through all the schools of the world's wise men of the earth, yet remaining a strict and insensitive person? -(Ev.J. Ch. V, 610th I. Aufl.)

308. Charity Worked by the Poor

1901, November 3rd, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus, how not only the rich, but also the poor can practice the works of charity at any time and everywhere and earn great merits for the Kingdom of Heaven.

1. 'He who has nothing can give nothing', is a true saying, but that is not always and everywhere decisive. The work of neighbourly love is apparently only prescribed for those who can do it, but it is different in reality and that is why I want to give you an enlightenment from which it will become clear to you that also the poor can practice neighbourly love in different ways, because only what he can afford is demanded of everyone and no more, and it would be unfair of Me if I only wanted to consider the wealthy who through money, garments and food gives something to the poor and needy, while then the poor and needy who cannot do this, would fall short in My kingdom. - That is why I will give you some hints valid for rich and poor, and which both can use to their advantage. —

2. Think about what among the works of charity (Read about the evangelical widow who gave her last penny, but gave more thereby than all the others who gave of their abundance. - Mark 12:42-44) or of mercy in general, for everyone can do something according to his material or spiritual strength. Moreover, one can by doing favours, work ministries of love, and lead [others] to the truth of faith, working works of charity. But works, which one can work neither physically nor spiritually and still wants to work out of mercy, one can work through loving benevolence by sacrificing good will as an act to Me for honour and I then accept it as an accomplished act; because whoever wants to do it and does not have the ability to do it, his benevolence is just as much worth as the work of him who has it and does it.

3. Some poor people can practice works of charity by magnetizing or by training in nursing, by giving advice on how to cure diseases with medicines or other treatments. The ways that one makes, the time that one needs for it, can be sacrificed to Me for glory. There are thousands of opportunities that a man has at his command to do works of charity and earn the kingdom of heaven. —

4. The work of charity is therefore threefold:

1. *materially*, through material work
2. *spiritually*, through spiritual work
3. *wanting to do good,* if you could

All these three kinds of work of neighbourly love are good and are to be sacrificed to Me for honour so that I can credit them to you as wages.

5. Therefore nobody can complain that he lacks the means for the exercise of charity works; only the sick man is excluded there, but he can do his good will to want to do something for Me and sacrifice his suffering, his pains for My honour, and it is also counted for him for good when he patiently suffers. So everyone has the opportunity and means to serve Me and the neighbour, if he only has the good will to do it, because what one does to the neighbour, is done to Me, the life-giver in man. (Matt 25:40)

6. Read also I*saiah chapter 58* regarding charity; - The sermon on the Good Samaritan; - In the "*Prayer Book*" 3d edition, chapter 19, verse 7; - And the "*Luther Book*".

309. Patience

1901, 10-17 October, Graz. Father Jesus illuminates the high value of the virtue of patience towards the weaknesses and faults of one's neighbour, through which man acquires the crown of victory of heaven.

1. The most beautiful virtue of a human being is love, and in it, patience is throned like a queen of victory. (Cf. the wonderful explanation of this in the *Prayer Book*, chap. 19:10). This, which is able to create the deepest hell when it turns to evil, creates the victor's crown of eternal life as the spiritual daughter of heaven, of love. It is the constant companion of Divine love, because it is its daughter and fulfiller of what love gave birth to in itself, to meet one's neighbour according to the words of Divine teaching: "Do to your neighbour what you want him to do to you" and to treat him as a brother.

2. It is high above human weaknesses and faults because, when you use it correctly, it lifts you up to that bright height where I sit enthroned. But how? Look, My dear children, this is happening because despite My holiness and inviolability I am daily blasphemed and dragged through the dung by evil men, and what am I - Who could transform man into his nothingness in no time - doing against it? I, the Almighty, meet the foolishness of man, who is only a worm in the dust of his nothingness before Me, with My Divine patience, and let him rage and turn to hell himself, because as man distances himself from God, so he approaches hell. With God there is light and bliss, but in hell there is darkness and agony when one enters the hereafter as a spirit.

3. The floral spirit of patience in the profound floral language is the so wonderfully coloured tulip, with its correspondences: Hope, innocence, love and fire-power in the most wonderful harmonies, delight the beholding eyes. And seven glorious spirits, all pure daughters, who together with their mother, represent a spirit as great as the world in man, control the human soul placed in the world. Now we look at the individual spirit-daughters of patience:

1. Patience towards the neighbour
2. Patience towards those who have done evil against you
3. Patience with the neighbour's ignorance
4. Patience towards those poor in spirit
5. Patience towards those lesser than yourselves
6. Patience towards God's designed fate in your life
7. Patience towards irrational animals

4. First, patience towards the neighbour. The people whose soul and body are taken from Satan, whose body contains Satanic things, are always full of patience towards their own weaknesses, and full of impatience and sense of justice towards their neighbour, which should be just the opposite in the light of Divine love in man. Therefore always let a light of goodwill and love shine from your eyes! Then patience will throne over the weaknesses of the human spirit of self-loving justice.

5. Therefore, never oppress your debtors if they cannot pay in time and you are convinced of their righteousness and good will. For wanting to do and not being able to do, causes sorrow - it is martyrdom for an honest man.

6. Exercise patience, forgiveness and forgetfulness towards your enemies, offenders, persecutors and oppressors! - (ChtS. 44)

7. Why must you forgive your neighbour?

- Because God is your Father and therefore you are all My children, brothers and sisters to one another. (Matt 23:8,9)
- Because if you do not forgive your neighbour, then I cannot forgive you either; for you pray in the Lord's Prayer: Forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive our trespassers. (Matt 6:12)
- Because you will be measured in the hereafter with the same measure you have measured in this world. (Matt 7:1)
- Because I, Jesus, taught you: Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you and do evil, and pray for your slanderers and persecutors. (Matt 5:44.)
- Because irreconcilability and revenge are hellish, but reconciliation and forgiveness are Divine. (Luke 23:34.)

8. Through patience towards the weaknesses of one's neighbour, the harmonies of Divine love and humility resound in you, in whose dwelling there is peace of heart, a paradise of contentment and joy. Through patience you defeat the enemy of your spiritual endeavour and render him tolerant towards you because through this, you have a soothing effect on his mind, which is of a different direction than yours, and awaken in him the respect for your spiritual advantages, which have an ennobling effect on his view and neighbourly love. Patience is one of the great virtues of the Spirit and God-man Jesus, your Father, about which the *"Christian Theosophical Prayer Book"* in Chapter 19 of the third edition so gloriously reports.

9. But through impatience, you ignite the spiritual flames of hell in your hearts; because impatience provokes anger, from which unloving words and insults and often also assaults, or malicious joy - which sprouts revenge - and you find yourselves in spiritual darkness of hell, since you no longer have light to come out of your sad situation, out of your labyrinth of spiritual confusion.

10. Because the light of God goes out in you because on such occasions the spirit of God withdraws and you get into a swarm of like-minded spirits of hell who take you in possession, cheer you on and make you even more devilish than you already are yourselves. Your mood clashes with the supposed enemy and also makes of him a like-minded spirit of hell and so you have thrown yourself and your brother as opponent into hell from which it is very difficult to escape. The entrance road is wide; to come out after a long search is a narrow, stony bumpy and often very thorny way of humiliation and penitential effort, apart from the great damage which the soul has meanwhile endured when it was in hell of unkindness and harmful activity, into which it has drawn from the proper wisdom of reason to work works of hell and for hell.

11. Beware of impatience and its consequences, so that instead of becoming children of God, you do not become people who are formed into hellish spirits of anger and revenge.

12. Second, patience towards the one who did or does evil to you. In the spirit of the Divine light of love, this virtue is the worthy companion of love, humility and meekness, which personifies in it the royal flower, the glorious tulip and let it descend from its spiritual homeland into the earthly depth of life in the struggle for existence and into existence - into appearance.

13. Therefore, nurture this heavenly daughter of the king with all your zeal; for she is called to walk at the hand of love, to open to you the heart of primordial love and to introduce you to heavenly pleasures and glories. For what is more beautiful than not to be angry with the brother who does evil to you in the wickedness of hell, but to bless him, to pray for him and to offer him good for evil?

14. Oh children, you are gathering pearls and diamonds for your heavenly jewellery, which will remain with you forever and mark your past, how you have lived and acted in the life of the hell of the dark earth, which serves you as an examination school to bring back the soul of Satana in its original glory back to the heavenly heights, into its primordial light and being, ennobled, spiritualized and deified.

15. Third: Patience towards the ignorance of one's neighbour. - It often happens that the intelligent man, who loves and is in love with the cause, wants to teach it to his brother, but he cannot grasp it and has completely different concepts about it than the teacher wants to teach him, and there the impatience in man agitates and wants to vent himself in appropriate words, names and designations against the weak brother.

16. Behold, this is a great test for you, which prescribes that you remain calm and serene about the conceptual weakness of your brother, to clarify the matter for him so often and from so many different angles, until he has grasped it. But if he cannot understand it, then remain calm and comfort him that perhaps next time he will see the matter better - and when you then come to Me in fervent prayer and ask Me that I enlighten him, then the next time, he will certainly grasp the matter correctly; for I am the chief teacher of all teachers, and everything is possible to Me, - therefore do not forget!

17. What you cannot do with your power of knowledge and will, that I can do very easily - therefore come to Me and I want to help you; but tell the brother that he is to think much about the matter - perhaps the light of knowledge will come up to him by itself. - Behold, when you act like this towards the brother, your inner being purifies itself and, by exercising patience, you spiritualize yourselves and prepare yourselves to become inhabitants of My heaven.

18. Fourth, patience towards the poor in spirit. - The expression that I spoke on Mount Garizim near Sichar: "*Blessed are the poor in spirit*," is generally not understood. And that is why I first have to explain this expression to you before I speak about the behaviour towards such. The *spiritually poor* are those who never show off out of the humility of their heart and do not want to distinguish themselves through the wisdom of the intellect.

19. If I would have meant the stupid and the ignorant to be the spiritually poor, then the Cretins, who are half man, half beast, would have been the elect of heaven - and such a heaven would probably not be attractive for reasonable people. - Behold, such poor in spirit are usually calm, quiet people, they listen to reasoning, but they usually do not criticize it, but they strive to fulfill the law of love, humility, patience and peace, even if not everything is according to their sense and understanding, and such are blessed because they live and act in the sense of My teaching.

20. But it does happen that also such men come under your teaching or discussion about an object and you want certain answers from them about their opinion and attitude. And when such only give you indefinite answers, have patience with them, for that is their heart's endowment of humility, through which they do not give away even a grain of the wisdom of understanding.

21. Fifth, patience towards those lesser than you. - Some people have a high capacity for comprehension, a penetrating light in the spiritual, putting them in a better position than their brother or neighbour. Now it happens that in a public lecture, for example, the less intelligent and the less well-off, or even the subordinate, dares to express his opinion, which does not correspond to your spiritual light, and you are faced with the patience that you must exercise towards him.

22. If you see that your brother has not grasped the meaning of your speech, enlighten him once more or repeatedly, and if he cannot grasp it, be patient and say something like this: Listen brother, today we cannot agree on the matter - therefore patience, perhaps in the future we will succeed in understanding each other!

23. But never should you disparagingly consider his inferior education or upbringing or his inferior social position and from this treat him disparagingly or even insult him with unkind words, for then hell is already in full activity. Therefore, be patient with the lesser ones in spirit and in public life, then you are a child of the Father from the heavenly heights, who lovingly contemplates your actions, and with joy awaits your homecoming as the prodigal son to His Father's house.

24. Sixth, the patience amidst your God-sent fate. Man likes to live free and does not set any barriers for himself in his life to achieve anything that can be achieved and to enjoy everything that his passions and desires or cravings whisper to him. —

25. If man is in a position in life which allows him to do everything, he becomes darkened in his spirit, because he only takes care of matter and by eating all kinds of harmful food and drinks, he attracts all kinds of disease-causing substances which presents itself on one or the other occasion. —

26. Once they are there, then they are certainly not there against My will and although I did not send them directly, I still use them to suppress the world-spirit of man and to make him think about where all this came from and why.

27. Through diseases and unpleasant visitations, the worldly-minded spirit of man becomes quite meek and thoughtful, and is the situation or danger very oppressive and worrying, then he remembers Me again and asks Me for help and redemption from the unpleasant situation. When man has progressed so far that a spiritual healing has been achieved in him, then I also gladly let the material healing happen when the intention to become better, is serious.

28. In this way I draw many people back to Me from the worldly mud of sins, for they see that prayer to God helps; but the worldly is transitory and harmful to body and soul.

29. Therefore, when you encounter all sorts of inconveniences and sicknesses, remember this enlightenment and be patient and humble amidst it all, because it is for your best; because he whom I never punish in life and is a hellish one, he is already judged and can only expect death to pass over into darkness, repentance and agony over missed ways and actions of life.

30. Seventh, patience towards irrational animals. It often happens that a pet commits something that annoys you or outrages you to the highest degree. Behold, the animal has its instinct, his intelligence and his animal qualities; and you, as reasoning creatures, are to always pre-consider what an animal is, and therefore you have to be lenient towards the animals when they commit something according to their instinct, which stirs you up against them. For example, the cat will eat your songbird, on which your soul hung, and you will then skin the poor innocent animal in your wild frenzy.

31. Now I ask you: Have I created the birds to be your caged prisoners and as your singing slaves? Or would you also like to cut Me through with a riding whip (if you could have Me), that I have implanted the instinct in the cat to eat mice and birds? Oh you unreasonable ones! You are not to punish the cat, but yourselves, that you act against My commandments and Creator's order!

32. If I were like you, I would also have to punish you properly for such transgressions, because you are to blame that the cat has eaten the bird and you have sinned twice against My order against the animals in nature; but especially against Me.

33. There are very many such or similar occurrences, therefore be patient with irrational animals and consider that their reason, instinct and qualities were thus bestowed on them by Me, therefore you are not to let out your anger on poor, innocent animals because of your brutality, irrationality and ignorance; because you sin directly against Me through this! -

310. Jesus' Patience

1901, May 6th, Graz. Father Jesus describes the patience and silence that He Himself had to exercise in suffering and dying for our original sin in order to deliver us from it and restore the childhood of God forfeited by original sin.

1. The sun of life rises at the horizons of human weaknesses from the deeds of the divinity of human action demonstrate the supernatural which is within man, when man practices deeds which elevate him to the hero of spiritual life.

2. I, too, the Almighty and Creator in the universe, was once man among men, and was subject to all things to which men are subject. I was indeed God in My inner spirit, but outwardly I put on the garment of Satana just as you wear it, therefore I was a fleshly man like you, and felt the same well-being and woes as you do.

3. Already in life I had to swallow some bitter pill from My adversaries without opposing them with My superiority as God, but the most terrible and bitter one came together at the end of My life, which I had to overcome with superhuman effort to test My patience to the extreme.

4. Let us enter the garden of Gethsemane at the moment when Herod's henchmen laid their hands on Me and tied My hands. I could have prevented this, but the scriptural passages in the prophets had to be fulfilled, therefore I remained silent like a lamb and let Myself be bound as if I had been a dangerous criminal among men.

5. I was led through the city, My hands tied tightly together, to Hanas, the brother-in-law of the high priest Caiaphas, who began to question Me, but I kept silent, because I knew that he alone had nothing to do with Me.

6. When brought before Caiaphas, I was sued and slandered for doing things which did not correspond to the facts, and I was silent about everything, for what did I want to justify with malice and malicious joy, which did not originate out of conviction but out of hypocrisy, malice and zeal for service, accusing Me of deeds and words which I never did or said.

7. And when the servant, upon My answer - that one should not ask Me but those who listened to Me - hit Me in the face with the fist, from which I was then completely swollen, I did not say bad words, although My head became feverishly heated with sorrow, but I asked the bad guy with calm, decisive words: If I have spoken falsehood, prove it to Me, if not, why are you beating Me? This impact was so powerful that it put an end to the questioning of Caiaphas, for I was close to staggering with the force of the blow that the strong man had given Me in his brutality.

8. After the great prophecy about My return to earth, which is taking place just now - I was handed over to the raw temple servants, who took Me into the courtyard of Caiaphas and there treated Me according to his crudeness and wickedness. Then My eyes were blindfolded, My face was spat on, the cheeks of My suffering face were plucked, so that it swelled even more and My face got slapped

and [they] asked: if You are the Son of God, tell us, who has hit You? Who spat on you, who slapped you in the face and plucked your cheeks? And behold, I saw everything with My spiritual eyes brighter than any other in the midday sun, and what did I say and answer? Nothing! I was silent, which strengthened them even more, [thinking] I see and know nothing.

9. I, too, the Almighty and Creator in the universe, was once man among men, and was subject to all things to which men are subject to. I was indeed God in My inner spirit, but outwardly I put on the garment of Satana just as you wear it, therefore I was a fleshly man like you, and felt the same well-being and woes as you do. Yes, children, these were terrible hours for Me as man, since I had the power to tear My enemies and abusers into atoms with My Creator-Power, and yet I allowed Myself to be maltreated so horribly and kept silent like a lamb! - to spare you this and to deliver you from original sin.

10. Now we go to Herod. He mocked Me and let Me put on a white garment, then he sent Me back to Pilate; and I let everything happen calmly and kept quiet about it.

11. Here the flagellation took place and then the crowning with the thorns, which was so indescribably painful that no man could tell or describe it, but could only feel when he came into such a situation. I did moan because of the horrible pain, but I remained patiently silent, even then when the henchmen mocked Me as king of Judeah.

12. And again evil arose, instead of pitying Me, it cried out: "On the cross with Him" when Pilate wanted to let Me go - and brought all sorts of slander against Me, which I did not commit, nor wanted to commit. And what did I do to all this? I was silent like a lamb led to the slaughter.

13. When the henchmen threw Me down on the hard cross like a great criminal and pierced My hands and feet with blunt nails with the force of the strong hammer blows, an unspeakable pain trembled through My inner being, since three great nails penetrating *at the same time*, especially through the superimposed feet, that I, squirming with pain, literally cried out: Father forgive them! For they do not know what they are doing!

14. Finally the cross was raised and now the hellish spectacle of the Pharisees and their adherents started anew, and mockery and derision was hurled at Me - to the maximum - and I was mocked as much as possible. - And what did I do amidst all these injustices and maltreatments?

15. I was silent and tolerated the greatest injustice, wickedness and depravity done to Me, to spare you the same suffering and to save you from the terrible passion and death on the cross imposed upon you all by Divine Holiness, when you acted contrary to the Divine commandments of obedience and purity of the body, having once committed the original sin in the spirit of Adam and Eve.

16. Here you learn from My patience what man is to do when he wants to reach heavenly goals and that no woe, no insult is so great that man could not keep his patience. Also read through the path of suffering in the *"Prayer Book"* to again recall what I had to suffer and endure in order to redeem you from such terrible sufferings that were imposed on you and to regain the childhood that you have forfeited through original sin. (1 Moses 3:15; Heb 9:15; Rom 3:25; 1 Tim 2:14)

311. Chastity

1901, July 20-25, Graz. Father Jesus discusses chastity towards adults, children and animals; and advises the discipline of thoughts, words and deeds.

1. No quality of man is as impetuous and enduring as love; for it is derived from the fundamental fire of divinity and enlivens man from tender youth to old age. But woe betide man if he does not take care of this Queen of Heaven, because she easily transforms herself into sensual love and, instead of being a blessing and happiness, becomes a misfortune and a deep spiritual trap for man. Therefore cultivate only spiritual love so that you may ennoble and spiritualize yourselves in this love and not defile your soul-garments with the stain of fornication.

2. In the l*anguage of flowers*, the white lily corresponds to chastity, and it is divided into seven virtues, each of which resembles a lily and they are:

1. The virtue of spiritual love for one's wife
2. Virtuous love for children and youth
3. Discipline regarding animals
4. Discipline regarding yourself and those of your own gender
5. Discipline of thoughts
6. Discipline of words
7. Discipline of works

3. First: virtue of spiritual love to women's bedrooms, which is a great discipline and virtue of chastity (cf. prayer book Chap. 9; 19, 5; - 131. See above Chap. 101 on the sixth commandment and Chap. 126 on the tenth commandment. Read Jesus' youth story chapter 299, 9-13) in order not to cultivate original sin and to procreate Cainites.

4. Second, virtuous love towards children and youth. He who angers children and tender youth is a thief of their spiritual love, but even in these aberrations there is a great difference and one should not break the rod over a man according to human justice, but leave the judgement to Me, the sole judge in this matter. You men do not know the power of love in a man, and you also do not know the predispositions, that are hidden in a human being.

5. I said: "Whoever annoys one of these little ones who believe in Me, it would be better for him to have a millstone hanged from his neck and be drowned in the depths of the sea". But this does not mean that you yourselves are to provoke a judgement over your brother or sister and ostracize him; on the contrary, I say to you: Who of you feels justified in this direction before Me, he is to call on Me as judge between him and the sinner and we will soon see the consequences of My judgement.

6. Hear those who feel justice! When did you atone for the punishment by means of suffering, crucifixion and death, which has pronounced divine justice against you? Was it not I Who had to atone the punishment of your fornication for you? And therefore, because you yourselves were criminals and do not expiate the punishment - you also do not condemn and reject a poor sinner who walks wrong ways in the turbulence of his love, and do not hate him, because you thereby hate Me, because I am the life in man, and he could not sin when I myself do not want to allow it to him because of the inviolable freedom, that is why he is responsible also only before Me.

7. You hate, slander and cast out such a man, in whom I your God dwell and judge, and pray 'Our Father! Forgive us our debts, as we forgive those who trespass against us!' So you heathen pray hell upon yourselves for your lovelessness and righteousness! - Instead of giving your lost brother or your lost sister in love, humility, patience and meekness, loving teaching words and praying for their conversion, you want to bring them to discipline and order.

8. Judgement is Mine and not man's, because they themselves stand before Me full of mistakes and sins in the courts. How would you expect forgiveness of sins (cf. this in the *Prayer Book* chapter 42:22-25 - chapter 4:3) while, when you acted unkindly towards your neighbour, you did to Me that what you did to your neighbour, brother or sister?!

9. Mothers, and parents in general, should seek that their children be decently disciplined and educated, and not think: the child is still too young to cover his nakedness of the body. Well, if it is too young, then the parents shall have such shirts and skirts made that the children, especially the girls, do not have their body parts that should be covered, uncovered with every turn of the body and when they sit down, therefore they shall wear long skirts reaching down to the ankles. - If they are already grown up and somewhat more understanding, then one should make them attentive to the indecent, so that they always cover themselves.

10. Most parents say: They are innocent children, why would the children care?! But I say: Not for the sake of children, but for the sake of adults, is it necessary to respect what I, as God and Father of adults, demand of you. I know the evil consequences of such shamelessness among siblings better than you - as well as with adults. If I tell you openly that the parents are great promoters of fornication and harlotry because of these urban and unaesthetic clothes of small children, I have told you the full truth.

11. Protect even the inexperienced youth from stalking and seduction where you can; for they do not know how to protect themselves when they are too young and too inexperienced.

12. Thirdly: Bestiality. This sin is also called a sodomitic sin, since it also includes pederasty. That it is a very coarse sensual brutalization and wild living, you can infer from the fact that twelve cities, - among them Sodoma, Gomorrah, Adama and Zeboim with a total population of over two million people were the most important, were destroyed with sulphur fire, which came from above and below over them; therefore beware of such sin.

13. Fourth, discipline on yourself and your gender. It is man's duty to take care of all his feelings and to keep them in discipline, so that they do not degenerate into the wild breeding of bodily feelings of onanism. So also man should never cultivate a hermaphroditic love in the equality of gender, because this is a gross wild running away of gender-related feelings, which entails a strict separation after death and finds its home in the second hell. Beware therefore of these two gross sexual sins.

14. Therefore take off your shoes, i.e. first cleanse your heart of sins before you come before Me and ask Me to answer your request; for no father likes to listen to a disobedient child, - shall I act more unreasonably than an earthly father? I often answer sinners visibly, but that depends on circumstances, on trust in Me and on deepest prayer.

15. Fifth: Lustful thoughts. Your thoughts are your world, your hell, your paradise or heaven. Therefore, pay attention to your thoughts, for if you will not think the wrong thing, nothing wrong can result from it.

16. Sixth, the discipline of words. Chaste thoughts have chaste words in their wake and …

17. Seventh: The discipline of works, because when one ennobles one's thoughts, one speaks chaste words and brings forth spiritual works of light - of heaven - instead of the darkness of hell.

18. *Chastity or perseverance* [self-discipline] is the virtue against which all of you once sinned together with Adam and Eve, because you are spirits coming from your ancestors.

19. How great and decisive this sin is for your spiritual and material existence, you have learned in chapter 105:18 from the news, which I announced to you from the history of the Adamite primeval times, therefore strive to meet this sin with all strength and to redeem you completely from its temptations; otherwise you cannot reach the rebirth of the spirit.

20. The one who is weak regarding the sensual love of the flesh, will be tempted in this weakness until he has banished the last drop of such unclean love from himself; and until this has taken place, he cannot enter into his innermost being, for there the kingdom of God awaits him. -(ChtS. 27, p. 26, 24 - old edition)

21. Therefore your eyes should never delight in the charms which are detrimental to your spiritual life, but live chastely in your thoughts, desires, words and deeds. (Read *Prayer Book* 3d edition, chap. 19:14; - chap. 127 and 131. And the Holy Trinity p. 79,6)

312. Peace

1901, November 6-8, Graz. Father Jesus advises the preservation of peace in all situations of life and towards all, because peace in the heart forms the paradise around man.

1. Love of peace. It is man's paradise if he always knows how to keep the peace of the heart. For as long as man lives in peace with himself and his environment, he has a little paradise in this world and he rejoices in everything and finds everything in his order, because contentment in the heart finds love and pleasure in everything that can and may freely illuminate the light of the day.

2. Yes, peace in the heart is a king over life, a ruler of love, therefore I Myself am the Prince of Peace and a King of all life, and therefore My constant greeting was "peace be with you", because when you have peace in your heart, you are happy and always full of happiness and joy for life.

3. Therefore guard peace and do not let yourselves be moved into aggravation, because through it one climbs from paradise into hell and remains there until hell is again eradicated from the heart through a counter-current. (*Prayer Book* 3rd edition no. 19:6; 93)

4. In the language of flowers, peace is marked with rosemary, because this flower has a particularly strong fragrance that benefits everyone, just as peace benefits the heart. - Seven spirits of peace form a whole here and is of the following composition:

1. Peace with God's orders.
2. Peace with one's neighbour.
3. Peace with him who does evil to you.
4. Peace with the subordinate.
5. Have peace with your neighbour who demands unrighteousness.
6. Keep rest and peace with everything.
7. Peace with your superiors.

5. First, peace with God's decrees. Man should silently accept and calmly endure everything that hits him, humbly and in the peace of his heart, that what God has decreed for your salvation; because everything has a purpose and nothing remains unrewarded that has been accepted in love and tolerated in peace of heart and offered up to the glory of God.

6. Second, peace with your neighbour. Always live in peace with your neighbour, so that you may have peace and quiet from them. Therefore, be courteous, kind, and do not listen to anyone when they tell you disagreeable stories behind your neighbour's back; and if you hear anything disagreeable, do not value it and do not hold anyone responsible; For if it is the truth, you must keep silent and make better what is to be improved, but if it is a lie, then it will surface in time and people will see the injustice done to you. But you have kept your peace and tranquillity of heart and with your neighbour, and if you have sacrificed everything to Me, then you have also derived a great

spiritual benefit from it. This is the golden rule of your life if you want to live happily among people.

7. Live with your neighbours in best friendship, but always in such a way that elevates you in the spiritual and leads you to Me.

8. It is good that you treat your neighbour kindly so that they do not get in your way and that you keep peace and contentment in your heart, because that makes you happy on earth.

9. Move from a place where you have no peace with your neighbours, because that makes you unhappy and draws you to hell.

10. If you want to live in peace with all people, then be silent and do not speak about anything that should not be spoken about.

11. Remember: every discussion about the weaknesses and faults of your neighbour is something you should not discuss, because if your neighbour learns that you have spoken about him and his vices, he is angry with you and will speak the same and where possible, even more about you, and that will not be right for you, you will be indignant about it, so do not do what you do not want your neighbour to do to you, so do not give him any reason for it.

12. If you want to live in peace and harmony with yourself and your neighbour, you must learn to make love, humility and patience grow in you and to not feel wounded by anything in your feelings of honour and character.

13. The salvation of your soul you find only in God; the life of the world brings you tribulation and spiritual death.

14. Third, have peace with the one who does evil to you. People are evil due to the nature of their origin, they are often strongly influenced by their evil spiritual sphere, in which they find themselves according to their heart-states, and it is often their personal views and advantages that cause them to live in discord with you. If you want to be liberated from the hell into which they want to draw you, by doing evil to you, by speaking lying slander against you, which marks them of course as standing in the society of the underworld, then think as I thought and spoke:

15. *Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing* when they caused Me the most terrible pains by the dull nails they drove through My flesh; for if they had known what they were doing, they certainly would not have done it - and so it is with you, too. If your neighbour knew that while he was doing evil to you, he will face his God and judge, who dwells in the heart of the abused man and observes and pays attention to the deeds of the evil man, and that He will repay the evil man Himself, he [the abuser] certainly would not do that! —

16. But you suffer what you cannot prevent in a good way, sacrifice the injustice done to you to My glory, keep silent, and if the opportunity arises to repay your enemy good for evil, do not refrain from doing this, for then you have let the sun of love shine over his frozen heart, melting the ice and then you make a friend out of the enemy.

17. For the rays of the love-sun melt the icebergs of the cold, hardened heart of an offender. What spiritual value then your action will have in My eyes, will become clear to you only when you will receive your reward from Me, which cannot be compared with earthly retribution, because it is heavenly delightful.

18. Fourth, peace with the subordinate. Man becomes proud when he is the master or superior of a servant or subordinate. This should not be, but consider every man as your brother, be patient with his weaknesses and tell him calmly that his conduct does not correspond to the rules of decency and his relationship with you, and therefore he should look - to his own advantage - that he does not make fun of the position, since you want to live in peace. And if he does not improve, let go of him

quietly and without quarrel because of his unruly nature, so that peace may be maintained on both sides.

19. Fifth, have peace with your neighbour when he asks you for unseemly things. Today's people are spoiled and mischievous in many ways; - therefore they strive to exploit their neighbour if possible, if he allows himself to be exploited. Therefore, be gentle as the doves, but also wise as the serpents, - so be careful, watch who you trust! Better say 'no' beforehand, than cry over it [later]. - So you will keep your peace among the exploiters of this land. Non-payment is usually their business, so watch your pocket diligently!

20. Sixth, keep calm and peace in everything, even if it is not to your liking. In man's life there is always something that does not correspond to his will and desire; for men are of different dispositions, and therefore their actions and conducts differ. Do not let this bring you out of your peace, rather put up with the unpleasant; tolerate and sacrifice it to Me for honour and you will slowly get accustomed calmly to walk on over all obstacles of your path of life and thus come ever closer to Me. —

21. That you become impatient with this and that is still the inheritance from Satan, so try to eradicate this inheritance completely so that you may become a child of God your Father, who never annoys Me because I have nothing Satanic about Me! - Remember that! - and do not ever forget what is said - to patiently endure, in order to earn heaven with it.

22. Seventh, have peace with your superiors. People are united by showing reverence to their superiors, for this is the custom and practice in the world. I also made it clear to the arrogant Pharisees, with the tax-penny, that one should respect the authorities *if it is established by Me for the sake of justice*.

23. But this does not refer to today's authority, but to the authority of that time, and the authority of the future, which I will establish or approve. But do not let yourselves be carried away by My non-approval to instigate a revolt against the superiors; for the King of the world, who is also the Judge, am I, God and Father Jesus Myself, and I need no helpers unless the call comes from Me.

24. Therefore be calm and peaceful and obey only Me, then I will already put the necessary in action, to make you My sole subjects and to free you from all pressure and exploitation.

25. *Peace palm* (as a Christmas present). The palm is the symbol of human life. Just as the palm develops into a fruit, so also man develops into his full age.

26. The palm tree was also the sign of peace; with this sign I (Jesus) greeted the inhabitants of villages and cities and with this palm tree - or people carrying palm branches - I entered Jerusalem.

27. I will bring them peace, ... bear in mind that My teaching is based on peace, can only flourish in peace. - Seek to win peace within, and to maintain peace with the outside world. On a blessed night, this cry "Peace be upon the earth and in heaven" penetrated all the skies. "Peace be with you!" - so I call to you, I call to all; keep the peace! And the palm of peace will one day become part of everyone who fought courageously here and won the victory. - Hence, "Peace to you and all!" - Peace without love is not possible, therefore: "Love one another, love people and love Me".

313. Selflessness

1901, October 20-23, Graz. Father Jesus discusses the virtue of selflessness, which man should use towards his neighbour on various occasions to collect treasures for heaven.

1. There are many opportunities in life where man can earn heaven; but men disregard these opportunities because they should not reap but sow - and they do not like it. But now it must be sown on earth, if one wants to reap in heaven!

2. Who does not want to sow here, he will have nothing to reap there and therefore neither come into paradise nor into heaven; everyone should consider this well, that he knows where he will be when he will step into the spirit-kingdom and get his reward for his earthly spiritual activity. —

3. Use the short time of your earthly examination-school to live here happily, die comfortably and arrive there overjoyed, and thus have formed your own destiny as a child of God. Because your assignment on earth is that you train yourselves selflessly to become like your Father in heaven, so that I recognize you as My children and receive you to Me in My Father's house. For if you will not cultivate selflessness in the way that I have recommended to you in the *Prayer Book* (*Prayer Book* No. 19:7), your life will be desolate when you enter the spirit-realm, therefore read the relevant enlightenment in the *Prayer Book*.

4. In the floral language, the white carnation, as the equivalent flower, stands for selflessness, because this flower has a special power if it were used in medicine; therefore it is a great medicinal plant, as selflessness is a great remedy among the customers, which is called the poor and needy.

5. As I have divided all My previous virtues into seven virtue-spirits, so also this is divided as follows into seven selfless help-spirits of My love for men:

1. Selfless love for the poor and needy.
2. Selflessness towards those who push themselves forward ...
3. Selflessness towards those wanting to know better.
4. Selflessness towards the greedy.
5. Selflessness towards the more educated in the subject.
6. Selflessness towards the better paid.
7. Selflessness towards the more advanced in spirit.

6. The most important and decisive part of this is stated in the "*Prayer Book*" chapter 19:21, therefore is to be read there.

7. Second, selflessness towards those who push themselves forward and want to be first. My children must shine through brotherly love, humility, patience and selflessness in such cases and let the arrogant receive the desired privilege, which will be given to them instead of happiness, only for misfortune, because the arrogant one who wants to shine in the world, is very unhappy in the spirit realm, because he reaps only mockery and ridicule among the peers in the dark world.

8. Thirdly, selflessness towards those wanting to know better. There are people who know everything better and want to shine everywhere with their wisdom. Since this is the counter-virtue to humility, which in the Sermon on the Mount I called 'poverty in the spirit', and praised it to be blessed, while I call worldly wisdom pride and Satan, you know what you have to do if you want to be and remain My children. Leave hell to those who want to enter; but you remain with Me and are humble and extremely selfless on such occasions.

9. Fourth, selflessness regarding possessions. Possessions in the hands of man can be a blessing or a curse, therefore do not envy the rich the possession and wealth, because it is much harder to

serve Me in richess and respect, than in poverty. The concern to manage the assets well and the selfishness in doing so, are rarely separated. - Therefore, the one who has no selfless mind, should praise Me when he is poor, because in poverty one can hardly be selfish, whereas in wealth a solid character is needed to be loving and selfless.

10. Fifth - selflessness towards educated people in the field. It is the task of every human being to develop the talents that he has received and to manage them well for the benefit of brotherly and neighbourly love, so that the talent capital, including interest, may be increased, refined and spiritualized through neighbourly love. Therefore be selfless and do not be envious of those more educated than yourselves, for they have more and are responsible for more.

11. Every person feels in himself the urge for one or the other science or education in a subject, therefore learn and educate yourself further and further in your favourite ideas and serve Me and your neighbour with it, and then you have managed your talents well, because you have invested in the interest of charity, i.e. when you have supported the poor and sick with your additional earnings of your greater knowledge.

12. The more educated you are, the greater the demands on you to manage your talents for the benefit of your neighbour. And so it depends only on you whether you want to become a faithful servant of My Father's House, because it depends only on you, whether you want to be educated and manage the given knowledge well, because I am in every man as the basic wellspring of love, from which one can draw from love for Me and the neighbour what one wants to become.

13. Sixth, selflessness towards the better paid. Be also selfless towards these, for they are in a higher duty to Me, because they are more educated than you are, and if they waste their extra merit on themselves, they have greater responsibility than you, who gets paid less, for where there is nothing, nothing can be demanded.

14. Seventh, selflessness towards progress in spirit. Dear children, you all have the same rules and the same teaching of My love and therefore nobody can say that he would be disadvantaged. Seek to awaken My virtues in you, to let them grow, blossom and mature, then the fruits will also be there for eternal life and you need nothing more. The more thoroughly you receive and fulfill the law of love with her virtuous daughters and grandchildren in you, the more advanced you will become.

15. The self-sacrificing selflessness. This capital virtue of your Father Jesus, was My last Divine act of love, as you know from My Passion story.

16. There is nothing more beautiful in the world than this great virtue which elevates man to the higher regions of divinity, because through it, My children are being made equal with Me as God Myself, by practicing good deeds for people.

314. Wisdom and Righteousness

1901, March 3-5, Graz. Father Jesus gives various teachings on the behavior of man in matters of law and justice towards his neighbour, in which the wisdom of the mind wants to have the only say.

1. The task of man is - to master his vices, so that he does not abandon his full rights towards his neighbour and let go of the reins of the vices of his personal ego of wisdom of understanding and freely tell the brother or sister the crude and naked truth in his face.

2. But this can be achieved by considering the spiritual truth that the soul and the body are innocent instruments of a wrong or inadequate education and training, which instead of ennobling the mind, fences in the head full of wisdom, therefore full of vices, wrong views and dogmatism, which throws its arrows and pointed or even raw insults into the world at the expense of the neighbour; therefore pity such a man, for his wickedness and his evil deeds come only from his wisdom of understanding, which contains all the defects of worldly human education, but not from the personal ego, which represents the soul, which is the innocent disciple of the Satanic wisdom in the head.

3. Therefore, strictly separate the person, or the visible I, through whom the soul manifests itself, from the *wise man* in the head, who has acquired his knowledge in the worldly training, who is no good for the ennoblement of man, but only presents the brutalization of the mind. Either through a fine hypocrisy of education - or through the fine hypocrisy of insisting on his rights and setting all wisdom phrases in motion to destroy the enemy. —

4. One indeed detests the vices of one's neighbour, but separate it from the person and do not get angry at him when he has acted with evil against you out of its Satan, in the wisdom of understanding.

5. Therefore do not judge men according to the qualities of his outer self, which is still full of mistakes and weaknesses, but think of the fact that I also dwell in the heart of an evil man and that his soul is My bride, whom I strive to ennoble, spiritualize and deify and teach, and that one day it will become - like you - a deity with Me.

6. Since you yourselves are full of mistakes and vices, you also are not to make too strict demands on your brother who seeks the spiritual bread and light, but you are to make an effort to clarify and teach him the true teaching of Divine love and wisdom and to be patient with him until he has reached the foundation of truth and can grasp it.

7. The advanced should therefore not be an obstacle to the development of the less gifted, less insightful and weak brother through any critical requirements; for not man, not the cause of the confessors of Theosophy, but I your God, is the goal of the aspiration of Theosophy, and I regard all men as My children and exclude no-one from the love of My Father's Heart, both on this side and beyond the grave.

8. Laughter is a manifestation of the soul and the wisdom of the mind. It is implanted in man that he expresses this feeling externally through laughter in various dispositions of the inner feeling. Man laughs out of joy, malicious joy, evil, bitterness, childlike pleasure, gratitude, kindness, self-satisfaction, habit, moodiness, mischievousness, roguishness, joyful hope, joys of the heart, etc.

9. But laughter is mostly for self-pleasure, that one has played a trick on one's neighbour through lies, evil, deceit, cheating, damage and various tricks, and therein lies the evil of laughter; therefore hell is always full of harmful and derisive laughter.

10. You know from My life story, that as an adult, I have never laughed - because the loud and frolicsome laughter is very bad for a person, while a serious and friendly nature, creates a respectable impression.

11. The proverb in life is *"The fool can be recognized by laughter"*, so get used to serious but friendly, smiling behaviour towards your neighbour; but tame the exuberant laughter with all seriousness, for it is uneducated and unattractive for an adult person to announce him- or herself in his or her environment by much loud laughter.

12. Remember that loud and frolicsome laughter manifests your limited formation and exuberance of mind, which renders you a low opinion with an *educated* person who considers you an uneducated being inwardly, while you think that he has a pleasure in your humour and laughter. —

13. So never allow yourself to crave, tease, to make fun of your acquaintances, friends and spiritual brothers, neither with words nor with deeds. - Life is too serious to dally time with jokes, laughter and ridicule.

14. Likewise never laugh because you feel you have to, never laugh for entertainment, never laugh out of malicious joy, when a misfortune happens to someone - whatever it may be - for that is directly from hell, because only a raw or uneducated man and a villain can laugh when something unpleasant happens to his neighbour, who is his brother through God.

15. Do not laugh when your brother or sister slips and falls and the like, but be like a mother to her child, whether it is good or evil, she jumps with worry and fear to see what has happened and help as much as possible; so do the same to your neighbour, and then act according to Jesus' teaching:

16. Do to your neighbour what you want him to do to you and remember the second main motto: "What you do to the least, that is as if you had done it to Me, Jesus, the Father-God.

17. People should not laugh at all or only very rarely. Because laughter comes from the *awakening of harmful spirits* that are in the human body.

18. A *friendly* pulling of the facial muscles, from which one can recognize the expression of special benevolence, *is heavenly*, but all other laughter comes *mostly from hell*. For the devils laugh all the time when they succeed in an evil trick; But in the heavens no-one ever laughs, but one is always full of the warmest and *friendliest benevolence* towards even the poorest creatures, and full of compassion for every *suffering* brother who still has his time to go through on earth! Remember this for all the future!

19. Nowadays people laugh a lot about the weaknesses of their brothers, because the true faith in God has disappeared like the sun after sunset, and because of this the love in people's hearts has become cold, like a cold night, and therefore there is misery and trouble on earth like as never before, when people had faith and love for God and people.

20. Remember this teaching from heaven! - *Punish your children* if they *laugh naughtily*; for in this case it is better for them to weep than for them to hear laughter! For laughter comes from *hell*, which is always full of *mocking laughter*!

21. There may be conditions where only the men are entitled to laugh at a stupid thing and a stubborn stupidity; but then laughter is a *well-deserved punishment* for the one who is worthy of laughter.

22. But if someone laughs just for pleasure and chooses things, results and ridiculous speeches to make him laugh, he's a fool! For only a fool's heart can be made to laugh; but every man who is only moderately wise, easily and soon understands the holy seriousness of life, and he will have difficulty considering to laugh at something!

23. Therefore laugh no more in the future, and *turn away your faces* from buffoons and comedians, who let themselves be paid for preparing you for hell; always be *sober of heart*, so that you have *God's* good pleasure, and with it, true honour! (Cf. ChtS. 11, ch. 169)

24. Beware of arrogance, anger, jealousy, hatred, disfavour, and selfishness, that you are not possessed by evil spirits, who strive to increase your vices and blasphemy on every occasion, so that you become an unloved person to yourself and your neighbour.

25. Many people believe in it to gloat about rising above their lesser brethren in high esteem. This vice causes terrible revenge in the hereafter. In return, the brothers who are inwardly insulted - since there is no police, but perfect freedom for all - treat the others in the meanest way and regard them as spit, as the carrion of society, where every participant causes as much suffering as he likes.

26. It is the payment for humiliations and insults suffered in all imaginable ways. There is no compassion, but only malicious joy: “Justice is done to the high-nosed dog! He has pestered us on earth, now it is our turn to repay him at our discretion.”

27. The fatal thing about this it that the high-minded thinker, together with the vengeful humiliated, both go to hell and live together there, and then there are slaps in the face, blows in the ribs, spitting in the face and all the unattractive animal-names, etc. Woe betide man after the death of his body, who has gathered enemies here through his arrogant and unfriendly behaviour toward his brethren! There in the realm of spirits is hellish-bestial retribution for all injustice done on earth.

28. Lack of love on earth is there the full-fledged hell, because everything that man has appropriated here for the brain, therefore for the world, rots away in his grave and only that is taken along, what he has absorbed in himself out of love for God and for his neighbour and has realized in life through the deed. - If a person leaves the world without love-activity, then he is a complete hellish spirit, a devil who is only doing evil to others.

29. Men will give account of their actions and omissions; because everything that man does in the fleshly life, remains the eternal property of his soul.

30. When man dies, his works worked in the fleshly life follow him and there form the spiritual resurrection-body of the soul. Let everyone therefore strives only to do what is good and just. Man loses nothing he has ever *thought, wished, spoken, sung, seen, smelled, heard and done*. When he is in paradise, everything of his property is once again purified and arranged, which takes between 200 and 1000 years.

31. If a soul is particularly highly advanced, then it is completed sooner; if it is transfigured, then it follows very soon. With Enoch, Eliiah, Mary, the patriarch Zuriel - now the Archangel of this name, etc., the body was transfigured and taken away without dying, for these four persons and many others in the prehistoric times, have reached the second rebirth of the Spirit on earth and instead of dying, have been transformed into spirit, like the body of your Father-God Jesus - Who, after the resurrection was no longer seen by the fleshly eye, but only the spiritual eye, when I opened it for My disciples and friends.

32. Do not go from friend to friend asking about the faulty behaviour of a brother or sister if these mistakes do not cause you personal harm because you think you are free of mistakes (i.e. holy, divine) - instead of thinking about your own mistakes and working on subduing them.

33. Do not carry the faults of others into daylight if they do not cause any damage to anyone. For in so doing you insult the Spirit of God in man, who humbly honours this temple of sin by dwelling in it, and to call the sinner His child!

34. Pride is in you when you feel offended, when someone tells you a truth or an untruth instead of acknowledging the error and trying to correct it, or discussing the untruth that was spoken about you not calmly, but with rudeness and not wanting to reconcile yourself with the offender.

35. When someone to whom you have done good, sins, do not accuse him of it and do not tell others about it. He who does this boasts and throws this upon Me, your Father Jesus, who is enthroned in the poor, that he has done Me a favour!

36. The one who thinks of settling a dispute through revenge, legal action and causing damage to his neighbour with whom he crossed paths, is in the service of My counter-pole. Have a calm discussion with him! Perhaps he did not commit the injustice, but another did; or the person concerned was misled by others, or he did not know that he had sinned against God and his neighbour as a child of God.

37. If, because of the faults of your neighbour (whose faults do you no harm), you expel this brother or sister from you and no longer want to associate with him as a sinner, then you are arrogant; for thereby you position yourselves higher than God, Who values the sinner in whom He personally dwells or resides.

38. Do not boast that you do not commit this or that sin and that therefore no-one can accuse you of anything; precisely by boasting, like the evangelical Pharisee against the tax collector - you commit the greatest of all sins - you boast of the sin of pride.

39. Don't boast about what you were or what you are; or what you had or still have; or what you understood or have understanding of.

40. Never demand and make no claim to subservient respect, silence and listening to what you say, because you are the oldest, most knowledgeable and most clever, but this privilege is gladly conferred upon you if you are kind and humble with all.

41. An abominable arrogance lives in the one who pries into the past life of a human being, accuses him of long ago committed mistakes, tells them to others, speaks disparagingly about them and henceforth avoids the brother. He is engaged in a kind of police espionage over his brother, his sister, and recites to him the sins I may have already forgiven him! - Did I not teach: Do not do to your neighbour what you do not want to be done to you!?

42. Never worry about your neighbour's business, but take care of your garden of virtues, and see that you make the heavenly flowers bloom and mature; for it is these alone that bring you to heaven.

43. When you see that your brethren do not meet the requirements of My Teaching, do not allow yourself to be their critic and judge and thereby do evil instead of good.

44. Beware of any unpleasant encounters with your neighbour, may he be right or wrong, theosophist or worldly.

45. It is not your job to criticize the world as long as you yourself are under sin. Improve yourself, become the pattern of life for others, then you will be able to function as teachers of your brethren, and pray for their conversion yourself, then things will get better.

46. The world is not getting better, because everyone wants to be self-righteous and only accuse his neighbour of the sins of the world.

47. Abstain from every unloving description of your neighbour, thus also that he is possessed and mad, for that is the same as telling him - you fool! - which is punished with hellish fire. (Compare the details in the *Prayer Book* chapter 4) Because fool or possessed - also madman, are identical terms and designations.

48. The truth. I, Jesus Jehovah, am the truth, and no one comes to God other than through a life and action according to My teaching and walking in My footsteps as personified Truth - i.e. which is the united love and wisdom which operates through unselfish charity. (John 14:6)

49. Now the question arises: Can there be two or more truths? Can the Spirit of God speak two truths, one contradicting the other and marks it as a lie? —

50. Every statute of the Church which contradicts the truth of God, the teaching revealed by Jesus, is not of God, therefore of His opposite pole, and this is Satan, the Antichrist, the prince of lies. (John 8:44)

51. The excitement and violence of the mind is an evil vice, it is the daughter of pride and anger, and woe betide the man who cannot free himself of it. The agitated man who feels he is in the right,

defends everything that concerns the right with vehement insistence and zeal for this right beyond all measure; and fully aware that only in this way the feeling of being right is atoned for, he is a strict judge of justice without love and mercy, a pure letter-rider of the law and its fulfillment.

52. Such people cannot reach the rebirth of the Spirit as long as they do not seriously fight this state of their sense of justice. Therefore, let everyone strive to fight the violence of the mind and always speak calmly and patiently about the lawful right, even if it is denied by the other party that it is not true and not so.

53. In life it says: "The clever give way;" but in the spiritual it says: "The humble and the patient give way out of love for God and unity!" So also you should do, that you may walk the way of love and humility and attain the rebirth of the Spirit.

54. Hostility. If anyone strikes you on a cheek, that is to say, woe you in any way, do not reward him with the same, as is customary according to the worldview of those who do not live according to the doctrine of God; but instead of serving the justice of the world, turn the other cheek to him, so that you may live in harmony with your neighbour. (Matt 5:39) That means: be indulgent, grant him justice and rather tolerate injustice yourself.

55. If anyone wants to argue with you in judgement and to have something of you, even if wrongfully, voluntarily give him a little more for the sake of loving peace. (Matt 5:40)

56. If someone forces you to go one mile with him, voluntarily go two miles with him, that is, do more than his unjust desire requires. (Matt 5:41)

57. Do to your neighbour what you wish him to do to you. (Luke 6:31)

58. As you do on earth to your neighbours, so will also be done to you in heaven. (Matt 7:2; Luke 6:37)

59. You pray: Father, forgive us our sins as we forgive our enemies. (Matt 6:12,14; Luke 11:4) Think what that means!

60. What you do for one of My children is considered as if you did it directly to Me. (Matt 25:40)

61. As soon as you notice evil qualities in your brother, try to bring them up to him in the gentlest, even most kindly way, in such a way that the guilty brother does not even notice that it is directed to him, but, referring them to himself, or in general to the virtue in question, wishing that it would not occur anywhere.

62. It is also advisable to let such books or magazines come anonymously into the hand of the said brother, in which this virtue is reprimanded. If he wants to improve himself, he has experienced what is not right, if he does not want to, then flee his presence, because the evil spirits who go along with him in his society often also pass over to others and make them un-virtuous.

63. You should be careful who you deal with! For you do not see in the spiritual, and this can also sometimes become fatal for a good man. Evil spirits that buzz around evil people are in their malice only satisfied by evil deeds, therefore often misfortunes of which the people of former times had no idea of.

64. The self-righteous. People always want to look better than they are - hence so much unkindness, arrogance, superior pride and selfishness. The false teaching of your churches has brought you so far into religious beliefs that many suffer from the above gross sins.

65. The same goes for the opinion about life on this side and on the other. Many believe that when they have lived well on earth - that is to say, have not committed pronounced external sins - they then

become the sole preferred in the spirit-kingdom, while those who have not lived here on earth according to My commandments, are lost there in the hereafter for eternity and damned to hell. They even more disagree with Divine Love, that an unconverted sinner can and may ever come to grace there; for they say: "Where then is Divine justice, if he who has committed nothing but sins here on earth, in the hereafter with me, who had trouble all my life to live after divine justice and to protect myself from sins, would receive the same lot and at the same time go to heaven together with me!

66. These views on Divine justice, strongly cultivated by your anti-Christian church statutes, are quite unloving and merciless and belong below and not in My heaven, where love, humility, patience, compassion, mercy and selflessness are the driving forces of all thought and action. With such self-righteous, envious, loveless, arrogant, selfish and intolerant views you are already pronounced devils! Do not dream that you can go to heaven with such infernal views!

67. Do you not know that I dwell in every man?! And you condemn Me, as the leader of the souls of men, to hell? And have no mercy on your brother who is still buried in sin and does not have the right light to walk the ways according to My commandments? You grant Me, your God and Father, together with My prodigal Son, that we two shall be roasted forever in hell according to the loveless teaching of your priests in hellish flames?!

68. Take note: With the same measure which you measure your neighbour, it will be measured back to you by Me in the hereafter!

69. When you have heard My Enlightenment and you are prudent to think, judge, live and act differently, shall I still treat you according to your previous senses of justice and cast you into hell? See how you will consider this to be an injustice, so it is also with the sinners in the hereafter when they have converted and repented and have been found better than you with your sense of self-righteousness before Me. Heed My earnest enlightenment, which will protect you from hell when you acknowledge it and then judge yourselves accordingly.

70. My righteousness is loving patience until the sinner himself recognizes his hell and begins to work his way out of it, whereby I am his helper. - Because he is My child, and a good loving father strives only to improve his child and bring it on good ways, but not to cast it out and watch heartlessly how it suffers the terrible pains, need and misery and cannot help itself. If I were such a father of justice, as I said in the *"Prayer Book"* (prayer book chap. 160, 5), I would not be God, but a pure Satan.

71. Paul writes: Oh man! Whoever you are, you are in no way to be excused when you judge; for in judging you judge yourself; because you who judge, you do the same (Rom 2:1), because you presume to judge your brother as a child of God, on whom God as Father, Lord and Judge alone has the right to judge, but you presume to anticipate the judgement of God, instead of doing what you are commanded to do by the greatest commandment in the law of love. (Matt 22:37-40)

72. Paul also says: "Do not avenge yourselves, beloved, but subject yourselves to the righteousness of God; for it is written: Mine is the right of retribution; I will reimburse, says the Lord! (5 Moses 32:35; Rom 12:19)

73. So if your enemy starves, feed him; if he thirsts, give him water. If you do this, you shall gather glowing coals on his head. - Let not evil overcome thee, but overcome evil by good. (Rom 12:20, 21) For all of us will have to stand before the judgement seat of Christ. (Rom 14:10)

74. Everyone who hates his brother, namely his neighbour, is a murderer (of his own soul); but you know that a murderer cannot have eternal life in him. (1 John 3:15)

75. I as Jesus taught in the Sermon on the Mount; "Do not judge that you will not be judged; for as you judge, so will you be judged; and with the measure by which you measure, you will be measured again" (Matt 7:1.12; Luke 6:37)

76. Do not think of the one who does not want to live according to your teachings and opinions as your enemy, but improve him as a brother. (2 Thess 3:15) For the Christian should lead his neighbour on the way of salvation, but should not seek to persecute and destroy him.

77. Condemn not, neither shall ye be condemned; forgive, ye shall also be forgiven. (Luke 6:37)

78. But a judgement without mercy will be pronounced over him who shows no mercy; but mercy triumphs over judgement. (James 2:13) - For thus saith Jehovah, the ruler of the world, God - speak the law according to the truth, and practice leniency and mercy, one towards another (Zach 7:9) - For everyone who does wrong is an abomination before Jehovah, your God. (5 Moses 25:16)

79. *Matthew 5:11-12*: Blessed are you when you are insulted for My sake, persecuted and all kinds of evil is falsely spoken about you. - Jubilate and rejoice! For your reward in heaven will be great; for so the prophets who were before you have been persecuted. (Luke says the same thing in chapter 6:22,23.)

80. *I Peter 4:14* - Blessed are you when you are mocked because of the name of Christ; for then all the honour, glory and power of God and His Spirit will rest on you. With them He is blasphemed, but with you He is praised.

81. My true - practicing doctrine is exalted above the worldly laws and judgements; for their mantle is love, since the love of the law is the fulfillment thereof; (Rom 13:10) furthermore humility, because you can serve Me only through humility; (Acts 20:19) finally peace, therefore Paul greeted the Romans with the beautiful greeting: "Keep peace with all men." (Rom 12:18, 19)

82. Never, therefore, be overtaken by the mistakes and transgressions of your brother; for nothing is more infectious to lovelessness than the flaunting of self-righteousness and the practicing thereof against the mistakes of others. Therefore remember what I, Jesus, revealed: *In hell the fire of pride burns the highest; but in heaven only the light of the highest humility and modesty shines, and the gentle fire of love warms and enlivens everything.* (ChtS. 10; Micah 6:8)

83. As mentioned above in verse 71, Paul wrote the following to the Romans (2:1) about judging the brother: "Oh man! whoever you are, you are in no way to be excused when you judge; for in judging the other, you judge yourself - because you who judge do the same thing."

84. This passage by Paul is explained in Peter's letter to the Hebrews (10:30), in which it says: "The right to punish is Mine, I will repay," says the Lord! and again: "The Lord will judge His people."

85. For the Theosophist here is the admonition that he should not go into spiritual judgement with his brother with his human mind! For in the Epistle to the Romans (14:12) it says: "Each one of us will give account to God for himself".

86. Any criticism, suspicion, slander, talking behind the back and the reproach of a brother's weaknesses and mistakes, is not Theosophical. Therefore, never complain about the weaknesses and mistakes of your neighbour, but, if you notice any in your neighbour and if they are offensive, *then turn your eyes immediately to yourself and examine yourself whether you do not possess the same, similar or even worse mistakes yourself*; and if you find them, then first strive to free yourself of them, then you act according to the Theosophy or Christ, as I said: "First pull the beam out of your eyes and if you are pure before God, then act so dearly and indulgently with the splinters in your brother's eyes as God does this with His children, allowing the warming love of His sun to come evenly over evil and good, and the fertilizing rain of His Fatherly goodness and mercy to come evenly over evil and good." —

87. Every man is bound to give account of every word one day when he dies, so before speaking a word, let everyone consider the consequences that may arise from it so that when the last hour has struck, he will stand; for I, Jesus, said:

88. “I tell you that men have to give account at the last judgement of every useless word that they have spoken.”

89. From your words you will be justified and from your words you will be damned. (Matt 12:36,37)

90. Since the flesh-body of man is merely an instrument animated by spirit and soul for the material-visible activity thereof; - But only the soul is able to enjoy and suffer, so that after the death of the body in the spirit-realm, only the soul must pay for all that it did in the flesh-body, while the flesh-body is painlessly left to its fate. Take therefore all care of the soul and the love for Me and the neighbour, that you will never have to complain about it.

91. Closely united with My Divine Love, is My Divine Wisdom - because wisdom is needed as a wise leader, to guide it in its enthusiasm and to warn against too much generosity. The same is true of wisdom. On it's own, it is arrogant and repulsive; it only wants to rule and forgets itself in its selfishness to such an extent that it recognizes no-one else but itself, then love comes and soothes the conceited haughtiness of wisdom and makes it bearable and, through the kind cooperation of love, pleasant and joyful.

92. You should therefore never cultivate only love or wisdom, but they are united, for when the two are united, then the truth or Christ is in you! - You should therefore never! Never! Act thoughtlessly against your neighbour - neither by enthusiastic love, nor by cold, calculating wisdom!

315. Love

The law of love for God and for mankind is announced by ten tablets.

1901, October 5-10, Graz. Father Jesus explains through many teachings the high value of love and calls it the Queen of Heaven and the Bride of the peoples.

1. First Tablet: *Come to Me*, all you who are troubled and laden, that you may be refreshed. - *Hold yourselves to love alone*! Truly, if the number of your sins were as that of the sand of the sea and the grass of the earth, *love shall wipe them out wholly*, and if your shame before God were like the blood of the scapegoats, *let love wash it white like white wool* and like the finest byssus.

2. Second Tablet: *Love is life*, law, order, strength, power, gentleness, humility, patience and therefore the *core of all wisdom*! Not all things are *possible* for wisdom, because wisdom can only go so far and cannot deal with what is unclean; but *to love, all things are possible*; for it also seizes that which is rejected with the same intimacy as that which is in itself the purest. - *Love can use everything - but wisdom can only use that which love has purified*.

3. Third Tablet: *Ask your heart if it can love very much, if it can love God above all*, without interest, except the sweetest of *love* itself? - Ask your heart if it can *love the brother more than yourself*, for *God's sake*, like a second little God? - Ask your heart if it can *truly* and completely *purely* love? - Can it love God for Who He is, and can it love the brother - being out of God - for God's sake, and out of pure love for God, as you love God? - If your heart can do this, then the decay of your body is at an end, and you yourself will stand before God, your Lord and Father and Brother, complete. —

4. Fourth Tablet: *God himself is the eternal, purest love, and its fire is the life* and the *wisdom in God*, and thus from God, as in God *the life* and t*he light of all beings*; *the sparks* from the forge-fire of the purest *love of God in God are the children of God*, of equal origin from the One Heart of God! - You, too, are such a *spark*; make yourself a *living fire*, and *you will see God in your heart*.

5. Fifth Tablet: *The Word* from the *heart of God* is omnipotent love; therefore the Word and the Eternal *Son* of God is *One*; yes, God Himself *is the full* Word that was begotten in the fire of love. But you *are* also a word of God, produced in the *heart of God*; therefore *again* become a *full word of God; become all love* - all love in God, so you will reach the *Son of God*, and be one with Him. But you do not come to Him except through *the Father*, who is love and the Word Himself in Himself, always the same from eternity to eternity.

6. Sixth Tablet: *Christ alone is the mediator between God and human nature; by the death of His flesh and by His shed blood, He has opened the way for all flesh, which is Satan's ancient sin, to the resurrection and return to God!* - But Christ is the basic love in God, *the principal of all the Word, which became flesh, and thereby to the flesh of all flesh, and to the blood of all blood. This flesh voluntarily took upon itself all the sins of the world up to the time of His crucifixion, and the original sin for all times, and cleansed them before God through His holy blood*. - Make yourself a partaker of this greatest work of redemption of God through the flesh - that is, through life and action according to Christ's teaching - and through the *blood* - that is, through the spiritual love of *Christ*; then you will be *pure* before God! For no being could *become pure* by himself from the original sin committed in Adam, but only by the merits of Christ, which were acquired through the way of suffering and dying on the cross, and which are the highest grace and mercy of God. You alone can do *nothing* of yourself, but the Spirit of *Christ* can do everything *in you* if you awaken Him in your heart through your love and make Him active in you.

7. Seventh Tablet: Your earthly dwelling - that is the flesh body - is full of filth: *who will clean it*? Who alone has the strength and the power? Behold, Christ the eternal high priest before God, His eternal Father, namely His eternal Love! For *Christ* (as the Divine Wisdom) and the *Father* (as the Divine Love) are *one* from eternity (John 10:30). In Christ alone dwells all the fullness of the Godhead (spiritual); and this fullness is the Father, as the purest *love of God*. Embrace this with your love and it will *purify and awaken your flesh*, as it has awakened the flesh of Christ and transfigured it, which contained Wisdom and Love as the truth of God (John 1:14; 14:6).

8. Eighth Tablet: You are afraid of the great multitude of your evil spirits that dominate your flesh and blood in the world, and ask with Paul: *Who will deliver me* from my flesh and *make me free* from the bonds of death (Rom 7:24)? Behold, *Christ, who was killed*, is risen, and live, a Lord from eternity! (Micah 5:1) If He had remained in death, if it had been possible, eternal death would also have been certain for you; but since *Christ has risen*, as you now know yourself, it is impossible for anyone to be left in the grave of his sins. For as *death came upon all flesh by the one serpent*, so also *life came upon all flesh of men of the earth by the One God-man*; but also a *new judgement*, although the old judgement which contained death was destroyed for ever by this one resurrection; but this new judgement is nevertheless also death, but not death to death, but death to life. - Come to love through your love, so that this new judgement of your flesh may become a true *life* through the works of the *One*; you stand at the spring; *drink of the living water*, which is called abundant 'love'!

9. Ninth Tablet: "The pure *love of women is self-love*; for he who lets himself be so much distracted by the love of women that *neighbourly love* becomes a burden for him, and out of this the *love of God* becomes a burden, and he loves himself in the essence of women; therefore do not let yourself be captured by the charming figure of a woman over the just measure, *lest you soon perish* in the weakness of the woman, while the *woman* should *arise* only in your strength to one being with and in you! But as you love one or the other *member* of your being, *so love also the wife*, that she may become one with you; but you, *love God above all things*, that in such mighty love, you may be *born anew* as a true, free citizen of the heavens of God for ever, and your wife as a being with you!

10. Tenth Tablet: Seek, seek, seek, that you may not *overextend yourself* and wax great! - Behold the Lord's humility, meekness and goodness! See, *He is the Lord from eternity*; everything that encompasses infinity from the greatest to the smallest, from the most spiritual to the most material atom, is all *His most own work*, and *His power* is so great that all the countless works of infinity would have to sink back into eternal *nothingness* even before the softest breath of His mouth. And *yet* He stands *with His little children* so *simply* and without any expectation at all, as if He were near the

least of them, and *loves them*, and converses with them, as if He only had them alone in all infinity, which is full of countless myriads of the most wonderful and sweetest pure beings. - So seek, seek, seek *to be the least* and to become and to *remain* (through love) forever" (ChtS. 42 B, II. 20ff)

11. The high value of love. Paul (1 Cor 13:1-13) wrote to the Corinthians: - "If I spoke the tongues of men and angels, but had not love (to God and neighbour according to the teaching of Jesus (Matt 22:37-40)), I would be a sounding brass, or a sounding bell, (which means as much as: a hollow but empty vessel in which there is no value).

- And if I could prophesy, and know all the mysteries, and have the strongest faith, and move mountains, but lack love, I would be nothing. —
- Yes, if I gave all my wealth to support the poor, and sacrificed my body so that I could be burned, but I lacked love, all this would help me nothing. —
- Love is long-suffering, mild and friendly; love does not envy; it does not deliberate; it does not inflate. —
- It does not offend decency; it is not selfish; it does not allow itself to be bitter; it thinks nothing bad;
- it has no joy in wickedness, but joy in truth;
- It endures everything, it believes everything, it hopes everything, it tolerates everything.
- Love never ceases, even when the prophecies will cease, and the (different) languages will cease, and it ends with knowledge (through foreign teachers - Isa 54:13).
- For our knowledge and prophecies are only an imperfect patchwork.
- But when the perfect (of knowledge) will come, then the piecework will cease.
- These three remain on earth: faith, hope and love, but love is the greatest of them.

12. Father Jesus illuminates His Divine love and wisdom with the following words: "*Love is like the most inner truth-light seen directly from God, through all infinite eternal spaces.*" (ChtS. III, Chap. 260)

13. Love is God in spiritual form, it is spiritually the basic light from the depth of the Divine heart, therefore the highest in God.

14. In the *language of flowers* it corresponds to the beautiful and soothing red rose, which all people looks at with so much pleasure and invites them to enjoy and refresh themselves with its beauty and fragrance. - Love is divided into seven love-spirits and these are:

1. Love God above all things, because He loves you above all things.
2. Love your neighbour as yourself;
3. Love the animals,
4. Love the plants and growths,
5. Love peace with every human being,
6. Love your soul,
7. Love your body,

15. First: Love God above all, because He loves you above all (ChtS. 49). You are My child, therefore My darling and My heritage. Because I created the worlds for you, keeping them ready for you to give them to you to own, to rule in them as a godhead and king and to guide everything in love, so that it may ascend ennobled, to the highest regions of the Love-light and reach its ultimate goal in Me, the Primordial Love.

16. Therefore My child you have good reason to love Me, though I lead you over stony rocks and thorny bushes of the bitterness of earthly life to purify you in tribulations of the life of matter which lures you to devour you and to bury you in the depths of the abyss of spiritual darkness, where in agony and misery you would repeatedly raise your pleading hands to Me for mercy and salvation, suffering woe and in need of help, and yet you would not wish to obtain help because your dark interior can not let you reach the bright heights of My Father's House.

17. Be of good cheer and rejoice in your heart when you see that I let you taste much bitterness on earth, and think: The Father loves me very much, for He chastises me very much to remove my worldly things from me, to bring me to His loving heart and to make me happy with heavenly joys and graces.

18. Second, love your neighbour as yourself; - therefore do to your neighbour what you want him to do to you if you need help from him; - and therefore do not do to him what you do not want him to do to you. (Matt 6:12) If your neighbour is in great need, let your love for him be ten times greater than yourself, then you are divine in your love. 3, chap. 276-290 ff, furthermore 1 John 4:8,16,20,21; Matt 22:37-40; 1 Cor 13;- ChtS. 30:43; - 5 Moses 11:1; 3 Moses 19:18,34; Acts 4:32; ChtS. 3, ch. 227)

19. Thirdly: Love the animals because they were created by your God and Father, to whom you owe the deepest reverence as a creature and because they are the creation of your Father who loves you, to whom you should show all your love and, as His child, make Him happy that you care, love, and in no way maltreat or annihilate everything that is presented to you by your Heavenly Father and belongs to your earthly inheritance, for this isn't allowed by your Father who created it. Try to distress the animals as little as possible, if you do not want to awaken My decided aversion. But your love for the animals should not degenerate into caresses, so that the animal-magnetism does not flow into you, which of course then makes your soul animalistic in one way or another! It is too common and crude or undeveloped that man should degrade himself to be a lover of dogs, cats, chickens and other animals, and that his heart should be attached to them, because this does not belong to the education and decency of a child of God! Think about who you are and what an animal is. But neither shall anyone curse the animals, for they are creatures of God.

20. Fourth, love the plants and vegetation, and regard them as a gift of love from God your Father, who created them for you for your use and benefit, but not for any abuse on your part.

21. Fifth, love peace with every person, for peace in the heart is the foundation of contentment and a joyful life. Peace in the heart is heaven on earth, because with peace in the heart, you can peacefully communicate with your friend and enemy and convert your enemy into your friend. Live therefore in peace and become yourself full of peace and contentment, then you will build the kingdom of God on earth and in yourself. For if you do not cultivate peace with all, you too will have no peace in yourself and thus will not be able to attain the rebirth of the Spirit.

22. Sixth, love your soul by taking care of its spiritual nourishment, that it may receive that food of true teaching of Christ which ennobles it, spiritualizes it, and deifies it. For if you will not care for it, it will fall into ruin and walk in ways that will make it dark and in the end, most unhappy.

23. Seventh: Love your body by caring for it, what is necessary for its preservation and health, so that you can fulfill your duty as a human being to God and your neighbour. The body is given to man as an instrument, for testing his spiritual strength, so that he may ennoble and spiritualize in it the soul and the flesh, and, as Enoch, Elijah, Mary and others once did, spiritualize and complete it in his homecoming, show the Father that he had happily passed the time of testing of his flesh, and reached the goal of life in the flesh, which is the spiritualization of it. —

24. Let love for God and neighbour be your morning star and signpost of life for good; - and if the day is nearing its end, it shall be your evening star and watchman at night against evil. Therefore love God above everything and your neighbour as yourself, then the morning-love will guide you all day long to the good and noble; and so love will shine in your hearts as the evening-love at the setting of day, and when you go to rest, it will watch that the evil one has no power over you.

25. Love is a ray from the Divine heart that illuminates and warms your soul to the good and noble and is a signpost on the way to eternal life or to God, the Love.

26. This love is a spiritual fire when it seizes the heart in its exuberance of thanksgiving and lifts it up into the heavenly heights, where man indulges in inmost emotion and is powerless to speak a word

full of love, where man in the spirit of this love looks at his Father bathed in tears, presses him to his heart, and wants to kiss him. Look, this love is the basic element in God and hence the speechless exuberance of man, when these two poles meet in the fire of love.

27. In such love, human words of thanks is powerless, because he floats in the spirit, enraptured from the clod of earth into the bright heights of God and feels unspeakable, - he feels the love in its basic potency, which overpowers him and makes him indulge in the delight of love. Behold, such a love is the highest gratitude, is the kiss given to man by his Father at the entrance to the eternal life of love, joy and bliss, albeit for a few minutes; - but a premonition of the former realization to truth and eternal continuance.

28. *Keep love and harmony among yourselves* and be devoted to all with your hearts, whether they walk with you or not, they walk *with* Me and therefore you are all "My children" and you are among yourselves "brothers" and "sisters" while you have One Father. Therefore withdraw yourselves from no man, let your love and your heart be open for everyone and meet everyone with equal love and cordiality; because who is not too little to Me, is also not to be too little to you if you want Me to love you.

29. Before Me there is no difference of standing, nor religion, but only he *whose heart loves Me, it is him who stands before Me*, be he a king or a beggar, a sinner or a righteous man, a lord or a servant; all this has no weight before Me; *love alone weighs all things* and makes all things equal (ChtS. 41, 162 zum 1.10 1893)

30. All you love in the world is vain selfishness; to love only God above all else, is neither vanity nor selfishness, but the supreme wisdom; and if you love all men spiritually, as yourself, you love God and His children, and live in God's love, and overcome Satan.

31. Do not desire to have all knowledge, and the knowing of all things to be your life's course and your pursuit; for man's highest knowledge is and remains only this: That Jesus promised you the kingdom of heaven for the love of God and neighbour.

32. Follow Christ in life and action, then you will walk the ways of the children of God, acquire the hidden treasures of Divine Love, inherit the wisdom and science of God, be truly great, wise and learned in your desire, strive to attain this from God in true love and humility.

33. Many people value wisdom as the highest spiritual good on earth. It is not only the earthly wisdom but the Divine wisdom that man is to strive for, because it turns away from everything that is worldly, mean, low and animal, and strives only for sublime goals of Divine love, which dwells in the bright heights of divine holiness. But the king of Divine love and wisdom is Jesus, the Spirit of Truth, as He called Himself at the Last Supper. Jesus is thus the Spirit of the holiness of Divine Love and Wisdom, which – united - form the Truth in God.

34. You yourselves have to reach the freedom of your spirit through uninterrupted research and search for truth, for light, to thereby reach ever purer love towards God and people. Love is the only signpost and the sure guide to eternal life. (ChtS. 48)

35. The wisdom of love. Love is the foundation of all being and existence, for it encompasses the world.

36. What you love, you attract; what you hate (or do not love), you repel.

37. If I, God, were not pure love, then those people who hate God would suffer badly, they would miss everything that I give to the God-loving, yes, they could not exist at all; because if I would want to show them their love for Me in an understandable way, then I would leave them without sunlight and warmth and without rain and blessing, I would not grant them a joyful minute and leave them to their state, like a complete hell!

38. But because I am the purest love, I also let My enemies and haters notice nothing but love with Me, so that they would come to see how well I mean with them; and that they should recognize Me in it and be grateful to Me for it.

39. I Jesus, as the Godhead Jehovah who stepped into the flesh, therefore taught: Be perfect as your Father in heaven is perfect; (Matt 5:48) love your enemies; do good to those who hate you and pray for your persecutors and slanderers. (Matt 5:43)

40. I always gave you the most beautiful example of love; and when this love bled on the cross for your sins, it prayed out of wisdom, when the pain of the already broken body was terribly increased by blunt nails: '*Father forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing!'*

41. If you now want to become perfect as your father in heaven is perfect, then you have to learn from Me especially about love.

42. But also in love it is the wisdom that is decisive in that *he who does not collect, readily scatters*, because he does not collect.

43. Whoever wants to be great and mighty in love, gather - that the treasure may become greater and richer; for whoever does not gather and save what has been gathered, will never come to riches, so you must gather and save if you want to come to great riches. (ChtS. 42 B II. 325)

44. This seemingly material comparison, however, is also pure-minded and most wise, if one lets it become effective in his love.

45. Who therefore wants to develop an exceedingly great love has to concentrate it on one point and his whole soul has to live, think, seek and weave only for this one love.

46. For a love which is divided into several flirtations or affairs, is nowhere intense and strong,because it is scattered. —

47. Therefore, if you want to be great in love before Me your God, love only Me and this one love will make you rich in love, wisdom and bliss.

48. Out of this love, you will then act as a primordial sage in everything; for the commandment of love, as I Jesus set it up, is: "Love God above all"; out of this love and guided by this love, follows: “Love (by and because of God) your neighbour as yourself”, but in need, ten times more - because Jesus' other commandment of love is thus again: What you did to the smallest of My children (people), you did to Me; (Matt 25:40) because I dwell in the poor (*Prayer Book* 9-10).

49. Who therefore wants to grasp Me in love, love Me alone and only from and through Me everything else, because it is from Me and therefore God - then you will become wise, smart, rich, happy and blessed.

50. And so also this My promise will be fulfilled in him: Seek above all the kingdom of God and His righteousness, all else will then be given to you for free (Matt 6:33)

51. But if the love that you have in your heart is a sublime, noble, chaste love, it can only be a love that you can offer without hesitation to God for glory; for just as you have only one heart, so you can only have one true love both for God and for your neighbour.

52. But that one can already love Me as fiery as a beloved in the fleshly body, is proven to you by the apostle John, who wrote out of this love, the greatest wisdom in God through revelation, which nobody can decipher correctly without My authorisation.

53. Mary of Magdalene first greatly loved Me to the point of the hottest jealousy; but as she recognized her error, then she loved her Jesus Jehovah Zebaoth with pure angelic love, and yet she did not attain John's love. —

54. Any love, however, which is not concentrated on a single point and is not held with all the strength of the soul, is not a perfect love, much less a love like that of John.

55. If one loves a creature because of its advantages, beauty etc., then this love already contains self-love and this is not suitable for the kingdom of God, because it is not a pure and genuine love, but one that has arisen for the sake of one's own advantages.

56. Because man has only one heart, he can only have one genuine love, out of which afterwards all other secondary loves mature - like the main love, which only has to be for Me - all other secondary loves can emerge in the purest Divine order, and therefore one must first stand firm in love to Me and only then everything else can be embraced in the most beautiful order.

57. But if one is still wavering in love for Me, and one hardly knows how to *love God more* than a beautifully formed woman, then ... the right wisdom of the Spirit is still a little far away; and there you must use everything to get possession of it above all. (According to the Father's statement from ChtS. 42 B, II. 326)

58. In your love, oh man, spare not, for by this alone, the blood of Jesus Christ washes you from all sins. ***My Blood* is called "the love of God for men"**, but it is given only to the one who carries love for Me in his heart and brings it in works of charity to the brothers and sisters in whose hearts I always dwell.

59. But since I always dwell in man as the Spirit of God, the grace of mediation exists as often as you burn in love with Me and stretch out your helping hands towards Me through the compassion and mercy you show Me by giving food, clothes and money to the poor, needy and sick! - Here is the continuous gracious mediation from My side, (cf. the beginning of *Martin Luther*) if you love Me in truth; for only then can you say that you love Me when you practice works of charity for Me in the poor, needy and sick. There is no other mediation that would only be given to you temporarily. As often as you open your merciful, compassionate heart towards Me by the acts of Truth, which are the works of charity, so often My Grace streams towards you, as often as you open graceful mediation and place yourself in Divine Grace, so often you lovingly participate in Me in the Truth by the exercise of charity to the poor and sick.

60. I as God am the central Love. The more a person approaches Me through love, the more My warmth of love radiates towards him. This relationship is just like coming into a room warmed by a stove in the cold winter-time. The more distant a person is from the stove, the less he will feel the heat, but the closer he gets to the stove, the more the heat will do him good.

61. So you do to Me, too: **Your love is the longing to come to Me**, the more love you have, the closer you come to Me; and the closer I also approach you and outshine you with My love-blessing and My love-warmth, which is the basis of spiritual life and prosperity, and on which the fruits of eternal life reach maturity.

62. Love all your brothers and sisters like you love Me because they are all My children, whether they are beautiful or nasty, good or evil, stupid or smart. For if I must suffer them and endure them as their Spirit, Father and God, why can and will you not like them? How can you then say that you love Me if you do not want to and cannot love Me everywhere in the same way?

63. Therefore consider every man as a brother, rich or poor, educated or uneducated, of pleasant or repulsive appearance, so that you may be like Me, your Father in everything, and that I may recognize you as a child with equal virtues as I.

64. In heaven all must be of one heart and one mind; there must be no quarrel, no difference of opinion, no discord, no mischief, no sulking, no disagreeable moving away from the person with whom something is being discussed who is not quite of one mind, otherwise one will go - due to one's own burden of guilt against tolerance - down from heaven into paradise or even down into hell! - Therefore everyone should pay attention to what is said here, otherwise he will never reach the high goal of his soul-perfection in the spirit-realm.

65. The contradiction between spiritual and material love. Love is life, but the difference that exists between spiritual and material love is so great that there is room for the great space between heaven and hell.

66. The spiritual love includes all 7 virtues of Jesus, the 10 commandments, the 2 love commandments and all teachings which I once presented to the people. This love must therefore encompass everything, because it has the whole world in it if it wants to be fulfilled. You must above everything else, love your neighbour as yourself, and in it everything is contained that encompasses infinity, because God fills infinity and whoever loves God above all must love everything, because God is the omniscience and infinity in the world.

67. But he must also love his neighbour as himself. In the right sense, man can hardly love anyone as he can love himself; but the Spirit of God dwells again in the neighbour and he is one with God, who is to be loved above all else, therefore man must also love his neighbour ten times more than himself when he is in great trouble, because it gives him the opportunity to love God in truth, which can only happen through selfless activity in the works of charity.

68. Behold, this is the spiritual love which every man has and must indeed show, so that the worship of God may manifest itself in true reverence and sublimity, as the holiness of spiritual love does.

69. Material love is selfishness or Eve's snake. It is the hellish in man, because man disobeys the 10 commandments, disobeys the 2 commandments of love, disrespectfully acts and lives against the 7 virtues of Jesus and carelessly against all Divine teachings. Hence the great difference between spiritual and sensual-material love, in which man only loves and knows himself, but misjudges and despises everything else, because selfishness and self-love only fools him into believing himself to be God and neighbour.

70. So this is the difference between spiritual and material love. Therefore seek to liberate yourselves from the arms of the Eve-snake and strive only for the spiritual; for I, your Father, am only in spiritual All-Love; - but Satan is only in material self-love. The end of life is then either heaven or hell. Decide and work for yourselves and not for Satan, so that you may become children of God and not of Satan.

71. The rules about the greatest commandment in the law: Love God above everything, but your neighbour as yourself, are very versatilely developed in the book *"Love"* (ChtS 38) which can be read by anyone who wants to learn more about love for God and neighbour, because what is already there cannot be reproduced here, but you are therefore referred there! This is what was necessary to say here. From both sources a better light is spread, because one complements the other.

72. I said: I give you a new commandment that you love one another; this will show that you are My disciples if you love one another. (John 13:34,35) As the Father loves Me, so I love you; persevere in My love. (John 15:9) For the Father loves you Himself; because you love Me and believe that I came forth from the Father. (John 16:27)

73. The reason to love God above all else. Man can only love God above all, if he has grasped how high God is above all created things, represents those very qualities which constitute the highest spiritual nobility, and where a constant approach is possible, but never an arrival. (ChtS. 38-6)

74. True love is that which has no other purpose than to see the beloved object or person as perfect or as happy as possible. - So true love is this quality which is able to give everything to the beloved and to keep nothing for oneself, but only the consciousness of having made the beloved object so happy as one's own powers allow.

75. When man has understood and grasped God as this love, then it is time for him to delve deeper into the essence of his God and Father and to strive to see through what God is all to him and has done for him.

76. To understand this I want to remind you of the most important acts of My love for you, so that you can correctly understand and appreciate the greatness of this love. And so listen:

77. My love emptied itself of everything that it possessed as its own and put it into life as visible nature to make you happy in every way. Countless forms in the stone-, mineral-, plant- and animal world delight your eyes, which represent the thoughts of My Wisdom and have been given to you for use.

78. In these forms exist the most varied colours which occupy and delight your eyes and formations, your eyes and senses, and also the various fragrances which have a pleasant effect on your olfactory nerves.

79. Every creature fulfils its purpose and is at your service through innumerable uses. But through this it reminds you how fatherly I have arranged and prepared everything for you. All arts and sciences are full of My love which I have placed in them, for you to make you happy.

80. You yourselves are the crown of creation and endowed with Divine abilities to gradually penetrate into all the mysteries of creation and make use of them; for in yourselves I have inserted the origin of all art and science, and of all love, wisdom and omnipotence, by Myself rising in you to guide you and to one day make you overjoyed.

81. You have to look at creation and the creatures that occur on earth according to their spiritual and physical endowment, and then consider your superiority over everything to be able to see the great difference between you and the other creatures in the true light.

82. You alone have the freedom to do and not to do as you will; you alone have the language through which you can say everything and communicate to others; you alone have a reason and intelligence which can be called *divine*, because it is infinite in exploration, invention and perfection. The mineral-, plant- and animal kingdoms do not have all this.

83. The only thing that was withheld from you is that you cannot float and fly in the air like the bird as long as you have not risen up high enough. But in a few decades it will come so far that people will no longer envy birds for their flight-advantage, because even with the second rebirth they will be incomparably better at it, disappearing here in a flash and appearing far away from it in the same moment. A journey from Europe to America, India, Australia or to Jupiter, Uranus, Moon or the Sun will only take a moment and so it will be with clairvoyance and clairaudience and clairlinguisity.

84. Behold, such advantages of infinite greatness and glory lie within you, *but which can only be awakened through My 7 virtues*, to step into power and work.

85. All this and much more will be given to you to make you happy and to elevate you to supreme dignity; and through this I Myself have gone through the punishment of suffering and death on the Cross for you to regain the *childhood of God*; and I have also left you the Teaching of Love from My Heaven.

86. Now I am again there to explain this teaching to you more thoroughly and so also to finally reach the goal by clearing away all obstacles, which I have mapped out for you. I am doing the utmost to

make you what I have put you into the world for, to make you *children of God - gods of love, wisdom and omnipotence in the Father*, or under My guidance.

87. Tell me! Is it not good and just that you love Me above all else, for I have given you such great, sublime and high things, and I will give you so much higher!

88. Yes, when you only want to use a little of your intellect to calmly consider all the above, then you have to find out that you can never love Me high enough for these achievements of My love, and can never thank Me in love enough, because this far exceeds your imagination.

89. Through the most intimate love for Me, man skips all the laws of God and the church; for he who loves God in a childlike way, no longer has any law for him - because then the Father dwells in the heart of His child. What other law could there still be?! For this very reason I rejected even in My Heart the letter-fulfillers of the Law, namely the Pharisees and scribes, praising the sinful publican for his humility and making the Kingdom of Heaven more accessible to thieves, whores, and adulterers who convert and truly repent, than to dry letter-riders. The true, deep, unselfish heart-love for Me is the only means to reach Jesus as if with a leap. The observation of learned laws of must, fasting, mortifications, pilgrimages, thoughtless lip-prayers, etc. is life according to the wisdom of religious people and therefore only of inferior value.

90. Deeply contrite repentance - to make up for all wrongdoing as far as possible, the serious intention of no longer committing sins and the supreme embrace of Jesus in the heart, as the most intimate worship in the spirit, and in truth through compassionate and selfless activity in charity, is the highest service man can render Me.

91. Love is the basic being which is the foundation of world-creation. It was love that moved the divine holiness in Me to call the universe into material existence. It is also love that sustains everything, enlivens it and leads it into higher ennoblement and spiritualization.

92. But as love forms the basic being of My Divine 'I', so it is also the foundational existence and the basis of all human being and becoming. - Wisdom as the opposite pole of God in the head of man [acts] against love in the heart, through its high clarification of the principles of nature and the spirit, endeavouring to ennoble man and to educate him as the bearer of culture. On the basis of natural research and moral opinion, it endeavours to educate and establish people as the pillars of a new world order; but the results of this kind of human education show that science has not hit the nail on the head; because never before, as long as the world has been populated with people, has there been such wild excesses of barbarism, human rancour in the spirit, oppression of the people and exploitation under the mantle of education, of selfish and cunning crooks as today, in this era of the government of worldly wisdom.

93. Let's look at the era of love. The people who have established love as the foundation of their lives can get along with all the people in the world. For them there is neither language nor national hatred, because God, as the basic love and Father of all human beings, also has no hatred against His children because they form different nations and speak different languages. The one who nourishes hatred of nations and languages is not in the service of his God and Father.

94. Wisdom is pride, selfishness, hatred, envy, discord, disdain for the lesser in money and wit, and division among peoples and families and individuals. - Yes, the wisdom without love is the Satan of the world, it is the mother of today's conditions, where the clever makes the ordinary man by his superiority, his sustainer (slave). —

95. Love on the other hand - because its foundation lies in Me - is the brother of nations, families and individual men. It knows neither status nor wealth, nor education, but it is the magnet who draws everything to itself and presses it in love against his heart.

96. Only those marriages which come about out of ideal, loving affection, will be concluded and last forever in heaven, i.e. in the heart, where I, the eternal love, have set up My throne; But the marriages which come together from political-, class- or monetary considerations, are conventional marriages which are not based on pure love, and therefore are not made in heaven either, and are seldom happy in the sense of true family harmony.

97. A mother who truly loves her child, suckles it herself, she washes it herself, and wakes whole nights at the bed of her sick child and sacrifices herself for her love, yes, a true mother is not afraid of the wildness of the lion when she sees her child in danger of being torn apart by the wild beast, in such a case she sees nothing but her child, for which she puts her life at risk and seizes it before the lion's throat and carries it away.

98. When Solomon pronounced the wise verdict on the disputed property of a child between two women, the loveless wisdom of the false mother wanted to see the innocent child divided into two parts by the sword and thereby murdered; Only the love that carried the child under her heart, waived her right to the child in order to save her darling's life. - Behold, this is My basic virtue, because I am pure love and do not acknowledge anything that is not put into work out of pure, unselfish love for Me and the neighbour.

99. Yes, love brings about marriages between persons which wisdom would reject. This is what soothes the repulsive wisdom and makes it subservient. Love corresponds to the pulling magnetism, the wisdom, to repulsive electricity. Wisdom alone can impossibly therefore make men happy, but love can; for this is the daughter of Zion in the high song of Solomon, the Queen of Heaven and of peoples, the bride of the heavenly King, the beautiful flower of Sharon, the white daffodil in the virgin's garment, destined to be the eternal Queen of Peoples. —

100. **Now follows the enlightenment about Me, Christ as the wisdom of God revealed to you.**

316. The Holy of Holies

1901, 28 May to 5 October, Graz. Father Jesus illuminates the essence of His Godhead through the highest rays of light and reveals great, as yet unresolved spiritual questions about His Spiritual Being.

317. The Inner Life of Man

1899, 24 July, Graz. High spiritual enlightenment of the Father Jesus about the life of man in the world, his goals and how his striving should be.

1. My child, become yourself what you are to become! Think: My innermost is God! —

2. "Father, who dwells in all heavens and also in me in Your full power, let me feel most fully that You live in me, that You are my divine Spirit and my innermost self."

3. Think fully of this true confession; for this brings you salvation, you are thereby exalted above all matter. Let yourself be led through your innermost life, for it is God, He is the Almighty Jehovah Zebaoth, He is the Father Jesus, Who leads your life and leads you to perfection in the Spirit, and He will give the crown of salvation which you deserve through your life, which you crucified out of love for Him and withdrew from worldly life.

4. Yes, I, the Almighty God am indeed your innermost 'I', therefore turn your eyes in love for Me in your quiet little heart-chamber and listen to the voice of your God, who is your Spirit, in all earnest; for where you tarry, there are your thoughts and senses, thus turn your eyes your thoughts, your senses, your conversations and your actions away from the world, which is Satan for your soul and your body! And come all the way to Me in humility and love of your heart, only then can I refresh you and work through you like God and Father.

5. So listen My child, you who wear the garment of Satan's soul over Me, humble this Satan's soul and subordinate it to My love and mercy. You are born of God, therefore the Spirit of God is your Father-Spirit, your ego. Take care of this 'I' so that it may come to full strength and activity in you, through you and out of you! As long as your eyes roam the world, they do not see your innermost life, your God! Therefore leave the world of wisdom of understanding and return to Me in your silent home of hearts; for here I dwell and throne and take part in your life.

6. I am your will, I release you, I let you float through the life of your destiny, for I will guide your will, how you want to use it. There are therefore two poles in your body, the one am I as Love in God, living in your heart and weaving your future, chosen and desired by yourself; the second pole is your external or worldly mind, which is striving to build everything against Me in you. In quiet and calm, you build for yourself – with My will at your disposal – according to your free will, either the kingdom of love, which represents the kingdom of heaven, or the realm of rational wisdom, which is the kingdom of Satan, and hence the hardest hell.

7. Come to Me dear child, leave the world and its sensual life and turn your eyes to Me in your inner life so that I may make you happy and as a deity, as child of the Almighty God, to bring to perfection that which you have been since eternity.

8. The time of your trial life is short, and this would be sufficient to complete you, as Jesus once did; [it is] long enough for you to become a son of God on earth. Therefore, utilize the same instruments with which I Jehovah worked in the body of Jesus; utilize the virtues of Jesus, for these are the virtues which gradually form and complete you from a Son of Man, from the son of the wisdom of the world, into the Son of God.

9. So My child, take this walking stick of spiritual life and walk with firm faith and trust, with intimate humility and love for Me into your silent chamber of love in your heart and wake Me up to life in God; for only your full true conviction that I really am What I am as I reveal to you, awakens Me and awakens the love in Me to share it with you and to unite My Divine 'I' with your humbled and lovingly surrendered soul-body. Amen.

10. The Christian Theosophy is the quintessence of the way of everything created by Me as Creator and Father of all human beings, embraced in love by human brotherhood as children of one God; - it further teaches you that the animals, the plants and everything called into existence by Me the Father with reverence for Me, Who gave life to everything and directs everything, and to accept and care for them with love and gratitude according to My Divine regulation, as a grace of the eternal Father.

11. Men have in Me their Father, who created them and put them into the world; that is why their task is to endure everything because of Me and to subordinate themselves in everything to the will of God so that I, as the Father, can train My children to become equally high spirits as I Myself am.

12. The Godhead Christ is the incarnation of this Father-God and Creator of the universe. In Christ, the glory and holiness of God moved upon earth towards His children and thereby the holiness of God Himself became a human being and a perfect God-man; but this Divine holiness did not come to earth perfected, but put into the garment of the sin of Satan, or the matter of the flesh - and walked the way to perfection from childhood to His thirtieth year of life, continually denying and rejecting everything related to the world and sin. Every man must also do the same as I, his Father, lived for him as the example of a true man, so that he might reach the level at which he can come to Me the Father, as a child.

13. It is in the man Jesus, that the mediation between God and man, and between man and God through the redemption from original sin (1 Moses 3:15; Heb 9:15; Rom 3:25; 1 Tim 2:14) has been accomplished, so that through this holy name, everyone can approach the holiness of God through love.

14. With the concept of the true humanity of Christ is also given the concept of His true Godhead. Christ is the personal centre of humanity and was determined from eternity to reveal God's infinite glory in a human way, to open God's inexhaustible fullness of salvation to the world. I have sealed in the human being Jesus Christ, His eternal and enduring relationship with My children through this incarnation. - Through Christ, God's relationship with man has become a truly personal, indissoluble, and at the same time eternal one, since God has placed Himself in the human Christ through personal self-revelation for all eternities as Man to man, and the concept of humanity, how it lived eternally personally in God, implanted out of His own personal-human self-consciousness into the consciousness of humanity, so that the full self-realization of mankind can and will one day be achieved as a divine humanity, as it was exemplified by Jesus and animated with examples.

15. For in Christ, the true and eternal Godhead has entered into the form of true personal humanity; through Christ, the image of God - as I already created it in Adam - has been realized by [His] own effort. And this fact is decisive for all men that, when they live the virtues of Jesus, and act according to it, they ascend to the height of divine humanity and can reign the world with Me their God and Father, for I am the Great Spirit of the universe and the foundation of all things and a most perfect Man of all men and Father of the children of men in Jesus Christ.

16. Because I, God live in you, every man has in his inner sanctuary of his heart the Supreme Court - Prosecutor, Defender, Jury and Judge - whose verdict is holy and is therefore the only one and without appeal; since no one can know you better than you yourselves, therefore, let everyone contemplate his ego in the light of the love of his heart, the practiced works of charity, because the same God, who dwells in your heart, is the first and the last Judge, against whom there is no appeal. But people should take action toward their brethren only through the love of their heart and never make a judgement which deprives the brother of the possibility of improvement; for in the heart of man it is decided what becomes of the brother, because only the Spirit of God's love, who dwells in the heart of every man, knows the qualities of man.

17. The depth of a man's love for God can be measured by his hatred for all that is ungodly (better: godlessness); but a man who loves God must never hate the person of an ungodly person, but only the ungodly in him, because he is nevertheless a temple of the Spirit of God dwelling in him!

18. Since God is …

- ...the *Most High*, we must be the *most humble*.
- *...almighty*, we should always acknowledge our powerlessness before Him.
- ...full of the *highest honour*, we should always be full of the *deepest meekness*.
- *...holy above all*, we should always bow our knees before *His Name*
- Since *all things belong to God alone*, we must *never appropriate them to ourselves*, and we must always be *grateful* to Him for every gift, even if it is only a single drop of water, for man cannot create a single drop of water.
- Since *in God alone is all power and authority*, let every one know that his power and authority is also *from God*, and therefore *no-one can do anything without God*; but to whom God gives His power, he can do *all* things. But God will not deprive any man of requested power, if he will use it only for His glory.
- **The greatest glory that we can show to God is that we love and respect one another, and out of this love and respect, we attempt to love Him in all the humility of our hearts in His sanctuary. —**

Behold, so reads and in this exists the whole spiritual essence of the religion of the inhabitants of the sixth sunbelt, (ChtS. II) to which the planet Uranus corresponds.

19. Since every man is led by Me as Spirit in the heart of man, the task of every man is thus to well consider this truth and fact and to turn to it as the highest and most holy law of neighbourly love and respect for the neighbour. Therefore never let yourself be overwhelmed by your religious opinion, and never assume yourself the right to disparage, judge, or condemn your brother's opinion! —

20. The moment when man without cause and authorized, justified correction stands up and judges the brother, he no longer deals with the brother; for he then stands as the justice-seeker in the court himself, but he deals with the spirit of the brother who is God, and so he assaults the Godhead who is holy and inviolable, and through this is the Judge and therefore is the Judge and Law Himself the condemned, because he has judged the Godhead in man, which alone represents everything in man.

21. I Jesus, as the soul of God, am the responsible soul-Leader and representative of all souls before God as Father who dwells in Me in full power and glory and therefore I am also the representation of God and God Himself and as such at the same time the Judge, because God's wisdom and the resulting justice over man who presumes to attack Me without authorization in the neighbour - whose spirit and God am I; because as spirit in man, I am pure Spirit, which is holy and untouchable, and with this Spirit, I, Jesus, am One in love, justice and power.

22. The good man has no right to judge the bad man, nor does the bad man have the right to judge or condemn the good man regarding religious opinion, since he is not appointed judge of the law. Because every man lives and acts according to his spiritual education and progress, and there every insult and slander in the presence or absence of the brother is a gross presumption against Me as God and judge in man, and that is why I allow that every man - even if he is thousands of miles away from the talking - hears and knows what his brother or sister talks good or evil about him, because every one has to pay off his guilt against his neighbour until the last cent to Me in the way he committed it, and that in the presence of the neighbour by insulting and attacking Me as God, because I did not grant anybody a right over the brother, but the judge is I, your God and Father Myself through the neighbour, whom one attacks and thereby Personally insults.

23. According to the Spirit, man is a brother to God, but God is pure love. When you speak to your brother and sister, your spirit of love speaks to the spirit of love in your neighbour, because it is his brother, but not the soul or the flesh-body, so when you call each other brother and sister, you must do this out of mutual love, harmony and affection, but never in anger, hatred and unwillingness.

24. Beware therefore in your self-righteousness against your brother and sister, to be judgemental and self-opinionated or even loveless; for you are never sure whether you are doing right, but two cases are always decisive: it is either the war between two souls, both of which come from the Satanic soul, therefore war between wisdom of understanding and wisdom of the world, or more correctly and more clearly called war between Lucifer and Satan; - or Satan's presumption of judgement over the Spirit of God in neighbour. - In both cases is the sinking of your ego into hell inevitable when you also do not notice it in the flesh-life. This is now your warning to not to act judgementally and correctingly towards your neighbour. Your weapons with which you defend yourselves should not be impatience, anger, slander, mockery and gross attacks, but love, humility, tolerance and peaceableness. In religious matters, silence is often gold, but talking is lead.

25. The human spirit is God, the Almighty Creator of heaven and earth, He Himself is the Father of men, of angels and spirits, He is the Spirit of the universe, divided into countless spirits, but not separated from the All-Spirit, but one with Him and the same.

26. This spirit is My Divine Primordial Spirit of love and He knows no higher virtue than love, because this is His personal ego. All other virtues are null and void before Me if their reason is not love for Me, revealed in works of charity. Faith is indeed a basis for love but one can have faith with which one could move mountains but if one has not established the love and works of neighbourly love, then faith is worthless because also the devils in hell believe in God and tremble before Him, but they still remain devils.

27. No-one can say: There is no God; for I represent Myself spiritually and materially, and there is no atom in all infinity that is not a component of My 'I'; because everything what men, angels and spirits see is a component of the soul of God and is the spirit of My 'I', as the world-encompassing Being, which has the whole infinite creation not besides itself but in its bosom, because it embraces it through and through and around and around.

28. If I were not the all-encompassing Being in creation, then it could not exist; for I alone am the life in it and I keep all creation floating in the air with My Will, because magnetism and electricity are the Holy Spirit or the Almighty Will in Me.

29. Who could live without air? And look, the air is God, I am your Creator, and therefore a being that fills the spaces. Who could say that God is not everywhere - because I am the ether-air of the universe?

30. There is nothing in the whole infinity where I would not be, without Me there is no materially nor spiritually visible being. The whole visible creation is the solidified soul of Satana, and in this solidified soul, My Spirit is represented everywhere as its animator and leader; for I, as God and Life, am in everything the very One Who gives Life to all, Who moves, germinates, grows, develops, blossoms and matures. The soul of man sees, hears, feels, smells, tastes and speaks, but all this is the effect of its spirit, who dwells in its heart; without Him it would be blind, deaf and unfeeling, it would be unable to taste, smell, think, speak, yes it would be as if completely non-existent, because it is a former outflow of spiritual rays of light from the love-flame of God, which the Spirit of God chose and designed in His own imagination, but it was desecrated and darkened by the fall of Satana. - This imagination is exactly the soul of man which My spirit created through its own direction, which now leads, ennobles and spiritualizes it and leads it to Divine perfection. That is the Holy Spirit of God who dwells in the soul of man and at the same time leads and controls the universe.

31. The Spirit of God is not a person, but, as already said in the *"Prayer Book"*, a spiritual flame as human spirit, like a worldly spirit spreading a flowing sea of flames throughout the whole world, or in other words, it is the ether-air in the universe, therefore represented everywhere, penetrating everything, therefore also knowing everything, seeing, hearing, feeling, smelling, like a human - because all these senses in man are nothing but expressions and gifts of the Spirit of God in man to the soul and through it, working through the body.

32. This ether-flame of love-fire is the basic being in man and without this Spirit he could not live, because at the same time it is the breathing air which man needs for his life.

33. But this spiritual flame of love also exists materially and is the all-consuming fire, therefore a material-spiritual enlightenment is to follow here, which is to open your eyes to what I as Love am materially and so listen:

318. Flames, Light, Heat

1899, 18 July, Graz. Father Jesus explains through flame, light and warmth the quality of the Holy Trinity in spiritual and material effect.

1. The flames of the wood are the little sun-ray-fire-animals, fixed to the trunk of the tree, which take great pleasure in using the opportunity to be released from this captivity after many years of hard imprisonment into which the tree-spirit attracted and banished them with his will. You see the flame blazing up from the wood, and after the fire has consumed all the wood, it disappears.

2. The flame that has disappeared from your eyes or become invisible from the burning wood, is now transformed into a light of the spiritual world of My work of guiding the spirits, which I use for various new creations.

3. The flame, which is made to burn by chemical or other means, is spiritual love that has entered into material existence. But from this you recognize the power of spiritual love because it opposes you through the warmth, heat, burning of fire and glow in material force. Now listen, dear children! This flame of fire of spiritual love and its unapproachable heat of fire, am I, your God and Father Jesus Myself spiritually, therefore Moses says (2 Moses 33:20; 5 Moses 4:25): "Nobody can see God and live in His primordial being, for He is a consuming fire of love, which absorbs all it reaches.

4. Admittedly, this fire can only be grasped according to the degrees of spiritual advancement, therefore no one will suffer harm; for the spiritual flame is the glow of love, and the greater the love, the greater the power to endure the embers of spiritual love, which produces unspeakable delights for the highly spiritual; for it burns like a sea of flames of pure Divine love in him. What a high spirit would enjoy, if he were to taste this high pleasure, would plunge a man into deadly impotence.

5. The light. Out of the flame, the light spreads - which becomes weaker or stronger according to the size of the flame. This light is the material manifestation of the spiritual light, which is the wisdom in God; for it is this which illuminates the spaces in infinity, as the material light illuminates your dwellings.

6. And indeed you see materially before you what I am spiritually. Every light is a realization of Myself in material form in most different forms and ways.

7. The heat streams out of the flame and its light - and represents the spiritual effect of the two. So also is the Holy Spirit in God. He is the outflow from the Divine love-flame and its love-radiating wisdom; that is, He goes out from the Father and Son and is their almighty effect of love, wisdom, omnipotence, power and grace from God, which is the life in the universe.

8. But the material flame, its light and the warmth flowing out of both is in spiritual form as air, a spiritual sea of love; because love is spiritual warmth and spiritual light, and the latter as wisdom in God, united with love, the expression of will or the Holy Spirit in God, who knows everything in His character and can bring about everything. And as such I dwell in your hearts as your divine Spirit.

319. The Reign of the Divine Trinity in Nature

1901, 8 February, Graz. Father Jesus clarifies the creative quality of His Spirit in the universe as the divine Trinity. The state of the second rebirth. Air and ether as God.

1. With each dictation, the circle of understanding and grasping My conduct in nature expands. And so here again I give a greater light of My 'I', to the general knowledge of My love, wisdom and omnipotence among you and in the created matter that surrounds you and from which you have originated.

2. My love is the Father and He is the Creator of the universe; My wisdom conceived the forms and shapes of everything, and My omnipotence as the Holy Spirit, who proceeds from love and wisdom or from Father and Son and presents the willpower of My Spirit of God, consolidated these forms and shapes and determined the ways of their reproductions into the infinite, in which at the same time the ways were mapped out according to which the whole creation in its innumerable differences and forms of its external formations is directed in its progress towards higher ennoblement and refinement.

3. My Trinity is a being which embraces the world in the same way as the human spirit embraces the whole body including the soul. The spirit of man pours out into the whole soul at the second rebirth and it shines through and through as with electric light, but only spiritually, not materially - and thus the spirit is one and the same with the soul, for by the Spirit's glowing through and through the soul to

its outermost edge, it glows and shines with it, and it has all become one body, and so the power of God has penetrated into the soul through the Spirit and has also become one with the soul, therefore it is said that the Holy Spirit, which is the willpower of God, emanates from Father - or Love - in God. But when love and wisdom have become one, like the spirit and the soul through the second rebirth, then the outflow of the Holy Spirit from both has originated, because the soul as wisdom, in the second rebirth, does nothing more out of itself, but thinks and wants out of love and thereby never arises a disharmony.

4. Just as the union of the soul with its spirit in the second rebirth forms only one being, and thus also the willpower - which is spiritually called "the Holy Spirit" - emerges from both "one", so also the divine Trinity in the universe is an etheric body, which, however, because it is the most fine etheric spirit, passes through the whole creation up to the very hardest stone without resistance and leads and develops it further up to the very highest spiritualization.

5. The air surrounding you is also the Deity, for it is the all-encompassing ether-air, which is heavier than the ether in higher regions.

6. Nobody can live without air, so at the Last Supper I said: I am life. (John 14:6) Yes indeed, I your Father God Jesus am the life of matter and soul, and [I] am working that all that was created by Me, will come to Me one day.

7. It is the greatest wisdom to embrace Me, as the love in God, with the love of the heart and to consider Me as what I am, namely the love which again demands and expects love from your children. Children, be diligent in love and that [kind of] wisdom which lays everything at the feet of love and selflessly serves love through the works of charity. Amen.

320. God is Everywhere

1851, October 19, Graz. - Enlightenment through examples of how God is represented and active everywhere and therefore can see and hear everything, as electricity and magnetism convey this. Examples for the understanding of the divine omnipresent existence. The apostle John explains the people in the sun in comparison to the whole sea and its particles in one drop, to the All-God-Spirit of the universe and its particles in man.

1. The most difficult task for man is to understand and accept that God is everywhere and in the heart of every single person. To make this clear in a few words, the following is a perfectly appropriate example:

2. There is only one sun, now we set up 1000 mirrors and we will reproduce this sun 1000 times and so see it reflected perfectly, and likewise it will be reflected in trillions of dew drops, trillions of times. A second example of the effect of God in every single human being: Take 10 000 sun burning glasses and set them up and although there is only one sun, it will still work 10 000 times and intensify the light of the object under each burning glass, and if we would set up a million burning glasses, this one sun will apply itself a million times, and so also infinitely many times.

3. It is the same with God, there is only one God, and yet He radiates and is active everywhere. He is this sun that throws His rays of sight, grace and effect into the universe everywhere, and also operates everywhere; and likewise is the reflection of all innumerable rays back onto this sun, which reproduces itself with its rays in a mirror. Just as if one were standing in front of a mirror and looks at oneself as the sun, and one would look at the same figure in the mirror as oneself, and if one were to place quite a number of mirrors in a room, man could reflect so many times, that everything would be

teeming with fully realistic human images as if in an anthill. This is how to understand the almighty omnipotence of God.

1851, November 23rd. - The Apostle John explains to the sun people (ChtS. 42 a, 378) the relationship of God to man as their Creator and Father, and conversely of man's primordial being and soon to become unification with God, in the following way:

4. "Behold, there is a sea on almost every world, large or small, according to its volume; that mass of water into which all the individual streams, rivers, brooks and countless smaller riverlets and springs finally flow, and into which the vast majority of raindrops also fall.

5. But this sea is in every world the first primary source of all lakes, streams, rivers, brooks, riverlets and springs, as well as from every rain and dew, for if a world had no sea, it would resemble a man who had no blood, and thus no other juices, and therefore would have to become a mummy very quickly, or a lifeless statue.

6. The sea is as necessary to any world as blood is to man, and also to every other living being; - but now everything that in a world even slightly bears the name 'liquid' emerges from the sea, performs the destined services, and afterwards returns again into the sea.

7. In innumerable tiny globules or drops, the sea continually dispenses its great abundance into the airspace which surrounds every world and which is completely related to it; in this always moving airspace, these smallest water-particles are carried in all possible directions over the whole world, once they are in the air in largest abundance, they become firstly fog, and later in even larger accumulations as dense clouds; in these clouds they take hold of each other, thereby forming larger and thus also heavier drops, which then soon fall down here and there in large numbers as rain on the thirsting world, and revive and refresh it as if it were new. - Now you know what the sea is and all that comes out of it. And when you understand that, you ask yourself:

8. What is actually older, the individual drops of the sea, or the entire sea itself?

9. Admittedly, the whole sea was there before a drop of rain could rise out of it into the air; but if it once rose out of the sea, it was there as part of the same sea as something different from the sea itself, and if it falls back into the sea again, will there be a difference between it and the sea?

10. You talk and you say, "No, it's all the same! Because where the part of the whole is equal to the whole, there part and whole is one!

11. **And so the same relationship exists between the Creator and the creature; between the Spirit of God and the Spirit of man; between the separation of the Spirit of man from the Spirit of God and his reunification after his consummated supreme purification in the course of uncalculable time, with the Spirit of God. (ChtS. 42 a,378; -E.u.J. II 43)**

321. The Holy of Holies

1. The name "Holy of Holies" refers to a place like the temple of Jerusalem, where the flame of Jehovah burned two and a half meters high, who said to Moses in Egypt from the burning bush: "Take off your shoes! For the place where you stand is holy." Likewise does the same God who spoke to Moses from the burning bush, also call you: Take off the shoes of your unholy thoughts, desires, words and deeds and approach your God in the Father in the holy humility of love, whose most holy flame of love all over the world burns and blazes spiritually in your heart and calls out to

you:

2. “Oh man! Think who I am!? And I humbled Myself and dwell in your heart to turn you from a child of Satan into a child of God and one day into a deity, through which I will create new worlds and animate them with beings of all kinds and populate them with new people, as I had to do in every sun, planet and star-world. For it is I, the mighty and almighty God and Creator of the universe, who tells you and speaks here!” —

322. The Sun of the Deity

1. Sacred moments of one of My children enliven in him a deep reflection into My Divine rule and unfolding. So you also have here such a deepest moment of love to grasp My infinite and eternal Being in the spirit that My scribe deepened himself into My unfathomable core-Being and brought it to a solution which unfolds the secret of My foundational 'I' before your eyes. And this is:

2. Why am I infinite? How is it to be understood that I am eternal and have no beginning? These two questions he unfolded to the full correctness and with My approval. And so hear My children what love can do when it unfolds intensely enough:

3. Why am I infinite, and why do I have no beginning and am therefore from eternity? Behold dear children, the space of the world has no end; but in order to imagine an infinite space there must also be an infinite air in it, for without an infinite air, there could be no life in this infinity. Furthermore, this air cannot be restricted in any way, because it spreads everywhere where there is an empty space. When you make a space airless, then there is no life in it, but the most perfect death, because nothing can grow and live in it. However, this can only be achieved for very small spaces, but as soon as any access is permitted to the air, the entire previously empty room fills up with the incoming air. The world, however, has no walls, no confines, no borders and no end, and hence there is nowhere an obstacle holding back the air from entering and spreading, and so the air is infinitely represented in the infinite space.

4. But since an infinite space in itself has no beginning and no end, so this space could not begin to form itself from atoms or any beginning, because such a space cannot be, if it did not already exist since eternity, because where there is no space, this non-space cannot become larger and spread into infinity. But if space is there for the infinite, then a beginning of this infinite space is unthinkable and non-existent. Furthermore, an infinite space without air, and if this were only an ether-air, cannot exist, because to such an existence the connections must exist that fill this space as air, so the existence of an airless world, which is infinite in all directions, is unthinkable, because an airless space draws in the incoming air by force, of which you convince yourselves with airless hoses and rubber balls. And so, if somewhere in the infinite world there were a void of air, the air would draw in from there where it already exists. From this you can see how the astronomers already teach you that the world is infinite, also the air is infinite because it fills infinity, and as there is an infinite world so there is also an infinite air dispersion in this infinity. And as an infinity has nowhere a beginning nor an end, so also the infinite air has no beginning and no end.

5. Now we come to the question: What is the infinite air? Behold, here we come to the main question - and this must be answered properly, as the writer has grasped it, since I only present his depths of loving spiritual research, because they are correct.

6. The air is God, because it is life, because nothing can exist without the air, because as soon as you have no air to breathe, you must die immediately. But since the air is life, all components of life must be contained in it, which you have discovered so far in the mineral, plant and animal kingdom and in water and in the air through natural research and chemistry, and still countless incalculable or imponderable substances, of which everything consists and will be preserved, of which you well know

that they exist or must exist, but which are no longer reachable with your instruments and retorts. You know from nature-research that the material world has successively formed itself and that by My Divine word: "Let there be" was, is and eternally will be the successive becoming, because everything has to ennoble, spiritualize and rise to Me.

7. The air that fills the infinite space is thus the Deity Himself. But it is actually the spirit of the air that encloses the whole in itself, like a fragrance envelops its essence, from which it spreads, envelops it, therefore has it within itself and also penetrates it. That is therefore the ether, the spirit of the Godhead in the infinite air.

8. This spirit is an intensive ether-spirit and is the air itself in its finest ether state and is inponderable. - However, it is also physically visible for spiritual eyes and even by means of microscopic instruments, visible to some extent. But this ether-air is not as calm as you think, because with carnal eyes, ears and feelings you only feel the wind, but not the actual air we are talking about here; this ether-air is spiritually a flowing, eternally active and creative sea of flames in the universe, behaving similar to when you kindle a supreme spirit, which is now burning and flowing back and forth with all joy and delight, until it consumes itself materially in order to continue to live and move spiritually with its spiritual flame - invisible to your eyes - in the sea of flames of the world. —

9. This spiritual sea of ether-flames now has in itself the supreme intelligence, unattainable to your concepts. The power of this spiritual fire is of such an intense force in the spiritual as it has entered into materiality, the immense terrestrial fire of the Earth's interior, of whose power the volcanoes provide sufficient proof. Thus love, as the basic fire in God - and thus also the warmth of love flowing out of it is accordingly spiritual and material, as starting from this basic fire of Divine love - is extremely intense, powerful and effective.

10. But since this enormous basic force lies in this Divine basic fire, it is easy to understand that everything must obey this basic force with lightning speed! - And this basic force is magnetism and electricity, which are represented by the whole infinite world, and are the so-called Holy Spirit in the Deity, which emanates from Father and Son.

11. The Son of God the Father is the wisdom in God, as you find explained in the *Holy Trinity*. This wisdom is born out of the basic power of Divine love and therefore such an enormous spiritual wisdom-power, that you cannot grasp it, but also there My scribe penetrated and defined it as follows:

You see spiritual rings of fire moving around your eyes in the dark night when you move your eyes, especially when you press on the edge of your eyes, whereupon you notice the spiritual light of your wisdom (soul). Since the wisdom in God is at the same time electricity, he found out from it that, like the eye-ring-flashes are in comparison to a great electric fire, so it is also between the wisdom of man and the wisdom of God, and how incredibly intense the light and power of the largest electric fire flame is compared to the eye-ring-flashes. So tremendously different is the wisdom-power of God compared to human wisdom-power and therefore is the power to form thoughts also tremendously powerful, to develop them and to explore all secrets and to bring them to the light: in man slowly, with great, long-lasting effort, and only that, as far as I allow it; - in Me, as God with the speed of electricity and with a wisdom light-power as different from the eye-ring-flash with the greatest electric light-power, and this comparison is the most appropriate one possible.

12. Behold so now lies before you the understanding of the comprehension of the Divinity, revealed in its basic Being. You know His infinity and His eternity, His spiritual and material love as an all-consuming fire; you now also know the tremendous wisdom-power spiritually and materially, because the electric light is the Wisdom of God manifested in material appearance. And so you also understand what magnetism is, as Divine Love, and what electricity is, as Divine Wisdom, and that magnetism and electricity together are "*the will of God"* with which worlds are created and worlds are governed.

13. Furthermore you know that magnetism and electricity are present in all creation, that therefore the will of God is present everywhere in His love and wisdom, and because the air is God Himself, so God is present everywhere. Life is in this air because without this there is no life, that is why it is clear that God leads life through His love and wisdom or through His will and creates everything because He lives spiritually, and become visible to you through matter as effect and reality, visually to the eyes as nature in innumerable forms, genres and species, since everything is from Him and in Him.

14. Love is pregnant with love and wants to testify; wisdom conceives the forms, colours, species and genres, and the willpower or the Holy Spirit in God consolidates the imagined and lets it enter into existence and appearance through the "Let there be" (Read the *Holy Trinity* p. 25:40; 30:4; 33:6,26) and so the Godhead presents Himself to your eyes materially in His love, wisdom and omnipotence.

15. God is all-seeing. How can God see everything? Because He represents everything everywhere, sees everything and His spiritual seeing is an all-embracing eye and because He sees everything, He is also omniscient.

16. His omniscient hearing is an *omniscient ear* because He is represented everywhere as spiritual potency, and electrically acts in Himself as Holy Spirit, absorbing everything like a feeling, also hearing everywhere. As man has feeling all over his body, so God has His eyes, hearing, feeling, smelling and thinking everywhere and through and through, as a drop of water is the same as a whole sea.

17. Thus, My children, the glory of My eternal 'I' is presented before you in simple words of human language. My children, they may be simple words, but they represent the mysteries of the Deity, and therefore they are holy in their inner nature, for they reveal the holiness of God, where your foundation, your primordial central light of love, wisdom and the power of your Holy Spirit rests, therefore heed the high revelation and seek to absorb it in your love; because love is the temple of God, is His own 'I' in Himself, and forms in you, when you come in love to Love in God, the holiness of the union of two extremes into one being in God, who is the Love of love and creates eternally and never forgets man as long as man is full of love.

18. My centre, from where I rule the world, lies in the star Regulus; (Regulus is the primordial central sun Urka, i.e. "fire") from there the rays of My love go into infinity and from there I am also connected with the Spirit who dwells in every human being as Divine Spirit.

19. To see My Being, the primordial central Light, is certainly not possible for any spirit in the perfect sense, because it is such a powerful fire-light of love, that no highest living being can tolerate it for a few minutes, that is why Moses says: 'No-one can see God and live, because He is an all-consuming fire.' Men will only then be able to bear this light when they get there after a great eternity, to become one with Me.

20. As long as man carries the earthly cover, it is impossible for him to understand My Being; but as a spirit, when he has progressed, this goes little by little and in the end everyone will still attain to what he has taken care of. But no-one will get anything for free if he has not striven for it with all his strength and love. Amen.

323. Christ, the Crucified Wisdom of God

Year 33, March 27, in the evening, between Jerusalem and Emmaus. Jesus goes unrecognized with His disciples Cleophas and Joseph Barsabas, called Justus, towards Emmaus, speaks about the crucifixion of Christ and asks them the question: "Did not Christ have to suffer such things, and thus enter into His glory? (Luke 24:26)

1. In this text it is even obvious that the glory of eternal life cannot be achieved through great reading and learning, but only through the act of love.

2. It will be said here, of course, that Christ was in any case Eternal Life itself and possessed in Himself all the glory of it; why then did He have to suffer to enter into glory? —

3. Christ was God himself who became man, thus according to the Spirit, the Divine basic Love, or Father; according to the soul, the Divine Wisdom, in the spiritual language, called "Son of God", because the Divine Wisdom originated from the Divine Love; But after the body He was only a man like any other man, therefore He described Himself as the "Son of Man" and as such He had to make Himself the first *basic example* of the perfect glory of God only *by making His deeds of love fully His own*; and had he not done so, it would have happened to all creation; for in him Father and Son were again one; which is the same as: the union of Divine Love with Divine Wisdom.

4. For before, Love had Withdrawn from wisdom, because wisdom in its holiness had set Itself up to the very highest, the unattainable; and its demands were placed above all possibilities of fulfillment, namely: "That, as in Adam, all men coming out of him and after him have sinned spiritually, they too must humble themselves and walk the way of the cross, of suffering and death, as Jesus later did."

5. Wisdom's condition did not please Divine Love; for this would take the poor creatures a long time, and therefore Love separated from Wisdom and said to Him, "*Do this Yourself, for I do not agree with it!"* And Wisdom accepted the condition set by Himself and also brought it about through Jesus.

6. But Wisdom was desolate without the most intimate union with its Love, like the soul of man [is] before the union with its spirit, or before the rebirth of the spirit; - but how could it reunite with Love?

7. He had to fulfill in the man Jesus the reconciliation-conditions set by Himself; He had to humble Himself down to the smallest point, and only then did He become completely one again with His Love, which is the Father in God! —

8. For this reason, Christ - when He Himself rejected the eternal, almighty Wisdom of the Father, all the wisdom of the wise of the world (cf. Isa 29:14; Obad 8; Matt 11:25; 1 Cor 1:19) and all the scribes had to be an abomination to Him, if their deeds were not based on the life of Scripture or love and humility.

9. He as the eternal Wisdom of the Father (1 Cor 1:24) had to do works of love, and teach people the only law of love; (Matt 22:37-40; John 14:10): yes, in the end He had to be captured and crucified by the wisdom of the learned priests, and in this way, *as the eternal Light* (or Wisdom) *of the Father (or of love) (1 John 4:8,16), He had to suffer the greatest shame and in Himself, the greatest darkness.*

10. Therefore He cried out, "Father! Why have you forsaken Me?! Yes, but if Christ was God, how could He say these words then? To which God did He then call? - say the wise men of the world. The following is written about this in My Revelation: It was not another God besides Me to whom I called, but the Godhead in Me, God's Spirit and elemental power of life in its fullness alone; the body-shell, which was taken from earth-material, same as with children of men, this also had to be subservient in Me; That is why matter in its abandonment, when the hour of death approached and the spirit had to separate from the body in order to be able to die, sought help, as an example that

every man on earth is to seek help alone from God. (ChtS. 21 A)

11. But that He, as the eternal Light of all infinity, had to endure a *total eclipse* in Himself, is proved by that moment, which until then had not been understood by anyone, when after *Christ died on the Cross, a complete eclipse of all infinite creation occurred, and the light - not only of the earth's sun, but of all the suns in all infinity - was extinguished for a time of three hours* (ChtS. 21)!

12. These spiritually spoken words are according to the meaning of your language: There occurred a perfect inner darkness of the spirit, thereby an inner feeling of horror, as if surrounded by spirits - in all the infinite creation of all men and beings, and the light not only of the love-sun of the Spirit of God in the hearts of the earth-men, but also of the love-suns of the Spirit of God of all men and beings who live in the whole infinite creation of the worlds of stars, planets and sun, went out for a time of three hours, when Christ's body was hanging on the cross.

13. And it was also exactly at this moment of eclipse as was reported, that the soul of Christ ascended after death into limbo to *redeem* the spirits who were trapped in the old wisdom, and to lead them to the new light of love, which began to fill all infinity out of the *reunification of the Son with the Father*.

14. Therefore Christ had to fulfil *the old law of wisdom* in Himself to the iota, in order to atone for all errors against it in the presence of the Father, or, all Wisdom had to be crucified, so that the Love of the Father might be justified!

15. So this is what God Himself did; what do man want to do? Or do they think that they will enter into the glory of eternal life by justifying their wisdom [by saying]: *'For what did God give it to us other than for use?'*

16. If *Christ*, as the *Divine Wisdom* Himself, had to do works of love and preach them most vividly, and had to *crucify all His Wisdom*, and let all His Wisdom pass into the greatest darkness, and thereby completely enter again into the glory of the *Father*, who was the *separated Love in Christ Himself*; then also men will have to walk this way, and will have to follow Christ in His virtues of love, if they want to enter with Him into the glory of His Fatherly love.

17. In the original religion of the world in Adam's time, it was said: You men can only reach the otherwise unreachable Divine wisdom through the *love of God*; - but with Christ it is said: Now am I, as the Divine Wisdom Myself, as the Way and the Life, the Door to Love, or to the Father, i.e. by believing that Christ is God and by following His virtues of love, one comes to personally see the glory in God; For God has created for Himself a visible body in Christ; otherwise, God is a consuming fire of love and cannot be seen personally without faith that God dwells in the body of Christ; for the faith of the soul is also its judge.

18. Whoever now wants to come to the Father or to see God, which means the greatest blessedness of heaven, must enter through Christ, or he will not come to Him for all eternity. —

19. But how? By wisdom, because Christ as the Door - is the Divine Wisdom Himself?

20. Oh, no! For this wisdom was humbled down to the last atom; [Wisdom] as the inviolable holiness of God, descended deeply among all sinners; that Wisdom, which formerly even the most perfect angelic spirit was not allowed to see in its basic light, now dealt with sinners, and dined under their roofs, and at the end had to let itself be crucified by pagan soldiers and henchmen!

21. But out of this endless humiliation of the Divine Wisdom itself, it becomes clearer than daylight that no one will enter the glory of eternal life with his loveless wisdom.

22. Nobody's books and writings will become steps into the kingdom of heaven, but only his true humility and the works of charity truly performed out of love for the Father.

23. In Christ all primordial, Divine Wisdom passed *into the love of the Father*, and thus *Son and Father became one*; but it must also be the case with man; before he is humiliated in his arrogant mind, and in all his desires of it, which amount to all kinds of thoughts bred out of wisdom, to get rid of honour, down to the last drop, yes, before he will lay all his love at His feet and will therefore suffer *a brief darkening of all his worldly wisdom*, he certainly will not enter into the glory of the Father.

24. Christ had to suffer and do this in order to enter into the glory of the Father; therefore *every man must also do it*, and must follow Christ *vitally* if he wants to reach the glory of the Father.

25. But Christ did not attend any schools, His school was humility and active, working love, and this school stand before everyone who wants to reach the glory of the Father and the personal sight of the Divine Holiness and Majesty.

26. But if Christ preceded with this school as an example for all, how do people want to enter the kingdom of God with *anything different*? —

27. **To explain more about this would certainly be unnecessary; for not the mouth of man revealed this news, but it flowed from the fountain of the eternal truth of Divine Love and Wisdom.**

324. Supplementary Explanations

1. From this everyone can see that Christ is given to men for wisdom, for justification (from original sin) (ChtS. 64,193), for sanctification and for redemption (1 Cor 1:30) from the separation between Father and children, through suffering and death on the cross, which has arisen through original sin.

2. Paul therefore calls Christ the Word of God (John 1:1ff) after the soul a mysterious and veiled wisdom, (1 Cor 1:24) which God from eternity had appointed for the glory of mankind. (Rom 8:29) And note in addition: But none of the great men of this world knew this; for if they had known this, they would not have crucified the Lord of the glory of God. (1 Cor 2:7- 8)

325. The Spiritual Crucifixion of Human Nature and the Death of Sins through Continued Material and Spiritual Repentance

1. Men indeed have no material penance for crucifixion and death to imitate Me with, since I suffered and died for all; but they have to undergo a spiritual crucifixion of their nature, which consists in that they spiritually crucify all their lusts, desires, bad qualities and vices through the continual penance and fighting against them with all their strength and power.

2. So you see in My virtues as Son of Man (*Prayer Book* chapter 19) and in the many sins enumerated in Daniel's prophecy (*Prayer Book* chapter 9) what you have to crucify in you through the constant struggle of repentance to spiritually carry out My material crucifixion; for because of the sins committed materially, I had to suffer and die materially so that you would be spared from it. <u>But as you sin again and again, so the law arises in you through the deed that you take up the fight against sin in thoughts, desires, words and sinful actions and fight with all your strength against it, making it ineffective and harmless against spiritual life</u>. And if you thus continue in battle to crucify your flesh and all that belongs to sin by not consenting to that which excites you to sin, you will gradually die off [your] lusts, desires, bad qualities, sinful thoughts, desires, and words, and there will be no more

sinful acts.

3. This task remains for you as a result of your sinfulness throughout your life, while through My suffering and bloody death on the cross, I have freed you from the Adamite original sin which you have co-committed and from the resulting sins of your past life, of which you had to free yourselves. (Hebr 9:15; Rom 3:25; 1 Tim 2:14; ChtS. 64; ChtS. 71)

4. This is now how you stand with Me - the sins that you now commit, you have to suffer yourselves in hell for if you do not want to go through the spiritual crucifixion and the dying of sin in the world. You can think for yourselves that I have not died for your present sin; for then you would be allowed to sin according to your lust and joy, and you would be [considered] sinless! Peter says the same thing in [his] Epistle (10:26) to the Hebrews.

5. The law of the righteousness of God exists eternally and everyone must take account of his deeds on either side of the grave. But to escape all sin, you have here the most glorious teachings. Reread them often and live and act according to them, and the kingdom of God is then open to you to receive you as children of God.

326. Christ and Buddha

1901, 18 March, Graz. Father Jesus announces how He led Buddha Gotámo, set him up 500 years before Christ as a teacher for the religious conditions of India at that time, and made the promise that a higher being (namely Christ) would come some time after him. Comparison between Father's mediums and Indian Mahatmas. The new trial of grace for the conversion of Buddhists to Christianity.

1. The world stands there in its sublimity and testifies of the great love, wisdom and omnipotence which has created it. Not a mortal man has brought about the great world, the universe of creation, but I, the Almighty God, in whose hands all the powers of infinity are united.

2. But as man is nothing in the dust of his nothingness without Me, so he has to meet Me with his subservience in humility and love of his heart and never think that he is something out of himself, but put all his opinions (Indian manas) about his self-conscious personal ego at the feet of that God who created him and brought him into existence. —

3. So was Buddha Gotámo a humble man who laid all his wisdom and knowledge and all his riches at My feet, humbled himself and asked for enlightenment of his inner being to reach the Divine goal of man on earth.

4. I took pity on him, enlightened his inner being and spoke to him as a father speaks with his good child: *"Leave the world and offer it up to Me, go into lonely places and live only for Me, and the Light of Eternal Love in God will be your guide through life on this side of your life and beyond in the spirit, and lead you on the path to those bright heights where life in God begins.*

5. *You are a forerunner of a higher* ***b****eing who, through His Divine teaching, will bring the world into heavenly harmony with the reunification of the fallen human race with its God and Creator.*

6. *Fulfil the duty that I am imposing on you towards Me and towards your neighbour and become a teacher of your people. Great periods of time will pass until the completely pure teaching from the love-heaven will be spread over all men of the world, but that is My concern, because I Myself will lead the destinies of men and will give them the true bread out of heaven, which is the pure teaching from God. But you do what I will tell you and so remain devoted in humble love to Me, for I Myself will be your teacher and leader so that in the meantime, until a higher Light comes from above, you*

may spread the Teaching of God, as it applies to your people, among your fellow tribesmen."

7. This was the instruction to Buddha from Me, your God and Father, who announces this message to you Myself, through His medium. Do not believe that it is not I, your God and Creator Myself, who announce this to you; for if you doubt that I am dealing with ordinary people in Europe, how can you say that I was dealing with Buddha Gotámo and with Indian masters? They were and are only humans! I tell you that a Christian perfected Theosophist stands much higher with Me than an Indian Master, because Christian Theosophists, who are My mediums, come from the highest heaven, from heaven where I Myself sits enthroned, and [they] are My children always gathered around Me in spirit, while the Indian Masters cannot come beyond the second heaven, unless they accept the teaching and firmly believe that I as God and Creator of the universe incarnated in Jesus to redeem My children from original [inherited] sin and reconcile them with God.

8. The Indian masters all have the inner word; but the present mediums of Christian Theosophy have a great advantage over the Indian masters, because the further progressed ones sometimes also see Me in the form of Christ and speak loudly with Me. But people do not believe that this happens through a spiritualistic experiment! For through the magnetic life-fluid, only paradisiacal spirits materialize and thereby manifest themselves. For heavenly spirits, this is already too low, too grossly material; therefore also I as God and king of the universe, do not let Myself be proved through experiments by the sinful fluid of humans, but only through great training in the virtues of love, humility, meekness, long-suffering, self-denial, selflessness, chastity, peaceableness and renunciation to the joys of the world and through especially a fiery love towards Me. One must be virtuous and loving, even if without school, wit and money - and it works, because with Me there is no preference for My spiritual children, one being preferred over another, as it must be the case with every good, loving and reasonable earthly father towards his children.

9. That nothing has been heard about Christian masters, is due to Europe's highly educated nature: would Indian masters, prophets, apostles or born-again people - i.e. those baptized with the fire of the Holy Spirit of Love, Wisdom and Power - appear before this time and have told the divine truth about today's religions and practiced the powerful works of charity like the apostles once did, then they would have been locked up, be observed to see whether they don't maybe have "a lost bearing", and then they would be put in an insane asylum. That is why in Europe the most important spiritual gifts were not given to the spiritually mature for the time being, in order not to bring them into conflict with the priesthood, mad doctors and government, in their zeal for Me.

10. That the Indian masters do not believe in Christ as God, although they associate with Me in their heart, is due to their firm belief that Christ is only an accomplished Buddha or an enlightened one. - But I do not communicate anything that is not asked of Me or that is doubted about My person, and therefore the faith of the Indian masters is also their relentless judge of spiritual darkness in this direction.

11. If one were to put an Indian master to magnetic sleep and ask him the question: *high divine spirit, Who is God and Creator and dwells in the breast of every human being as human spirit, I humbly ask you, tell me Your true holy name!* And the answer would be: "Jesus Christ Jehovah Zebaoth." This is the experiment with which one can learn from an Indian master the true name of his Divine spirit. The same happens when one puts a Christian medium of God into magnetic sleep and for spiritual-scientific reasons, in order to experience the truth, would ask the question stated above. But this only happens through magnetic sleep; but one gets no answer to the enforced hypnotic sleep, because it is an abomination before My eyes.

12. It took Buddha Gotámo about 1900 years until he suppressed his wisdom-being so far to recognize Me, now 500 years have already passed that he too has reached his goal and recognizes his God in Jesus and looks at Him face to face as father and enjoys the exceedingly blessed feelings of seeing God.

13. I do not force anyone to believe in Me as God, for where My Spirit rules, there is perfect freedom; but I tell you this: your faith is your judge - and without Christ there is no visible God; therefore no Indian Master has ever seen God; Christian Theosophists are perfect spirits - all of them - in one form or another, for they are high spirits coming from the third heaven, where I Myself dwell, and therefore love-spirits, as I Myself as God, am pure Love. And only such people who confess, believe and love Me as God in Jesus Christ, will come to see God in the third heaven. Seeing God face to face is the greatest bliss I can give My children, so you can see how high an accomplished Theosophist who believes in Christ, is - above the Indian Masters, who until now had no idea of the bliss and delight of the supreme heaven, where children of love are united around Me, their God and Father, while the Indian masters inhabit the first and second wisdom heavens and have no idea of a heaven, where I personally let Myself be seen and how a loving father speaks to His children and rules the worlds with them. These are already true gods, for nobody is higher than I, Jesus, their God and Father.

14. I have hereby explained to you My rule among My children and it would be very dear to Me if you would heed, believe and recognise the voice of your God and Father, so that I can make you as happy as My love for you is. If you do not want this, then you separate yourselves from My true children and make yourselves stepchildren. Therefore leave the wisdom of reason of the world and believe and follow Me, your Father, who speaks to you here and invites you to dine at His table.

15. Believe Me that it is I Myself who speaks to you this way! And when you do not believe your God and Father Jesus, then ask the medium that wrote My words whether he had not experienced many full proofs that I, Jesus, am his God and Father!

327. Final Clarifications

1901, June 5 - July 10, Graz. Father Jesus explains the conditions under which people can reach their goal of life on earth to become high spirits of heaven and to reign as children of God, as heirs [over] Divine kingdoms.

1. It is now clear from the present enlightenments that Theosophy is the pure Divine doctrine of love man should fulfill. You begin at the lowest level and work your way up through all obstacles to become a spirit-man who looks at the weaknesses and faults of your neighbour with the eyes of love and patience.

2. One can work in different positions or offices, but one should never let the greatest commandment in the law "Love God above all, but your neighbour as yourself" out of one's thoughts and eyes, but always live and act according to it. One can be rich or poor, educated or unlearned and still be a Theosophist if one fulfills the law of love.

3. I, Jesus, was poor, but I did not live from alms of others, as scholars of understanding think, but I healed the sick and the people entertained Me and My big company for it out of gratitude, for free. It is in fact as the evangelist John tells you, that I worked many more miracles and gave high teachings, which were not recorded at that time because of their unusual nature (John 20:30; 21:25); presently [1905], you can get them printed for reading. [This refers to the works of Jakob Lorber, which is available online for free, as are these dictations to Schumi - Translator]

4. That I as Jesus did not want to have anything to do with the rich, is a mistake - I only did not love those rich who had no heart for the poor; I behaved differently with good people, for example: Lazarus of Bethany had a great fortune and many poor people had bread and shelter on his properties. Lazarus did not waste the abundance of his income for his pleasure, but used it to support orphans, widows and the poor, and therefore he was My beloved.

5. Nicodemus was a high priest (in the rank of today's cathedral provost), and very rich; several high priests as synagogue rulers in Nazareth, Capernaum (Jairus) and other places cultivated friendship with Me. In addition to those mentioned, there were also several nobles, empires and scholars who often interacted with Me, as demonstrated by Jacob's "The Youth Story of Jesus" and the "Great Gospel of Jesus Christ" [aka Great Gospel of John, dictated to Jacob Lorber - Tr], in which all life, all teachings, deeds, miracles and journeys during the three years of teaching, dictated by Myself, are recorded.

6. From this ten-volume work [eleven volumes with Leopoldt Engel's last book of the GGoJ added - Tr] you get to know Me, Christ, as God, Who - from the high scholar down to the lowest proletarian and sinner - lovingly interacted as an earthly father with his children. All who came into personal contact with Me, loved Me; only the temple in Jerusalem, whose protector, Herod, was for money, hated Me because I scourged the priests' desire for possession, honour and dominion before the peoples.

7. You human beings are called to become children of God when you fulfill the Divine regulations. But since you are Satan after the soul and the flesh-spirit out of the soul of the fallen giant spirit transformed into matter, who is to be redeemed through you and brought back to God, which is why your soul is so evil and unwilling to fulfill the commandments of God; but your spirit of conscience is the Spirit of your Father Jesus Jehovah Zebaoth Himself, so He always exhorts you to avoid evil.

8. And since I am your spiritual Father, you as My children are to strive to defeat the satanic of your soul in its wisdom of understanding, for then you will become gods because I am your Father-God, but with the difference: The Father remains eternally Father and your head and Lord, and although you have also climbed the highest level of God-humanity, and you will be able to create whole worlds, you will never be able to do this out of your own perfection of power, but only through perfect subordination of your ego to the ego of your Father Jesus - therefore only through the union of your love with the Love and Will of your Father-God. Each one of you is called as a child of God, an heir of the Divine gigantic worlds, a god and king and leader in one, in great spiritual progression, also several of these giant worlds - which you call suns, planets, and stars - when you will do the will of your loving Father in the heaven of your heart. Therefore you are to gather all your spiritual powers together in order to achieve your completion; for to become a god and king of a giant world, it is worthwhile to sacrifice some years of your life for it, that you can live like people of love among yourselves and thereby rise into higher regions of the spirit.

9. Christian Theosophy, as a pure spiritual teaching, was taught by Myself, Christ, thereby rejecting the temple with the dogmas of the priests (John 2:21; Matt 23) and appointed neither church nor priest; because the Greek-Latin "ecclesia", wrongly translated into "church" in Rome, means only a community of confessors of a particular religion, whose teachers are not humans, but family-fathers called and led by God and men chosen by God, but not special castes of priests, as Moses and Paul wrote. (2 Moses 28:1; 1 Tim 3 and 4; Titus 1:5,6; Acts 1:15-26)

10. The authentication. Christian Theosophy is not a blind faith of priestly ceremonial obligation to believe, but it is based on scientifically extrasensory, but convincing basis, on the fulfilled prophecies of God by the prophets, which correspond exactly with the facts of scientifically founded history – on spiritual facts: Manifestations, materializations, physical experiments, reproduction of spiritual writings, which are judicially certified that the person reported by name actually had such a script, compared with facsimile, in his life, to Divine revelations and messages, which are proven to be such because they are highly exalted above human knowledge - and in addition it is proven from the holy scriptures that I as God did not only deal with patriarchs, prophets and apostles but with different people, further about astonishing messages in magnetic sleep, about clairvoyant visions which are biblically proven to be true, about suggestions, somnambulism, dreams of truth, the evidence of the prophetic inner word, which is the Divine word, to numerous healings of faith and prayer from near and far, announcements under trance by God and the spirits, and to many proofs of the life of the soul in the awake and sleeping state of the flesh, etc.

11. Based on these proofs - you can thus firmly assert and prove with convincing facts that Christian Theosophy is not the faith of a religiously stultified people, but of supernatural revelations and perceptions, accessible to everyone and convincing, because it is scientifically justified.

12. The spirit of God in you struggles for freedom from every religious domination and from the dark shackles and chains of your present spiritual outlook, which selfish men have forged over you. You are to strive for freedom and to unite the formation of your being in the spirit of Divine love and wisdom.

13. The Spirit of God in you denies every patronized monastic slave-life of the Spirit and every public penitential life in the sense of fanatical and intolerant church doctrine. Because freedom, perfect freedom, is the slogan of your spirit where spiritual life is concerned. He wants you to move freely among people and to engage in and win the fight against the Satan of your vices and evil qualities in the world of selfishness and human vices, free and fighting in the face of the evil adversary, to receive the reward of eternal life of imperishable joys and bliss.

14. Paul (2 Cor 3:17) wrote to the Corinthians: "Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom! Therefore free yourselves from all religious domination in the spirit of the truth of Divine love and wisdom! And walk in the light of the doctrine of God, as I, Christ, taught purely spiritually and lived and acted according to it Myself. Remove yourselves from every spiritual slavery; for the Spirit of God is not in religious coercion - as the Apostle Paul - who wrote this through My dictate: (Gal 1:11,12)

15. *Christ was man and lived for the generalization of mankind*. This socialist view of Me, Christ, is quite correct. As God the Father, who stepped into the flesh, I could never proceed in any other way than socialistic, because as Father of all mankind, I could not favour any of My children, but wanted to take care of all equally, both spiritually through My teaching of love, and bodily through the same entitlement to the usufruct of the earth, which I handed over to all men as a whole, but not to anyone separately and especially as property.

16. Equality is the second motto of the Spirit of God in you. Yes, equality shall be among you through ennoblement, spiritualization and deification of all your virtues. Ennoble, spiritualize and deify yourselves in the heart of your love and in the head of your wisdom, then the political government will ennoble, spiritualize and deify itself; because it has been the respective reflex of your inner spiritual virtues and qualities, no better and no worse than these, because as men are in spiritual life so they are treated by Me your God through their superiors, and because of the mass of evil men also good ones have to suffer from it until a general conversion to the good takes place.

17. The evangelist Luke (3:5) writes according to Isaiah (40:3), who received these words from Me in 726 B.C., as follows: The voice of a preacher in the desert says: "Make way for the Lord! Make his paths smooth".

18. Every valley shall be filled; every mountain and hill shall be cut down; what is crooked shall be straight; what is uneven shall be levelled.

19. And all flesh shall see the salvation of God.

20. These words refer to the material and spiritual equality among human beings. These words of the prophet, indicating My coming, did not only apply to the time of John the Baptist, but they also apply to your time. The spiritual interpretation of these prophetic words is: "The voice of the Spirit of God of love speaks in the loveless world: Fulfill the law of love! Love yourselves as brothers love one another! The lowly shall be regarded as equals, because they are children of one and the same spiritual Father. Pride and selfishness shall disappear among men; the insidious shall be sincere; the loveless shall be merciful, and thus all shall be loving and good! And all men shall walk in the light of the Divine teaching and warm and refresh one another in the Divine sun of love of their hearts.

21. Through the spiritual fulfillment of this teaching, the material interpretation then takes place by itself, because men themselves are the creators of their spiritual and material states. The material sense however is the following:

22. Loud calls the voice of a preacher in the desert (that is, Elijah as John the Baptist in the spiritual desert of the sinful world): Prepare the way for the Lord Jehovah, make an even path for our God (as Messiah or Christ) on the plain. All valleys (those are the lowly, the poor and the oppressed) shall be lifted up, and all mountains (those are the rulers, the princes and the kings) and all hills (those are the high dignitaries and the mighty) shall be humbled, and what is unequal (by classes and castes among men), shall be even (and equal with the lowly), and what is bumpy (or bent and oppressed) shall become simple (and equal with others). For the glory of Jehovah (who are the children of God living according to the Divine commandments of love) shall be revealed, and all men shall be fulfilled (at the return of Christ this prophecy shall be fulfilled.) (Isa 40:3-5; Luke 3:4-6)

23. The valleys, mountains and hills shall be equal, every class-difference shall cease, and the greatest shall not be according to the letter - but according to the acts of charity of the servants of all. (Matt 23:11) Thus sounds Jehovah's order for My return as Jesus, which is already on the way, the millennial, that is, to establish the future kingdom of the Spirit of Christ on earth.

24. My Paul (Cor 8:13,14) received the following words from Me to illuminate the introduction of equality: By your abundance you are to make up for the want and need of the needy, thereby elevating the valleys and lowering the heights. This is the meaning of Isaiah - but not a senseless material erosion of the hills to fill the valleys. Here belongs the admonition of My teaching: All that you want people to do to you, if you were in need and distress, do it to them as well; (and all that you wish that others do not do to you, do it not to them either.) (Matt 7:12; 23:8,9) Do so, and your life and actions will be justified before Me.

25. The third demand of the Spirit of Christ on you is brotherhood. Man is according to his spirit a brother to God, but according to his soul a brother to Satan - therefore the rebellious one in man, if he is not according to the will of his wisdom, because the soul still carries the Eve-snake, which is called arrogant selfishness, in its wisdom, which is the opposite pole to the spirit of love in your heart. This is the weight of the spiritual struggle between arrogant wisdom and loving selflessness. In the head is hell, the satanic wisdom; in the heart is heaven, where the spirit of love of Jesus is enthroned; therefore you have only two spans of distance between heaven and hell, or love and wisdom, which are separated in constant contradiction and struggle.

26. The term brotherliness seems strange to you because you are divided into many casts and sects that do not like each other and therefore fight each other because they are not of Me, Christ, but from Antichrist. That it is so, you see from My words which I spoke to My disciples: “There is only one spiritual Father who is in heaven; but you are all brothers (Matt 23:8,9) for [you are] children of God and therefore gods.” (Hebr 12:7; 1 John 4:4; John 10:34-36)

27. Since I as God dwell in Jesus Myself as your Spirit in you (*Holy Trinity* 1:12,26), therefore your Spirit must live in freedom and not be held in spiritual chains by the Church and the State! And since you are My children, equality as brothers and sisters must reign among you in everything and without exception. But so far you have lived under the law of wisdom (instead of love), therefore in bondage, exploitation and oppression, because the Spirit of the Lord, your Father and God was not in your superiors - and so the proverb "The people's voice is God's voice", when it cries and calls for redemption from the shackles of bondage, has here its full justification; for <u>freedom, equality and brotherhood is the voice of your God who dwells in you</u>, to whom today's world order is an abomination, and whom He now wants to put an end to. This will create a new kingdom, the kingdom of the spiritual love of the ruler from eternity (Micah 5:1) where a shepherd (Jesus) and a flock (of children living in freedom, equality and brotherhood in the love of God) will come into being. (John 10:16)

28. Same duties, same rights. I have not created humans of two different descents, for the one to work that the celebrant may feast, but all people are together called to work, each according to his kind, his profession, and his knowledge.

29. But no-one should think that I ever intended that there would be, besides field workers, craftsmen and teachers of the people - also lords, civil servants, soldiers, pensioners and priests. All these high estates are excrescences outside the Divine order.

30. All these are unnecessary when men would want to live exactly according to My commandments, teachings and virtues as Father Jesus once lived. But because men do not want to follow Me, I raise My rod of discipline over them through the above privileged classes and let slavery flourish in all kinds and forms among men. And still this rod of discipline is not from Me, but from men themselves because they do not respect My Divine order, and the result is that the non-observance of this My original order, revenges itself terribly on the transgressors, so that mankind can no longer deliver itself from the spiritual and bodily slavery which it had slowly formed itself, without Me.

31. People! Recognize Me, Jesus, as your Father, God, Judge and King and I will listen to you lovingly and redeem you.

32. What you in general have not done nor want to do because you are too weak in faith and trust in God, many pious people have done for you - and out of love for these children, I will redeem the whole of mankind and lead it back into the Adamic original order. Then there will be nothing but "equal duties and equal rights", so all humanity will be highly educated and will form a people of the kingdom of the Holy Spirit of God, with Me - Father Jesus Jehovah Zebaoth - as Judge, King and God at the head of the spiritual world order.

33. Love is God, wisdom is Satan, but when wisdom subordinates its haughty selfishness to Love, then Truth - or Christ – arises.

34. Love is now wisely guided in its exuberance through Wisdom; but Wisdom is softened and made bearable in its repulsive arrogance through Love. Both together now wander like man and woman, which mean Wisdom and Love, hand in hand, forming the high Divine daughter truth, and embrace the world as a loving and at the same time highly wise ruler united in a spiritual Divine being, and guide and lead men as brothers and sisters to God.

35. So Love and Wisdom are united, the living truth is in you and you are able as lord and servant, rich and poor, educated and uneducated, to regard each other as equal men before God, and through Love and Wisdom, humility and patience easily bear each other, to appreciate each other and to support each other lovingly as children of an eternal Father in the material and spiritual, because through this, you always fulfill the highest commandment in the law. There is the truth of your Father Jesus: *"If you do not become like children, believing without doubt, forgiving without treachery, loving, humble, merciful and compatible with one another, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven"*.

36. Now we come to the conclusion of My teachings. My enlightenments are for all and everyone who has a desire in his heart to become happy after the the soul discards the body, which you call the death of the flesh-body.

37. And therefore I want to emphasize especially that the teaching of truth in Christian Theosophy is of eminent importance both for the high intelligentsia and for every human being. It is especially outstanding for the high intelligentsia, because they are already at a stage of education in the present time, that it no longer accepts anything that does not contain the meaning and spirit of life. And it is precisely Christian Theosophy that involves the highest in itself, what Love and Wisdom strive for in unity, and that is the ennoblement, spiritualization and deification of your self. For this reason I have presented to you these glorious pearls of My authentic teaching, to awaken and enliven interest in the sublimity of Christian Theosophy; for this is the only way to promote the cause of Jesus, your Father,

who wants to make you children of His love and, as God, gods of His glory and holiness.

38. What you can achieve here in one year in the spiritual takes several decades in the spirit realm, with some also several hundreds and thousands of years, because completely different conditions exist.

39. It's true, man can not become a Theosophist or a reborn in an instant, but then, you did not bring the same education you have today with you, when you first entered into the world. Therefore, like a school pupil, you are to begin to train slowly and to refine yourself in this spiritual art until you become masters in it. You are all called to participate in the reign of your Father's universe, therefore you must educate yourselves in the same virtues which I demand of you for this purpose. For as ruler and leader of a world as great as your earth - and so ascending to the primordial central sun, which is one million of your suns in size - one must well be active in love and wisdom to rule all the innumerable people who inhabit these giant worlds like a god, and to watch over and see through and look at everything with spiritual eyes.

40. Hell. Humans are spiritually trained to govern the worlds of creation like gods with Me, their Father, and to enjoy all joys and bliss of heavenly life. If they do not want to let themselves be led spiritually, then they go to hell where they are stuck in darkness, are continually resentful about it that they have thoughtlessly dallied their time of earthly life with the world, which was given to them as a time of grace for their spiritual education. The worm of resentment for what has been missed does not diminish; anger and the ensuing frenzy for the darkness and torment of unsatisfied desires live in people like a scorching fire and grant no peace, no rest, because the condition is too miserable and wretched. No help approaches, no instruction comes from anywhere about what one is to do and how one is to do it to improve his terrible fate, because in the spirit kingdom, everything is to be found in oneself and put into life out of oneself. The state of the unfortunate is terrible; the hours become days, weeks and months, because it is too embarrassing when the running longing for redemption does not stop and still no redemption takes place. In this state the unfortunate often remain hundreds of years until they are redeemed. Of course, it does not last forever, because there is no eternally damned one, but only eternal damnation of sin before the face of God. But until man attains so much insight and knowledge that he can again help himself out to reach higher, more tolerable regions and finally paradisiacal regions, it takes a terribly long time and is to be regarded as punishment for earthly transgressions and omissionary sins. This is hell in general; in particular, there are as many differences in suffering as there are differences in the crimes and sins of people, from the lowest hell to entry into paradise.

41. The choice between heaven and hell is up to everyone; you should not miss your spiritual assignment to become unhappy in the end, just because of a short earthly lifetime!

42. Many people have already become happy through My pure teaching in Theosophy, therefore My admonition is: Everyone seek his salvation for eternity at this opportune time! The sooner you start, the sooner you will reach your goal. That is why everyone who reads this, is to be admonished to participate in the work of his own spiritual refinement, perfection and deification and therefore to join Christian Theosophy!

43. No-one is excluded there who has the good will to live according to My simplest and yet the only true and pure teaching. In the sense of My words in the evangelist Matthew in Chapter 22, love - by which you love Me above all else and your neighbour as yourself - appears as the only blessing church; but the perfect *freedom* of the spirit is its flag; according to the letters of the apostle Paul to the Corinthians and Romans, I dwell as God in the heart of every human being as his spirit; and every human soul is destined by God to be the eternal sacrificial priest in the living temple of its own body by renunciation and denial of itself to all that violates God's commandments. I, Christ, taught: *God is Spirit*, and he who wants to worship Him must worship Him *in the spirit of the love* of his own heart and also especially in the *truth*, of which the poor and needy are the only altar of sacrifice.

44. This is the foundation of My pure spiritual teaching; what is above it, I have not taught, neither have My apostles written it down - therefore not authoritative for those who desire a very pure, fully true spiritual teaching of Christ to find and walk the best and shortest way that leads directly to Me, your God and Father.

45. Here I quote another saying from My life - I said: "Let the dead (in the Spirit), bury their dead (in the flesh)". So also you should leave the ceremonies to the dead in the Spirit and walk on to the light-realms of the Divine love of a life in Theosophy; in it everyone can find his salvation, because it is the religion of the future Kingdom of the Holy Spirit of Christ on earth.

46. This kingdom will be a kingdom of love for God and revealed through this love in works of love for one's neighbour, where all people will live freely, equally and as brothers and sisters among themselves in peace.

47. How high I set love above wisdom, you can see from My saying which I spoke to My foster-father Joseph about the love of the imperial governor of Syria. I said: Quirinus is here more than Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and more than Moses and the prophets, and more than David and Solomon; for their deeds were just by faith and by great fear of God in their hearts - but Quirinus is a firstling whom My Love has awakened and that is more than the whole old covenant which was dead, while Quirinus is alive through love for Me. You know the glory of the temple in Jerusalem; it is a work of Solomon's wisdom; but this temple is dead, like its master who sacrificed Me to the women, because there was a time of his weakness when he forgot Me and became sensual. But Quirinus has built in his heart with great self-denial, a new living temple to Me through his great love for Me, in which I will dwell eternally as his Spirit, and that is more than all Solomon's wisdom. (ChtS. 9. 189, 17-22)

48. I said at the Last Supper: "I am the Way, the Truth and the Life; no-one comes to God the Father but through Me" - i.e., I am the way of the virtues of love, in which one must follow Me, I am the eternal truth of the practical love and wisdom - or God the Father - and only I am the giver of eternal life of the happiness of the soul in its spiritually progressive perfection; and since I am everything in everything - therefore no-one else gets to see God, which represents the greatest bliss of the heavenly pleasures and joys of delight of the soul - than through the full true faith in Me that I am God, Creator of the world, Lord of infinity, King of angels, spirits and men and a loving Father to all, and furthermore through the most humble love for Me, through which one loves at the same time - through love for Me - also the neighbour, because without exception one sees in every man a child of God because My own spirit of love, wisdom and omnipotence dwells in him.

49. The rebirth of the spirit is based on the present teachings of Christian Theosophy and only the one who strictly adheres to these teachings will attain them and strive to eradicate all vices to the last atom.

328. What does the Term "The Rebirth of the Spirit" mean?

1904, December 14, Zurich. Father Jesus explains what is meant by the death and life of the soul and what is meant by the rebirth of the spirit.

1. Many people think that when man begins to live piously, he is born again in the spirit. However, this view is wrong; for the wages of sin is death, but the immortal soul does sin. But if the soul is immortal, then what does death mean other than sin itself, because sin is the death of the immortal soul.

2. When the soul converts by beginning to flee sin, and by this penitential life eradicates the sinful passions, it naturally passes from death to life, so a pious soul-life is a life of the spirit, a wakefulness, an awakening from death to life, or from sin to spiritual life. However, this is not a rebirth of the soul, for it is:

3. The rebirth of the spirit of the human soul, or the spirit of the mind, the temperament of man. This rebirth of the soul is called the baptism of the Holy Spirit, or the resurrection of man, who thereby receives the spiritual graces and gifts of the baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit, that he then, like the apostles, brings about miraculous healings, clairaudience, clairvoyance, clairsentience, etc.

4. These are the three degrees of human life:

1. Sinful life, or death of the soul;
2. Spiritual life, or awakened soul-life
3. Rebirth of the soul-spirit

You should well distinguish the pious awaken life of the soul from the rebirth of the spirit, because in the rebirth, the direct activity of the Spirit of God in man takes place.

5. But it also means a rebirth of the Divine spirit in man. This Spirit is My own Holy Spirit of love, wisdom and omnipotence, and therefore it is a question why this Spirit should achieve a renewal, or a rebirth!?

6. The answer to this question of the Theosophical mysteries is the following: The Spirit of God in man is a resting power, which is One with Me, the All-Spirit in the Universe, and is active and living with Me; but with the soul he is so far removed in connection [with it] that he gives it all abilities and necessary intelligence that it needs or seeks in him, that He respects its way of life and virtues and rejoices with it in good [things], but in evil raises His warning voice, or the reproachful remorse against it.

7. But as soon as the rebirth takes place, then His connection with the soul has become an intimate, loving one and He takes part in everything - and has come out of being the quiet Observer and Leader of the soul - the Bridegroom, that is, has become the tender Lover, so a transformation, like a new birth or rebirth, has taken place, which begin to play a completely new role in the life of man, therefore it is called the rebirth of the spirit.

8. The second rebirth of the Spirit is the unification of the Spirit with the soul, because the Spirit now spreads into the whole soul and completely flows through it and therefore completely deifies it; through this, He determines all behaviour and every single thought and makes it equal with Him in knowledge and ability because it only thinks, desires and does the love and the will of the inhabiting Spirit of God. From this it is evident that there is only one rebirth of the Spirit, because the Spirit changes his way of life and only through him the soul, therefore there is a rebirth of the soul only through the baptism of fire with the Holy Spirit and not earlier. The former life of the soul is only a pious life, but not a rebirth of the soul as it would otherwise be misinterpreted.

APPENDIX

329. The Truth

1. The doctrine of Theosophy embraces three concepts:

1. General intellectual, or the *exoteric*
2. Highly spiritual, or *esoteric,* and
3. supernatural or *transcendental*,

therefore it is not a simple, but a highly spiritual teaching, because with it the spiritual in man is to be enlivened, ennobled and finally striven for to become divine.

2. It comes from the love and wisdom of God, therefore it is divine, because it strives only for the Divine and strives to educate man as a child of God, therefore to become a deity, whereby he grows into an heir of Divine Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence through spiritual grace and gifts (ChtS. 37) and as ruler in one or more of the realms of creation created and destined for the children of God. Therefore, there is no preference in Theosophy, because all - whether philosophers, scholars, or ordinary people, are equal children of God, and therefore all should be instructed in the same teaching, which can be explained and taught through every understandable occurrence of daily life.

3. **This book, *Christian Theosophy*, is the gateway to enter the Divine sanctuary, if one holds the teachings as they are taught here.**

4. **The books: No. 71 - *"Christ and the Bible"***
No. 72 – The *"Prayer Book"*
No. 73 - *"The Christian Theosophy"*
No. 74 - *"The Adept"*
No. 75 - *"The pharmacopoeia",*

are five books which specifically aim at this: to reach the rebirth of the Spirit through a "God above all and life of loving one's neighbour as one self", through the true knowledge of the facts in the heavenly pure doctrine, walking the path of salvation in the quickest way possible, through the true knowledge of the pure doctrine.

5. If you love God above everything, you will avoid everything with which you insult Me; if you love your neighbour as yourself, you will do everything possible for him. In these five listed books, you will find the teaching and the means indicated to become a child of God, therefore a supreme spirit in the universe in the name of God your Father.

6. Everything is taught here in a way that is easy to understand, so nobody can say: I do not understand it. For teaching given in secret expressions is only for the advanced, and this is not given here, since it is a matter of understanding the teaching if one wants to apply it as a rule of life.

7. The secret doctrine, taught in the secret language, belongs to the born-again, baptized with the baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit, because the ordinary man, the layman, does not understand - does not grasp it.

8. The true religion must be revealed by itself to its children or the people, otherwise it is a philosophical or dogmatic doctrine calculated on human exploitation, which never leads directly to God, because it is not given by God Himself, but is set up by man according to their human views or reprehensible intentions, and is prescribed [as prerequisite] to the afterlife for the unsuspecting and uninitiated people.

9. The Holy Trinity is the embodiment of three qualities in God which are: Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence - or in spiritual correspondence: Father, (John 4:8,16) Son (1 Cor 1:24) and Holy Spirit. (1 Cor 1:24)

330. The Greatest Commandment in the Law

1. The love of God. The greatest commandment in the law that I gave through Moses merely covers love for God and neighbour. The commandment of love for God is: *"You shall love Jehovah your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind*." This is the first and greatest commandment.(5 Moses 6:5; Matt 22:37,38)

2. The love of neighbour. The second is like this commandment to God: "You shall love your neighbour as yourself". (3 Moses 19:18; Matt 22:39,40; Rom 13:9; Gal 5:14; James 2:8) In these two commandments the whole law and the prophets are understood. Therefore: "Anything you want the people to do to you, you do it to them as well". (Sermon on the Mount: Matt 7:12)

3. If you do not become like children, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven (Matt 18:2,3), that is, if you do not believe the teaching of God with childlike simplicity, innocently - that is, living according to the virtues of Jesus (*Prayer Book*) and follow God your Father good-naturedly and fulfill His commandments as good children do their parents - you will not enter into the heavenly promises of love, joy and bliss of eternal life.

4. Blessed are those who hear and keep the word of God (Luke 11:28) by living and acting according to it, otherwise it has no power and no merits for the spiritual eternal life.

5. It is not the person's reputation before God, (Rom 2:11) because all men are equal children of God.

6. Who God loves, He chastises (Hebr 12:6) when he has left the ways which he had to walk by wrong way of life and has fallen on wrong ways which lead him downward to destruction. That is why he is chastened and cleansed of sins and vices.

7. What use is it to man if he gains the whole world and suffers damage to his soul (Mark 8:36,37)?

8. Do not rely on man, but trust in God your Father, (Ps 118:8) who can help you at any time. Therefore throw all your worries upon Him; for He cares for you. (1 Peter 5:7)

9. There is no other salvation, nor is any other name given to men, in which we shall be saved, as Christ. (Acts 4:12)

10. The enlightenment from above only comes to those people who seek the truth of the Divine teaching and strive for it when they themselves live according to Divine commandments and teachings and strive to communicate the acquired knowledge to their fellow men and to lead them to the light of truth.

11. Such people were the prophets, judges of the nation, teachers of the faith, apostles and many other pious people of all times and peoples, who had a serious will through love for God and man and were anxious to promote the spiritual happiness of their neighbour and only strove and lived for this goal.

12. A place or building in which much, serious, faithful, God-trusting prayers are prayed with great love, humility and reverence to God, but never ungodly thoughts cultivated, common words spoken, unspiritual deeds never committed anything against the Divine commandments and teachings, but a place where people are precisely striving to fulfill it exactly, such a place is sacred - in it floats a

soothing air of magnetic emanation from people who thought only of the spiritual, prayed intimately and received the answer from Me with confidence.

13. Such places have a soothing effect on the mind, they raise the heart to supernatural spiritual heights and bring every good man to a higher view of earthly things - yes, they spiritualize the pious man in his mind and his words and guide him to God and to charity, as the highest goal of the Divine teaching, which wants to educate people to become children of God.

331. Highly Spiritual Teaching

The mysteries or secrets in the teaching of Jesus Christ are highly spiritual and supernatural revelations of God, which make clear to man his relationship to God his Father, to creation and to his neighbour.

332. The Little Mysteries

1. Since Original Christianity teaching was divided into three sections, there were also three kinds of knowledge about the same. The little secrets are actually the highly spiritual teaching, which stood between the general, every understandable teaching of the spirit and the supersensible secret science.

2. The little secrets as high spiritual teachings often reach into the supernatural, because it can hardly be separated so exactly that even in the general teachings, high spiritual and supernatural things cannot be touched - because God, soul, spiritual kingdom and everything that is taught about it, actually belongs to the kingdom of the supernatural.

3. The mystery of the kingdom of God in the parables of Jesus. It is written: "And when He was alone, the disciples that were about Him, together with the twelve, asked Him about this parable. And He spoke to them: It is given to you to know the mystery of the kingdom of God; but those who are outside, experience it only through parables. And through many such parables He told them the Word (of the kingdom of God) after they had heard it. And He did not speak to them without a parable; but He interpreted all things especially to His disciples. (Mark 4:10,11,33,34; Matt 13:11,34,36; Luke 8:10)

4. The parables which I presented to the people were not meant for the people but for the Pharisees, to whom I showed through the mask of the parables their way of life and their way of thinking, because they lived outside, that is to say, against the teachings of Moses, while I explained the teaching in the parables about the kingdom of God to the disciples in clear words.

5. You shall not give what is holy to the dogs, and you shall not throw your pearls before the swine, lest they should trample them with their feet, and turn and tear you apart. (Matt 7:6)

6. What is holy, is the higher revelation for which a worldly man has no understanding; pagans were called dogs at that time because of their scurrility in morals; pearls are the noblest teachings of God; swine are secularized men who only strive for worldly sensuality and seek their satisfaction only in a pleasurable life; to trample with their feet, means to criticize [the teachings] under their heinous customs and vices and to tear them apart. Of these, to draw the doctrine through the dung and to defile it, means to mock it with false and unjust claims.

333. The so-called Saints of the Early Christian Period

1903, September 1st, Graz. Father Jesus explains why certain people in early Christian times were called saints, what lives they led, that they acquired such a name; and their special task in early Christianity.

1. In the primeval times of Christianity, the faithful were much more zealous in religion than they are today, which is why some disposed of all their wealth in order - firstly - not to be tempted by their wealth; secondly - to be able to eliminate every seizure from this side; for he who has nothing is immune from temptations to pursue the carnal lusts and desires. (Not all, as is generally believed, although the apostles insisted that there should be no private property, but that everything should be common property. So there were exceptions as well)

2. By this deprivation of all property they were instructed to work themselves or, in the absence of work or when they were old, to live from the alms of the church treasury of the believers. But if the church treasury was weak, they sometimes had to live very barely, sometimes even starve, because the poorer class of the people usually recruited themselves to the Christian faith and therefore it was necessary to support one or the other unemployed or injured.

3. Among the class of supporters, however, there were those who - because of their chaste and pious way of life, because they kept their hearts and bodies clean before the world - was called '*saints*'. They tried to become more and more purified or sanctified in heart, mind and body, so that they lived like a class of spiritual and bodily abstainers - that is, they denied themselves everything that violated the sanctification of their soul and body, thus leading a constant penitential life, and therefore they were given the name 'holy ones' or *saints*, which should have been sanctifying ones, or those becoming holy, or more correctly: the pure living.

4. So this was the class of Original Christians, who was often mentioned in the New Testament as saints. They were penitents who, through much prayer, fasting and denial of the body, renounced every pleasure of life, by denying their ego before the world, renounced the world as a whole and its comforts and pursued only the salvation of their souls.

5. They did not live like hermits or monks, but they were not seen anywhere where entertainment and diversion could be detrimental to their life-purpose, and therefore they were considered with full rights as penitents or saints of life, since they lived exactly according to the highest spiritual rules and only sought to fulfill these according to the presentation of the *Prayer Book* of Christian Theosophy.

6. Therefore they stood in high honour with the Original Christians who often collected mild gifts for them, so that they were not distracted from their contemplative life or even completely withdrawn by serving the Jews or heathen. They were also intercessors for the spreading of Christianity and for the welfare of those who professed the Christian religion.

334. The Supersensory Doctrine

1. The supernatural or transcendental doctrine encompasses those concepts which cannot be grasped with material reason, but only with spiritual power of love and faith, and which the Christian Theosophy of exoteric and esoteric content regards as a fundamental precondition, because the supernatural science demands the highest formation of intelligence, in order not to remain in doubt about the great mysteries of Theosophy.

2. This secret doctrine or Cabbalah was known to the prophets and apostles, as adepts of Theosophy, as it is given here and in the appropriate version of its spiritual conceptual power.

335. Secrets of the Teaching in Original Christianity

1. Although I openly proclaimed My teachings before everyone who had the pure intention of hearing and believing it, My successors in the teaching office - following the example of the Egyptians, the Essenes and the Jewish and pagan priests and philosophers - have divided it into three classes and have thus introduced a priesthood into Christianity according to traditional customs, who kept the secrets or mysteries of the kingdom of God or the higher spiritual and supernatural teachings to themselves as refined, special property and only traditionally propagated among insiders, while the people received more simple teachings, and the secrets in a roundabout way, in rough or concealed outlines.

2. To list all these teachings one by one here, a thick book would be needed, therefore I explained to you what is popular, highly spiritual and supernatural in the teaching. You now have *"The Great Gospel"* (by Jakob Lorber), as the original of My simple speeches before the people and My disciples completely in your hands and besides various other books, which all contain the simple high spiritual and supernatural teachings and enlightenments in free popular language, therefore you can read attentively and even visualize the divisions of easy-to-understand, highly spiritual and supersensorial things; but do not make any distinction, but teach everything to all, because My children are all to have the same share in My Fatherly love and favour, not only the wise and obedient. In Christian Theosophical books, all mysteries or secrets of the faith and the kingdom of God that were once kept "secret", are explained and described in a way that is accessible to everyone.

336. The Great Mysteries

1. This name was given to the secrets of the Original Christian doctrine, which referred to supernatural things. This term particularly referred to clairvoyance, which gave insight into the secrets of creation and was therefore used to teach true secret science. So one also see in the activity of the spiritual powers the three-tiered spirit-kingdom, as well as in the activity of men as they were spiritually - that is, inwardly.

2. The request for blessing for the table and daily prayers is never to be forgotten because you are to start everything in the spirit of love towards Me and therefore ask Me for blessing to everything, so that everything will be for your eternal benefit and salvation.

3. Likewise, to give thanks for everything is a dowry to your future inheritance of spiritual eternal life, so do not be oblivious; for what does not happen out of love for Me, what is not blessed with My blessing and is not duly given thanks to Me for the blessing, Satan has a share in it, since you then live and act in his sense, and that will bring you not heavenly, but infernal inheritance. (Read My Order in the *Prayer Book*)

4. Blessing of the bread, of the wine, as well as every food and every drink by stretched out hands or by means of the sign of the cross, as it is taught in the *"Prayer Book"* (*Prayer Book* Chap. 46, 2.3), is the calling of the Divine blessing for the sake of quickening and well-being, therefore it should never be omitted!

5. Everything what someone does to the neighbour out of love, is sanctified by Me through My blessing, because love comes from Me and therefore material things are accompanied by Divine love. (But one should not immediately suspect among it the secrets of spiritual transformation of the bodies, as the priests in the mass have pointlessly concocted it!)

6. “Is the blessed cup which we bless, not the communion of the Blood of Christ? And the bread that we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ?” (1 Cor 10:16)

7. Herewith Paul illuminated the Christians' fellowship with Me through the teaching of the love and wisdom of God, which is revealed through blood and bread as symbols of the spiritual correspondences.

337. God's Revelation about Himself

1. The Divine Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence is revealed in the universe through spirit and matter. Through the spirit, because the spiritual is the original substance and basis of all creation through matter, because the spiritual visibly reveals itself through matter to the material eyes of the flesh, what it spiritually looks like, because the spiritual steps into visible appearance through matter. For there the qualities and thoughts of the Divine Spirit appear materially in forms, genres, colors, and spiritual associations that delight your eyes, delight your heart, and satisfy your mind.

2. Creation shows you the infinite Wisdom, the Love, the urge to procreate, the Omnipotence, the visualized outflows of Divine Love and Wisdom in matter and nature.

3. Love enters spiritually through the generative power of the sun, and its tenderness shows through motherly love. The patience of love [manifests] through longsuffering towards the wickedness and opposition of the human spirit against the Divine Word. It further reveals its humility through the reconciling love for man, who so readily rebels against his God and Creator or otherwise becomes unruly in many different ways. Mercy [manifests] in the forgiving quality of its Divine Spirit, who does not want to punish but only to improve, and its goodness is characterized by selflessness and impartiality in the giving of earthly goods.

4. The Divine Wisdom is the bearer of the infinite thoughts, which represent the beauties and glories as well as the wonderful depth of composition and harmony through its forms, genres and executions in creation, especially its glorious splendour is brought to life by the sun, through which the whole Divinity of My ego becomes materially visible and active in appearance.

5. The Wisdom of God is revealed to you through the *Gospel of Jesus Christ*, in which God lets Wisdom govern the world through Love; for if this were not the case, the world would not be able to exist against the will of God because of its wickedness and stubbornness, if it would be called out to public responsibility.

6. Source of life, light of light. Psalm 36:10 - Jehovah, with You is the source of life; in Your light we see the light.

7. The source of life is the teaching of God through which one comes to life, or God; the light of God in which one sees light, is the love of God - which by its effect proclaims the love of God to all creatures.

8. My Godhead is the all-encompassing ether-air of infinite space. It is spiritually seen, like a vibrating heat of a strong great wood-coal glow, like a flowing, never resting sea of flames of love, which is spiritually enjoyed, the unspeakable joys of love and delights, but in the material state it is the all-consuming fire with which I feed the volcanoes. That is why it is said in the Old Testament: "No-one can see God and live, because He is a consuming fire; that this is also spiritually true is revealed from the story of the transformation of Pura, Zuriel, Enoch, Elijah and Mary, when they were seized My pure love and their flesh were quickly consumed as in the crater of a fire-breathing mountain and transformed into spirit.

9. Love lies in global magnetism. Its colour corresponds to red, as sometimes the clouds illuminated by the morning sun look glowing red.

10. But wisdom lies in the electricity that runs through the world. (1 Cor 1:24; Christ is the Divine Wisdom and the electric power) The nature of wisdom is presented to you by quite large electric flames, the power of wisdom, by the blinding lightning of the thunderbolt.

11. The world is pervaded with God; magnetism and electricity are His primeval Being, in which the Divine Trinity of Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence is contained. The [following] verse from John fits the above enlightenment:

12. *John 1:18* writes: No-one has ever seen God. The only begotten Son, who is in the bosom of the Father, has proclaimed it to us.

13. Why has nobody ever seen God yet? Because God is an ether-Spirit, and hence cannot be seen. The only begotten Son, who is in the Father's womb, means the Wisdom-light of God and is called the Son, radiating out from the Father, where He is the only-begotten. This light - as Jesus - told the apostles the relationship between Father and Son, that the Father is Love, but the Son is Wisdom in God.

14. The Divine-Fatherly love for children tells you the story of the Passion of the Wisdom of God Jesus at Golgotha, where God gave Himself for His children, suffered and died to save His children from the same bloody drama as Christ suffered because of Adam's disobedience to the Divine commandment; because the first commandment of chastity was given under the absolute "must follow," and since it was not obeyed, either God Himself Who gave the commandment, had to suffer for all, or every single disobedient one - since all come from the soul-spirit of Adam - had to suffer for himself through a life of suffering and death on the cross, in order to regain the childhood of God. Read chapter 320, where you can read the supplement to this verse.

15. The power of My omnipotence is revealed to you by the fire-breathing mountains, the towering waves of the sea, the hurricanes that tear down everything and the thunderbolts that strike you, all of which are of the power of Divine omnipotence.

16. The firmament, sown with countless worlds of suns, planets and stars, proclaims to you the infinity of My Creative Spirit and the unfathomable greatness of creation which My Spirit towers over and encompasses, My Divine omnipotence.

17. The voice of My Spiritual Word of Love is like the sound of great waters, and its beauty, spiritually seen, corresponds to a waterfall thundering down from high mountain cliffs, looking silvery-white and bubbling like a rain of love-blessings; but the voice of My Seriousness is like the mighty thunder of a great thunderstorm!

18. Heaven is My throne, the earth My footstool; the peaks of the highest mountains correspond to the heights of My Wisdom and their snow-capped peaks, to the purity and beauty of their minds.

19. The peaceful character of My loving nature, corresponds to the calm and clear water-level of a mountain lake whose depth is immeasurable and over whose calm and cool surface, the heavenly sun sends down its lovely rays.

20. The purity or holiness of My Being corresponds to the pure rock-crystal or the bright ether-air: John therefore says in Revelation: "No-one is holy but God alone" (Rev 15:4) and therefore I as Divine teacher also said to the questioning rich man in spiritual correspondence "No-one is good, but God alone" (Matt 19:17); Mark 10:18; Luke 18:19) - that is, nobody is infallible but God, because in Him everything is crystal-clear or ether-bright. John therefore said: "God is light and in Him is no darkness" (1 John 1:5) because He Himself is the basic Light of light; Now look at the white and bright light of a great electric flame, then you see My true original Being and from this My unapproachable holiness is comprehensible to you in the absolute state; for you see My wisdom-light materially as the inhabitants of the new Jerusalem see it spiritually.

21. God does not punish anyone, but in His commandment lies the reward for obeying or acting against it, namely: When man strictly fulfills the Divine commandment, he purifies his inner being and thereby approaches God, and God takes possession of his inner being; (John 14:23; *Prayer Book* Chapter 169) But if he acts against it, then he defiles his inner life, distances himself from God and approaches Satan, for whom he gives his heart and mind as a dwelling place.

22. This is the mystery of the word: "The Father does not judge anyone, but He has left all judgement to the Son, because the Son is the Word of the commandments of God, in which the Judge is contained". (cf. above chapter 292)

338. The Mystery of the Light of God

1903, September 6th, Graz. Father Jesus explains the mystery of the light of God, which is the purest Divine love that man fulfills only when he has fulfilled the 10 commandments, the 7 virtues of Jesus and the greatest commandment in the Law of Moses: "Love God above all things, your neighbour as yourself.

1. The evangelist John writes in his first epistle: "*God is the light and in Him there is no darkness*".(1 John 1:5)

2. But the light in God is His love; (1 John 4:8,16; Matt 5:45) because love is the Father or the life in God, (John 14:6,9; ChtS. 37:12;) because through love, which is the primordial light in God, God is the creating Power in the universe, because everything that wants to create must have within it the love of creation, which is a light that illuminates all darkness and therefore life sprouts out of man, like the flower from the earth, when it illuminates the light of the sun, warms with its life-force and thus awakens in it the desire to live, to germinate out of the earth, to grow, to unfold, to bloom and to complete the seed of life-maturity.

3. The next verse of John says: *"If we walk in the light as God is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus Christ, His Son, makes us clean from all sin"*. (1 John 1:7)

4. Yes, certainly, if man walks in the light of God's love, which is the basic fire of all life in God and in man, then he has fellowship with his heavenly Father, who creates and works everything only out of love. For the life in God is the purest love, but this love flows through the whole almost infinite creation in the universe, which is united with His wisdom, father and mother of the all-enlivening nature.

5. So whoever has made pure love the leader of his life, stands in the light of God, and therefore the blood of Jesus Christ, which is just this light of God's love, which makes him pure from all sin. But in order to understand what this light is in God, and when man walks in the Divine light of love, one must consider man's life in the light of Divine love, so that man knows whether he is in self-deception or really in the light of God. Therefore, the question for humans, is this:

6. Do you love your enemies too? (Matt 5:44) Do you also pray for them, that they may come to the knowledge of their injustice? Can you abstain from complaining about your enemies, slanderers and evildoers and never publicly accuse them of their wickedness? (God does that; Matt 5:45) Do you also wish good things to your evildoers (Matt 5:44)? For you must not know enemies in your mind at all, because then you walk in the darkness of hell, but not in the light of God! (1 John 2:11) Do you really do everything out of love and with the eyes on God? (Matt 22:37) Do all your thoughts, words and deeds come from the light of love for God and neighbour, so that you can offer them to God for glory at all times? (1 Cor 10:31) If you really love your neighbour as yourself, but if he were in need and needed your loving activity, even ten times more than yourself, this means that out of love for God, you could also deprive yourself of something for your neighbour's sake, that you need yourself,

but do not need indispensably (Matt 22:37-40; Luke 6:31)? Can you forgive immediately and unsolicited if your neighbour offends you and does you harm and evil (Matt 5:45)? Can you do him good immediately, if he suddenly has an accident in this work of evil (Matt 5:44,45; Luke 10:25) and needs your help? Can no offence wound you in your sense of honour and your personal ego (Matt 5:45; 1 John 3:16)?

7. Behold, if you can do all this and lose nothing of your calm composure and peace if your neighbour does evil against you, then you truly walk in the light of God, for then you actually act as God Himself acts, because He makes no difference between good and evil, but His love flows to all people like the light of the sun, may they be good or noble, or bad and malicious and evil-working.

8. He does not anger, He does not punish, but man punishes himself when he walks in vices and evil passions, because then he walks in the darkness of Satan or hell, and there no blood of Jesus Christ makes him pure from all sin, but the darkness of hell surrounds his heart, which lives without love and virtues and strives only for self-interest in his self-love.

9. So this is the difference between light and darkness and is the great mystery of the light of God in man. Whoever strives to light this light in himself and to raise it up so that it not only shines in his inner life, but also in his outer environment, flows beneficially in love to his friend and enemy, lives in the light like God, he thereby has fellowship with God and the blood of Jesus Christ makes him pure from all sin, because in this Divine light, he has the 10 commandments, the 7 virtues of Jesus (ChtS. 72: *Prayer Book*) and the great commandment in the law "Love God above all things; but thy neighbour as thyself". (1 John 2:5; 5:3)

339. The Mystery of God in Christ

1. Paul writes to the Ephesians (3:5-12) about the mystery of God as the mystery of Christ in the whole sense, the following:

2. This mystery was unknown to the children of men in former times, as it has now been revealed to His apostles and prophets by the Spirit of God.

3. But this mystery is: That even the Gentiles - therefore all men - are equal to the Jews; co-heirs and co-incarnates and comrades of His promise through Jesus Christ, as the Saviour of original sin (1 Moses 3:15), through the Gospel, by whose teaching God Himself in the body of Jesus Christ revealed Himself to men as their God and Father (John 10:30; 12:45; 14:9) and called them all children of God. (Source compiled from the Bible and discussed in Announcements 1,103-115)

4. This order has been preserved in God from eternity. But when the time came to fulfill the prophecies which He gave through the prophets of the Old Testament, (all mentioned in the book: *Jesus and His Arrival and Return* - ChtS. 23) Jehovah executed His eternal counsel through Jesus Christ to our Lord by reconciling the Godhead with Himself and man through suffering and death on the Cross (2 Cor 5:18) and delivered all men from original sin and from all sins of the Old Testament reaching up to the death of the cross through redemption on the cross. (ChtS. 64, p. 242: search under "Original sin")

5. And created thereby a joyful confidence and confident access to God through faith in Jesus Christ as God-made man, whereby the dividing wall which separated God from His children because of original sin, has been abolished and all people have been equally given the way to the childhood of God. (Ephesians 3:4-12; *Prayer Book* Chapter 156: Chapter 320)

6. In order to bring out the clear meaning which Paul hinted at in his letters to the Ephesians, various passages of the Bible had to be compiled and thus the verse to the Ephesians had to be illuminated.

340. Jesus Christ

The whole prophecy of the Old Testament about the incarnation of God in Christ, His life, His three-year teaching period with the highly spiritual teachings and supernatural miracles, the purpose of suffering and death on the cross, the resurrection, the ascension and all the events and occurrences from His arrival to His ascension, are stories that deal with highly spiritual and supernatural things and reveal them.

341. The Mystery of Godliness

1. Paul writes in his first epistle to Timothy: (1 Tim 3:16) "The mystery of Godliness is admittedly great; revealed in the flesh, justified in the spirit, seen by the angels, proclaimed among the Gentiles, believed in the world, received into glory".

2. This verse with explanations reads as follows: "The mystery of the divinization of man through Christ is admittedly great; revealed in the flesh as God and man, justified in the spirit of God's love for man, from that time on seen as man by the angels, who before that, were not allowed to look into the face of holiness (Christ) in God, but now proclaimed and believed by the apostles to the Gentiles in the world; who ascended through the resurrection from the dead and the ascension to heaven, to the glory of His primordial being in God.

342. The Mystery between Christ and the Congregation

1. Paul compares God's love for His children with man's love for His wife and says this in the following words: *"Great is the mystery, for I say it concerning Christ and the Congregation"*. (Ephesians 5:32)

2. With this Paul wanted to say that Christ loves the church of His believing children as a man loves his wife, for whom he leaves his father and mother and clings to his wife.

3. In order to understand this mystery correctly, one must correctly interpret and make clear the meaning of the name of Christ and His Church, because the correct understanding of the mystery depends on it.

4. Christ as the Incarnation of God, represents the Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence of God in the person of Christ, but this includes the creating, ordering and working power of God, but as such it is as Love and Wisdom through its creating Omnipotence, spiritually the father and mother of man, and therefore man is a child of God. This explains God's love for human beings through the almost equal love of earthly parents for one another and for their children, who do and sacrifice everything for them. God likewise does everything for his children in a spiritual direction. But since Christ is exactly this God, therefore the same love passes from Him to people, for according to spirit and soul they are His spiritual children, like earthly parents have earthly children according to flesh, but with God it is in a much higher measure than with earthly parents, because God is the elemental power of all love in infinity and all this love flows from Him to his children.

5. So this is the great mystery regarding Christ and the church, as Paul indicated, but did not explain it - because the actual father and at the same time mother of the people of the world is God, because only the soul and the spirit represent the true man, while the body is only the temporal dwelling and tool determined for earthly life and the shell of the inner spirit-man and only lasts until the death of the body; but the soul with the spirit continue living forever, like God!

342. Christ as Head of the Congregation

1903, September 3rd, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus about His former being as Malchisedek and His present one, where - through the merits of His suffering and death for the original sin of the world - He became the head of the congregation and the high priest of men for love in God.

1. The glory of God is Christ in humans, so I am the Leader of your life, which happens through the inspiration that is simply called **conscience**.

2. Christ is holiness in God, which cannot be understood with human reason, nor can it be approached without reverence and humility. But this holiness in God has put on the garment of human mortality and has thus become brother to man, because through the incarnation of God in the body of Christ, God Himself became a brother to man, to His child.

3. God carried out the incarnation for the purpose of helping man to redeem himself from the original sin, which he once committed as spirit in the spirit of Adam, and to regain the lost paradise for him.

4. That is why I as Christ had to suffer and die on the cross; and through these great merits I - the first-born of Divine Love, or Wisdom in God - have become the head of all God's children.

5. I was the messenger of Divine Love to you children; I was the Redeemer of people from all the sins they committed in the first covenant until the day of the crucifixion. But the crucifixion was the highest sacrifice for the sins of the world, so I am Christ the High Priest named after the manner of Malchizedek (Ps 110:4; Gen 15:18-19).

6. The Divine Wisdom, called Malch-i-sedek or "King of Justice" that to (Jeru-) Salim or the "City of Peace" (Jeru (old Hebr.) - "City"; salim - "Peace") by 1043 years, that is from Noah (1657) until the immigration of the Israelites to Canaan (year 2700, or 1451 BC).

7. From the available enlightenment it is evident that Malchisedek was an Old Testament epithet of Divine Wisdom, as I am now called Jesus Christ, and therefore the name 'high priest' is justified in the manner of Malchisedek; because Malchisedek, as Divine Wisdom, or soul of God, was and is the supreme representative of all souls in the universe, a King of justice, and therefore also the body of humans as children of God, whom the Jews called their Creator "God of the righteous".

8. When I, this "God of the righteous" came to earth in Christ, I delivered man from original sin and all the sins of the first covenant that came from original sin (ChtS. 64:197) by the sacrifice of My own body, to reconcile the Godhead in Me (2 Cor 5:19) as I as Christ often said: the Father is in Me, I (Wisdom in God) and the Father (or Love in God) are One, because being of one mind, one being, one person and one God of Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence!

9. As I was in Malchisedek through the royal Divine representative of mankind as children of God after the soul, a high priest of Divine Love, so I am as Christ the representative of mankind, because I took all their Old Testament sins upon Myself, and through the great suffering and death on the cross, I as God sacrificed Myself to atone for the sins of man, thereby becoming a high priest before God through My sacrifice on Golgotha, and the supreme representative of all souls of men and at the same time also their King through My own merits on the cross. (Micah 5:1)

10. Although God was a king and ruler from eternity, here I entered human nature and acquired the high dignity of being a king of all people from the earthly point of view, since I suffered and died as Son of Man for all people. (This is the sacrifice offered once and for all, which Peter refers to in his letter to the Hebrews 8:3)

11. The Divine light of God's love is the light of the world and the glory in God and this light is I, Christ, the head of the congregation, or the confessor of the Christian faith. It is well with all people out of the Wisdom, or the Light of God - but not directly, but indirectly, because [they are] from the soul of Satana, therefore polluted by sins, while I am Christ the most holy Wisdom of God Himself, which once before the incarnation, [even] the highest angel of love and wisdom was not allowed to look at, and this has become [possible] through Me, Jesus Christ your God, Father, Redeemer, King and Head, before Whom all knees will bend and worship, when men will have made the heights of Divine Love their own.

344. The Mystery of Heaven or Eternal Life

1903, 9 September, Graz. Father Jesus explains that He Himself, through His Divine Love - through which He can communicate to all men and spirits - is heaven or the eternal life of human joys and bliss.

1. Eternal life is the glory of heaven - the joy, the pleasures and the infinite bliss of the elect.

2. But the life of heaven is God Himself; for God is the eternal and purest Love in infinity.

3. All life flows from Him because life lies in love, but love is the reason and the elemental power of life, which moves everything, urges it to action and thus brings it to the effect of life.

4. I said at the Last Supper: I am the Way, the Truth and the Life; no-one comes to the Father but through Me. (John 14:6)

5. The way of Christ is the fulfillment of all commandments which I, as God in Jehovah, gave to Moses and as Christ, gave to the apostles, to live and act accordingly. (John 17:3)

6. The mystery of eternal life, which is called thus because it lasts forever, I revealed at the Last Supper with the following words: <u>This is eternal life</u>, that men may know the Father, the unified and true God, and The One whom He hast sent, namely Me, Jesus Christ. (John 17:3)

7. In the Holy Scriptures there are a great many scriptural passages which speak of eternal life, including the following:

8. He who finds God, finds life. (Proverbs 8:35)

9. But the true God and eternal life is Christ; (1 John 5:20) therefore: He who has the Son of God in his faith, in his love and charity, has eternal life; (1 John 5:12) for the promise of Christ is eternal life. (1 John 2:25)

10. The life in God is the light of men, (John 1:4) which is Christ as the light of the world, (John 8:12) which is the basic love in God for his children. (Proof: The Passion of Christ)

11. I said in Capernaum: I am the bread of life. (John 6:35) And I give Eternal life to My children. (John 10:28) Whoever eats this bread of life - that is, keep My commandments - he will live forever. (Proverbs 4:4; John 6:58)

12. But he who keeps a strict discipline against the lusts and desires of the flesh, is on the way of life; for the way is narrow which leads to eternal life. (Hebr 12:28)

13. Through patience and good works in charity, one attains to eternal life. (Rom 2:7; Luke 10:25-37)

14. Apart from the quoted Bible-passages, one also notices these:

- In the primordial ground of the reason was the Word, in it was life, and the light of men. (John 1:1,4)
- Just as the Father raises the dead (in the spirit) and makes them alive, so also the Son makes them alive, whom He wills. (John 5:21)
- As the Father has life in Himself, He has also given the Son to have life in Himself. (John 5:26)
- The bread of God is that which comes down from heaven and gives life to the world. (John 6:33)
- The words I speak to you are spirit and life. (John 6:63)
- Whoever follows Me will have the light of life. (John 8:12)
- I have come that they may have life and abundance. (John 10:10)
- Whoever believes in Me will live (in spirit) whether he dies (carnally). (John 11:25)
- I am the way, the truth and the life. (John 14:6)
- Because I live, you shall also live. (John 14:19)
- This has been written so that you may have life in His name. (John 20:31)
- Jesus Christ is the true God and eternal life. (1 John 5:20)

15. The term heaven, or eternal life, encompasses unspeakable joys and pleasures in human terms. Heaven alone is nowhere an outwardly determined place, but it is within man. (Luke 17:21 - The kingdom of God is within you)

16. It is the respective spiritual state of the virtues in the light of love for God and man. An outflow of the love of the Spirit of God in man, when man, through his way of life, rises so high into the Divine sun of love, that he may thereby touch the heavenly pole of his spirit and bring it into the love-vibrations of his soul.

17. Death of the body is the wages of original sin; but the gift of God for sinlessness is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord (through baptism in the Spirit). (Rom 6:23)

18. To be carnally minded is the death of the soul; but to be spiritually minded is life in peace. (Rom 8:6)

19. At the revival of Lazarus, I said to Martha: "*I am the resurrection (John 11:25) and the life"*, or:

20. I am the primordial power that gives life, but this primordial power is the love that creates life, develops it and leads it to God.

21. Peter wrote in his first epistle: God called us through Jesus Christ to His eternal glory. (I Peter 5:10)

22. But in the Letter to the Hebrews, he wrote: By His suffering and death, Jesus is the author of eternal happiness for all who obey Him. (Hebr 5:9)

23. It follows from the Biblical passages quoted that heaven - because it is nowhere a certain place - and because man only has to have love and joy in his heart, because he can only feel and enjoy it within himself, and this describes the life in man and is called God or Jesus - heaven is therefore man's heart, in which I – Jesus - dwell and throne as the Spirit of God in man and nothing else. (1 Cor 3:16; 6:19; 2 Cor 6:16; Rom 8:11; 2 Cor 13:5; Gal 2:20)

24. This is why the evangelist John wrote: "*God is love, he who abides in love abides in God and God in Him"* (1 John 4:8).

25. Love is the way into the kingdom of heaven; (John 14:6) because love erases all sins, and if any

man had so many as the grass of the world or the sand of the sea. (ChtS. 10 c, 24)

26. Because through true love (Matt 22:37-40) man no longer commits sins, because he gives up and avoids the old vices and passions.

27. That's why the *Prayer Book* says: The one who has love is immeasurably rich, he can pay for the whole kingdom of heaven. (Ps. In Gbh. 169, verse 46)

28. Paul writes about the heaven to which he himself was transferred: (2 Cor 12:2ff) No eye has ever seen the glories he will see in heaven.

29. No ear has ever heard the pleasant tones of the heavenly chant, which transcend all human emotional concepts, and the tones of angel music, which rise to the highest pleasures. And no man's heart has ever felt the highly spiritual pleasures and joys of bliss that God has prepared for those who love Him. (1 Cor 2:9)

30. Therefore Peter writes: "The elect will delight in Christ with unspeakable and glorious joy. (1 Peter 1:8)

31. It follows from this that the heavenly pleasures, joys and blessings generated in man by the Divine Spirit of Jesus Christ, are indescribable; *they can only be felt.*

32. To get a shadowy concept of the truth of the heavenly pleasures and well-being, think of a long-lasting painful sickness which suddenly ceases altogether - the joy, tranquillity, and contentment this bestows upon the soul.

33. Think of the overwhelming pleasures of life at times.

34. Imagine the indescribable joy of a poor man who, in an ice-cold winter, has no suit to protect him from the cold, and who, in addition to starving, also suffers from all the grim cold, and who has to struggle with all the tribulations and odds of life, if he were suddenly transferred by a great inheritance into all the grand pleasures and comforts of life!

35. These three examples from earthly life, taken as a small and shadowy comparison to heavenly pleasures and well-being, give you a weak mental concept of the pleasures and blessings of the heaven of eternal life.

36. All this is usually called *life* and *eternal life* in the Scriptures and this eternal life is I - God, your Father Jesus.

37. One can easily infer from this that all this is not a property of man, but the effect of the Spirit of God in the heart of the human soul.

38. And indeed it is like this: I am the primordial Light or the basic fire of all love. It is the love that causes these exuberant pleasures and joys.

39. But now the life of man is in the constant waves of the unsteady life, which goes through all imaginable stages of joy and suffering of the soul.

40. And every sensible man notices that he only enjoys a true and most happy bliss when he is in most exalted love.

41. Therefore, since I am the purest and highest Love of love and can communicate this to every being through My spirit, it results that I then really am the eternal Life of heaven.

42. Because love flows out of Me and generates itself actively so that only love is and remains the

impulse to all life and striving forward in man.

43. So look at heaven or eternal life and you will find that only I Myself in My Being of Love, which flows to men and spirits, am the one and only Heaven in the universe and that the one who does not acknowledge Me and does not love Me, will impossibly have an eternal heavenly life full of the sweetness of love and joys of life.

345. Jesus Christ in us

1. The greatest mystery of religion is the truth that man in his innermost being himself is God, and this God - Jesus Christ, the Creator of the world, is the spiritual Father in infinity.

2. This truth cannot be superficially realized, but it can be understood spiritually when man is not lazy in thought but accessible to the truth, because man rises above and beyond all creatures and forms the crown and perfection of creation.

3. Just think how all created things have a fixed law at their basis, over which they cannot reach, and that every establishment in the creature is inherent in an order over which nothing can reach, for everything has its limits, and there is no higher way if one were to put so much effort and energy into it, because everything is under the Creator's order and must obey it, be it mineral, plant or animal; now consider man in his spirit:

4. There are no limits for him, his development is infinite, his education progressive without end, he continues to perfect himself eternally and constantly takes on new achievements within himself and without himself to his refinement and higher education, and tirelessly carries building blocks of his experience and diligence to perfect his ego, which strives for the eternal, the infinite in its essence, to tirelessly establish the highest perfection and works on it.

5. This infinite, evolving, never resting, never ending, always concerned with the enrichment of knowledge, never knowing as perfected, always collecting, ennobling knowledge, ascending spiritually higher, transcending into the spiritual, even in the spirit of development and inexhaustibly feeling into the depths of the interior - is the spirit from the primordial Spirit of eternity of Divine descent and origin.

6. And this Spirit is the Spirit of Jesus Christ, the Spirit of eternal development, new creation, refinement, spiritualization and deification of man, He is the inner sanctuary of the living temple of the Divine dwelling on earth, which is called 'human': the thinking and creating original being of the spirit, which is called the ennobled, spiritual soul-substance of the former Great Original Spirit, through whose light and love the Godhead in you, children, becomes unending.

7. By virtue of this infinite development of Divine love, as the creative power in the great world creation, man stands as a jewel around which the love of the Divine primordial light has spread its holiness and has chosen him as the child of Divine love.

8. Man may well see his carnal form and know his abilities of the spirit, but he does not consider that a completely different spiritual being dwells in him than in the other creatures of the world; because in him there is nothing constant, nothing which is bound to a commandment of 'must', in him there is divinity, therefore unstable, because of the constant order of self-creation as the basis of existence, as the apostle Paul once said: "Where the Spirit of God reigns, there is freedom," because God is the most unbound Being of self-created freedom.

9. The question is: When is the aspiring spirit of man satisfied with himself and stops working on

himself and perfecting himself? Never! Always and eternally moving is his urge to create, to sow and to reap; for it is the Spirit of infinite development and new formation in him.

10. It is therefore said that man can never reach God his Father, nor will he ever reach Him, although he will progress eternally, develop himself, ennoble himself and rise spiritually higher, because God Himself develops eternally higher and in His infinity, serves the created beings as His children for imitation as a mirror of self-deification.

11. And this infinite Spirit, this basic mirror of Divine holiness in Himself and His children, is your loving Father, is your Saviour, your Redeemer, because He is the victor of Golgotha over Satan and death.

12. I Jesus, your Spirit, am the ineffable in the holiness of love in God. I Myself am all in all in you, I am the Master, you are My living instruments with whom I work. You cannot call anything your own and in you that would not be Mine - apart from your free will, which I let free and entrust you with.

13. Look at yourselves from birth to old age! What would you be if My Spirit were not in you? Behold, the soul of the newborn child has the same form and the same intelligence-abilities in it as that of a forty year-old human being; you can recognize this by the fact that it so artfully builds up the human body in the mother's womb from the blood of the mother. Would that be possible if the soul did not have the intelligence?!

14. Man enters the world and there is no intelligence or ability to be seen in him, and yet the same soul lives in him, which has built him up and perfected him artistically to the highest degree by its creative will-power.

15. But the abilities of the soul are dependent on My Spirit who created the soul and gave it the abilities to develop in all directions. Think a little about what superhuman intelligence is necessary to masterfully create the human body with its artful facilities and departments! Should not such an intelligent soul be able to create other works of art as soon as the child is born, like a great artist of the world? It certainly could do that if it were independent and not completely dependent on Me, its Spirit; but exactly this dependence for the development and putting into effect of its intelligence and ability and the slow further training and development, shows that it has to reach maturity the time when I consider it appropriate, and not earlier.

16. Every intelligence, every ability which man acquires after his birth, he has to slowly gain from Me - his Spirit - himself, or take in and gain through school and outer influences. He must develop out of himself, grow and learn to use, improve and ennoble what he has learned, for which [purpose] I give him the five main and the many secondary senses as tools of his activity in matter and in the spirit of his personal ego, thus the basis for self-development and -perfection.

17. Therefore, everything in man that is called life, spirit, intelligence, five senses and spiritual abilities, is a gift of My ego and Myself - and if I were not in you, you would be dead, like a laid-out corpse, because that is actually what the outer man is when I step out of it with the soul and the nerve-spirit!

18. And likewise the soul would be spirit- and lifeless if I would withdraw My intelligence given to it: it would neither think, nor see, nor hear, nor feel, nor speak, nor smell, nor feel any other life in it. Consider your life therefore and think every day and always, Who dwells in you and Who He is!

19. Never forget yourselves as if you were independent and had the life in yourselves, but keep the great mystery of My revelation as the noblest and most precious thing you possess, <u>that you yourselves are God in your innermost</u> and that you are to listen to the voice of this God always with an attentive ear and humble, respectful mind and fulfill it!

20. But also do not forget that you are My children and therefore obliged to fulfill My will when you

want to be redeemed from matter and raised to what you were created to be and for what you are in the world.

21. Heaven needs violence and whoever will not conquer it by force like a hero, will not come in - for My name is Hero, (John 9:5; ChtS. 71, p.145) therefore you must follow Me as I once fought as Son of Man against the storms of the world. I overcame the world, therefore you are to follow Me in the struggle to become mature and perfect one day and thus to move into My Fatherly house as heroes who overcame the world and Satan.

22. So the great mystery of the secrets of human existence and life is this: I am the Master, you are the labouring machine which is made of the raw material, taken spiritually and carnally from the solidified soul of Lucifer-Satan and cultivated according to Divine love-principles and called to bring the solidified soul of Lucifer-Satan in atoms back to its former state of holiness in God.

23. This is the aim and purpose of your existence and life, you wander spiritually and materially back to Me as the prodigal son Lucifer-Satan in atoms and I am the Master who dwells and works in the middle of this atom and from there also rules the whole world. Amen.

346. The Teaching for the Perfect

1. Peter speaks of this in the Epistle to the Hebrews in Chapter 6, and so you would want to read it there, since every Theosophist should also have and read the Bible! By the way, anyone who has read the doctrine of Christian Theosophy has already experienced everything that Peter speaks of.

2. The gifts of the first rebirth can be read in the *Holy Trinity* according to ChtS. 37, Chapter VI...

347. The Second Rebirth

1902, 12-13 July, Graz. Enlightenment of the Father Jesus about the gifts of the first and second rebirth - and that the second rebirth makes man one with God and therefore omnipotent, omniscient, omnisighted, omni-audient and omnisensitive, but only so far as his personal ego concerns the doctrine or thing he is concerned with.

1. *Nothing is impossible for the one who believes it* (Matt 17:19,20) so reads My saying, which I once said and which still has the same power in itself, if man meets the requirements which are set there.

2. It goes without saying that man, as a child of God, holds within himself Divine creative powers which enable him to bring about everything that is included in the power of God's omnipotence, because this power of God's omnipotence lives and works in man, namely the Spirit of God in the heart of the soul.

3. At all times there have been men who knew this inner spiritual power and also used it for these and those purposes they served and made it their business to support these purposes by means of their spiritual powers and advantages and to bring them to development and perfection.

4. In order to awaken these powers in himself and to use them for good purposes, it is man's first task that he follows and indeed fulfills the commandments and teachings of Divine Love given to you in My various books, but especially in the *"Prayer Book"*, *"Christian Theosophy"* and *"Gospel"* [of John through Lorber - Tr], as precisely and punctually as possible. For these, if you fulfil them precisely

according to the prescriptions, will gradually bring you to the attainment of the various graces of baptism in the Spirit, which are mentioned in the book *"The Holy Trinity"*, until at last the miraculous powers of the Holy Spirit are awakened in you and put into action.

5. Anyone who progresses in the spiritual will receive certain graces and gifts as soon as he needs them. But now the magazine of favours is open for all; you know what I demand of you and you know how you can get to the great spiritual gifts. The "*Prayer Book*" and the "*Christian Theosophy*" teach you how to lead the true Christian life in order to ennoble and perfect you spiritually - but the esoteric school *"Adept"* leads you into the practical life, to seize your spiritual inner powers according to the regulations as they are presented to you and to put them into action.

6. Since you are My children, it is self-evident that it is My concern to teach you a spiritual-heavenly education and training; but this is only possible if you strive with all seriousness to fulfill the offered teachings and graces.

7. It is nothing new what I am telling you here because there have always been people who have raised up through the fulfillment of My commandments that they have received graces and miracles from Me, especially Moses, Elijah, the apostles and certain blessed ones of the Christian period.

8. But a time has dawned where the ennoblement and spiritualization of man will go much higher than was the case before, because through the forthcoming transformation of the human race into a spiritual generation, man - through his purity from beginning to end - will no longer taste the sting of death, but will live on forever.

9. When once the first rebirth is attained, then man will continue to perfect himself in all virtues until he will have completely passed over into love, and then the second rebirth of the spirit will take place.

10. The second rebirth is very different from the first. In the first, My Spirit agrees with the soul only to the extent that man becomes sinless and partakers of various graces and gifts to the extent that he needs them in order to lead a kind of heavenly life here and to be able to work much good, as it says in the description of the spiritual gifts in the *Holy Trinity*, but man is still subject to the various temptations and is not yet omniscient, omnipotent, all-seeing, all-hearing, all-feeling and omnipresent, for the apostles were born again, only they did not know what was planned against them, they were persecuted, thrown into the dungeon and all but John were killed, and no-one could help himself alone, no-one knew, no-one saw, no-one felt in advance what was ahead of him, but such advantages are only active when they are deemed necessary by Me, or when it is asked for. But there is a difference between the graces and gifts distributed, because everyone gets them to the extent to which he has progressed spiritually, and they are in effect as soon as one seriously asks for them to pursue one or the other purpose, or to reach it.

11. The second rebirth will be greater with many than they were with the apostles, because already previous merits are stored up that someone has earned in his past life on earth or in the spirit realm.

1. But with the second rebirth, which completely spiritualizes man, the Spirit of God pours out in man through the whole soul-body and enlightens him through and through; the flesh-body is visible, but spiritual-ethereal, for man becomes - through the second rebirth of the Spirit - man and spirit at the same time. There is nothing to stop him from disappearing his body in a flash of thought and at the same moment appearing in another part of the world in a flash of lightning.

2. He is everywhere present with his spirit and fully conscious where he is the subject of conversation. Therefore nothing escapes him where he has to have his 'I' in order to know whether one thinks or speaks good or bad of him in thoughts or in words, therefore he already knows in advance what he has to do when he is in danger; because he knows what people are planning to do against him and can therefore anticipate their tricks or avoid them altogether.

3. He is omnipotent because he is one with God, but he does not do anything out of himself, but only what he feels that it is the will of God, or what he is directly told to do.

4. Where his thoughts are, there he is fully conscious, because he sees, hears and feels what is going on there - and can, if necessary, also be there physically in a flash, otherwise he is physically there and only seeing spiritually, hearing and feeling where he is in thoughts.

5. He can be physically visible and invisible in any place. His physical can be visible and yet at will as a solid body, like any human, or just as a shadow, that is, intangible, being like the air.

6. What he wants to happen, happens because he possesses the power of God in himself, with Which he is one. Here is the point where My Word actually exists in power, which I said: Truly I say to you: If you have faith the size of a mustard seed, and you say to this mountain: Lift yourself from there to there and it will happen, for nothing will be impossible for you. (Matt 17:20; Luke 17:6) To this verse I now have to explain that such a reborn one does nothing out of his own will, but everything out of the will of his Divine Spirit and so he leaves mountains there where I have put them. The translation of the mountains here means something else, namely that man is completely also fully powerful in the graces of God, but this only in the second rebirth, because there he feels one with God and therefore knows his omnipotence; in the first rebirth, this conviction is not yet in him and alive, but nevertheless miracles of salvation happen where it is necessary. The gifts and graces of baptism in the Spirit, as they are listed in the *"Holy Trinity"*, corresponds for present times, because the present born-again have progressed significantly higher than did the apostles, because they will unite the graces they had before reincarnation with the newly acquired merits and thus have incomparably higher power than the apostles had. So the apostles, since they all live reincarnated on earth, will this time possess much greater graces and gifts than before, namely those which the *Holy Trinity* indicates for the first rebirth.

7. A born-again of the second rebirth has omnipotence over matter and it obeys him like a living man because he penetrates it with his Spirit, who is one with God.

8. He can, united with the All-Spirit, create new flowers or new plants and animals that do not yet exist on Earth.

9. He can see wherever he wants to see and thus into the interior of the sun, planets and stars, and can move there in a flash with his ego like he lives and breathes.

10. He understands every language that exists on earth and can speak it without ever having learned it, and therefore he can also speak every language in the starry worlds, because the Spirit of God is one with him who knows, understands and can do everything.

11. His clairvoyance, clairaudience and clairsentience is clear and one with God and his brain - because his body is only a solid spirit - therefore sees, hears and feels the present, the past and the future and nothing is therefore hidden from him what he wants to know, see, hear or feel.

12. He sees the former images of cities, places, people, etc. in front of him alive in the spirit - and through his willpower, can fix the images photographically and make them appear for material eyes.

13. He can restore all the records that once existed, but perished in the time of the world-storms, immediately to their original state.

14. As he can look into every starry world, so he can also look all through the earth and thus see its inner construction exactly, and what and how everything is constructed in it.

15. He can ascend into other worlds and take with him incidents there without losing more time than what he spends thinking about it.

16. For him there is neither time nor space, because everything happens fast in thought. He can stand here and speak and be active in another area in his thoughts, or quickly get books or other things from another place.

17. He doesn't need the train to go anywhere, nor the post office to send letters, nor the telegraph and telephone if he wants to do something quickly and carry it out, he can do it all personally, because he can quickly move everywhere and appear vividly visible and personal and settle the matter. But he can also act like an ordinary person, because he has the freedom to live and act as a person or spirit.

18. He interacts with Me, his God and Father, as well as with all blessed ones at all times. But he also sees through the whole hell and therefore much nasty and malicious things; but in return he has the power over his personal ego that nothing can harm, upset or seize him.

19. But he can also communicate with every spirit of hell, with one word, from the lowest hell to the highest heaven, with all blessed and unhappy spirits. He can also teach the evil spirits himself and make everything clear to them, answer their questions and illuminate contradictions and work so much good.

20. He knows the power of all medicines - i.e. he knows what this or that is good for and what success can be achieved with it.

21. He sees in matter the spiritual and the material, and knows how to apply the right one in everything.

22. No-one can hide anything from him, nor lie to him, because he looks through everything and thus also through the thoughts of man, and if he wants, also the past and the future.

23. Since he sees the earth through and through, he knows exactly what and where something is located, be it ores, hard coal, water, etc., and what the formation of the earth is like here and there.

24. He knows all the arts and sciences that are still being discovered or invented because he can see into the future of the world.

25. His power of the spirit reaches so far that nothing is impossible for him what he sees as good and fruitful because he can see the consequences in the future of it, in advance.

26. There is nothing in the material, as well as in the spiritual world that would be impossible for him to achieve.

27. He can teach and enlighten his teaching and see, with his spiritual omnipotence, into the head of a man, i.e. loosen the bonds of darkness and through enlightened insight, awaken the desired faith when it is absolutely necessary, because he has supremacy over the soul-spirit of man and can teach him his will so enlighteningly and

convincingly, that the listener sees, understands and accepts the truth, but he does not do this because it is something forced, instilled, therefore foreign and not self-convinced. For if it were a matter of bringing people to true faith in this way, so I, as spirit of God in man, can only want and all mankind would have faith and sight in the spiritual and Divine of faith, turning people into believing machines of My will. Nothing is instilled and taught by spiritual superiority, but only through the pure enlightenment of truth. Man must accept or reject everything himself, *"for where My Divine Spirit teaches and rules, there is no coercion, but perfect freedom".* It is taught and explained and man is given the freedom to judge the truth himself, to examine it whether it proves to be so in experience or not; for through one's own examination and experience, one becomes clever and wise, therefore should nothing be imposed or violently forced upon anyone.

12. This is how it is with the second rebirth, which from now on will gradually reach all men on earth who will inhabit the millennial kingdom.

348. The Primordial Sun of Spiritual Life

1902, 25 October, Graz. Father Jesus glorifies Love as the primordial central sun of spiritual life in man and describes the holiness of its being in itself and outlines the perfection of man as a child of God, and spirit of Love in creation through the second rebirth.

1. Man in his spiritual perfection is God's child, born of the primordial light of Divine Love, as the dawn is begotten because of the sunlight.

2. The glory of the working Divine Love shines in its spiritual potency in unprecedented basic Love, which has so far rested in its holiness in the innermost essence of the depth of the thought-world of the human heart.

3. Their activity shoots like sunbeams into the infinity of creation, which works and creates, united with the Father of eternity of human existence, and is active in the perfection of the glory of Divine embodying thoughts.

4. The sanctity of the ideas of the primordial Love of the Divine primordial central Light is like a primordial central sun with its tremendous primordial firelight, which is fed by the primordial love of the Divine sanctity.

5. Such a spiritually perfected man is a primordial central sun of Divine primordial central light, since he connects the fire of his love with the basic fire of Divine basic Love and lives and weaves like a god active in love, creates and forms with his Father from eternity, the ascending thoughts and ideas of spiritual love, which lets the infinity of Divine creation emerge from Himself.

6. Pregnant in love in doing good like his spiritual Father Jesus, he thinks only of love-activating ideas, which rise out of him in the Divine Light, like the scents of flowers in the heavenly heights, who called them from Himself into existence.

7. The glory of his thoughts shines, like the morning dew glitters in the rising sun in the light of Divine Love, which flows through its being and like glittering diamond stars, illuminates the heart of man with Divine light to life in the spirit of the love of his primordial Father Jesus, Prince of the Peace of Spiritual Love, humility and tolerance toward his brothers and sisters in his loving circles of influence.

8. Heaven shines in the most glorious light of Divine Love, where children of the Father with their primeval love - born of themselves and called into existence in the times of eternity - appear lovingly in the circle of their brothers and sisters, and make the primeval Being in God appear in the form of humility, love and mercy.

9. Here the spiritual primordial Light comes into effect, which once proclaimed the Divine word of the Creator: "Let there be". This great word of Divine Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence then went out into all the infinite spaces of the world and from this the completion of this fundamental word was formed from the sanctity of Divine primordial Love-ideas "And it was!"

10. Everything moved, everything became, everything lived, everything loved and shared and united with His kind and formed new thoughts and ideas and let them appear - and new worlds arose, new suns shone in Divine glory, giving light and life.

11. Thus, according to Divine Love-fire, all went through His instructed plan of progress through eons (or gigantic periods) of eternities and will once return to the Father of Love, Jesus - spiritualized, embellished, ennobled and transfigured with the exclamation:

12. "Father" You once shouted, "Let there be!" Now behold, *your children* have given this cry although there are long periods of stone-, mineral-, plant-, and animal kingdom proceeding higher and higher and higher, So Your children have responded to this call, which You let sound out of You in the primordial foundation of the cause, and now [we] stand before You, cheering and blessing You, great and mighty Creator and Father, for here we stand as living proof of the perfection of Your radiant Creator Love - "And it was!" For we have gone out from the Word, and we have now returned to the Word - and so the cycle of the period of creation was completed, and a new spiritual, Divine and eternal one begins - in you and with you! Amen.

13. Love, the radiant daughter and bride of Jesus in man, is the primordial Being of God and in God and a worthy queen of Divine virtues in man, which is born out of her and in her, developed and standing in the most glorious floral splendour, bringing forth the fruits of Divine life in herself and out of herself, and in the form of the works of compassion, love, humility and mercy, calls her brother and sister to spiritual perfection.

14. Love radiates, caressing the brother, embracing the sister through the work of love, pressing [them] against her heart, and spiritually exclaiming: Oh! I know You, You are my brother Jesus, although the light-cloud of wisdom shines around You, but from Your eyes emanates humaneness where I see my image - you are the Father, you are my Love, You are my Jesus!

15. And love raises itself into the heavenly heights and recognizes in its brother and sister a child of God, whose centre is the Father Jesus, whose wrapping is a son of Divine Love.

16. And again Love seeks in itself and out of itself the characteristics of Divinity in its neighbour as the child of God, and it comes to the conclusion: You are taken out of God, your radiant Divine being is only covered by the form of a human, so what shall you be other than God Himself, so I will not take offense at your unfinished appearance in its present form, for it is of God and will one day become God again.

17. So dear children, look at each other! Always think that my brother is God's child, so I must treat him as such with all reverence. My brother is in spirit the Spirit of God Jesus Himself, hidden from my eyes by the outer cover. This Spirit is God, Creator and Father of all people, angels and spirits and all creation in infinity. And I too am a child of God, a brother as a child of God to my brother in my neighbour - and I am God in my innermost being, because my spiritual Father is Jesus, who dwells in me as my Spirit - and so it is my duty to call to existence all that is called by the Father, as my property and heir of my spiritual Father, and therefore to protect, care for and honour and love him, as a thought and idea coming forth from God, and stepped into the visible material existence; representing the Divine thoughts of my Father in nature, contemplating them, and thus regarding

them as the works of my God and Father in nature, where He *works spiritually and creates from Himself, the materially visible*.

18. So everywhere I see God spiritually and materially - for everything is taken out of Him - and everything is in Him, and so also I am in God and God is in Me; for He as the Love in Me is the Father; and I am the embodied Wisdom of His Love, being His Son. And so God the Father is in me and I am His Son in Him as My spiritual Father and God.

349. The Image and Likeness of God

1 Moses 1:26-27; 5:1

1. "Man is the receiving vessel of God, and the receiving vessel of God is the image of God; and because God is Love itself, and Wisdom itself, man is the receiving vessel thereof:

2. And the receptacle becomes an image of God in that man feels in himself that what is of God, is in him like his own - but he nevertheless becomes out of this likeness an image of God only in so far as he recognizes that Love and Wisdom - or the good and true in him - is not his own, and therefore not of him either, but alone in God and therefore also of God".

350. The Tree of Life

The tree of life is the man who regards the Love and Wisdom dwelling in him as Divine property. For Love and Wisdom are the life in God and the one who regards these as those pounds or talents borrowed from God with which he is to promote love for God and for his neighbour through himself and through others, and who also promotes it, is a tree of life, because a true man is then given the heavens and eternal life as a reward.

351. The Tree of Knowledge

The tree of knowledge or of the knowledge of good and evil is the man who knows the good and true of life, but regards it not as Divine, but as his human property, and thus is in self-eloquence and belief that the life of man, which consists of Love and Wisdom, is not God in him, but his own personal ego.

352. The Food of It

The eating of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, however, is the erroneous justification in itself that everything of his personal being, his human ego, is and that man therefore is God Himself in himself; for which then for this his worldly wisdom of reason of denying the Divine property in him, hell and spiritual death - which is damnation - is bestowed upon him. (Swedenborg: "*True Christian Religion*")

353. Conclusion of all three Clauses in one Judgement

Man is created to receive love and wisdom from God, but in all likeness to himself, for the sake of receiving and connecting; and therefore man is not born with any love, nor with any knowledge, nor even with a capacity to love and be wise - therefore, if he attributes all goodness to love and all truth to the wisdom of God, he becomes a spiritually living man, but if he attributes it to himself, he becomes spiritually dead. (Swedenborg: "*True Christian Religion*")

354. Marriage

1. Marriage embraces the Divine, the spiritual and the material. Man as a child of God is a part of the body of God in the universe and represents in his quality the same relationship as I represent in general.

2. The spirit of man has emerged from My Love and is therefore equal to Me, the same as I, because he arose out of the same body of My original Light of Love. That is why he is equal to Me and the same as I am in everything, and because he is one with Me, he is also omnipotent, all-wise and omniscient, because he is a part of My 'I' and connected with My All, and therefore omnipresent and active with Me everywhere, even if the fleshly reason of man does not notice and know this.

3. Man was called from the beginning - since Adam - to live and rule with Me in the world.

4. After he made the first mistake by wanting to procreate himself according to the way of animals, while I wanted to have only spiritual children without all and any [physical] procreation, as once through Satana (ChtS. 23, *Christ, His Arrival and Return*), I took from him the love and beauty, which is Biblically called "rib", and formed the spiritual second human out of it, as Adam designed it in his imagination.

5. Adam was originally genderless, then changed as he imagined himself to be the image of a reproducing man, which in Genesis means: " and included flesh for it ". (1 Moses 2:21) So Adam and Eve were initially just spirit-humans, without a material body. The Biblical story of creation says "that they were formed from the lump of the earth (Gen 2:7) or “ from the dust of the earth", but this only refers to the fine-spirit, the invisible to human eyes, which is the spiritual complement of the earth and from which the souls of the stone-, mineral-, plant- and animal kingdoms - and finally of man - are formed.

6. If Adam and Eve had not broken the commandment of chastity, they would have remained spirits and reproduction would have been an act of will and not of flesh - and thus men would never have become material, but overjoyed spirits and would only have propagated spiritually. Through the animalistic reproduction, I awakened in them the hunger and thirst for material food, from which blood was formed and from which the material body arose; before that, they took only spiritual food and drinks.

7. Love is the foundation of marriage. But as I am united Myself as a being of Love and Wisdom, so the man separated in two parts, with man representing the wisdom administration and the woman, love and beauty. The connection of both to each other is evident through the division into two, and only through the connection of both into one being, comes the life-giving power-development through which man becomes a creator as I am Creator through My Trinity of Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence, because the acting power is in the universe.

8. The bond of marriage is a sacred one, therefore it must come into life through love alone, for only the love-vision in heaven is closed, and only this is eternal. That is why the wedding ring was introduced into marriage as a symbol of eternity.

9. In primeval times, when My rules were followed, the bride and groom knelt before the father of the bridegroom, and if he should be absent, before the father of the bride; in the absence of both, before the mother who stretched her hands over them and publicly implored My blessing over them. That was the whole ceremony: kneeling with their hands held out to each other, they waited for their parents' prayer of blessing, with which the union was closed and which united them into one body and heart for life.

10. Through the conjugal union of two who became one in heart, also a symbol of Divine rule is represented, how I work with My Love and Wisdom through matter or through nature, connecting Myself with it and work through it spiritually for spiritual and materially for material eyes and eternally rejuvenate and infinitely multiply Myself according to My Love and Wisdom, so it also happens with man, or more correctly said: My Spirit works spiritually in man and continually creates his kind anew, and increases spiritual reproduction without number and end; material man only creates the material body for the time of his life and leaves it at death, because the material body is acquired through animal-procreation, it is the visible representative of original sin and its death in the spirit, therefore this body - because it was created by original sin - must either be spiritualized by the second rebirth, or through the departure of the soul out of this sin-body, back into its actual being as spirit – to be left to the earth for decay when man enters the spirit kingdom.

11. Paul wrote: "Christ is the head of the church as the man is the head of the woman (Ephesians 5:23; cf. the same in Isa 54:5 and 62:5) and as the congregation has to judge itself completely according to its Head, so also the woman has to judge herself completely according to the will of the man, if the union was entered into according to Divine regulation.

355. The Theurgy of the Great Mysteries

1. Theurgy is the science of the secrets of the human mind, by which man is equipped with the graces and gifts of the supernatural world. That is why Theurgy was also called magic or the art of magic or power over the spirits and forces of nature. A theurgist was hence called a miracle-worker, a ghost-banner, a sorcerer, even an occultist who could work mysterious things, and therefore the Theurgy of the first centuries of Original Christianity was a mystery of the priests, just as the priests of prehistoric times were the keepers and owners of the spiritual secret sciences, through which they had a dominating effect on the people.

2. The Theurg was one who lived exactly according to My Divine commandments, therefore [he was] endowed with these or those gifts. Such a spiritually advanced man was also taken into the circle of religious teachers and initiated into all secrets of spiritual life. What such a Theurg had to know is today called Theosophy, as it is now taught in the *"Adept"*, *"Kingdom of Spirits"*, *"Christian Theosophy"* and the other books, because now all receive the same and highest education in My Divine teaching and nobody has a preference, whereas in Original Christianity there was an exception, since they used to follow Egyptian priests and Essenes and withheld the higher and supernatural teachings from ordinary people in order to enjoy more reverence among the people. That is why the mysteries or secrets were not written down, but taught orally to the initiates, who kept them secret and only passed them on to their peers.

3. The communication with the inhabitants of the higher spirit world was made possible by clairvoyance. Therefore Jamblichus the great Theurg of the third and fourth century after Christ, (*275-†321) wrote:

4. "Since the gods are benevolent and gracious, they give the theurgs their light in envy-less abundance, draw their souls up to themselves, bring them into union with themselves and accustom them, while they are still in the body, to separate themselves from the bodies and to allow themselves to be led to their eternal and intelligent principle. For since the soul has a dual life, one in connection with the body, but also one completely separate from the body, it is absolutely necessary to learn how to separate it from the body, so that it can unite with God by its intellectual and divine side and recognize the true principles of knowledge and the truths of the intelligible (or higher) world.

5. The presence of the gods in fact gives us health of the body, virtue of the soul, purity of the intellect. In short, it elevates everything in us to its real nature. It shows to the eyes of the soul what is not physical through the fleshly eyes, as if physical. When the gods appear, the soul gains a liberation from passions, a sublime perfection, and an all-exceeding power, and it participates in Divine love and immeasurable joy. Through this we gain a Divine life and indeed become Divine." (Esoter Chr. pp. 17-18)

6. The separation of the soul from the body, says the Father, happens through pure self-knowledge, bright insight into oneself that man consists of two bodies not grown into each other, but each body is standing for itself, through this the fleshly brain-intelligence gains insight and power to work on the spiritual soul to separate itself freely from the body, which is not possible without brighter illumination of itself. The soul has to gain a brighter enlightenment and independence, only then can it fully consciously separate from its body.

356. The Meaning of the term "Life" or "Eternal Life."

In the New Testament this designation appears several times, among them in connection with Me that I, Jesus, am eternal Life. The latter enlightenment that God is eternal life - which is given to those who in their customs and virtues become innocent, believing and good-natured like a child, and walk the narrow and thorny path of renunciations and self-denial through life and thus through the narrow gate of experiences and virtues into eternal life or into heavenly joys and pleasures, which are flowing in God Himself and from Him into all the spiritually perfect ones - is the great mystery of the kingdom of God, because God has heaven and all heavenly pleasures and joys in Himself and because He dwells in man, the heart of man is heaven.

357. A Born-again Man becomes a father of the gods

1. Man, once he is born again, looks like God spiritually - therefore completely white and bright, because love moves his inner life.

2. A born-again man does not need to procreate his children in the flesh because it is bestial, but man and woman must be born again and their desire to have children is based on the simultaneous expression of a wish which burns in prayerful love for God and conception takes place spiritually, as with Joachim's wife Anna when she received Mary. The souls of the heavenly spirits, which are otherwise called gods - since their Father is God - descend into such chaste bodies(!) and create for themselves the fleshly body as their future earthly tool and dwelling place for life.

358. The Heavenly Order

The teaching of the New Testament also includes the various rank-classes of the heavenly hosts and spheres of angels and their ministries, which belong to the high mysteries of the kingdom of God and are therefore worth knowing for those striving for higher things. I have explained these in Tscherrs's *Creation History* in the fourth Conversation, and can therefore be read there. (ChtS. No. 31)

359. Man as World-Telegraph

1. Man is spiritually connected with the whole world, as if through a *worldwide telegraph*. When you pray for someone - alive or dead - he hears your prayer with his spiritual ears; the same is the case with what you say about him, and he also knows what you are doing for or against him. If someone wants to receive a letter from any relative or acquaintance, whether he knows where the respective person is or not, he will get a message if the person who he has in mind, is always carried in thought and often longingly called for and asked to write or make contact, because the soul has no peace, until it communicates to the brain that it is to fulfill the wish and write to the person intended. If the thought-of person is already dead, it often happens that he makes contact himself through a dream.

2. *As far as man speaks good or bad about his neighbour or does evil against him, the soul of the person concerned, hears* - because God leaves the judgement to the person concerned, towards whom the talking and acting of his neighbour is directed, and therefore, in the hereafter, there are often terrible scenes of dispute and retaliation between former friends, acquaintances and other persons who talked evil about his neighbour behind their backs in the world, or secretly inflicted evil on him. Therefore Paul said, "What a man sows here, he will reap there. Read the secret law of karma, chapter 129-140 carefully, so that you may be saved from evil. Therefore speak carefully and possibly only good of your neighbour, since the unwillingness of the soul often manifests itself through external mutual friendship-cooling and broods revenge for the future spiritual retaliation!

3. **Sinful thoughts. Nothing has such a decisive effect on the fornicating sphere of the spirit-realm as unchaste thoughts. As soon as man enters into such thoughts, he telegraphs already to the unchaste sphere and is immediately possessed with the lightning-fast fornication-spirits, who cheer him on in his thoughts and desires and make him imagine images of pleasure, whereby he is drawn to sin with invisible violence, because the spirits - partly in him, partly around him - step in and by their great willpower, paralyze the willpower of man in his resistance against sin and thus bring him to commit the sin which they participate in and enjoy.**

4. The same thing happens when a person gets into arrogance, anger, revenge, the desire to steal, robbery or murder, or into other criminal virtues. He becomes possessed by like-minded spirits of hell, whom he has notified through his thoughts and thereby lured to himself, who then step into him and try to assert their will. Therefore, cultivate only good thoughts that are pleasing to God, to not become the prey of evil spirits!

360. Human Structuring

1. I divide My children according to their knowledge and their spiritual and material abilities and make them serve one another by giving each one so much of My inexhaustible source of love and wisdom as he needs to be a useful tool of My love in the world.

2. So you notice the philosophers who, by their reasons of wisdom, make you understand this and that; scholars who have thoroughly studied one or the other discipline of world science in all directions, as your teachers and directors. The doctor studies the forces of nature and plants and knows how to advise you or prescribe a remedy for every illness, because he knows the inner structure and nature of the body and the causes from which the diseases arise and are to be fought.

3. The judge must always be a very wise man, who has much knowledge of human nature and pure insight, so that he can advise and decide justly according to given circumstances; because the articles of law are one-sided and heartless, and do therefore not match with My love and wisdom, which are called the truth.

4. People who have a deep insight into My teaching and great love for Me, like to appear as teachers of the Gospel because My love drives them to reveal to their brothers the truth of the Gospel and its deep mysteries of spiritual life.

5. The profession of a teacher of the youth is difficult and therefore not particularly attractive, but it must be like this in the world so that mankind is educated and cultivated, therefore I must instill in humans the desire for this state, otherwise there would be very few educators of the people and without these there is no progress, while My order of creation demands and produces an eternally progressive, higher education and ennoblement of the human race.

6. The intelligent and learned state of mankind in this world is recruited through generation or incarnation from the solar, planetary, and stellar worlds of the great world-creation, hence this great diversity of human endowments. Read the "*Material [Natural] Sun*" (ChtS. 2.) and you will understand from where your scholarly status and your construction-technicians, mechanical engineers and other profound artists, scholars, researchers and inventors originate.

361. Restlessness and Search for God

This is the result of the language of conscience because it is always fanned anew by the spirit of God in the heart of the soul, because the spirit of God gives no peace to man until he awakes and very seriously begins to seek and to investigate that what gives no peace to him and drives him to knowledge and faith through seeking and research; because that is the aim of man on earth, like as in the spirit kingdom because the Spirit in him, as his spiritual Father and Creator, pursues this aim to redeem man from matter and to train him to be His child.

362. How the Father Jesus works the Works of Love

1904, July 6, Zurich. Enlightenment of Father Jesus, how all creation was created only for the joy and delight of man, but plants and animals are grateful according to their kind to their Creator, while man lives in his kind and is ungrateful.

1. The holy love of the eternal Father proceeds and continues to work works of love for His children and delights them with it, without them considering that it was only Love wanting to bestow them with blessings.

2. There is nothing in infinity that does not bear the stamp of the love of the Father Jesus; for all that men see is an outflow of My eternal love for them. But unfortunately the children are so ungrateful and indifferent!

3. Dear children, everything that surrounds you and your eyes see, your ears hear and your senses feel or experience, is an outflow of My ever merciful love towards you. Therefore do not be blind, nor deaf, nor unfeeling for all that My Fatherly love puts into your lap without your merits!

4. Look at the nature of the three kingdoms, how manifold it is, how much amusement it offers you without you thanking yourselves for it. How often do I watch with joy your pleasure in My creation, but in the end sadness creeps up on Me, because you do not perceive any sense and feeling in your hearts for Him who puts all this into your lap in vain and quietly waits whether you will say to Him a grateful and loving word to His glory.

5. Early in the morning I look down on your dark earth shining through My loving eye, illuminating and blessing it with My paternal love, awakening and enlivening life on it and in it and letting it move upwards, to the joy of My children. The sun, as an instrument of My Fatherly Love, rises and sets daily to transform the monotonous life into innumerable enjoyable scenes for as soon as it appears, everything becomes alive, the birds sing praises to Me, the animals move in joyful excitement, thus expressing each in their own way their gratitude for the great benefit of the gift of soothing warmth and light. The flowers and plants turns towards the light and soothing warmth of the sun and sprout diligently. From their leaves and flower calyxes they acknowledge Me with thanksgiving by the fact that their thoughts only turn to Me and stay with Me all day long, as they are in the bright and warming sun, the love and mercy of their Creator, to whom they gratefully show their love by directing their spiritual eyes steadfastly towards Him like the cherubim and seraphim.

6. The love of My heart attracts them, that they always direct their hearts towards Me, because the flower-spirits and those of the other plants have their bodily pulsating arrangement according to their kind as do humans and know well what their assignment is.

7. So also see the animals - small and great - how satisfied they are when they are illuminated and warmed by the sun, for an inner comfort shines through them, which every animal manifests in its own way, which of course only I can understand.

8. But man is neither a plant nor an animal, but a being endowed with great reason, who towers over all creation with his intellect and reason, and therefore his task is to sacrifice what the animals and plants only instinctively reveal in their gratitude, after his spiritual formation, with living love, a grateful heart, with sublime words in honour of My love! And does he?! Yes, it is done, but by very few.

363. Love in Practical Life

1902, October 5th, Graz. Father Jesus gives four examples from the love of daily life as patterns which people should follow in order to reach the highest goal of life.

1. My dear children, the preceding teaching develops the individual cases of life and how man should behave at every opportunity. Now I want to illustrate the total content of all the preceding teachings to its consummation, what is to be understood by it.

2. I intervene in everyday life to show you that I demand nothing unusual, nothing which is not possible to fulfill, but that what I demand of you already exists in life, but only in isolated cases, only delimited, but not in general, and that is what I demand, namely that all barriers fall and all differences among people are to cease.

3. So I lead you to scenes from everyday life and from the individual into the general and so listen to Me: When two love each other intimately, they always think of each other, what would please the other, they serve and support each other, and from their eyes, gestures and movements they try to guess what would be dear and pleasant to one or the other, and so they try to serve, please and surprise each other. From her mouth come only friendly words, from her eyes only glances of love, from her decisions only works of charity. One of them likes to do without in order to give to the other and to make the other happy with it and is happy about the grateful and friendly glances of the surprised person, and the recipient is full of joy and love and thinks about how he could distinguish himself and surprise the dear donor or lover in return.

4. Behold, these are proofs of how true love thinks and works, it does not think of itself but always of the beloved object, and the joy and loving glances of surprise are the highest thanks that the giver or love-worker desires and expects to obtain. Every adult knows these examples from everyday life and indeed fulfills them even if he has a little education and a noble heart. So you too love and do according to the examples given and practice: to become warm, loving and selfless, humble and patient, to endure the weaknesses of one's neighbour, as those who love one another, do among themselves. And also endure bitterness and weaknesses of the other and do not immediately go apart, and thus not immediately alienate yourself from your neighbour when he is to blame for something against you, or as always becomes naughty against you, but be patient with the weaknesses of the neighbour and pray for him that he sees his faults and improves so that the brotherly bond of mutual love and harmony is not broken.

5. Now we go to the second example. Well-educated people are always respectful and considerate of one another, and so they speak to one another with the greatest courtesy, and respectfully avoid anything that offends or violates the honour and prestige of their neighbour. His mistakes are kept quiet and nothing is allowed to notice that it is unpleasant, in order not to cloud his good mood and to frighten him away.

6. When a guest comes into an educated family whom he knows, then he is always welcomed with joy and pleasant courtesy, his hat and stick and unnecessary suits are taken from him, put on the clothes stick and the beloved guest is accompanied into the room and received there with all respect and courtesy; he is presented something to enjoy and after being received, immediately after the greeting, offered a chair to sit down in, you sit down too and talks about the matters which was the reason for the visit.

7. An educated guest as a visitor will never stay longer than until he has disposed of his concern; for he knows that every man has to carry out his daily work, and he must therefore not become a nuisance and an obstacle to the fulfillment of his daily duties. The occasions and circumstances under which one does not become annoyed and wearisome due to a long stay are rare, so one must not bore people with a visit, that they become sleepy and start yawning! Such a thing a finely

educated man does not do, and such finely educated guests are also treated finely and educated.

8. So you also behave as recipients of the visit or as guests and as My children try to speak of Me and My love, but never of things which are also not pleasant for you when others would talk about you.

9. Always do what you do well as others do unto you, but never the opposite! This is the highest education and the greatest love you can give each other!

10. Look at a good mother, with what love and attention she cares for her children and how she sees that everyone is decently dressed, well nourished and properly treated! She is always the last one, she donates all her love to her family, and when they are served in everything, only then does she take care of herself. Also take an example from this, how you are to act towards your neighbour!

11. Now we step among a group of children and look at them. Behold, here you see love, childlike affection for one another, they speak childlike but trusting and the listeners accept everything for good without criticizing it in an aloof fashion. An unpleasant remark is accepted laughingly and not as an insult - and gets thrown into the river of oblivion; no-one is angry and fosters revenge, but they stay together and strive to spend the time pleasantly. Small children do not separate from each other, but any discomfort that occurs among them is dismissed with a few words and then they go back to playing together again.

12. What their parents tell them is pure truth without ever doubting it; so you should take an example from the children on how to trust Me! And you shall love Me as children love their parents, because I am your spiritual Father and Mother.

13. From these four examples you can see how you are to be in your love for Me and the neighbour. In these examples lies the whole preceding teaching of Theosophy and you have also appropriated from these four examples the nurturing of love, humility, patience, peace, selflessness, harmony and reconciliation and to be virtuous in thinking, speaking and doing, then you have achieved what I demand of you through the preceding teachings as the highest education in Theosophy, because there is nothing higher than what these examples show you, and therefore I demand nothing new, nothing impossible, nothing unpleasant from you, but only the highest education through love - because it is the education out of love that can make you like Me. Love is the life in God, it is the primordial power that creates and sustains everything, it is the most sacred, because it is the highest in the education of man as a child of God, this is what makes you gods like Me and lifts you up to become one with Me.

14. Therefore take all four examples from the love of daily life together as a pattern: How the mother selflessly cares for her relatives through her love; how two united in love enjoy and serve each other through mutual activities of love, how fine or highly educated people treat each other and how good children love each other and sweetly tolerate each other and apply this in practical life in the activity of charity and the highest goal or crown of life is achieved.

Comments:

364. Church Laws

Read the book *"Christ and the Church"* about baptism, confession, communion, mass, confirmation, matrimony, funerals, church services, ceremonies, servants of God, etc.

365. The Second Main Commandment

Activity in charity is explained by all the books, but the book "*The Adept of Christian Theosophy"* provides a high-level education.

366. For Protestants

Bible Christians, who rely on the doctrine of justification by the mere faith in Christ, that redemption through grace through suffering is Christ's vicarious sacrifice on the cross for all the people of the world, have settled in and strengthened this false doctrine, will find the truth about this in the Enlightenment in the appendix of the book *"The Guidance of Luther and Swedenborg in the Hereafter"*; in the book *"Christ and the Bible"*, Chapter 26, and in the *Ten Religious Contradictions*.



Table of Contents

1. Preface by the Father Jesus 2
2. Contradictions between the Bible-letter-Christians and the Father's Word 4
3. How the Bible ought to be understood 8
4. The Faith 9
5. The Authentic wording of the Apostolic Creed. 12
6. The True Faith 12
7. Faith and Love in Truth 13
8. The First Article of Fatih: Belief in God 13
9. The True Faith 13
10. God as Father 14
11. Evidence 14
12. The Attributes of God. 15
13. God's Idea 16
14. The Knowledge of God out of Creation 17
15. What I don't see or Hear, doesn't exist. 18
16. The great daily Miracle 19
17. The second Article of Faith 19
18. Jesus Christ is called the Only Begotten Son of God 20
19. Son of God 21
20. Son of David 23
21. Son of Man 23
22. God-man 23
23. Faith in God as a visible person 23
24. The only saving faith is that I am Jesus Christ, your God and Saviour 24
25. The Power of Faith 25
26. The truth in Faith 26
27. The apostles' Faith in Christ 26
28 The Rock of Faith is the Truth 27
29. Jesus' title of 'Lord' 28
30. Jesus, the Light of the World 28
31. Jesus Christ, the First-born of Creation 29
32. The third article of Faith 29
33. Jesus' Twelfth Year 31
34. Ministry-years 30-33 31
35. The Fourth Article of Faith 33
36. The Fifth Article of Faith 34
37. The Sixth Article of Faith 35
38. The Seventh Artcle of Faith 36
39. The Eighth Article of Faith 36
40. The Ninth Article of Faith 37
41. What does God say, how do people build temples of idols, today called churches? 38
42. Churches and Ceremonies 38
43. The Community of the Blessed 42
44. The Tenth Article of Faith 43
45. Inherited Sin 45
46. The Eleventh Article of Faith 46
47. The Twelfth Article of Faith 47
48. The Ten Commandments of God 47
49. The Ten Commandments of God 50
50. The First Commandment 54
51. The Wording of the First Commandment 54
52. The First Commandment of God says: 56

53. The misleading belief in Satana....58
54. Prohibition in the First Commandment....59
55. The Angelic Greeting....60
56. Veneration of the saints....62
57. the veneration of dead pictures, statues, signs and figures in the Roman Catholic Church, like the pagans once did.....62
58. The Worship of Relics....63
59. A word about the Miracles on the Remains of Blessed ones....64
60. Violation of the First Commandment....65
61. The Seven Sins against the Holy Spirit....66
62. The Second Commandment of God....67
63. Prohibition in the Second Commandment....67
64. The Command in the Second Commandment....69
65. In Spiritual Sense....71
66. In Heavenly Sense....72
67. The Third Commandment of God....73
68. The Reason why Sabbath Sanctification was Introduced....73
69. Misunderstanding about the Sabbath Sanctification among the Jews....73
70. Why did the Original Christians leave the Jewish Sabbath and introduce Sunday?....74
71. Swedenborg asks: What do we actually mean by the term "Sabbath"?....76
72. The Sabbath sanctification of the children of Israel.....76
73. In Spiritual Sense....77
74. In Heavenly Sense....77
75. How to sanctify Sundays and Holidays these days....78
76. The Fourth Commandment of God....79
77. The Commandment in the Fourth Commandment....79
78. The Prohibition in the Fourth Commandment....80
79. Promise of God to Good Children....80
80. Sentence on evil Children....80
81. Violation of the Fourth Commandment....81
82. A Section from the Spiritual Sun....81
83. In Spiritual Sense....82
84. God is the Spiritual Sun, Love, the Father of Heaven; but the Earth is accordingly the material Mother, carrying the Ideas of Divine Wisdom.....83
85. In Heavenly Sense....83
86. The Fifth Commandment....85
87. What is Forbidden by the Fifth Commandment?....85
88. The Basic Meaning of this Commandment....85
89. Spiritual Killing that is Permitted, even Taught....86
90. What threats pertains to the murderers of mankind?....86
91. What more is forbidden by the Fifth Commandment?....86
92. The Fifth Commandment Commands:....87
93. Eating Meat....88
94. The Meat Diet....88
95. Thirteen Reasons against eating Meat from the Standpoint of Christianity. (From Bible Research)....89
96. Why should Christians avoid eating Meat and drinking Alcohol? (Read: Gospel of Matthew 5:8; 1 Cor 9:24-27)....91
97. In the Spiritual Sense....92
98. In Heavenly Sense....93
99. Suicide....94
100. Transgression against the Fifth Commandment....95
101. The Sixth Commandment of God....95
102. Prohibition in the Sixth Commandment....95
103. Temptation to Unchastity....96

104. The Evil Consequences of the vice of Unchastity are:....96
105. By the Sixth Commandment, it is Commanded....97
106. Human Nature and its Desires....100
107. The Wedded or Married....101
108. The Betrayal of Faith in Marriage....103
109. Sexual Sins....104
110. In Spiritual Sense....105
111. In Heavenly Sense....105
112. The Seventh Commandment of God....105
113. What is Forbidden by the Seventh Commandment?....105
114. The transgressions of the Seventh Commandment are:....106
115. What is commanded by the Seventh Commandment?....106
116. In Spiritual Sense....107
117. In Heavenly Sense....108
118. The Eighth Commandment of God....109
119. What is Prohibited by the Eighth Commandment?....109
120. What is Commanded by the Eighth Commandment?....109
121. In Spiritual Sense....110
122. In Heavenly Sense....111
123. Ninth Commandment of God:....112
125. The Spiritual Sense....113
126. The Tenth Commandment of God:....114
THE TWO COMMANDMENTS OF LOVE....115
127. The First Commandment of Love....115
128. The Second Commandment of Love....116
129. Karma....117
130. What is Karma anyway?....117
131. How does a Person work towards a Good Karma?....118
132. How does Man Affect his Karma Negatively?....119
133. The Definition of Karma....119
134. Examples of what Karma is....120
135. Karma Doctrine in the Old Testament....122
136. The law of Cause in the New Testament. The Repercussions of Evil Karma on Reincarnation 125
137. How Karma Continues to Work....128
138. The Earthly causes' Effect in the Afterlife....130
139. Residence in the Spirit Realm of a Departed Human Being....131
140. The Karma of Faith....132
141. Reincarnation. The Indian Reincarnation Teaching....134
142. Reincarnation teaching in the Old Testament....135
143. The Christian Doctrine of Reincarnation....137
144. Theory of Reincarnation in the New Testament....137
145. Reincarnation Theory from the Apostolic Letters....139
146. God's Spirit before and after the Incarnation....140
147. Humans as Animals in vivid Dreams....140
148. Animal-Figures seen by Clairvoyants....141
149. What are Reincarnations for?....142
150. Sins of Past Life Avenged in Reincarnation....144
151. The Marked....145
152. Mockery and Taunting of the Marked....145
153. A Tree is Known by its Fruit....146
154. The Blind-Born....146
155. One-eyedness; being Cross-eyed; Evil eye....146
156. Dwarfs....147
157. The Cripples....147
158. Lameness; Twisted Limbs....148
159. The Hunchback....148

160. Cretins....149
161. The Fools and Clowns....149
162. The Laughing Grinning Clowns....150
163. Idiots, Geniuses and Dimwits....150
164. Big Skull and Goiter....150
165. Deafness....151
166. Muteness....151
167. Deaf-Mutes....151
168. The neglect (or oversight) of the Mother....152
169. Cleptomania....153
170. Why do Thieves, Robbers, Murderers and other Criminals also have Children, since they are Likely to Spoil them?....153
171. The Third Gender. The Hellenic Love....154
172. Why are there Hermaphrodites in the world?....154
173. Inclination of Man to Man and Woman....155
174. Inclination of Woman to Woman and Man....155
175. Inclination of Woman to Woman....155
176. A Valid Proof from This Side and Beyond....155
177. Transformation of the Soul in Reincarnation....155
178. The Reincarnated. About Reincarnated Partial Spirits....156
179. Earthly Incarnation is followed by Earthly Reincarnation....157
180. The Earth as the Last Incarnation-World of the Souls....158
181. Interrupted Recollection of the Incarnations....158
182. A Word of Truth about Reincarnation....159
183. Re-elevation from Dead Matter to Reincarnation....161
184. Inner word. Reincarnation. Love as a spark of God....162
185. Easter Greeting, Reincarnation, return of Christ....164
186. Reincarnation and the Souls from Above....165
187. Father's Word about the Birthday of an Incarnate....166
188. God's Temple....168
189. The Flesh is the Image of the Soul....168
191: The Origin of Material Creation....169
193. Man as the Prodigal Son Satan....169
194. Man as the Temple of God....169
THE SOUL AS THE SACRIFICIAL HIGH PRIEST....170
195. The Creation of the Soul....170
196. Man as God and Satan in one Person....171
197. Man as a god emerging from Satan....173
198 The Soul as the Eternal High Priest of God....175
199. The Penance of Life....176
200. The Confession of Christ; Childhood and Seeing God....176
201. Innocent Suffering....177
202. Through Earthly Sufferings to Heavenly Pleasures....178
203. Father's Word about the Theosophy....179
204. The Theosophical Teaching....182
205. The Life of Lies and Truth....186
206. The Twofold Value of the Good Faith....187
207. The Three Forms of being Good....187
208. Man as an Instrument of God....187
209. The three Kinds of Charitable Works....188
210. The Dual Life....189
211. Serving two Masters....189
212. Pretense and Hypocrisy....189
213. The Goodness and Truth of Love in Human Beings....190
214. The Love of God....190
215. Faith in Jesus....190

216. External and Internal Faith....191
217. The Phlegmatic Tolerance....191
218. Mission Instruction Manual....192
219. Religious Fanaticism at Conversion....192
220. The Goal of Christian Theosophy....193
221. The Fulfillment of the Theosophical Prescriptions....195
222. Man and Matter....196
223. Flesh and Spirit....196
224. The Kingdom of God on Earth....197
225. Spiritual Education....197
226. The sins of Man....198
227. Prayer....199
228. Pray and Work....199
229. I AM Spirit and Whoever Worships Me must Worship Me in Spirit and in Truth....200
230. Worship of God in Spirit and in Truth....202
231. Much Knowledge....203
232. Keeping Silent....204
233. Speaking about the Worldly, draws you to Matter....205
234. Sin against the Neighbour....206
235. Intentional Sins....207
236. Suicide....207
237. Inner Contemplation....209
238. Self-control....209
239. Suppress Sinful Thoughts in the Germ....210
240. Insult....210
241. Forgiveness....211
242. Three Remedies against Being Right, Unchastity and Harassment by Spirits....212
243. The Fight against Doubting God's Word....214
244. The Power of the Word....214
245. Life and Action According to the Word....215
246. Nurturing of Thoughts....215
247. Mastering one's own Ego or the Forces of Nature within Oneself....217
248. Jesus as an Example of Humble Living....217
249. Humiliation before God....218
250. The Kingdom of the Messiah....218
251. Appreciation of Mankind....219
252. Self-denial and the Order of God....220
253. Reading Books and Magazines....221
254. The Sermon on the Mount....221
255. Divine 'Shall'-Advice....223
256. The Exaggerated Zeal of the Martyrs....224
257. Spiritual and Material Fasting....224
258. Spiritual Repentance and Penance....225
259. The Gratitude of Love....226
260. The Balance of Righteousness is in the Commandment....227
261. Jesus, Bridegroom of the Soul....227
262. The Relationship of the Soul to the Spirit of God as His bride....228
263. One for All, All for One....229
264. Jesus is the Way, the Truth and the Life!....229
265. Luxury, Arrogance and Servitude....230
266. Appearance of the Cross....232
267. Death of the Soul....232
268. The True Stone of Wisdom....233
269. The Enlightened Soul....233
270. Bliss....234
271. The Father and His Children....235

272. The Children of Heaven....237
273. Knowledge of Higher Spiritual Laws and Powers....238
274. The Earnestness of Life....239
275. The Spirit-Man....240
276. God as Father of Humans....243
277. The Value of a Human Soul....244
278. The Truth....244
279. The Religion of the Future....245
280. The Five Signs of God's Presence....249
281. Enlightenment on How to seek God....250
282. The Period of Spiritual Perfection....250
283. How do you Take the Kingdom of God by Force?....251
284. How does one Attain the Childhood of God?....252
285. Advice on Rebirth in case of Temptations....253
286. Subordinate your Will to the Divine Will....254
287. Contentment....255
288. Characteristics of Maturity for Rebirth....256
289. How Head and Heart become a Kingdom of Peace....257
290. Childhood of God....258
291. Concentration of Thoughts in God....259
292. God's Rod of Discipline....260
293. Love, Humility and Patience in Jesus....261
294. Life, Charity, Creation....262
295. Means to Awaken the Spirit to Rebirth....263
296. The Inner Perfection of Life and its Three Degrees....264
297. The Delights of our Heavenly Father....265
298. Humility. The Seven different Spirits of Humility....265
299. Various Teachings on Humility....267
300. Through the Battle of Life to Heavenly Victory....268
301. Why every Human being without Exception should be Welcomed and treated Humbly?....272
302. Mercy or Charity....272
303. Proof from the Sayings of Jesus that Man, through Labouring Love as a Reward, obtains Eternal Life, which is God or Heaven....275
304. Seven Ways of Compassion towards the Neighbour....279
305. Rules for Correct Conduct in Charity....282
306. Widows and Orphans....283
307. The Works of Love....284
308. Charity Worked by the Poor....284
309. Patience....285
310. Jesus' Patience....289
311. Chastity....291
312. Peace....293
313. Selflessness....296
314. Wisdom and Righteousness....297
315. Love....305
316. The Holy of Holies....315
317. The Inner Life of Man....315
318. Flames, Light, Heat....319
319. The Reign of the Divine Trinity in Nature....320
320. God is Everywhere....321
321. The Holy of Holies....322
322. The Sun of the Deity....323
323. Christ, the Crucified Wisdom of God....326
324. Supplementary Explanations....328
325. The Spiritual Crucifixion of Human Nature and the Death of Sins through Continued Material and Spiritual Repentance....328

326. Christ and Buddha....329
327. Final Clarifications....331
328. What does the Term "The Rebirth of the Spirit" mean?....337
APPENDIX....339
329. The Truth....339
330. The Greatest Commandment in the Law....340
331. Highly Spiritual Teaching....341
332. The Little Mysteries....341
333. The so-called Saints of the Early Christian Period....342
334. The Supersensory Doctrine....342
335. Secrets of the Teaching in Original Christianity....343
336. The Great Mysteries....343
337. God's Revelation about Himself....344
338. The Mystery of the Light of God....346
339. The Mystery of God in Christ....347
340. Jesus Christ....348
341. The Mystery of Godliness....348
342. The Mystery between Christ and the Congregation....348
342. Christ as Head of the Congregation....349
344. The Mystery of Heaven or Eternal Life....350
345. Jesus Christ in us....353
346. The Teaching for the Perfect....355
347. The Second Rebirth....355
348. The Primordial Sun of Spiritual Life....359
349. The Image and Likeness of God....361
350. The Tree of Life....361
351. The Tree of Knowledge....361
352. The Food of It....361
353. Conclusion of all three Clauses in one Judgement....362
354. Marriage....362
355. The Theurgy of the Great Mysteries....363
356. The Meaning of the term "Life" or "Eternal Life."....364
357. A Born-again Man becomes a father of the gods....364
358. The Heavenly Order....365
359. Man as World-Telegraph....365
360. Human Structuring....366
361. Restlessness and Search for God....366
362. How the Father Jesus works the Works of Love....367
363. Love in Practical Life....368
Comments:....369
364. Church Laws....369
365. The Second Main Commandment....370
366. For Protestants....370